THE LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
1800

AUTHORS' NAMES.

Godescard.
Grandville.
Guérin (Leon)
Guizot.
Guizot (Mme.)
Hoffman.
Houssaye.
Hugo.
Janin (Jules)
Karr.
Klee.
Krudner (de)
La Bruyère.
Lacépède.
La Fayette.
La Fontaine.
La Harpe.
Lajolais (Mlle.)
Lamartine (de)
Lamermais (de)
La Rochefocauld
Las Cases.
Lavalette.
Lavallée.
Lebas.
Ledru-Rollin.
Le Gai.
Leroux de Lincy.
Le Sage.
Lurine.
Magin.
Mago.
Mahomet.
Maistre (H. de)
Malebranche.
Malherbe.
Marg. de Valois.
Marivaux.
Marmier (X.)
Marmontel.
Massillon.
Masson (M.)
Maury.
Mennechet.
Menneval (de)
Merimée.
Michaud.
Michelant.
Michelet.
Mignet.
Milleville.
Millevoye.
Molière.
Montaigne.
Montholon.
Montesquieu.
Moreau.
Murger (H.)
Musset (de)
Nicole.
Nodier.
Norvins (de)
Odolant-Desnos.
Old-Nick.
O'Meara.
Orbigny (d')
Ostervald.
Pascal (Bl.)
Periers.
Perrault.
Pitre Chevalier.
Planche.
Pougoulat.
Poussin.
Prevost (l'abbé)
Rabelais.
Rabion.
Racine.
Ragon.
Regnard.
Remusat (de)
Renault (l'abbé)
Renouvier.
Retz (le card. de)
Reybaud (L.)
Richard.
Robinet.
Roland (Mme.)
Roret.
Roussel.
Rousseau.
Sacy (de)
Saint-Hilaire.
Saint Pierre (de)
Sainte-Beuve.
Saintine.
Saisset.
Salvandy.
Sand (Georges.)
Sandeau.
Sarrazin.
Scarron.
Scribe.
Segur (le cte. de)
Sénancour (de)
Sévigné (Mme.)
Soulié.
Souza (Mme. de)
Souvestre.
Stael (Mme. de)
Sue.
Tastu (Mme. A.)
Theopraste.
Thierry.
Thiers.
Toppfer.
Tocqueville (de)
Valentin.
Valmore.
Velpeau.
Vernet.
Veuillot.
Viennet.
Vigny (A. de)
Villehardouin.
Vinet.
Vitet.
Voltaire.
Walsh.

FRENCH TRANSLATIONS.

Abaillard.
Æschine.
Æschyle.
Æsop.
Alfieri.
Anacréon.
Arioste.
Aristophane.
Aristote.
Augustin.
Bacon.
Blair.
Boccace.
Burns.
Byron.
Calderon.
Camoens.
Casti.
Cellini.
Cervantes.
César.
Ciceron.
Clarke (S.)
Confucius.
Dante.
Démosthène.
Diogène.
Erasme.
Euripide.
Franklin.
Goethe.
Goldsmith.
Héloise.
Hérodote.
Herschel.
Hippocrate.
Homère.
Horace.
Johnson.
Kempis (Th. à)
Klopstock.
Kohlrausch.
Leibnitz.
Liebig.
Lingard.
Locke.
Lope de Vega.
Lucien.
Machiavel.
Mac-Culloch.
Manzoni.
Marc Aurèle.
Milton.
Ott.
Ovide.
Pellico.
Pétrarque.
Platon.
Polybe.
Plutarque.
Robertson.
Rollin.
Schiller.
Schmidt.
Shakespeare.
Sophocle.
Spinoza.
Stewart.
Sterne.
Swift.
Tacite.
Tasse (le)
Thucydide.
Virgile.
Walter-Scott.
Wyss.
Xenophon.
Zschokke.
Zimmerman.

EDUCATION, STUDY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, MATHEMATICS, THE SCIENCES, GEOGRAPHY, &c.

Addicks.
Æsop.
Balbi.
Barbaroux.
Barbauld.
Barberet.
Bélézé.
Bellenger.
Bérard.
Berquin.
Berteau.
Bescherelle.

(*Continued at the end of the book.*)

VALUABLE TEXT-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

ROE LOCKWOOD AND SON,

Booksellers, Publishers, and Importers,

No. 411 BROADWAY, NEW YORK.

ENGLISH.

OLMSTED'S CHEMISTRY. A New Edition. 12mo.....$1 00
AMERICAN Popular Lessons. By Eliza Robbins..... 31
INTRODUCTION to " " " 25
SEQUEL to " " " 50
PRIMARY Dictionary. " " 31
GRECIAN History. " " 75
MILLS' Blair's Rhetoric. New Edition, Enlarged..... 1 00
GRISCOM'S First Lessons in Human Physiology..... 42
BALDWIN'S Table Book and Primary Arithmetic..... 10
CLARKE'S Elements of Astronomy..... 21

FRENCH.

MANESCA'S Oral System of Teaching French..... 3 00
" **Philological Recorder.** Adapted to Manesca's Oral System.. 75
ROBERTSONIAN System of Teaching French. 12mo. (In press.) 1 25
MEADOWS' French and English Pronouncing Dictionary. 16mo.... 1 25
NOEL et CHAPSAL. Grammaire Francaise. AN EXACT REPRINT OF THE LAST PARIS EDITION. 12mo... ..... 1 00
——— **Corrige.** (Key.) do. 12mo..... 1 00
——— **Abrege de la Grammaire Francaise.** AN EXACT REPRINT OF THE LAST PARIS EDITION. 12mo..... 75
——— **Litterature Francaise.** Selections of French Literature 1 25
LE SIEGE DE LA ROCHELLE. Par Mme. de Genlis. 12mo..... 1 00
LE VICAIRE DE WAKEFIELD. Par Goldsmith. 12mo..... 75
RACINE'S Select Pieces. 18mo..... 63
MOLIERE'S Select Pieces. 18mo..... 63
PAUL et VIRGINIE. Par B. St. Pierre. 12mo..... 50
——— With a Vocabulary, Interlinear Translation, and Pronunciation. 12mo 63
ELISABETH; ou, Les Exiles de Siberie. Par Mme. Cottin. 12mo... 50
——— With a Vocabulary, Interlinear Translation, and Pronunciation..... 63
FABLES DE LA FONTAINE. 100 Illustrations..... 63
ATALA, RENE. Par Chateaubriand. 12mo..... 50
MABIRE'S Conversational Phrases, classified; or, French Synonyms..... 45

Continued at the end of this volume.

THE ROBERTSONIAN SYSTEM.

THE

WHOLE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

BY

T. ROBERTSON,

AUTHOR OF "NOUVEAU COURS PRATIQUE, ANALYTIQUE, THÉORIQUE ET SYNTHÉTIQUE DE LANGUE ANGLAISE," "LEÇONS PRATIQUES DE LANGUE ANGLAISE," ETC., ETC.

EDITED BY

LOUIS ERNST.

4597.=

NEW YORK:
ROE LOCKWOOD & SON,
LIBRAIRIE AMÉRICAINE ET ÉTRANGÈRE,
BROADWAY, No. 411.
1855.

PC2109
.R6
1855

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1855, by
ROE LOCKWOOD & SON,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

PREFACE.

The startling success which the Robertsonian System has obtained throughout Europe, is well known in this country, and a Series of French Lessons prepared by Professor Robertson *himself*, and based entirely upon the same principles as those of his Celebrated English Course, will no doubt be hailed with pleasure by every one engaged in studying or teaching that language.

In presenting this work to the American public, however, it may not be uninteresting to say a few words of its more prominent features, and especially of those which appear to have contributed most to sustain, during the last thirty years, the immense popularity of the author as an instructor in Paris.

Among these the Text would seem to deserve particular notice, being not only an original and attractive narrative, but also one so singularly imagined as to offer in turn, and in the course of a few pages only, all the various grammatical and idiomatical peculiarities of the French language, together with a complete vocabulary of the words likely to occur in familiar discourse.

A portion of this text is taken up at each lesson, and read over carefully, until the pronunciation and meaning of the expressions contained in it have been fully mastered, when sundry questions, exclusively made up

of the words already seen, and readily answered with small fragments of the text, will be found to establish from the first AN ANIMATED LITTLE DIALOGUE between the master and student, and to remove, in a very ingenious manner, the difficulties usually met with in beginning CONVERSATION.

Not content with this, however, and feeling the importance of an early habit of COMPOSITION, a number of SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION, also devoid of expressions not previously explained, have been added, and these, prepared with an especial view to display the many ways in which the words learned may be transposed so as to express new ideas, cannot fail to prove an excellent exercise to accustom the pupil to speak French, and to understand the language when spoken. They conclude the FIRST PART of each Lesson, which is invariably kept so far exclusively practical, in its nature being especially intended for those who feel impatient to speak as speedily as possible.

The SECOND PART, on the contrary, is dedicated to a more profound ANALYSIS of the language, and explains, in a series of clear and easy rules, all the difficulties of FRENCH GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX. It contains also NUMEROUS PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES for home practice, and a KEY by which MANY THOUSAND NEW WORDS may be acquired with facility, and in a very little while. This is perhaps one of the happiest illustrations of Professor Robertson's Method, for whilst it encourages considerably the early efforts of a beginner, it at the same time tends materially to smooth his first steps by doing away entirely with the necessity of referring to the dictionary, a plan which will be fully appreciated by those who

have experienced the many perplexing doubts usually attending such consultations.

As to the BEST PLAN TO BE PURSUED in studying this book, it has been sufficiently laid out in the copious notes added for that purpose to the First and Second Lessons, and it will be well to refer to them faithfully, until a familiarity with the system shall have rendered such aid unnecessary. We would, however, improve this opportunity to recommend once more to favorable notice the observation on page 3, line 29, particularly in cases where small children are to be taught, or persons whose chief desire is to secure, in as short a time as possible, a sufficient knowledge of French to be able to make themselves understood, without entering into the minute details of the principles of the language. The Questions and Answers for Conversation, the first set of which is on page 2, should also be read over once or twice before being applied in the manner indicated.

L. E.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

Preface iii

Introductory Lesson—Pronunciation vii

First Forty Lessons, for learning to read, write, and speak French 1

Text of the first Forty Lessons, brought into one view for the convenience of reference 509

Concluding Lessons, from 41st to 60th, for Translation and Idioms 527

Synoptical Tables of the Pronouns and Adjectives 569

Recapitulation of the two auxiliaries, and models of the three regular forms of conjugation 572

General Index and Alphabetical Grammar, comprising all the Rules, Observations, and Exceptions contained in this work, and giving a complete List of the Radical Irregular Verbs 573

INTRODUCTORY LESSON.*

ALPHABET.

There are 25 letters in French, viz.:

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

NAMES OF THE LETTERS.

The vowels are called as they are pronounced, for which see Table on next page, and the consonants usually take some vowel sound either before or after them, thus:

Ba, sa, da, eff, za† ash, zee,† kah, ell, emm, enn, pa, ku,‡ err, ess, ta, va, eeks, egrec, zedd.

PRONUNCIATION.

French, in this respect, does not differ from English as much as is generally imagined; and to show it in as clear a light as possible, the following Table, containing all the peculiarities of French pronunciation in alphabetical order, has been prepared. This table is, however, not intended to be learned at once by heart, but rather to be used as a sheet of reference. It will be well, nevertheless, to read it over a few times before attempting the difficulties indicated for immediate study in observation on page x.

---

* Much of this chapter has been extracted from a little book, by the Editor, called "*A Curious Inquiry into the French and English Lexicology*," a work which could not fail to prove a valuable assistant to the student of the Robertsonian System, containing as it does, among other things, a complete collection of all the words alike or nearly so in both languages.

† *z* should be here sounded as *z* in *azure*.

‡ *u* should be here sounded as *w* in *sweet*. See Table on next page.

ALPHABETICAL TABLE

OF ALL THE PECULIARITIES OF FRENCH PRONUNCIATION.

A*	.....	is sounded as			in		*Ah!*†
AI*	.....	„	„	*a*	„ *Date.*	Ex.	*Aide.*
	Unless followed by final *d*, *r*, *s*, or *t*, when it....	„	„	*a*	„ *Rare.*	„	*Air.*
AIL	.....	„	„	*ah-ye.*	.....	„	*Détail.*
AIN‡	.....	„	„	*an*	„ *Sang.*§	„	*Vain.*
AM‡	.....	„	„	*en*	„ *Encore.*§	„	*Ample.*
AN‡	.....	„	„	*en*	„ *Encore.*§	„	*Angle.*
AU*	.....	„	„	*au*	„ *Beau.*	„	*Chapeau.*
B*	....	„	„	.....	„		*Bible.*
C*	hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*,	„	„	.....	„		*Canal, code, cube, client, crime*
„	soft before *e*, *i*, *y*, ...	„	„	.....	„		*Centre, citron, cycle.*
Ç	(with a cedilla (¸))....	„	„	.....	„		*Façade.*
CH*	....	„	„	.....	„		*Charlotte.*
	Unless followed by *l* or *r*, when it	„	„	.....	„		*Chloride.*
D*	.....	„	„	.....	„		*Double.*
E*	(unaccented) is always silent when final, except in the small words: *Ce, de, je, le, me, ne, que, se,* and *te;* in which it has the indistinct sound explained below.					„	*Pôle.*
	It is also silent between *g*, *a*, or *o*.					„	*Pigeon.*
	It is sounded as in *Bell* at the beginning of a word; or in the middle if followed by any two consonants, and before *c*, *f*, *l*, *r*, *t*, *x*, when these belong to the same syllable as the *e*.					„	*Estimable, belle, nectar.*
	In all other cases it has the indistinct sound of *e* in Battery.					„	*Batterie.*
É	with an acute accent (´)	„	„	*a*	„ *Date.*	„	*Écho.*
È	with a grave accent (`)	„	„	*a*	„ *Rare.*	„	*Nièce.*
Ê	with a circumflex accent (^)	„	„	*a*	„ *Rare.*	„	*Rêverie.*
EIN‡	.....	„	„	*an*	„ *Sang.*§	„	*Teint.*
EINE	.....	„	„	*ay-ne.*	.....	„	*Seine.*
EM‡	.....	„	„	*en*	„ *Encore.*§	„	*Temple.*
EN‡	.....	„	„	*en*	„ *Encore.*§	„	*Ensemble.*
	Unless preceded by *i*, when it	„	„	*an*	„ *Sang.*§	„	*Bien* (well).
ENT	is silent when the mark of the 3d pers. plur. in verbs.					„	*Ils parlent* (they speak); read *il parle.*
ER	at the end of a word....	„	„	*a*	„ *Date.*	„	*Parler* (to speak); read *parlé.*

* The letters or combinations of letters marked with an asterisk, are pronounced the same in French as in English.

† The examples have been generally selected from among the expressions alike in both languages, not to embarrass the beginner with too many foreign words at the outset of his studies.

‡ The combinations of letters marked thus ‡ are called nasal sounds. It will be well to remember that all nasal sounds cease to be so when followed by a vowel, or if the *m* or *n* is doubled. Ex. *Dame, innocent.*

§ The model words marked thus § are mere approximatives, and should be used only in the absence of a teacher.

	EU	.....is sounded as			in			*Hauteur.*
		It has, however, a less broad sound when not followed by *r* or *il*.....					Ex.	*Feu* (fire).
	EZ	when final.....	„	„	*a*	„ *Date.*	„	*Parlez* (speak); read *parlé.*
F*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Fable.*
G*		hard before *a, o, u, l, r*..	„	„	.....	„		*Gazette, gondolier, guttural, globe, grâce.*
„		soft before *e, i, y*.....	„	„	*z*	„ *Azure.*	„	*Général, Gibraltar, gymnasium.*
	GN*	.....	„	„	.....	„		*Mignonnette.*
H*		is generally silent.....					„	*Thomas.*
I*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Marine.*
	IM‡	.....	„	„	*an*	„ *Sang.*§	„	*Simple.*
	IN‡	.....	„	„	*an*	„ *Sang* §	„	*Satin.*
J*		.....	„	„	*z*	„ *Azure.*	„	*Jovial.*
K*		....	„	„	.....	„		*Koran.*
L*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Long.*
	LL	is liquid when preceded by *i*.....					„	*Bouillon.*
		Unless at the beginning of a word, when it....	„	„	.... .	„		*Illégal.*
M*		.....	„	„	... ..	„		*Muse.*
N*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Noble.*
O*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Oh! Olive.*
	OI	.....	„	„	*oh-ah.*	.....	„	*Reservoir.*
	OM‡	.....	„	„	*on*	„ *Song.*§	„	*Sombre.*
	ON‡	....	„	„	*on*	„ *Song.*§	„	*Concert.*
	OU*	.....	„	„	.....	„		*Routine.*
P*		....	„	„	.....	„		*Page.*
	PH*	.....	„	„	.....	„		*Phénix.*
Q*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Antique.*
R*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Rose.*
S*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Six.*
T*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Table.*
	TI	has two sounds in English; sometimes that of *t* proper, and at others that of *sh*: in the former case it does not differ from the French, in the latter it should be pronounced like *ss*.....					„	*Institution.*
U		.....	„	„	*w*	„ *Sweet.*§	„	*Suite.*
		But it is silent between *q* and *e*, or *i*, also after *q*.					„	*Guide, question.*
	UM‡	....	„	„	*un*	„ *Sung.*§	„	*Humble.*
	UN‡	.....	„	„	*un*	„ *Sung.*§	„	*Un* (one).
V*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Valve.*
X*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Expression.*
Y*		is equivalent to *ii*.....					„	*Crayon.*
		In Loyal, therefore, the first *i* is united to *o*, which forms the diphthong *oi*, pronounced like *wa* in Water, and the second to the *al*, thus: *loi-ial.* When the *y* is not preceded by a vowel, however, it is sounded as *i* in Marine					„	*Style.*
Z*		.....	„	„	.....	„		*Zone.*

* ‡ § See 1st, 3d, and 4th notes on previous page.

OBSERVATION.

We have seen, in the preceding Table, that most letters are alike or nearly so in both languages, and that the difficulties of French pronunciation are chiefly confined to the voices *u, eu*, and the nasals. It would, therefore, seem best to familiarize one's self at once with these sounds, rather than lose time in the review of such as, by their similitude to the English, present no particular field for practice. To effect this successfully, they should be rehearsed daily for some time, first singly, thus: *u, eu, an, in, on, un*, and then united to other letters, using for that purpose some of the examples given, as: *Suite, Hauteur, Feu, Ample, Simple, Sombre, Un*, etc.; the word *Le* (the) could also be added to these as an appropriate study of the indistinct *e*.

Among the consonants there are only two requiring especial attention, soft *g* and *j*, which ought both to be pronounced as *z* in Azure. Many people, however, acquire the bad habit of prefixing a *d* to them, saying *dgénéral, djovial;* this *d* should be strictly avoided.

RULES FOR READING.

Our remarks till now have been in the main limited to isolate letters or combinations; to read whole words or sentences, however, there are yet two very important things to be noticed.

1stly, That the French never sound any final consonant except *c, f, l, r*, nor the *e* when at the end of a word unless accented; and, secondly, that an *s* when the mark of the plural or of certain persons in verbs does not cause the preceding letter to be pronounced.

Part	should	therefore	be read	as if spelled	*Par.*
Belle	„	„	„	„	*Bell.*
Tables	„	„	„	„	*Table.*
Vends (sell)	„	„	„	„	*Vend.*

As to the custom of slurring every final consonant to the next word if beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the practice is not at all obligatory, and it will be best, in this respect, to consult one's own ear, or the opinion of some person of taste, as is done in English.

IRREGULAR WORDS.

The following list comprises such expressions as deviate from the above rules. Those marked with an asterisk (*) will be required in the early lessons of the Robertson:

	PRONOUNCED		PRONOUNCED
Amer, Bitter,	*Amère.*†	*Les,** The,	*Lè.*
Atlas, Atlas,	*Atlace.*	*Mars*, March,	*Marce.*
Automne, Autumn,	*Autonne.*	*Mer*, Sea,	*Mère.*
Baptême, Baptism,	*Batème.*	*Mes,** My,	*Mè.*
Banc, Bench,	*Ban.*	*Mille*, 1,000,	*Mile.*
Blanc, White,	*Blan.*	*Mœurs*, Habits,	*Meurce.*
*Ces,** These or Those,	*Cè.*	*Monsieur*, Sir, Mr.,	*Mocieu.*
Chaos, Chaos,	*Kao.*	*Œil*, Eye,	*Euil.*
*Cher,** Dear,	*Chère.*	*Oignon*, Onion,	*Onion.*
Clef, Key,	*Clé.*	*Orchestre*, Orchester,	*Orkestre.*
Compte, Account,	*Conte.*	*Ours*, Bear,	*Ource.*
Cuiller, Spoon,	*Cuillère.*	*Outil*, Tool,	*Outi.*
*Des,** Of the or from the,	*Dè.*	*Phénix*, Phenix,	*Phénixe.*
*Deuxième,** 2d,	*Deuzième.*	*Quadrupède*, Quadruped,	*Kouadrupède.*
Dix.‡ 10,	*Diss.*	*Second,** 2d,	*Segond.*
Dixième, 10th,	*Dizième.*	*Sept.*§ 7,	*Sett.*
Doigt. Finger,	*Doit.*	*Ses,** His, her, its,	*Sê.*
Écho, Echo,	*Éko.*	*Six.*‡ 6,	*Siss.*
Ennui, Ennui,	*En-nui.*	*Sixième,** 6th,	*Sizième.*
*Es,** Art (thou),	*è.*	*Soixante*. 60,	*Soissante.*
*Est,** Is,	*è.*	*Tact*, Tact,	*Tacte.*
*Femme,** Woman,	*Famme.*	*Tabac*, Tobacco,	*Tabu.*
Fer, Iron,	*Fère.*	*Temps*, Time, weather,	*Temp.*
Fier, Proud,	*Fière.*	*Tes,** Thy,	*Tè.*
*Fils,** Son,	*Fiss.*	*Tranquille*, Quiet,	*Tranquile.*
Flanc, Flank,	*Flan.*	*Très*, Very,	*Trè.*
Franc. Franc,	*Fran.*	*Tronc*, Trunk,	*Tron.*
Fusil, Gun,	*Fusi,*	*Ville*, Town,	*Vile.*
Gentil, Pretty,	*Genti.*	*Vingt*, 20,	*Vin.*
Huit, 8,	*Uitt.*	*Vis*, Screw,	*Viss.*

† The pronunciation has been here given in French, because the student can by this time most likely understand it, and, if not, it will prove an excellent reading exercise.

‡ The *x* in *Dix* and *Six* is, however, sounded like *z*, when these numbers are followed by a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, and it is always silent before a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

§ *Sept* is pronounced *Sè* before a word beginning with a consonant or an *h* aspirate.

THE WHOLE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.*

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Première leçon.

First lesson.

Le jeune Alexis Delatour était un assez
The young Alexis Delatour was an enough

bon garçon, qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut,
good boy who — had but one single fault

la paresse. Mais, combien de fois n'a-t-on
the laziness. But how many of times —has—one

pas dit que ce vice donne naissance à tous
not said that this vice gives birth to all

les autres ? C'est un proverbe, vous le
the others? It is a proverb you it

savez. Or, nous pensons que les proverbes
know. Now we think ** ** **

sont généralement vrais.
are generally true.

---

* Before making any attempt to read the text, the student should, if possible, hear it five or six times from the mouth of either a native or some person well versed in French pronunciation; and then familiarize himself thoroughly with the spelling and meaning of each word. To promote the latter in particular, it will be well to transcribe once or twice from dictation, and from memory, the whole of the literal translation, in small fragments of a few expressions at a time; such exercise being highly calculated to form the eye and ear.

** When the translation of a word has been given, and that word occurs again, it ceases to be translated, unless it has another acceptation.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Young Alexis Delatour was a good sort of fellow, who had but one fault, laziness. But how often has it not been said that this vice gives birth to all others? It is a proverb, you know. Now, we think that proverbs are generally true.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la première leçon.
Qui était un assez bon garçon?**	Le jeune Alexis Delatour.
What sort of a lad was young Alexis Delatour?	C'était un assez bon garçon—*or*, Alexis était un assez bon garçon.
Combien de défauts avait Alexis?	Alexis n'avait qu'un seul défaut.
What was his only fault?	La paresse.
Qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut?	Le jeune Alexis Delatour.
What gives birth to all other vices?	Ce vice—*or*, La paresse.
To what does this vice give birth?	Ce vice donne naissance à tous les autres.
What has been said many times?	Que la paresse donne naissance à tous les autres vices.
What is laziness?	C'est un vice.
What do we think of proverbs?	Que les proverbes sont généralement vrais.
What are generally true?	Les proverbes.

---

* These are intended to accustom the scholar to speak French, and to understand the language when it is spoken to him. The questions have been so calculated as to be readily answered in French, either verbally or in writing, by any one who has studied diligently the preceding text; and the answers should therefore be covered during the recitation.

** We shall put our questions in French whenever we can compose them of expressions and interrogative forms that are known.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Alexis était jeune.	Alexis was young.
Alexis était bon.	Alexis was good.
Alexis avait un défaut.	Alexis had a fault.
Alexis avait un vice.	Alexis had a vice.
Alexis avait tous les vices.	Alexis had all the vices.
Ce garçon est jeune.	That boy is young.
Ce garçon est bon.	That boy is good.
Ce garçon est assez bon.	That boy is pretty good.
Ce garçon a un défaut.	That boy has a fault.
Ce jeune garçon a un défaut.	That young boy has a fault.
La paresse est un défaut.	Laziness is a fault.
La paresse est un vice.	Laziness is a vice.
La paresse donne naissance à tous les vices.	Laziness gives birth to every vice.
Vous savez la première leçon.	You know the first lesson.
Savez-vous la première leçon?	Do you know the first lesson?
Combien de leçons savez-vous?	How many lessons do you know?
Combien de proverbes savez-vous?	How many proverbs do you know?
Nous pensons que le proverbe est vrai.	We think that the proverb is true.
Nous pensons que les proverbes sont vrais.	We think that proverbs are true.
Nous pensons que la paresse est un vice.	We think that laziness is a vice.
Nous pensons que vous savez la première leçon.	We think that you know the first lesson.

We here conclude that part of our lesson which is merely practical. Those persons who are impatient to understand and speak as speedily as possible will find it sufficient; and we would advise them to postpone the perusal of the second division of each lesson until they have gone through all the practical exercises contained in this volume. Our second division is especially dedicated to those who are desirous of obtaining an accurate knowledge of the principles of the language.

---

* No new word being introduced in any of these phrases, they can and should be answered without referring to the opposite column.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

PREMIÈRE is the feminine form of the adjective* *premier*, first. The principal derivatives of this word are, *primaire*, primary; *primitif*, primitive; *primo*, firstly.

1. **Adjectives as well as substantives are of two genders: the masculine and the feminine.

2. Adjectives generally form their feminine by the addition of *e* mute.

3. In forming the feminine of adjectives ending in *er*, by the addition of *e*, the preceding *e* takes the grave accent (`).

LEÇON is feminine; although it should be masculine, according to analogy, as will be hereafter explained (14**).

4. LE *jeune Alexis*—LA *paresse*—LES *proverbes*. The French article varies in gender and number.

5. **Le** is masculine and singular. **La** is feminine and singular. **Les** is plural and of both genders.

JEUNE, from the Latin *juvenis*, as the derivative *juvénile*, young, clearly shows, is an adjective of both genders.

6. Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders.

ÉTAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood of the verb *être*, to be, which is irregular, but not in this tense.

7. **Un** and its feminine **une** signify *a*, *an*, and *one*. The principal derivatives of *un* are, *unité*, unity; *unir*, to unite; *uniforme*, uniform; *unanimité*, unanimity, etc.

ASSEZ, means also sometimes, *tolerably*.

BON comes from the Latin *bonus*, good. The feminine of *bon* is *bonne*.

---

* In our grammatical explanations we take it for granted that our readers have already some notions of general grammar, and we shall therefore omit the definition of all the terms commonly used. Those who learn a foreign language probably know their own; if they do not, it will become the task of their master to supply the deficiency.

** Every observation of importance and every rule bears a number, by means of which we refer to it.

GARÇON is masculine.

8. All the names of males are masculine, whatever may be their termination; and all the names of females are feminine.

9. Qui is a relative pronoun generally corresponding to the English words *who, whom, which, that,* and sometimes *what.* It is also used as an absolute pronoun, particularly in interrogations, as, "*Qui avait un défaut?* Who had a fault? *Qui aimez-vous?* Whom do you love." In this case it only refers to persons.

N'AVAIT stands for *ne avait.*

10. Ne is a particle used in almost all negative phrases, either alone or joined to some word which in English would be negative by itself, as, *ne... pas, ne... point,* not; *ne... rien,* nothing; *ne... jamais,* never; *ne... que,* but.

11. When **ne** precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel **e** is suppressed and an apostrophe substituted for it. The same rule is applicable to the monosyllables **je**, I; **me**, me; **te**, thee; **se**, one's self; **que**, **ce**, **le**, **de**, which will be successively seen and explained. **La** likewise loses its vowel in the same case.

AVAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir,* which is irregular. Our text containing all the forms of the two auxiliaries *être* and *avoir,* no explanation of their irregularity is necessary at present.

QU'UN stands for *que un.* See 11.

QUE has a great variety of meanings. When preceded by the negative particle *ne,* it corresponds to the English word *but* in its restrictive sense of *only, save,* or *except.*

SEUL comes from the Latin *solus,* alone.

DÉFAUT, formerly spelled *défault,* is of the masculine gender. *Faute,* fault, is feminine.

12. All the substantives in the French language are either masculine or feminine. There is no neuter gender.

13. The gender of substantives is determined either by the sex (8) or by the termination.

14. Substantives ending in any other termination than *e* mute are generally masculine. The exceptions are numerous, and will be pointed out.

PARESSE is of the feminine gender.

15. Substantives ending in *e* mute are generally feminine.

MAIS is a conjunction.

COMBIEN corresponds to *how, how much,* and *how many.*

16. De is one of the most important among the French prepositions. It generally corresponds to *of* and *from* in English; but besides it is often rendered by *to, with, by, on, in,* or by the sign of the possessive case (*'s*).

FOIS is feminine, and therefore is an exception (14). It is either singular or plural, without any alteration in its spelling.

17. Substantives ending in **s** do not change their termination in the plural.

N'A stands for *ne a* (11).

A is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir,* to have, which is irregular. See *avait.*

18. On is an indefinite pronoun, which generally corresponds to the English word *one;* sometimes to *people* or *they,* as, "*On dit,* People say, or They say;" and moreover is often rendered in English by a different construction, as will be seen hereafter.

The *t* between *a* and *on* is merely euphonic, to avoid the hiatus.

PAS, from the Latin *passus,* step, acquires a negative meaning only when preceded by NE, in which case the two words signify *not* (10).

DIT is the past participle of the irregular verb DIRE, to say, to tell.

QUE, when used as a conjunction, corresponds to the English word *that.*

19. Ce is sometimes a demonstrative pronoun, and sometimes a demonstrative adjective. It is only as an adjective that we are to consider it here. **Ce** signifies *this* and *that.* It is masculine and singular. It always precedes a substantive. It is placed before words beginning with a consonant. Before a vowel it becomes **cet.** The feminine is **cette.** The plural of both genders is **ces,** *these* and *those.*

VICE is masculine, though, from its termination, it should be feminine, according to the general rule (15).

20. Substantives ending in **ice** are masculine. They are for the most part the same in both languages, as, *office, service, sacrifice, édifice,* etc.

21. The exceptions to this rule, or rather the words which, according to analogy, remain feminine, are, *avarice ; cicatrice,* scar ; *épice,* spice ; *immondice,* filth ; *justice ; injustice ; lice,* lists ; *malice ; matrice ; milice,* militia ; *notice ; police ; prémices ; varice,* varix.

Donne is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb donner, to give.

22. The third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **e**.

Naissance comes from the verb *naître,* to be born. The principal derivatives of this word are *Natif,* native ; *nativité,* nativity, etc.

23. The termination **ance** generally makes a substantive of a verb, and about 80 of the words in which it is found are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, as *alliance* from *allier,* to ally ; *persévérance* from *persévérer,* to persevere ; *assurance* from *assurer,* to assure ; *assistance* from *assister,* to assist, etc.

24. **A**, is, like *de,* one of the most important French prepositions. It corresponds generally to the English prepositions *to* and *at ;* and moreover it is often rendered by *in, on, by, with, for,* and by the sign of the possessive case (*'s*). As a preposition, **à** is distinguished from **a**, the verb *has,* by a grave accent (`), but without any difference in the sound of the vowel.

Tous is the irregular plural of the adjective tout. The feminine *toute* is regularly formed (2). *Tout* corresponds to *all, whole, every, each,* and *any.* It is also used as a substantive, for *whole,* and as an adverb for *wholly, quite.*

Autres is the plural of *autre,* from the Latin *alter. Autre* is of both genders (6).

25. The plural of adjectives, like that of substantives, is regularly formed by adding **s** to the singular.

C'est stands for *ce est* (11).

26. **Ce**, as a pronoun, generally corresponds to *it.* It is followed by the verb *être* or by a relative pronoun. Though the neuter gender is not acknowledged by French grammarians, and indeed does not exist in substantives, this pronoun presents the

characteristics of neutrality. When we say, "*C'est un homme,* It is a man; *C'est une femme,* It is a woman," CE is no more masculine in the first case and feminine in the second, than IT is in English. **Ce** may also be rendered by *this, that, those, he, she,* and *they,* as will be seen later.

EST is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être.*

PROVERBE, VERBE, and ADVERBE, which ought to be feminine according to their termination (15), are of the masculine gender.

VOUS is invariable like the English pronoun *you,* whether it is a subject, an object, or regimen.

LE, in the phrase "*Vous* LE *savez,*" ceases to be called an article, it becomes a personal pronoun. It is the same with *la* and *les.*

27. Le, la, les, which are used as articles before substantives (4, 5), become pronouns before verbs. When pronouns, **le** usually corresponds to *him* or *it;* **la** to *her* or *it;* and **les** to *them.*

SAVEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *savoir,* to know, which is an irregular verb.

Though *savoir* is irregular, we may for the present avail ourselves of the example in *savez* to observe that, in the greater part of the French verbs, the second person plural of the present tense is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive mood into *ez.*

NOUS corresponds to *we* and *us.* It is invariable, whether used as a subject, an object, or a regimen.

PENSONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *penser,* to think.

28. The first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ons.**

PROVERBES is the plural of *proverbe.*

29. The plural of substantives is regularly formed by adding **s** to the singular.

SONT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être.*

GÉNÉRALEMENT comes from *général.*

30. There are 250 adjectives ending in **al** which are the

same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, as *général, total, natal, verbal, proverbial,* etc.

31. A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives, by the addition of the termination **ment**, which corresponds to the English termination *ly*, as in *généralement,* generally; *totalement,* totally; *verbalement,* verbally; *proverbialement,* proverbially, etc.

32. This termination **ment** is added to the feminine form, unless the adjective ends with a vowel, as *vrai,* in which case *ment* is added to the masculine termination, as, *vraiment.*

VRAIS is the plural of *vrai* (25).

SYNTAX.

Première leçon.—Les proverbes sont vrais.

Première is feminine because *leçon* is feminine. *Vrais* is plural because *proverbes* is plural.

33. The adjective always agrees in gender and number with the substantive.

Le *jeune Alexis*—**La** *paresse*—**Les** *autres.*

34. The article likewise agrees in gender and number with the substantive.

In English, in the first of the foregoing examples, the article might be suppressed, and in the second it should be suppressed.

35. In French, the substantive, whether used in a definite or an indefinite sense, is generally preceded by the article, unless there be some other determinative word annexed to it, such as *un* or *ce,* as, "*Un garçon, Ce vice.*"

Un **assez** *bon garçon.*

In English, the adverb *enough* usually follows the adjective, the adverb, or the substantive which it modifies, as, "Good enough, Well enough, We have time enough."

36. The adverb **assez**, literally corresponding to *enough,* and sometimes rendered by *tolerably, pretty,* and *rather,* precedes the adjective, the adverb, or the substantive which it modifies.

Un garçon **qui** *avait, etc.*

37.—§ 1. **Qui**, when it is relative, that is, when it has an antecedent, may be a subject or an indirect regimen. When it is a subject, it may refer to persons or to things; as, "*Un garçon qui,* A boy who; *La paresse qui,* The laziness which." But when it is an indirect regimen, preceded by a preposition, it refers only to persons.

§ 2. A relative pronoun always takes the gender, number, and person of the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it accordingly.

Alexis **n'***avait* **qu'***un défaut.*
Alexis **n'***avait* **pas** *un défaut.*

38. In restrictive or negative sentences, the word **ne** usually precedes the verb, and the second part of the negation follows it.

Combien **de** *fois.*

39. Adverbs of quantity require the preposition **de**, when placed before a substantive.

A-t-on?

40. The interrogative construction, when the subject is a pronoun, is formed by placing the subject after the verb. We should accordingly translate "Do you know," by "*Savez-vous,*" and "Do we think," by "*Pensons-nous.*" The verb and pronoun in this case are joined by a hyphen.

41. It has been seen already, that the **t** in *a-t-on* is merely euphonic; it is introduced when the verb in the third person singular ends with a vowel.

N'a-t-on pas.

42. This is a model of the combined form, interrogative and negative, when the subject is a pronoun: 1st. The negative *ne.* 2d. The verb. 3d. The pronoun. 4th. The second part of the negative. We should, according to this model, translate "Was he not?" by "*N'était-il pas?*" "Don't you know?" by "*Ne savez-vous pas?*"

Vous **le** *savez.*

43. The personal pronoun precedes the verb, not only when it is the subject, as *vous,* but also when it is its regimen, whether direct, as *le,* or indirect.

LEXICOLOGY.

Substantives ending with **ice,** are alike in both languages. Ex. *Vice.* See Obs. 20.

About 80 words ending with **ance,** are alike in both languages. Ex. *Alliance.* See Obs. 23.

About 250 words ending with **al,** are alike in both languages. Ex. *Général.* See Obs. 30.

A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives by the addition of **ment** or **ement,** which corresponds to the English ending *ly.* Ex. *Généralement,* generally. See Obs. 31 and 32.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Bonbon,	Bonbon, sweetmeat.	*Pensif,*	Pensive.
Bonté,	Goodness.	*Solitaire,*	Solitary.
Dictionnaire,	Dictionary	*Solitude,*	Solitude.
Electeur,	Elector.	*Surtout,*	Overall.
Généralité,	Generality.	*Totalité,*	Totality.
Généreux,	Generous.	*Unanime,*	Unanimous.
Lecteur,	Reader.	*Uniformité,*	Uniformity.
Lecture,	Reading.	*Union,*	Union.
Naïf,	Ingenuous.	*Unique,*	Unique.
Naïveté,	Ingenuousness.	*Unisson,*	Unison.
Nation,	Nation.	*Universel*	Universal.
Nature,	Nature.	*Université,*	University.
Naturel,	Natural.	*Vérité,*	Truth.
Pardon,	Pardon.	*Vicieux,*	Vicious.

---

* Under this head will be found such new and useful expressions as, by their analogy with those of the text, or their resemblance to the English, can be easily learned.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Form the feminine of the following adjectives, according to these models: *Première—Jeune.* See Obs. Nos. 2 and 6.—*Electoral—Unique—Seul—Solitaire—Natal—National.*

2. Translate the following, according to these models: LE *jeune Alexis*—LA *paresse*—LES *proverbes.* See Obs. Nos. 5 and 34.—The lesson—The lessons—The elections—The boy—The solitude—The vice—The vices—The birth.

3. Models: UN *garçon*—UNE *leçon.* See Obs. No. 7.—A vice—A birth—A verb—An adverb—One proverb.

4. Models: *Un garçon* QUI *avait*—*Une leçon* QUI *était.* See Obs. No. 9, and Syntax, No. 37.—The lesson which—The elections that—The general who.

5. Models: CE *vice*—CET *autre*—CETTE *leçon.* See Obs. No. 19.—This boy—This adverb—That fault.

6. Model: *Vice.* See Obs. No. 20.—This service—This sacrifice—An office—An edifice—The caprice—The precipice.

7. Model: *Donne,* from *donner.* See Obs. No. 22.—One thinks.

8. Form the plural of the following adjectives, according to this model: *Autres.* See Obs. No. 25.—*Seul—Solitaire.*

9. Translate according to this model: *C'est un proverbe.* See Obs. No. 26.—It is a lesson—It is an election—It is good—It is a boy—It is a fault.

10. Model: *Vous* LE *savez.* See Obs. No. 27, and Syntax, No. 43.—You give it—You think it—You give her—You give them.

11. Model: *Nous pensons.* See Obs. No. 28.—We give.

12. Form the plural of the following substantives, according to this model: *Proverbes.* See Obs. No. 29.—*Leçon—Election—Garçon—Défaut—Vice.*

---

* No dictionary is required for these studies, because all the words introduced have been given in the text, or in the course of our explanations, or under the head of Lexicology, among the additional words. See page 11. The student should also abstain from using the key to these exercises, until he has written his own translation.

13. Form adverbs from the following adjectives, according to this model: *Généralement,* from *général.* See Obs. Nos. 31, 32.—*Seul—Autre—Premier—Vrai—Total—Verbal—Proverbial—Final—Moral.*

14. Translate according to these models: *Première leçon—Les proverbes sont vrais.* See Syntax, No. 33.—A single lesson—The good boys—The young boys.

15. Models: La *paresse,* Laziness—Les *proverbes,* Proverbs. See Syntax, No. 35.—The boys are in solitude—Vice is fatal.

16. Model: *Un* assez *bon garçon.* Syntax, No. 36.—Young enough.

17. Model: *Alexis* n'*avait* pas *un défaut.* Syntax, No. 38.—You do not know—We do not think—One was not—One had not—We do not give.

18. Model: *Combien* de *fois.* Syntax, No. 39.—How many lessons—Verbs enough—Boys enough.

19. Model: *A-t-on?* Syntax, No. 40.—Do you know?—Do we think?—Do you give?

20. Model: *N'a-t-on pas?* Syntax, No. 42.—Do you not know?—Do we not think?—Do you not give?

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. The first fault gives birth to all others—5, 33, 34.**
2. You know a single lesson—2, 7, 33.
3. Alexis had a vice—7, 20.
4. You know this lesson, which is the first—19, 37.
5. Alexis, who was good, had but a single fault—37, 11, 38.
6. That fault, which was fatal, was laziness—37, 35.
7. You know that this sacrifice is good—20.
8. All these edifices are uniform—20, 19, 33.
9. Alexis thinks that proverbs are not true—22, 35, 38, 33.
10. It is Alexis who thinks that laziness is a fault—26, 37, 22.

---

* These sentences ought to be prepared, at home, and written down carefully in a book.

** The figures after each phrase refer to the rules contained in the *Second Division.* See pages 4, 5, 6, &c.

11. It is a lesson that we give—26, 28.
12. We give you a lesson—28, 43.
13. You give us a lesson—43.
14. To whom does one give that lesson?—37, 40, **41.**
15. One gives it to those young boys—27, 43.
16. That boy is young enough—36.
17. Laziness was not the fault of Alexis—38.
18. We do not give a single lesson—38.
19. How many proverbs do you know?—39.
20. Do you not know that laziness is a vice?—42.
21. Do you not think that you know the first lesson?—**42.**

SECOND LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Deuxième leçon.
Second

Le père d'Alexis, homme intelligent et
father of man intelligent and

actif, exerçait la profession de menui-
active, exercised profession joiner

sier. On le voyait presque toujours à
him saw almost always at

son établi, l'œil animé, les manches
his bench the eye animated sleeves

retroussées jusqu'au coude, et la scie ou
tucked up until to the elbow saw or

le rabot à la main.
plane hand.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The father of Alexis, an intelligent and active man, was a joiner. He was almost always to be seen at his bench, with his eye bright, his sleeves tucked up to his elbows, and with a saw or a plane in his hand.

---

* At the beginning of each new lesson, the student should rehearse the text and literal translation of all previous ones, so as to be sure of having fully mastered every word that has preceded. The best mode of effecting this would seem to be, for the teacher to read aloud, in small fragments, both the English and the French, making the pupil translate them.

** The directions given in note * on page 1, are so important that they would be here again earnestly recommended, as never to be omitted.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la deuxième leçon.
Qui était un homme intelligent et actif?	Le père d'Alexis.
What sort of a man was the father of Alexis?	Un homme intelligent et actif.
Qui exerçait la profession de menuisier?	Le père d'Alexis.
What was his trade?	La profession de menuisier.
What did the father of Alexis do?	Le père d'Alexis exerçait la profession de menuisier.
When was he to be seen at his bench?	Presque toujours.
Where was he to be seen?	A son établi.
How was his eye?	Animé.
How were his sleeves?	Retroussées jusqu'au coude.
What had he almost always in his hand?	La scie ou le rabot.
What was animated?	Son œil.
What were tucked up?	Ses manches.
Qui voyait-on presque toujours à son établi?	Le menuisier—*or*, Le père d'Alexis.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Le père était actif.	The father was active.
Le garçon était intelligent.	The boy was intelligent.
Le père était un menuisier.	The father was a joiner.
Le père était toujours à son établi.	The father was always at his bench.
Le garçon n'était pas actif.	The boy was not active.
Le père avait l'œil animé.	The father had a bright eye.
Le menuisier avait les manches retroussées.	The joiner had his sleeves tucked up.

---

* See notes at the bottom of pp. 2 and 3. It will be well to refer to all the notes of the first lesson, until a familiarity with the system shall have rendered such aid unnecessary.

Le garçon avait une scie à la main.	The boy had a saw in his hand.
Le père avait un rabot à la main.	The father had a plane in his hand.
Le père voyait son garçon.	The father saw his boy.
Le garçon ne voyait pas son père.	The boy did not see his father.
Le menuisier est à son établi.	The joiner is at his bench.
Le menuisier n'est pas à son établi.	The joiner is not at his bench.
Le père donne une leçon à son garçon.	The father gives a lesson to his boy.
Le père donnait une leçon à son garçon.	The father gave a lesson to his boy.
Son œil est animé.	His eye is bright.
Combien de leçons savez-vous?	How many lessons do you know?
Nous savons la première leçon.	We know the first lesson.
Ne savez-vous que la première?	Do you know but the first?
Nous savons la deuxième leçon.	We know the second lesson.

Once more, we recommend the learner who is anxious to speak and understand as speedily as possible, to devote all his exertions to the study of this first division of each lesson, and to pass over the theoretical part of it.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender is *père?**—8.**

Why do we say "D'*Alexis*," and not "DE *Alexis?*"—11.

Of what gender is *homme?*—8.

---

* The questions here introduced are confined to such things as have already been explained in our previous instructions. Their principal object is to furnish an opportunity of seeing whether the student has well understood all the remarks that have been made.

** The figures refer to the observations in second division of each lesson. See pp. 4, 5, 6, &c.

Of what gender is *menuisier?*—8, 14.
Of what gender is *établi?*—14.
Of what gender is *œil?*—14.
Why do we say "L'*œil*," and not "LE *œil?*"—11.
Of what gender is *manche?*—15.
Why is there an *s* added to the word *manche?*—29.
Of what gender is *scie?*—15.
Of what gender is *rabot?*—14.

DEUXIÈME comes from *deux*, two, from the Latin *Duo*.

44. The termination **ième** is added to the cardinal numbers, to form the ordinal numbers.

PÈRE comes from the Latin *pater*, father, as can be seen from the derivatives *paternel*, paternal, fatherly; *paternité*, paternity.

D'ALEXIS stands for *de Alexis* (11).

HOMME comes from the Latin *homo*, man, as can be seen from the derivative *homicide*.

INTELLIGENT is alike in French and English.

45. The termination **ent** is found in adjectives and substantives, about 130 of which are the same in both languages: as, *intelligent*, *diligent*, *prudent*, *accent*, *accident*, etc.

ET comes from the Latin *et*, and.

ACTIF is an adjective, derived from the verb *Agir*, to act.

46. The termination **if** is proper to adjectives, 229 of which end in *ive* in English, without any other difference, as: *persuasif*, persuasive; *décisif*, decisive; *pensif*, pensive; *corrosif*, corrosive; *passif*, passive, etc.

EXERÇAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood of the verb *exercer*, to exercise.

47. The third person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in the infinitive mood in **er** is formed by changing this termination into **ait**.

48. Verbs ending in the infinitive mood in **cer**, as *exercer*, take a cedilla under the *c* (ç) before the vowels *a* and *o*, in order that the *c* may preserve the sound of *s*; otherwise it should be pronounced as *k*.

PROFESSION is feminine; it comes from the verb *professer*, to profess, which has also given the word *professeur*, professor.

49. Substantives ending in **ion** are very numerous. About 1,100 of them are the same in both languages, as *profession*, *action*, *union*, *ambition*, *conversation*, etc.

50. Substantives ending in **sion**, as *profession*, are feminine.

MENUISIER is of the masculine gender (8).

VOYAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *voir*, to see, which comes from the Latin *videre*, to see.

PRESQUE is formed of *près*, near, and *que*.

TOUJOURS is formed of *tous*, all, and *jours*, the plural of *jour*, day. The principal derivatives of *jour* are *journal*, journal; *journaliste*, journalist; *journellement*, daily; *ajourner*, to adjourn; *aujourd'hui*, to-day; *bonjour*, good day.

51. **Son**, from the Latin *suus*, corresponds to *his*, *her*, *its*, and *one's*. It is masculine and singular. Its feminine is **sa**, and the plural **ses**.

ÉTABLI is of the masculine gender (14).

L'ŒIL stands for *le œil* (11).

ANIMÉ, used here as an adjective, is the past participle of the verb *animer*, to animate.

52. The past participle of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **é**.

MANCHE, from the Latin *manica*, sleeve, is of the feminine gender. The principal derivatives of *manche* are, *manchon*, muff; and *manchette*, ruffle.

The word MANCHE, as will be seen later, signifies also *handle*, coming from the Latin *manus*, hand, in which case it is masculine.

RETROUSSÉ is the past participle of the verb *retrousser*, to tuck up (52).

RETROUSSÉES is the feminine and plural form of *retroussé*.

53. Participles form their feminine and plural in the same manner as adjectives (2, 25).

JUSQU'AU stands for *jusque au*.

54. **Jusque** comes from the Latin *usque*, until, so far as. It does not refer merely to time, as *till* or *until* in English, but de-

notes distance, and often corresponds to *as far as*, *to*, *unto*, *up to*, *down to*, and *even*. The final *e* of *jusque* is cut off before the words *à*, *au*, *aux* (plural of *au*), and *ici*, here.

Au stands for *à le*.

55. The two words **a le** (to the) are always contracted into **au**, before a word beginning with a consonant. But when the next word begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, they remain separate, and the *e* of *le* is cut off (11), as, "*à l'établi*, to the bench; *à l'homme*, to the man."

Coude is masculine notwithstanding its feminine termination (15).

Ou comes from the Italian or the Spanish *o*, or. It corresponds to *either* and *or*.

Rabot is masculine (14).

Main comes from the Latin *manus*, hand. It is feminine notwithstanding its masculine termination.

The genders are the most puzzling difficulty to an English learner, and as this arises principally from the number of the exceptions, care should be taken to become familiarized with them. It would be proper, we think, to have a copy-book with each page divided into two columns, and to transcribe every exception as soon as it occurs. The following may serve as a model.

Words that are masculine, though having a feminine termination.	Words that are feminine though having a masculine termination.
The names of males, such as *père*, *homme*.	The names of females.
Nouns ending in *ice*, as *vice*.	Nouns ending in *sion*, as *profession*.
Coude.	*Leçon*.
Manche (handle).	*Fois*.
Verbe, *adverbe*, *proverbe*.	*Main*.

The whole text of our lesson comprises all the exceptions; so that when the student has gone through it, his list will be complete.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say "LE *père*," and not "LA *père*," or "LES *père?*"—34.*

Why do we say "LA *profession*," and not "LE *profession?*"—34, 50.

Why is LE before the verb, in the phrase "*On* LE *voyait?*"—43.

Why do we say "LES *manches*," and not "LA *manches?*"—34.

Le *père* **d'***Alexis.*

This can be rendered in English by, "The father of Alexis," or, "Alexis's father."

56. There is no such thing in French as the possessive case. When it occurs in English, it should be rendered according to the above model.

Le père d'Alexis, **homme actif,** *exerçait,* etc.

The English construction would require the article *a* before *man.*

57. In incidental clauses, like the above, where *homme actif* is a sort of parenthesis, the word *un* or *une* is very often omitted.

Homme intelligent et actif.

58. The place of the adjective in French can hardly be subjected to rules. It sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the substantive, without any precise reason; and often according to the taste or caprice of the speaker. Practice and observation are the best guides in this case. We shall only state, as a general remark, that when two or more adjectives belong to one substantive, it is surer to place them after it.

---

* See notes at the bottom of page 17.

59. We can say in English, "An intelligent, active man," or, "An intelligent AND active man." In French, the conjunction *et* must not be suppressed.

La profession de menuisier.
The profession of **a** joiner.

60. The article **a** or **an** is not expressed before a substantive which is used adjectively, that is, which qualifies either the subject or the regimen of a verb.

We should therefore render "He is **a** joiner," by "*Il est menuisier,*" because *menuisier* qualifies *il,* and we should translate "**A** joiner has **a** plane," by "**Un** *menuisier a* **un** *rabot,*" because neither *menuisier* nor *rabot* qualifies any other word—the one being the subject, and the other the regimen of the verb *a.*

On *le voyait.*
One saw him.
He was seen.

61. The indefinite pronoun **on** is much more frequently used in French than the word *one* is in English. It often corresponds to the passive form (18).

L'*œil animé.—Le rabot à* **la** *main.*
HIS eye animated.—A plane in HIS hand.

62. The article **le, la, les,** is used instead of a possessive adjective, before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is.

L'œil **animé**.—*Les manches* **retroussées.**

63. When the past participle is used as an adjective, it follows the rule of the adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the substantive.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 130 words ending with **ent** are alike in both languages. Ex. *Intelligent.* See Obs. 45.

229 adjectives ending with **ive** in English, become French by changing *ive* into *if.* Ex. Active, *actif.* See Obs. 46.

About 1,100 substantives ending with **ion** are alike in both languages. Ex. *Profession.* See Obs. 49.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Acte,	Act.	*Odieux,*	Odious.
Acteur,	Actor.	*Pardonner,*	To pardon.
Activité,	Activity.	*Patrie,*	Fatherland.
Actuel,	Actual.	*Patriote,*	Patriot.
Agent,	Agent.	*Prévoir,*	To foresee.
Agilité,	Agility.	*Prévoyance,*	Foresight.
Agiter,	To agitate.	*Raboter,*	To plane.
Après,	After.	*Rétablir,*	To re-establish.
Diminuer,	To diminish.	*Revoir,*	To see again.
Double,	Double.	*Revue,*	Review.
Doubler,	To double.	*Scier,*	To saw.
Etablir,	To establish.	*Table,*	Table.
Exact,	Exact.	*Tableau,*	Picture.
Gentilhomme,	Gentleman.	*Vis-à-vis,*	Opposite.
Humain,	Humane.	*Visible,*	Visible.
Humanité,	Humanity.	*Visite,*	Visit.
Intellectuel,	Intellectual.	*Visiter,*	To visit.
Intelligence,	Intelligence.	*Voici,*	Behold, here is, *or* here are.
Manier,	To handle.		
Manuel,	Handbook.	*Voilà,*	Behold, there is, *or* there are.
Moins,	Less.		

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Translate the following adjectives into French. See Obs. 46.—Adoptive—Affirmative—Attentive—Collective—Communicative—Convulsive—Corrosive—Descriptive—Destructive—Digestive—Excessive—Fugitive—Imitative—Pensive.

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

2. Model: *Le père* EXERÇAIT. See Obs. 47.—The actor animated—The man gave—The joiner planed—The boy sawed.

3. Model: LA *profession.* See Obs. 50.—The collision—The conclusion—The decision—The profusion—The vision—The convulsion—The pension—The version—The compassion—The discussion—The permission—The possession.

4. Model: SON *établi.* See Obs. 51.—His agent—Its handle—One's journal—Her boy.

5. Model: *Animé.* See Obs. 52.—Handled—Planed—Sawn—Visited—Adjourned—Agitated—Given—Diminished.

6. Model: *Retroussées.* Give the feminine and plural forms to the above participles. See Obs. 53.

7. Model: AU *coude,* for *à le coude.* See Obs. 55.—To the vice—To the boy—To the gentleman—To the journal—To the joiner—To the father.

8. Model: LE *père* D'*Alexis,* for "Alexis's father." Syntax 56.—The gentleman's agent—The animal's agility—The elector's activity—The father's action—The actor's animation.

9. Model: *La profession de menuisier.* Syntax 60.—Delatour is a joiner—This joiner is an elector—The elector was a patriot—The actor is a father.

10. Model: ON *le voyait,* for "He was seen." Syntax 61.—He was agitated—He was animated—He is given—It is diminished—He is exercised—We are exercised—It was sawn—You were visited.

11. Model: *Le rabot à* LA *main,* for "The plane in HIS hand." Syntax 62.—We give our hand—Alexis gives his hand.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. The joiner has two boys—44.
2. You know that Delatour is a good father—60.
3. The father is prudent and attentive—45, 46.
4. The father is persuasive and indulgent—45, 46.
5. We exercise the profession of his father—28, 48.

---

* See note * on page 13.

6. We exercise another profession—28, 48.
7. Passion is not always a vice—35, 38.
8. The professor gives us the permission—22, 43, 50.
9. The procession was seen—50, 61.
10. His eye is animated—51.
11. His plane was good—51.
12. The lesson is given—53, 63.
13. The actor had exercised his eye—52.
14. We give a saw to the boy—28, 55.
15. We give a plane to the joiner—55.
16. Do you know Delatour's profession?—56.
17. Alexis's sleeve was tucked up—56.
18. Laziness, an odious vice, was his only fault—57.
19. Delatour, a good joiner, had but one fault—57.
20. His agent is an impertinent, brutal man—45, 30, 59.
21. It is a true, expressive, good proverb—58, 59, 46.
22. The joiner is a good, diligent man—58, 59.
23. His father is an actor—60.
24. You know that Delatour is a joiner—60.
25. A man who is a father is indulgent—60.
26. The joiner was seen at his bench—61.
27. Were the actors seen?—61, 40.
28. You were not visited—61, 38, 43.
29. It has been said that laziness gives birth to all vices—61.
30. A lesson has been given—61, 52.
31. We give you our hand—62.
32. This boy gives us his hand—65.
33. The actor is agitated—63.
34. The two first lessons are given—63.

THIRD LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Troisième leçon.
Third

Il se désolait, parce qu'il ne pouvait
He himself grieved because could

obtenir de son fils qu'il suivît son exemple.
to obtain son should follow (*subj.*) example.

"Quel fainéant!" disait-il. "Où va-t-il?
What drone said Where goes

Que fait-il? A quoi cet idiot passe-t-il
What does what that idiot passes

son temps? Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera
time Is it that will correct

jamais? Comment donc lui faire en-
never How then to him to make to

tendre raison?"
hear reason.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He was grieved, because he could not get his son to follow his example. "What a drone!" said he. "Where does he go? What does he do? How does the idiot spend his time? Will he never mend? How shall I make him listen to reason?"

---

* See first note on page 15. ** See note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la troisième leçon.
Qui se désolait?	Le menuisier—*or*, Le père d'Alexis.
What did the father do?	Il se désolait.
Qu'est-ce qu'il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils?	Qu'il suivît son exemple.
De qui ne pouvait-il l'obtenir?	De son fils.
Why did he grieve?	Parce qu'il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils qu'il suivît son exemple.
Que disait-il?	Quel fainéant!
What was his first question?	Où va-t-il?
What was his second question?	Que fait-il?
What did he call his son?	Cet idiot.
What question did he ask about the idiot's way of spending his time?	A quoi cet idiot passe-t-il son temps?
What doubt did he express about the reformation of his son?	Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera jamais?
Qu'est-ce que son fils n'entendait pas?	Il n'entendait pas raison.
What did the father want to do?	Lui faire entendre raison.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Le fainéant désolait son père.	The drone grieved his father.
Comment savez-vous qu'il désolait son père.	How do you know that he grieved his father?
Parce que son père le disait.	Because his father said so.
Son père pouvait-il lui faire entendre raison?	Could his father make him listen to reason?
Nous ne le pensons pas.	We do not think he could.
Il ne se corrigera jamais, disait-il.	He will never mend, said he.
Nous pensons qu'il se corrigera.	We think that he will mend.
Est-il intelligent?	Is he intelligent?
Il n'est pas intelligent.	He is not intelligent.

---

* See note on page 2. ** See note on page 3.

Il est idiot.	He is an idiot.
Où va le menuisier ?	Where is the joiner going ?
Il va à son établi.	He is going to his bench.
Que fait-il à son établi ?	What is he doing at his bench ?
Il retrousse ses manches.	He is tucking up his sleeves.
Il a une scie à la main.	He has a saw in his hand.
Il n'est pas fainéant.	He is not a drone.
Que donne-t-il à son fils ?	What does he give his son ?
Il lui donne l'exemple.	He gives him an example.
Que pensez-vous de cet exemple ?	What do you think of that example ?
Nous pensons qu'il est bon.	We think that it is good.
Combien de fils à cet homme ?	How many sons has that man ?
Il a trois garçons.	He has three boys.
Le premier est un fainéant.	The first is a drone.
Le deuxième est un idiot.	The second is an idiot.
Mais le troisième est intelligent.	But the third is intelligent.
Que savez-vous ?	What do you know ?
Nous savons la troisième leçon.	We know the third lesson.
Mais ce n'est pas assez.	But it is not enough.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

What is the radical syllable of the word *troisième ?**—44.
What is the meaning of *trois ?*
What does the termination *ait* denote in *désolait ?*—47.
What is the plural of *fils ?*—17.
Why do we say *qu'il*, and not *que il ?*—11.
Of what gender is *fils ?*—8.
Of what gender is *fainéant ?*—14.
Why is there a *t* in *va-t-il* and *passe-t-il ?*—41.
Why, in *fait-il*, is there no *t* between *fait* and *il ?*—41.
Of what gender is *idiot ?*—14.
Of what gender is *temps ?*—14.

---

* See notes on page 17.

TROISIÈME comes from *trois*, three (44).

64. **Il** is a personal pronoun, corresponding to *he* and *it*. It is masculine and singular, and is always a subject. Its plural is **ils**, corresponding to *they*, and, like the singular, always masculine, and used as a subject.

65. **Se**, from the Latin *se*, is a personal pronoun, of both genders and numbers, corresponding to *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *one's self*, *themselves*, as a direct regimen, thus: "SE *voir*, to see ONE'S SELF; *il* SE *voyait*, he saw HIMSELF." SE corresponds also to *to himself*, *to herself*, etc., as an indirect regimen, thus: "SE *dire*, to say TO ONE'S SELF; *il* SE *disait*, he said TO HIMSELF."

DÉSOLAIT is a form of the verb *désoler* (47), to desolate, which sometimes takes the reflective form (*se désoler*), and signifies *to grieve*, or *to be grieved*.

66. Many verbs, which become neuter or passive in English, remain active in French, with what is called the reflective or pronominal form. "*He grieves*," is rendered by, "*Il* SE *désole*, he grieves himself."

67. **Parce que** is a combination of three words: *par*, by; *ce*, that; *que*, which. When combined as above, it signifies, *because;* but when the three words remain separate, they retain their original meaning, as: "PAR CE QU'*il voyait*, *il pensait que son fils était un fainéant*, BY THAT WHICH he saw, he thought that his son was a drone."

POUVAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *pouvoir*, to be able.

OBTENIR comes from the irregular verb *tenir*, to hold, to keep, from the Latin *tenere*.

68. **Ob** is a Latin preposition, signifying *before* or *against*. In French, it is an inseparable particle, beginning words which are generally the same, or nearly the same in English, as: *obtenir*, to obtain; *obliger*, to oblige; *objecter*, to object; *obstacle*, obstacle. In French as well as in English, **ob** is changed into **oc**, **of**, **op**, according to the consonant which begins the radical word, as: *occasion*, occasion; *occurrence*, occurrence; *offenser*, to offend; *offrir*, to offer; *opposer*, to oppose; *oppresseur*, oppressor.

69. **—ir** is one of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs.

Tenir enters into the formation of quite a number of verbs, the principal of which are: *s'abstenir*, to abstain; *appartenir*, to appertain, to belong; *contenir*, to contain; *détenir*, to detain; *entretenir*, to entertain; *maintenir*, to maintain; *retenir*, to retain; *soutenir*, to sustain; and these in turn give rise to many more derivatives, as abstinence, detention, etc., etc.

Fils comes from the Latin *filius*, son. Its most important derivative is *fille*, daughter, girl.

Suivît is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *suivre*, from the Latin *sequi*, to follow. This verb is irregular, but its irregularity does not extend to the subjunctive mood.

70. The third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ît**.

The most important derivatives of *suivre* are: *suite*, suite, sequel; *poursuite*, pursuit; and *poursuivre*, to pursue.

Exemple comes from the Latin *exemplum*. It is masculine, notwithstanding its termination (15).

71. **Quel**, from the Latin *qualis*, what, is a pronominal adjective, generally corresponding to *what;* sometimes to *which*. Its feminine is **quelle**; its plural masculine **quels**, and its plural feminine **quelles**.

Fainéant is a combination of the two words, *fait*, does, and *néant*, naught or nothing.

Disait is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *dire*, already seen.

Où, from the Latin *ubi*, where, is distinguished from *ou*, the conjunction *or*, by the grave accent placed over the *u*. The accent, however, has no influence on the sound of the word.

Va, from the Latin *vadere*, to go, is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *aller*, to go.

72. **Que**, when used as a pronoun, is either absolute or relative. When absolute, it corresponds to *what*, as in this lesson;

when relative, it signifies *whom*, *which*, or *that*. In both cases it is almost invariably a direct regimen.

FAIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *faire*, to do, to make, to perform, from the Latin *facere*.

Among the numerous derivatives of this verb the principal are: *affaire*, affair, business; *contrefaire*, to counterfeit; *défaire*, to undo; *défaite*, defeat; *faisable*, feasable; *refaire*, to do over again; *satisfaction*, satisfaction; *satisfaire*, to satisfy; *satisfaisant*, satisfactory; *satisfait*, satisfied, etc.

73. Quoi, as well as *que*, may be either absolute or relative. This pronoun refers to things and not to persons. When absolute, it corresponds to *what*, or *what thing*, and is generally governed by a preposition. When a relative, which seldom happens, it signifies *which*, and is always an indirect regimen.

CET has the same meaning as *ce*. See 19.

IDIOT comes from the Greek ἰδιώτης, unskilled.

PASSE is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood (22) of the verb *passer*, to pass.

TEMPS, from the Latin *tempus*, time, has two significations in French, *time* and *weather*.

CORRIGERA is the third person singular of the future tense of the verb *corriger*, to rule.

74. The third person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by adding **a** to this termination.

The Latin word *corrigere*, from which the French *corriger* comes, is formed of the preposition *cum*, with, and the verb *regere*, to rule. Its proper meaning is, *to make even* WITH *the* RULE, *to bring* WITHIN *the* RULE.

75. Co or **con** is an inseparable particle, coming from the Latin preposition *cum*, with. It denotes *association*, *concord*, *gathering*, *putting together*. It begins words which are generally the same, or nearly the same, in English, as: *coalition*, coalition; *coefficient*, coefficient; *concéder*, to concede; *conclusion*, conclusion. In French, as well as in English, **co** or **con** is changed into **col**, **com**, **cor**, according to the letter which begins the

radical word, as: *collatéral*, collateral; *collègue*, colleague; *commission*, commission; *comparer*, to compare; *correct*, correct; *corroder*, to corrode.

76. Jamais comes from the Spanish *jamas*, never. It is generally negative, and consequently generally preceded or followed by NE, as: *Il* NE *se corrigera* JAMAIS; or, JAMAIS *il* NE *se corrigera*. But sometimes, when used without *ne*, it becomes affirmative, and corresponds to *ever*, as: *Oublier pour jamais*, to forget forever.

COMMENT comes from the Latin *quomodo*, how, in what manner.

DONC comes from the Italian *adunque*, then.

77. Lui, from *il*, already seen, is a personal pronoun corresponding to *he*, *him*, sometimes to *it*. It is particularly used as an indirect regimen, and signifies either *to him* or *to her*. In this case it refers to persons only.

FAIRE is an irregular verb already mentioned as the root of numerous derivatives. See *fait* above, on page 31, line 3.

ENTENDRE has three significations in French: *to intend*, *to understand*, and *to hear*.

78. —re is one of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs.

RAISON, from the Latin *ratio*, reason, is feminine.

79. All the substantives ending in **aison** are feminine.

SYNTAX.

In the phrase, "*Il ne pouvait*," what word is understood after *pouvait?*—38.*

Why is the phrase, "*Where does he go*," expressed by "*Où va-t-il?*"—40, 41.

Why do we say, "*Il ne* SE *corrigera*," and not, "*Il ne corrigera* SE?"—43.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Il **ne** *pouvait obtenir.*
Il **ne** *pouvait* **pas** *obtenir.*

80. In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; *pouvoir*, to be able; and *savoir*, to know, especially when these verbs govern an infinitive.

Il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils **qu'il suivît** *son exemple.*

Qu'il suivît is the past tense of the subjunctive mood.

81. The subjunctive mood generally expresses that the action of the subject is *wished*, *wanted*, or *required* by another person.

In the present instance, the father wanted his son to follow his example.

82. The tense of the subjunctive mood is determined by the tense of the preceding verb.

83. The past tense of the subjunctive is employed after the past tenses of the indicative mood.

Quel fainéant!
What **a** drone!

84. In exclamations, the words **a**, **an**, must not be rendered after WHAT.

Que fait-il?

This phrase can be rendered in English by, *What does he do?* or *What is he doing?*

85. The use of the present participle, to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French; nor is there any such word as *do* or *did*, to give greater strength to an affirmation; so that these three modes of expression, *He gives*, *He is giving*, and *He does give*, have but one translation in French: *Il donne.*

Cet idiot *passe-t-***il** *son temps?*

It has been seen (40) that the interrogation, *when the subject is a pronoun*, is formed by placing the subject after the verb.

86. *When the subject is a substantive*, in interrogative phrases, it is generally placed before the verb, and repeated after it in the form of a pronoun.

Est-ce qu'*il se corrigera?*

This is another model of interrogation, not unexampled in English, as the following line in Julius Cæsar shows:

"What *is it that* you would impart to me?"

87. Interrogations, in French, are often formed by placing *est-ce que* before the subject, followed by the verb, as: "*Est-ce que son fils se corrigera?* Will his son mend? *Est-ce que vous savez?* Do you know? *Est-ce que nous pensons?* Do we think?" This form is more familiar than the preceding.

Comment faire?
How to do?
How shall I do?

88. After *comment*, how; *que*, what; *où*, where; *pourquoi*, why, and a few more words used like these in interrogations, the infinitive mood is often substituted for the indicative, when it can be done without rendering the sense obscure. We can express: "What is to be done?" by "*Que faire?*" "Where are we to go?" by "*Où aller?*" "What shall I say?" by "*Que dire?*"

Comment **lui** *faire entendre raison.*

In this phrase, *lui* is the indirect regimen of the verb *faire:* it signifies *to him*, whereas in the English translation, "*How shall I make* HIM *listen to reason?*" HIM is a direct regimen.

89. When the verb *faire* is followed by an infinitive, it requires an indirect regimen if the infinitive has a direct one, as is the case in *entendre raison.*

The regimen of *faire* would be direct, if the following infinitive had no such regimen, as in this example: *Il ne pouvait pas* LE *faire entendre*, he could not make him hear.

The reason of this is, that the verb *faire* so identifies itself with the next verb, that both together are considered as one

verb, which is always active. Now, an active verb cannot have more than one direct regimen; so that if there are two regimens, one of them must of course be indirect.

An English example will make this more evident. *To make see* (in French *faire voir*) is sometimes an equivalent to *to show*. When we say, *Show him*, for *Make* (*us*) *see him*, the pronoun is the direct regimen; but when we say, *Show him a book*, the word *book* is the direct regimen, and *him* the indirect regimen, signifying *to him*.

LEXICOLOGY.

Words beginning with **ob**, **co**, or **con**, are generally much the same in both languages. Ex. *Obstacle*, *coalition*, *conclusion*; *obtenir*, to obtain; *concéder*, to concede. See Obs. 68 and 75.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Affecter,	To affect.	*Profit*,	Profit.
Bienfaiteur,	Benefactor.	*Profiter*,	To profit.
Continent,	Continent.	*Raisonnable*,	Reasonable.
Continuel,	Continual.	*Raisonner*,	To reason.
Continuer,	To continue.	*Régime*,	Regimen.
Difficile,	Difficult.	*Régiment*,	Regiment.
Direct,	Direct.	*Règle*,	Rule.
Diriger,	To direct.	*Régler*,	To regulate.
Effet,	Effect.	*Régner*,	To reign.
Effectuer,	To effect.	*Régulier*,	Regular.
Ensuite,	Afterwards.	*Reine*,	Queen.
Facile,	Easy.	*Roi*,	King.
Faciliter,	To facilitate.	*Royal*,	Royal.
Intempérance,	Intemperance.	*Royaliste*,	Royalist.
Lire,	To read.	*Royaume*,	Kingdom.
Longtemps,	Long time.	*Royauté*,	Royalty.
Maintenant,	Now.	*Suivant*,	Following.
Obstiné,	Obstinate.	*Surpasser*,	To surpass.
Officier,	Officer.	*Tout de suite*,	Immediately.
Parfait,	Perfect.	*Triangle*,	Triangle.
Passable,	Passable.	*Tricolore*,	Tri-color.
Persécuter,	To persecute.	*Trinité*,	Trinity.
Peut-être,	Perhaps.	*Trio*,	Three.

---

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Il se désolait.* See Obs. 64, 65, 47.—He gave himself—It doubled itself—He exercised himself—He forgave himself—He surpassed himself.

2. Translate the following verbs into English, and say in what mood they are. Model: *Obtenir.* See Obs. 69.—*S'abstenir—Appartenir—Contenir—Détenir—Entretenir—Maintenir—Retenir—Soutenir—Tenir—Unir—Réunir—Etablir.*

3. Model: *Qu'il suivît.* See Obs. 70.—That he might pursue—That he might hear.

4. Model: *Quel fainéant?* See Obs. 71.—What father?—What affair?—What continents?—What daughters?

5. Model: QUE *fait-il?* See Obs. 72.—What do you know?—The man whom he saw—The lesson which you know—The time that we pass.

6. Model: *A* QUOI *passe-t-il son temps?* See Obs. 73.—[To] What do you think *of?*—[To] What is that good *for?*—[Of] What does he grieve *at?*

7. Model: *Cet idiot.* See Obs. 19.—This example—That effect—This eye—That office—This officer.

8. Model: *Il corrigera.* See Obs. 74.—He will continue—He will desolate—He will direct—He will exercise—He will facilitate—He will pass—He will persecute—He will profit—He will surpass—He will visit.

9. Model: *Il* NE *se corrigera* JAMAIS. See Obs. 76, 38.—He never had—He never has—He never gives—He never grieved—He never said—He never was—One never is—He never exercised—He never does—We never think—He never could—He never passes—You never know—They are never.

10. Model: *Lui faire.* See Obs. 77.—To appertain to him—To give him—To tell her—To make (to) her—To read to her.

11. Translate the following verbs into English, and say in what mood they are. Model: *Entendre.* See Obs. 78.—*Satisfaire—Dire—Faire—Lire—Poursuivre—Refaire—Suivre.*

12. Model: *Il* NE *pouvait obtenir.* See Syntax, 80.—He could not continue—He could not correct—He could not tell—He could not hear—He could not do—He could not read—He could not maintain—He could not pass—He could not follow.

13. Model: *Quel fainéant!* Syntax, 84.—What an actor!—What an animal!—What a fault!—What an example!—What a daughter!—What a boy!—What a lesson!—What a hand!

14. Model: *Que fait-il?* Syntax, 85.—He is going—We are giving—He was saying—Was he saying?—We are thinking—He is passing—Is he giving?—He is not giving.

15. Model: *Cet idiot passe-t-il son temps?* Syntax, 86.—Had the joiner a good plane?—Has this man another son?—Does that vice give birth to all the others?—Was the father grieved?—How did Delatour exercise his profession?—Was the example good?—Could the boy read?—Are the proverbs true?

16. Model: EST-CE QU'*il se corrigera?*—Syntax, 87.—Had he a son?—Has he a daughter?—Will he correct that boy?—Does he give a lesson?—Was he active?—Is he young?—Do we think?—Could he pass?—Do you know?—Are they?

17. Model: *Comment faire?* Syntax, 88.—What is to be done?—How can one correct him?—What is to be said?—How shall we pass the time?

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. He grieves because his father corrects him—22, 65, 66, 43.
2. That man could not forgive himself *for* his ignorance—80, 65.
3. He said to himself that he was intelligent—65.
4. The father could not *get* [obtain from*] his son *to listen to* [that he should hear] reason—80, 70.

---

* The words in italics are not to be translated, those between brackets [ ] having to be substituted instead, because required by the French construction.

5. By *what* [that which] we give, you know how much he will give—67, 28, 74.

6. By *what* [that which] he had done, one saw *what* [that which] he could do—67.

7. What example will he give to his son?—71, 74, 40.

8. What affair agitates you?—71, 15, 22, 43.

9. You do not know what men the joiner saw—71, 29.

10. You know where he is, or you do not [know it]—38, 43.

11. What could he say to a man whom he did not see—72, 11, 38.

12. What do you think of this [cet] obstacle?—72, 40.

13. The lesson which you know is difficult enough—72, 36.

14. Do you know [to] what this journal is good *for?*—73.

15. The father will never give a good example to his son—76.

16. He will never tuck up his sleeves to the elbow—76.

17. The son will never surpass his father—76.

18. The reason that he gives is not the true *one*—79.

19. The joiner had but one saw, which he could not give [to] his son—38, 72, 11, 80.

20. He was at his bench, and could not hear *what* [that which] his son said to his daughter—80.

21. What an example he gives to his son!—84.

22. Do you know *what* [that which] the joiner is doing?—85.

23. He is making a table—85.

24. He is going *to* read a lesson—85.

25. The professor is giving a lesson to those young boys—85.

26. We do think that the example which we give is good—85.

27. He did say that his son was an idiot—85.

28. Is that man active?—86 or 87.

29. Did his father give him a good example?—86 or 87.

30. Could the father correct his son?—86 or 87.

31. Will that man pass alone?—86 or 87.

32. What are we to think of this vice?—72, 88.

33. How is this interview to be obtained?—88.

34. He could not make him see his fault—89.

35. He is going to make him follow his *own* profession—89.

36. How shall we make him pass?—89.

FOURTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quatrième leçon.
Fourth

Le brave homme, guidé par de fausses
worthy guided by some false

idées de grandeur, avait eu le tort, par-
ideas grandeur had wrong par-

donnable sans doute, de vouloir que son
donable without doubt to will

enfant fût plus que lui, et qu'il eût une
child were more than he had an
should have

éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait
education superior that

reçue lui-même de son père et de sa
received himself his

mère.
mother.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The honest man, guided by false notions of grandeur, had committed the fault, a pardonable one undoubtedly, to determine that his child should be greater than he, and that he should have an education superior to that which he himself had received of his father and mother.

---

* See notes on page 15. ** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

What lesson is this?	C'est la quatrième.
Qui avait eu un tort?	Le brave homme.
Quel brave homme?	Le père d'Alexis—*or*, Le menuisier.
Par quoi était-il guidé?	Par de fausses idées de grandeur.
Quel tort avait-il eu?	Il avait eu le tort de vouloir que son enfant fût plus que lui.
Ce tort est-il pardonnable?	Sans doute.
Qui était son enfant?	Alexis—*or*, Le jeune Alexis.
De qui le brave homme avait-il reçu son éducation?	De son père et de sa mère.
Qu'avait-il reçu de son père et de sa mère?	Son éducation.
Quelle éducation voulait-il donner à son enfant?	Une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait reçue lui-même.
How came he to commit this fault?	Parce qu'il était guidé par de fausses idées de grandeur.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
La mère avait raison.	The mother was right.
Le père avait tort.	The father was wrong.
Le brave homme est guidé par son enfant.	The worthy man is guided by his child.
Alexis est guidé par son père.	Alexis is guided by his father.
Son père lui donne une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il a reçue.	His father gives him an education superior to that which he received.
Il a tort, mais il est pardonnable.	He is wrong, but he is pardonable.
Que pensez-vous de cet homme?	What do you think of this man?
Nous pensons qu'il n'a pas reçu une éducation supérieure.	We think that he has not received a superior education.
Par quoi est-il guidé?	By what is he guided?
Il est guidé par de fausses idées.	He is guided by false notions.
Il est jeune; il se corrigera.	He is young; he will mend.

---

* See notes on page 2. ** See note on page 3.

Il ne se corrigera jamais.	He will never mend.
Son père est un brave homme.	His father is a worthy man.
Sa mère est intelligente.	His mother is intelligent.
Qu'est-ce que son père pense de lui ?	What does his father think of him ?
Il pense que c'est un fainéant.	He thinks that he is a drone.
A-t-il raison ?	Is he right ?
Nous pensons qu'il n'a pas tort.	We think that he is not wrong.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

What is the feminine of *brave ?**—6.
What is the infinitive of *guidé ?*—52.
Of what gender is *idée ?*—15.
Of what gender is *tort ?*—14.
What is the feminine of *pardonnable ?*—6.
Why do we say *qu'il*, instead of *que il ?*—11.
What is the masculine of *supérieure ?*—2.
Of what gender is *mère ?*—8.

QUATRIÈME comes from *quatre*, four (44), from the Latin *quatuor*.

90. When a termination beginning with a vowel, as *ième*, is added to a word ending in **e** mute, as *quatre*, the *e* mute is suppressed.

BRAVE, in this lesson, signifies *worthy*, *good*, or *honest ;* but when this adjective follows the substantive, it has the same meaning as in English, that is, *valiant* or *courageous.*

---

* See notes on page 17.

91. Some French adjectives vary in their meaning, according as they are placed before or after the substantive. The following are those which most frequently occur:

Un bon homme, a simple man.	*Un homme bon*, a kind man.
Un brave homme, an honest man.	*Un homme brave*, a brave man.
Une certaine chose, a certain (particular) thing.	*Une chose certaine*, a certain (undoubted) thing.
Un galant homme, a gentleman.	*Un homme galant*, a man polite to the ladies.
Un grand homme, a great man.	*Un homme grand*, a tall man.
Une grosse femme, a stout woman.	*Une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman.
Un honnête homme, an honest man.	*Un homme honnête*, a civil man.
Un plaisant homme, a ridiculous man.	*Un homme plaisant*, a humorous man.
Un petit homme, a small man, a short man.	*Un homme petit*, a mean fellow.
Les propres termes, the very words.	*Des termes propres*, proper terms, or proper language.
Une sage-femme, a midwife (a sapient woman).	*Une femme sage*, a virtuous woman.

Guidé is the past participle of the verb *guider*, to guide (52), which is derived from the substantive *guide*, guide.

92. Par, from the Greek παρὰ, or the Latin *per*, is one of the most important French prepositions. It generally corresponds to *by;* but sometimes to *through, from, out of, with.* It denotes the means, the agent, the cause or the way through.

93. De, already seen as a preposition (16), is also used as a determinative, either alone or combined with the article *le*, *la*, *les*, and is then called a partitive article, corresponding to the English words *some* and *any.* The two words *de le* are contracted into one word, *du; de les* are contracted into *des;* but the words *de la* remain separate. See 113, 143.

Fausse is the irregular feminine (2) of the adjective *faux.* It comes from the Latin *falsus*, false, as can be seen from the derivatives *falsifier* and *fausser*, to falsify, to warp.

Idée comes from the Greek ἰδέα, image. Its principal derivatives are: *idéal*, ideal; *idéaliser*, to idealize, etc.

GRANDEUR comes from the adjective *grand*, grand, great, large, or tall.

94. The termination **eur**, in abstract substantives, denotes a state or a quality. Most of such substantives are derived from adjectives, as *grandeur* from *grand ; laideur*, ugliness, from *laid*, ugly; *profondeur*, depth, from *profond*, deep ; *longueur*, length, from *long*, long; *hauteur*, height, from *haut*, high.

95. Abstract substantives, ending in **eur**, are feminine.

The exceptions are: *bonheur*, happiness; *malheur*, misfortune; *labeur*, labor.

The principal derivatives of *grand* are, *agrandir*, to aggrandize; *grandiose*, grand; *agrandissement*, aggrandizement; *grandir*, to grow great or large.

EU is the past participle of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, which is irregular.

96. Avait eu—The compound tenses in French are formed in the same manner as in English, by means of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

TORT comes from the adjective *tors*, twisted, crooked, wry, from the Latin *torsus*, twisted.

The principal derivatives of *tors* are: *contorsion*, contortion; *distorsion*, distortion; *extorsion*, extortion; *tordre*, to twist; *tort*, wrong; *tortu*, crooked, etc.

PARDONNABLE has been seen among the derivatives of *donner*.

97. The termination **able** denotes aptness, fitness. It is joined to verbs of which it makes adjectives. It signifies the liability to undergo the action expressed by the verb, as in *pardonnable*, that is, liable, apt, or fit to be pardoned. About 200 adjectives in *able* are the same in both languages, as: *admirable*, *blâmable*, *comparable*, *désirable*, *passable*, *payable*, *variable*. From these adjectives, the corresponding verbs may generally be obtained by changing the termination *able* into that of the infinitive, which, in the great majority of French verbs, is *er*, thus: *admir*ABLE, *admir*ER, to admire; *blâm*ABLE, *blâm*ER, to blame; *compar*ABLE, *compar*ER, to compare.

98. Sans, from the Latin *sine*, is a preposition corresponding to *without*. It is sometimes rendered in English by *but for*, or by the termination *less* · as. *sans doute*, doubtless.

DOUTE comes from the Latin *dubium*, doubt, or *dubitare*, to doubt. It is masculine, notwithstanding its feminine termination. Its principal derivatives are: *douteux*, doubtful; *douter*, to doubt; *indubitable*, indubitable.

VOULOIR, from the Latin *velle*, to will, is an irregular verb (see 117) signifying *to will*, and often corresponding to the English verbs *to wish*, *to want*, *to mean*, *to intend*.

ENFANT, from the Latin *infans*, signifies not only *infant*, but also *child*. It is of both genders. We say, UN *enfant*, a male child; UNE *enfant*, a female child (8).

FÛT is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*, to be, which is irregular.

PLUS, from the Latin *plus*, signifies *more* and *most*. Its principal derivatives are: *plusieurs*, several; *plutôt*, rather; *pluriel*, plural; *surplus*, surplus, etc.

EÛT is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*, which is irregular.

UNE is the feminine of *un* (2, 7). The nasal sound heard in the masculine *un*, does not prevail in the feminine *une*, in which each of the letters *u*, *n*, resumes its usual sound.

ÉDUCATION is feminine.

99. Substantives ending in **tion** are feminine. *Bastion* is the only exception (50).

SUPÉRIEURE is the feminine of the adjective *supérieur* (2). It comes from the Latin *superior*, as can be seen from the derivative *supériorité*, superiority.

CELLE is the feminine of *celui*.

100. Celui, formed of *ce* and *lui*, is a demonstrative pronoun, corresponding, as well as its feminine, **celle**, to *this* and *that*. The plural is **ceux** for the masculine, and **celles** for the feminine, both corresponding to *these* and *those*.

REÇUE is the feminine of *reçu*, the past participle of the irregular verb *recevoir*, to receive.

101. Même is an adjective corresponding to *same*, *self*, *very*, or *self-same*, *very same*. Combined with the personal pronouns, as a sign of identity, it corresponds to *self*, as in *lui-même*, himself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; but it does not follow the possessive adjectives as *self* does in English.

This will be more amply explained hereafter. **Même** is also an adverb, meaning *even*. In this sense it is indeclinable.

SA is the feminine of *son* (51), and, like *son*, corresponds to *his*, *her*, *its*, and *one's*. In this lesson it agrees with *mère*.

MÈRE comes from the Latin *mater*, as can be seen from the derivatives *maternel*, maternal; *maternité*, maternity.

SYNTAX.

Why is "*false notions*" rendered by "FAUSSES *idées*," and not by "FAUX *idées?*"*—33, 15.

Why is the subjunctive employed in the phrase, "*de vouloir que son enfant* FÛT *plus que lui, et qu'il* EÛT?"—81.

Why should we not say "UN *éducation* SUPÉRIEURE?"—33, 99.

De *fausses idées.*

It has been seen (93) that the words *some* and *any* are often rendered in French by *de*, with the article. For instance, we should translate *Some reason*, by *De la raison; Some lessons*, by *Des leçons; Any vices*, by *Des vices.*

102. The use of this partitive article is much more frequent in French than is the use of *some* and *any* in English, and occurs when these words are understood or altogether suppressed, as: *Donner des leçons*, to give lessons; *Donner de l'importance*, to give importance; *Avoir des idées*, to have ideas.

103. The article is suppressed, and *de* alone is employed, when the substantive is preceded by an adjective, as in the above example, "DE *fausses idées.*" In transposing the adjective, we should say, "DES *idées fausses.*"

---

* See notes on page 17.

.... Que son enfant fût plus que **lui** *et qu'***il** *eût....*

In this phrase, *lui* and *il* should both be rendered in English by the same word, *he.*

104. Il, which is always a subject, cannot be separated from the verb; whereas **lui**, when a subject, is employed when the verb is understood.

L'éducation qu'il avait **reçue**.

The participle *reçue*, having the feminine termination, agrees with *éducation*, which is feminine, or rather with the relative pronoun *que*, which is its representative, and is the direct regimen of the verb *recevoir.*

105. The past participle, when accompanied with the verb *avoir*, agrees in gender and number with its direct regimen, if that regimen precedes it.

Il avait **reçu** *l'éducation.*

106. But the past participle remains invariable, when its regimen follows it.

Son *père et* **sa** *mère.*

The words *son* and *sa* here correspond to *his. Père*, being masculine, must be preceded by the masculine adjective *son. Mère*, being feminine, requires the feminine adjective *sa.*

107. The possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive that follows it.

It might be supposed that *père* and *mère*, being joined, form a plural, and that therefore SES *père et mère* would be correct and more concise than *son père et sa mère;* but though indeed the expression is sometimes heard, yet it is universally blamed.

108. The possessive adjective must be repeated before each substantive.

De *son père et* **de** *sa mère.*

Here the repetition of *de* is necessary.

109. The prepositions **à**, **de**, and **en** must be repeated before each substantive, adjective, pronoun, or verb which they govern.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 200 adjectives ending with **able** are the same in both languages; and from these nearly as many verbs may be readily formed. Ex. *Admirable*, *admirer*, to admire. See Obs. 97.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Accepter,	To accept.	*Précepte*,	Precept.
Anticiper,	To anticipate.	*Précepteur*,	Preceptor.
Apercevoir,	To perceive.	*Producteur*,	Producer.
Aqueduc,	Aqueduct.	*Produire*,	To produce.
Braver,	To brave.	*Produit*,	Produce.
Bravoure,	Bravery.	*Quadrille*,	Quadrille.
Captiver,	To captivate.	*Quadrupède*,	Quadruped.
Conducteur,	Conductor.	*Quart*,	Fourth part.
Conduire,	To conduct.	*Quartier*,	Quarter.
Conduite,	Conduct.	*Réduire*,	To reduce.
Déduire,	To deduct.	*Séduire*,	To seduce.
Duc,	Duke.	*Séduisant*,	Seducing.
Duché,	Duchy.	*Susceptible*,	Susceptible.
Duchesse,	Duchess.	*Torture*,	Torture.
Enfance,	Childhood.	*Torturer*,	To torture.
Enfantin,	Childish.	*Tourment*,	Torment.
Excepté,	Except.	*Tourmenter*,	To torment.
Excepter,	To except.	*Traducteur*,	Translator.
Introduire,	To introduce.	*Traduction*,	Translation.
Occuper,	To occupy.	*Traduire*,	To translate.
Participe,	Participle.	*Volonté*,	Will.
Participer,	To participate.	*Volontiers*,	Willingly.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *De fausses idées.* See Obs. 93.—Some children—Any exceptions—Any grandeur—Some men—Any profit.

2. Model: *Avait eu.* See Obs. 96.—He has had—He has accepted—He had accepted—He has corrected—He had corrected—He has captivated—He had captivated—He has given—He had given—He has doubted—He had doubted.

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

3. Model: *Pardonn*ABLE, *Pardonn*ER. See Obs. 97.—[Form verbs from the following adjectives]—*Altérable*—*Acceptable*—*Profitable*—*Passable*—*Visitable.*

4. Model: UNE *éducation.* See Obs. 99.—A conversation—The circulation—A collection—The composition—A condition—A description—The fabrication.

5. Model: *De fausses idées.* Syntax 102, 103.—[Place the adjective before the substantive.]—Other men—Good boys—Some brave children—Any simple interpretations—Great men—Some young officers—Some good lessons.

6. [Place the adjective after the substantive.]—Some active men—Any brave men—Incorrigible children—Any evident examples—Simple lessons—Some intelligent boys.

7. Model: *Plus que* LUI *et qu'*IL *eût.* Syntax 104.—He and we—He and you—He guides—He saw—You know more than he—We profit less than he—He is—It is he—He was—It was he.

8. Model: *L'éducation qu'il avait* REÇUE. Syntax 105.—The animal which he has tormented—The profession which he has exercised—The children that he has corrected—The lessons that he has given—The plane which he had received—His sleeve which he had tucked up—The days which he had passed.

9. Model: *Il avait* REÇU *l'éducation.* Syntax 106.—He has tormented the animal—He has exercised the profession—He has corrected the children—He has given the lessons—He had received the plane—He had tucked up his sleeve—He had passed some days.

10. Model: SON *père et* SA *mère.* Syntax 107, 108.—His son and daughter—His saw and plane.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. His father was a brave man—91.
2. That joiner is a worthy man—91.
3. That general was a great man—91.

---

* See notes on page 13.

4. His son is a tall man—91.
5. The proverb is false.
6. True grandeur is always indulgent—95.
7. He has tucked up his sleeves—96, 106.
8. His boy has received a superior education—96, 106.
9. The professor had given you four lessons—96, 106.
10. His laziness had given birth to all his other vices—96, 106.
11. That man is implacable—97.
12. His mother is inconsolable—97.
13. This fault (defect)* is intolerable—97.
14. He had a doubt.
15. He will pass from the first section to the second—74, 99.
16. The satisfaction of his mother is more *sincere* [true]* than that of his father—99.
17. The prediction is false—99.
18. He has some grandeur—102.
19. He had received some lessons—102.
20. You know some proverbs—102.
21. Do you know any proverbs?—102.
22. He has corrected some children—102.
23. We give examples—102.
24. He had good children—103.
25. He gives other examples—103.
26. He gives less than we—104.
27. We give more than he—104.
28. Who will correct that drone?—He—104.
29. It is not you, but it is he—104.
30. You know the lesson that he has given you—105.
31. What examples we have had!—105.
32. He has corrected the faults of his children—106.
33. The father corrects his son—22, 107.
34. The mother corrects her son—107.
35. How many drones and idiots!—109.

---

* See note on page 37.

FIFTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Cinquième leçon.
Fifth

C'est pourquoi il l'avait mis d'abord
It is why (therefore) him put at first

dans une des meilleures institutions de
in of the best institutions

Paris, désirant qu'il réunît toutes sortes
desiring should collect all sorts

de connaissances. Il voulait surtout qu'il
knowledge willed above all

sût le grec et le latin, sans exa-
should know Greek Latin to exa-

miner s'il ne serait pas plus utile qu'il
mine if it would not be useful

possédât bien la langue française, cette
should possess well tongue French that

langue étant la sienne.
being his.

---

* Every new lesson should still be preceded as indicated in note *, on page 15, by a full rehearsal of the text and translation of all previous ones. In consequence of the accumulation of matter, however, and to prevent this exercise from engrossing too much time, the following modification in the mode of reviewing would be here suggested: Translate the first only from the French into English; the second, only from the English into French, and so on.

** See note * on page 1.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He had therefore placed him at first in one of the best academies in Paris, wishing him to be versed in every branch of knowledge. He desired above all that he should know Greek and Latin, without considering whether it would not be more useful for him to be master of the French language, which was his own.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la cinquième.
Pourquoi avait-il mis son fils dans une des meilleures institutions de Paris?	Parce qu'il voulait qu'il eût une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait reçue.
When had he placed his son in an institution?	D'abord.
Où avait-il mis son fils d'abord?	Dans une des meilleures institutions de Paris.
Que désirait-il qu'il réunît?	Toutes sortes de connaissances.
Que voulait-il surtout qu'il sût?	Le grec et le latin.
Qu'est-ce que le père voulait surtout?	Que son fils sût le grec et le latin.
Qu'est-ce que le grec?	C'est une langue.
Qu'est-ce que le latin?	C'est une autre langue.
Quelle était la langue d'Alexis?	La langue française.
Quelle langue était-il utile qu'il possédât?	La langue française — *or*, La sienne.
Qu'est-ce que le père n'examinait pas?	S'il ne serait pas plus utile que son fils possédât bien la langue française.
Pourquoi était-il utile qu'il possédât bien la langue française?	Parce que cette langue était la sienne.
Comment était l'institution où Delatour avait mis son fils?	C'était une des meilleures de Paris.
Où était l'institution où il avait mis son fils?	Dans Paris—*or*, À Paris.

---

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Savez-vous le grec?	Do you know Greek?
Savez-vous le latin?	Do you know the Latin language?
Nous ne savons pas le grec.	We do not know the Greek language.
Nous ne savons pas le latin.	We do not know the Latin language.
Que savez-vous?	What do you know?
Nous savons le français.	We know the French language.
C'est plus utile.	It is more useful.
Le savez-vous bien?	Do you know it well?
Nous ne le savons pas bien.	We do not know it well.
Mais nous désirons posséder cette langue.	But we wish to be versed in that language.
Cette langue nous serait utile.	That language would be useful to us.
Nous désirons nous exercer dans cette langue.	We wish to exercise ourselves in that language.
Voulez-vous nous donner des leçons?	Will you give us some lessons?
Nous ne le pouvons pas.	We cannot.
Mais cet homme vous donnera des leçons.	But that man will give you some lessons.
Il a toutes sortes de connaissances.	He is versed in every branch of knowledge.
Il a reçu la meilleure éducation.	He has received the best education.
Est-il Français?	Is he a Frenchman?
Il est Français.	He is a Frenchman.
Où est-il?	Where is he?
Il est à Paris.	He is in Paris.
Il est dans une institution.	He is in an institution.
Que fait-il?	What does he do?
Il donne des leçons.	He gives lessons.

* See note on page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Why do we say "C'*est*, L'*avait*, QU'*il*," and not "CE *est*, LE *avait*, QUE *il?*"—11.*

Of what gender is *institution?*—99.

What does the termination *it*, in *réunît*, denote?—70.

Of what gender are *sorte*, *connaissance*, and *langue?*—15.

What does the final *s* denote in *meilleures*, *institutions*, *toutes*, *sortes*, and *connaissances?*—25, 29.

Of what gender is the adjective *utile?*—6.

What is the masculine of *française?*—2.

CINQUIÈME comes from *cinq*, five (44).

In *cinquième*, the vowel *u* is interposed between the radical *cinq*, and the termination *ième*.

110. The letter **q**, when it is not final, is always followed by **u**.

C'EST POURQUOI is an adverb composed of four words: *ce*, it; *est*, is; *pour*, for; *quoi*, what. The first, second, and fourth have been seen already.

111. Pour is a preposition corresponding to *for*, *to*, *in order to*.

MIS is the past participle of the irregular verb *mettre*, coming from the Latin *mittere*, to send, and to put. The principal derivatives of *mettre* are: *Admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *démettre*, to remove, to dismiss; *émettre*, to emit; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit;

---

* See notes on page 17.

promettre, to promise; *remettre,* to remit, to deliver; *s'entremettre,* to intervene, to interfere; *soumettre,* to submit; *transmettre,* to transmit; and a number of substantives and adjectives formed from the above verbs, as *mission, admission, admissible, permission,* etc., which will be found explained among the words alike, or nearly so, in both languages.

D'ABORD is an adverb formed of the preposition *de,* and the substantive *abord,* approach or access. It signifies *at first.* The radical word is *bord,* border, verge, edge, or bank, from the Celtic *bord,* bank or shore. The principal derivatives of *bord* are: *border,* to border; *aborder,* to board, to accost; *déborder,* to run over, to take off the border from, etc.

112. Dans is a preposition corresponding to *in, into,* and *within.*

113. Des is the contraction of *de les,* and like *au* (55) is called a compound article.

MEILLEURES is the feminine plural of *meilleur* (2, 25). It comes from the Latin *melior,* better, as can be seen from the derivatives *amélioration,* and *améliorer,* to ameliorate. *Meilleur* is the comparative and superlative of *bon,* already seen. *Plus bon,* more good, would not be correct.

114. The degrees of comparison are not usually formed in French by means of a termination; but by placing before the adjective one of the following adverbs: *aussi,* as; *plus,* more, most; *moins,* less, least; *très, fort, bien,* very. For instance: *aussi jeune,* as young; *plus jeune,* younger; *le plus jeune,* the youngest; *moins jeune,* less young; *très jeune, fort jeune, bien jeune,* very young.

MEILLEUR is therefore an exception.

INSTITUTION is the same in both languages (49).

DÉSIRANT is the present participle of the verb *désirer,* which comes from *désir,* from the Latin *desiderium,* desire, wish.

115. The present participle of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ant**.

RÉUNÎT is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *réunir,* to reunite, to collect, to get together.

116. The third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **it** (70).

SORTE comes from *sort*, from the Latin *sors*, fate, lot, condition, rank, or class. The principal derivatives of *sort* are, *assortir*, to suit, to match; and *assortiment*, assortment.

CONNAISSANCE comes from the verb *connaître*, to know (23), from the Latin *cognoscere*. The principal derivatives of *connaître* are: *connaisseur*, a word often used in English to express a person well versed in any subject; *méconnaître*, not to recognize, to disregard; *reconnaître*, to recognize, etc.

VOULAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

117. The verbs in **oir** are irregular in most of their tenses; but in the imperfect tense they take the same terminations as the verbs in **er**, and the whole termination **oir** is suppressed. *Voyait*, seen in the second lesson, is an exception.

SURTOUT is formed of *sur*, above, and *tout* all. *Tout* has already been explained in the 1st lesson.

118. **Sur**, from the Latin *super*, is a preposition corresponding to *on*, *upon*, *over*, and *above*.

119. **Sur** is also used as an inseparable particle, and denotes situation upon or over, pre-eminence, or excess. Some of the derivatives formed by means of this particle are the same, or nearly the same in both languages, as: *Surcharger*, to surcharge; *surface*, surface; *surmonter*, to surmount; *surpasser*, to surpass.

SÛT is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of the irregular verb *savoir*, mentioned in the first lesson.

GREC comes from the Latin word *græcus*. It is an adjective used as a substantive. Its feminine is irregular; it is *grecque*.

LATIN, from *latinus*, is also an adjective used substantively.

GREC and LATIN are both masculine.

120. The names of languages are masculine, unless they are employed as adjectives with the word *langue*, as: *La langue française; la langue grecque.*

EXAMINER comes from the Latin *examinare*, to weigh, to ponder, to examine. It is in the infinitive mood, which is denoted by the termination *er*.

121. The infinitive mood of all the French verbs ends in **er**, **ir**, or **re**. The verbs in **er** are by far the most numerous. The verbs in **ir** differ from those in *er* in their forms of conjugation. Those in **re** have some of their tenses formed in conformity with the first, and some with the second class; so that there are indeed but two forms of conjugation. We must state, however, that the past participle of verbs in *re* has a peculiar termination, which will be explained later.

We have now seen the three forms of the infinitive mood, in *examin***er**, *obten***ir**, and *entend***re**.

S'IL stands for *si il*.

122. **Si**, coming from the Latin, is a conjunction corresponding to *if* and *whether*. The elision of the vowel *i* in this word takes place only before *il* and its plural *ils*.—**Si** is also used as an adverb, signifying *so*, *so very*, *so much*, and sometimes *yes*.

SERAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of the irregular verb *être*, to be. See *étant*, page 57.

UTILE comes from the verb *user*, from the Latin *uti*, to use. The principal derivatives of *user* are: *abus*, abuse; *abuser*, to abuse; *usage*, usage; *usuel*, usual; *usure*, usury; *utilité*, utility; *utiliser*, to make use of; *inutile*, useless; and a number of others already introduced or about to be explained among the words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *utilement*, usefully (see Obs. 31 and 32); *abusif*, abusive (46), etc.

123. The terminations **il** and **ile**, in adjectives, denote what is endowed with the quality, the property, or the faculty expressed by the radical. Some of these adjectives are the same in both languages, as: *civil*, *docile*, *fertile*, etc.

POSSÉDÂT is the third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *posséder*, from the Latin *possidere*, to possess.

124. The third person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ât**.

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of

the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliary verbs in the following phrases:

"*S'il ne serait pas plus utile qu'il posséd* **ât** *bien la langue française.*"—5th lesson.

"*Désirant qu'il réun* **ît** *toutes sortes de connaissances.*"—5th lesson.

"*Il ne pouvait obtenir qu'il suiv* **ît** *son exemple.*"—3d lesson.

"*Vouloir que son enfant* **fût** *plus que lui.*"—4th lesson.

"*Vouloir qu'il* **eût** *une éducation supérieure.*"—4th lesson.

BIEN comes from the Latin *benè*, well, and means also *very*, as: *Bien jeune*, very young.

LANGUE comes from the Latin *lingua*, tongue. Its principal derivatives are: *Langage*, language; *linguiste*, linguist; and *linguistique*, linguistic.

FRANÇAISE is the feminine of *français*, coming from *franc*, a word of Celtic origin, signifying *free*, and now used in the sense of *frank* or *sincere*. The principal derivatives of *franc* are: *Franc*, franc (a coin); *Français*, French, a Frenchman: *franchement*, frankly; *franchise*, frankness, freedom, exemption; *affranchir*, to free, to pay the postage.

CETTE is the feminine of *ce* and *cet* (19).

ÉTANT is the present participle of *être*.

125. **Être**, formerly *ester*, comes from two Latin verbs: *esse*, to be, and *stare*, to stand, probably through the medium of the Spanish *ser* and *estar*, both used for *to be*. This accounts for the difference between some forms of this verb, such as *serait* and *étant*, *était*. **Être** is one of the two auxiliaries. It serves to form the passive voice, as: *Il est corrigé*, he is corrected. It is also used in the compound tenses of certain verbs, particularly the pronominal ones, as: *Il s'est exercé*, he has exercised himself.

126. **Sienne** is the feminine of **sien**, and like *son*, *sa*, *ses*, is derived from *se* (51, 65). The masculine plural is **siens**, and the feminine plural **siennes**. Each of these forms corresponds to the English words *his*, *hers*, *its*, and *one's* and is always preceded by *le*, *la*, or *les*, thus: **Le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes.** This pronoun must not be confounded with *son*,

which is an adjective always followed by a substantive. The same distinction exists between the other possessive adjectives and pronouns of the first and second persons singular and plural.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say, "*Il* L'*avait mis*," and not, "*Il avait mis* LE?"—43.*

Why should we not say, "MEILLEUR *institutions?*"—33.

In the phrases, "*Désirant qu'il réunît*, and *Il voulait qu'il sût*," why are the verbs *réunît* and *sût* in the subjunctive mood?—81.

Why should we not say, "LUI *réunît*, LUI *voulait*, LUI *sût*," instead of "IL *réunît*, IL *voulait*, IL *sût?*"—104.

Why is the article *le* placed before *grec* and *latin?*—35.

C'est pourquoi il l'avait mis.

This can be rendered into English by "*Therefore he had put him*," or, "*He had therefore put him*," indifferently.

127. In French, the adverbial form **C'est pourquoi** must be placed at the beginning of a sentence or of a clause of a sentence.

Une des meilleures institutions **de** *Paris.*
One of the best institutions IN Paris.

128. The preposition *in*, required in English after a superlative, and before the name of a place, is rendered by **de**, and not by *dans*.

Sans **examiner.**
Without *examining.*

129. The French prepositions govern the infinitive mood. **En**, in, is the only one that governs the present participle.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Il serait utile qu'il **possédât.**

130. The subjunctive mood is required after a verb used impersonally, in such phrases as the following: "*It is fit, It is proper, It is necessary, It is time, It is convenient,*" etc.

131. The past tense of the subjunctive mood is required after the conditional.

Cette langue étant **la sienne.**

132. The possessive pronoun agrees in gender and number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, as the English pronoun does.

LEXICOLOGY.

A number of derivatives formed by means of the particle **sur,** are the same, or nearly the same, in both languages. Ex. *Surface ; surpasser*, to surpass. See Obs. 119.

Some words ending with **il** and **ile** are alike in French and English. Ex. *Civil, docile, fertile.* See Obs. 123.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Bientôt,	Soon.	*Inconnu*,	Unknown.
Bienveillance,	Benevolence.	*Installer*,	To instal.
Bienveillant,	Benevolent.	*Instant*,	Instant.
Bienvenu,	Welcome.	*Instituer*,	To institute.
Cinquante,	Fifty.	*Institut*,	Institute.
Circonstance,	Circumstance.	*Mieux*,	Better.
Commis,	Clerk.	*Obstacle*,	Obstacle.
Constance,	Constancy.	*Outil*,	Tool.
Constituer,	To constitute.	*Peut-être*,	Perhaps, may be.
Constitutionnel,	Constitutional.	*Pourquoi*,	Why.
Contraste,	Contrast.	*Pourtant*,	However.
Contraster,	To contrast.	*Promesse*,	Promise.
De sorte que,	So that.	*Restituer*,	To restitute.
Dessus,	On, upon.	*Statue*,	Statue.
Exister,	To exist.	*Substituer*,	To substitute.
Ignorer,	Not to know.	*Usité*,	In use.
Incognito,	Incognito.	*Ustensile*,	Utensil.

---

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Des*, for *de les*. See Obs. 113.—One of the améliorations—One of the faults (defects)—One of the desires—One of the examples—One of the children—One of the sons—One of the boys.

2. Model: *Plus jeune*, younger or youngest. See Obs. 114.—More active—The most active—Braver—The bravest—Falser—The falsest—Greater—The greatest—More intelligent—The most intelligent—Truer—The truest.

3. Model: *Désirant.* See Obs. 115.—Animating—Giving—Desolating—Exercising—Examining—Existing—Excepting—Guiding—Thinking—Passing—Tucking up—Visiting.

4. Model: *Qu'il réunît.* See Obs. 116.—That he might establish—That he might unite.

5. Model: *Il voulait.* See Obs. 117.—He received—He knew.

6. Model: *Qu'il possédât.* See Obs. 124.—That he might animate—That he might give—That he might desolate—That he might exercise—That he might examine—That he might exist—That he might except—That he might guide—That he might think—That he might pass—That he might tuck up—That he might visit.

7. Model: *C'est pourquoi il l'avait mis.* Syntax, 127.—He will therefore correct him—This vice therefore gives birth to all [the] others—The father was therefore grieved—He therefore examined—He was therefore guided—He could not therefore obtain—We therefore think—He therefore passes his time—His sleeves are therefore tucked up—You therefore know—It would therefore be useful.

8. Model: *Une des meilleures institutions* DE *Paris.* Syntax, 128.—The most generous boy in this institution—The most

---

* See note on page 12.

learned in the university—The most ignorant in the university—The best in the universe.

9. Model: *Sans examiner.* Syntax, 129.—Without having—Of correcting—Of giving—For wishing—Without hearing—Of exercising—Without doing—For guiding—Of obtaining—Without thinking—Of receiving—Without knowing—Without following.

10. Model: *Il serait utile qu'il possédât.* Syntax, 130, 131.—It would be well for him to accept—It would be difficult for him to give—It would be natural for him to guide—It would be time for him to think—It would be possible for him to pass.

11. Model: *Cette langue étant* LA SIENNE. Syntax, 132, and Obs. 126.—That plane is his—That saw was his—Those children are his—Those ideas are his—That bench is hers—This hand is hers—These tools are hers—Those statues are hers.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. What do you think of the ideas of that man?—113.
2. That man is the best of fathers—113.
3. His mother is the best of mothers—113.
4. Alexis was the youngest of his sons—114.
5. His mother is younger than his father—114.
6. French is more useful than Greek—35, 114.
7. He wished that his son should know the Latin language, thinking that this language was useful—81, 115.
8. The father, giving all his time to the education of his children, could not exercise his profession—115, 80.
9. How did he receive the exhortations of his father and mother?—117.
10. He knew the Greek language—117.
11. Where is that drone?—19.
12. That child is intelligent—19.

---

* See note * on page 13.

13. This institution is better than the other—19.

14. He has therefore put his children into this institution—127.

15. His fault (defect) is not pardonable; *he shall therefore be corrected* [one will therefore correct him]—127.

16. That child is the most intelligent in *the whole* [all the] institution—128.

17. *He* [It] is the *bravest* man [the bravest] in France—128.

18. He has the satisfaction of being useful—129.

19. How could he hear us without seeing us?—129.

20. He passes without hearing you—129.

21. It would not be good for him to grieve—130, 124.

22. It would be good he should think *of* [to] us—130, 124.

23. It would be well for him to go to Paris—130, 124.

24. It would be useful for him to hear his mother—130, 70.

25. One blames the faults (defects) of others, without thinking *of* [to] one's *own*—129, 126, 132.

26. The joiner has a plane, but it is not his *own*—126, 132.

27. This saw is not large enough; the joiner will give you his—126, 132.

28. Children are not always good, but a mother thinks that hers are perfect—126, 132.

29. The father gives his lessons to his sons, and the mother gives hers to her daughters—126, 132.

SIXTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Sixième leçon.
Sixth

Le succès ne répondit pas aux ambi-
success answered to the ambi-

tieuses espérances du pauvre ouvrier.
tious hopes of the poor workman.

Au bout de quelques mois des revers de
At the end some months some reverses

fortune assaillirent Monsieur Delatour.
fortune assailed Mr.

Deux maisons de commerce, où il avait
Two houses commerce

placé ses épargnes, suspendirent leurs
placed savings suspended their

paiements ; peu après, elles firent
payments little after they made

banqueroute, et donnèrent cinq pour
bankruptcy gave five for

cent à leurs nombreux créanciers.
hundred numerous creditors.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The ambitious hopes of the poor workman were not crowned with success. After a few months, misfortunes befell Mr. Delatour. Two commercial houses, in which he had placed his savings, stopped payment; a short time afterwards they failed, and paid five per cent to their numerous creditors.

---

* See notes on pages 15 and 50. ** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la sixième.
Qui avait des espérances?	Le pauvre ouvrier.
Quelles espérances avait-il?	D'ambitieuses espérances.
Qu'est-ce qui ne répondit pas à ses ambitieuses espérances?	Le succès.
A quoi le succès ne répondit-il pas?	Aux ambitieuses espérances du pauvre ouvrier.
When did misfortunes befall Mr. Delatour?	Au bout de quelques mois.
Qui des revers de fortune assaillirent-ils?	Monsieur Delatour.
Où avait-il placé ses épargnes?	Dans deux maisons de commerce.
Qu'avait-il placé dans deux maisons de commerce?	Ses épargnes.
Qu'est-ce que les deux maisons de commerce suspendirent?	Leurs paiements.
Que firent les deux maisons de commerce?	Elles firent banqueroute.
When did they fail?	Peu après.
Combien donnèrent-elles à leurs créanciers?	Cinq pour cent.
A qui donnèrent-elles cinq pour cent?	A leurs nombreux créanciers.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Le père de ce jeune homme est un brave ouvrier.	The father of that young man is an honest workman.
Il a placé ses épargnes dans une maison de commerce.	He has placed his savings in a commercial house.
A-t-il de la fortune?	Has he any fortune?
Il a des espérances.	He has some expectations.
Il est actif et laborieux.	He is active and laborious.
A-t-il des enfants?	Has he any children?
Il a trois garçons.	He has three boys.

---

* See notes on page 2. ** See note on page 3.

Le premier désole son père et sa mère.	The first distresses his father and mother.
Le deuxième est assez intelligent.	The second is intelligent enough.
Mais il n'est pas actif.	But he is not active.
Le plus jeune est le plus ambitieux.	The youngest is the most ambitious.
Il fait plus à lui seul que les deux autres.	He does more by himself than the other two.
Son père le placera dans une maison de commerce.	His father will place him in a commercial house.
Pourquoi le premier désole-t-il son père et sa mère?	Why does the first distress his father and mother?
Parce que c'est un fainéant.	Because he is a drone.
Pourquoi son père ne le corrige-t-il pas?	Why does not his father correct him?
Parce qu'il est bon et indulgent.	Because he is good and indulgent.
Mais nous pensons qu'il a tort.	But we think that he is wrong.
Ne le pensez-vous pas?	Don't you think so?
Sans doute.	Without doubt.
Et le deuxième, que fait-il?	And what does the second do?
Il est ouvrier comme son père.	He is a workman, like his father.
Quelle profession exerce-t-il?	What trade does he follow?
La profession de menuisier.	The trade of a joiner.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are the words *succès*, *bout*, *mois*, *revers*, *paiement*, and *créancier?*—14.*

Of what gender are *ouvrier* and *monsieur?*—8.

Of what gender are *espérance*, *fortune*, *épargne*, and *banqueroute?*—15.

Of what gender is *maison?*—79.

What is the feminine of *pauvre?*—6.

---

* See notes on page 17.

What does *au* stand for?—55.

Why should we not say "*A le bout?*"—55.

How would you translate "*To the workman?*"—55.

What does *des* stand for?—93.

What is the infinitive of *placé?*—52.

What does the *s* denote at the end of the words *ambitieuses*, *espérances*, *maisons*, *épargnes*, *paiements*, and *créanciers?*—25, 29.

What is the plural of *succès?*—17

SIXIÈME comes from *six* (44).

SUCCÈS is of the masculine gender (14).

RÉPONDIT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the indicative mood of the verb *répondre*, coming from the Latin *respondere*, to answer. The principal derivatives of *répondre* are: *Réponse*, answer; *responsable*, responsible; *responsabilité*, responsibility; *correspondre*, to correspond; *correspondant*, correspondent; *correspondance*, correspondence, etc.

133. The third person singular of the past tense definite of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **it.**

The same person, in the past tense of the subjunctive, differs from this only by a circumflex accent placed over the *i* (70).

It is difficult for an English student to discern at first any difference between the imperfect tense and the past tense definite, or between *Il répondait*, and *Il répondit*, as they are both rendered in English by, *He answered.* We shall endeavor to point out as clearly and concisely as possible the difference between these two tenses.

134. The imperfect tense represents an action or a state of being as already begun or existing, and going on or continuing, without expressing when it ceased, or whether it did cease.

135. The past tense definite represents the action or the state from its very beginning; it expresses that it has ceased, and that the duration of time it occupied has elapsed.

The following deductions may be drawn from these definitions.

136. The imperfect tense must be used to render the English verb in the present participle, with the auxiliary verb *to be*, as: He was answering *the speech of his opponent, when I left the house*, Il répondait, etc., for that expresses neither when the action began, nor when it finished.

137. The imperfect tense must also be used to express an habitual action, as: *She used to answer*, *She would answer*, Elle répondait; for this conveys no precise notion of her ceasing to answer.

138. The past tense definite is generally proper when the English past tense cannot be rendered by means of the words *was*, *would*, or *used to*, joined to the verb, as: *He was answering*, *He would* (*usually*) *answer*, *He used to answer*.

139. The past tense definite is particularly used in narratives. In familiar conversation, it is often avoided, as stiff and pedantic; and another tense, the past tense indefinite is substituted.

140. **Aux** is a contraction of *à les;* it is therefore plural (55). It serves for both genders, and is placed indifferently before a word beginning either with a vowel or a consonant.

Ambitieuse is the feminine of *ambitieux*, coming from the Latin *ambitiosus*.

141. The termination **eux** is found in a great number of adjectives, about 200 of which end in *ous* in English, without any or with scarcely any other difference, as: *Ambitieux*, ambitious; *envieux*, envious; *glorieux*, glorious; *précieux*, precious; *avantageux*, advantageous; *vertueux*, virtuous.

142. Adjectives ending in **x** form their feminine by changing **x** into **se**.

Espérance comes from the verb *espérer*, to hope (23).

143. **Du** is a contraction of *de le*. It is accordingly masculine and singular. It precedes a word beginning with a consonant. But when the word next to the article begins with a vowel or an *h* mute, the contraction is not used, and the *e* of *le* is cut off, as: De l'*ouvrier*, De l'*homme* (55).

Pauvre comes from the Latin *pauper*, poor. Its principal derivatives are: *Pauvreté*, poverty; *appauvrir*, to make poor, etc.

Ouvrier comes from *œuvre*, work, which comes from the Latin *opus*, *operis*, as can be seen from the words: *opérer*, to op-

erate; *opérateur*, operator; *opération*, *coopération*, etc. The principal derivatives of *œuvre* are: *Chef-d'œuvre*, masterpiece; *hors-d'œuvre*, side dish; *manœuvre*, manœuvre; *manœuvrer*, to manœuvre; *ouvrage*, work, etc.

Bout is of the masculine gender (14).

144. Quelque, formed of *quel* and *que*, is an adjective corresponding to *some*, *any*, and *a few*. When used in the singular, it denotes an undetermined person or thing; and in the plural, an undetermined number of persons or things. *Quelque* is also used as an adverb, and is then indeclinable. Its derivatives are: *Quelque chose*, something, any thing; *quelquefois*, sometimes; *quelqu'un*, somebody, anybody, some one, any one.

145. The elision of the final **e** in **quelque** is admitted only before the words *un* and *autre*.

Mois comes from the Latin *mensis*, month. As this word ends in *s* in the singular, it undergoes no change of termination in the plural (17).

Des is for *de les*, the partitive article, meaning some (93, 102).

Revers is derived from the preposition *vers*, towards, from the Latin *versus*, having the same sense, from the verb *vertere*, to turn. *Revers* ends with *s* in the singular as well as in the plural (17).

146. The inseparable particle **re** denotes *repetition*, *reduplication*, *doing or beginning over again*, as: *relire*, to read again; *redire*, to say again; *rétablir*, to re-establish;—or *coming or going back*, as: *réagir*, to react; *reconduire*, to lead back; *revers*, reverse (that is, turning back);—or lastly, *gradual increase or completion*, as: *redoubler*, to redouble; *raffiner*, to refine. The *e* of this particle is sometimes cut off, as in *rappeler*, to recall, to call back, from *appeler*, to call.

Fortune comes from the Latin *fortuna*, fortune, hap. Its principal derivatives are: *Fortuné*, fortunate; *infortune*, misfortune, etc.

Assaillirent is the third person plural of the past tense definite of the indicative mood of the verb *assaillir*, which is derived from *saillir*, to leap, to gush, to break forth, from the Latin

salire, having the same meaning. *Assaillir* is irregular in some of its tenses, but not in the past tense definite.

147. The third person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **irent**.

ASSAILLIR is for *adsaillir*.

148. Ad is the Latin preposition from which *à* is derived (24). When used as an inseparable particle, it has the same meaning in French as in English, denoting *tendency*, *drawing near*, *bringing together*. Most of the words in which it is combined are nearly the same in both languages, as: *Adverbe*, adverb; *admettre*, to admit; *adjectif*, adjective. In both languages, also, the *d* of *ad* is often changed into the same letter as that which begins the radical, as in *Accepter*, to accept; *affilier*, to affiliate; *aggraver*, to aggravate; *assaillir*, to assail. But sometimes in French the *d* of *ad* is cut off, as in *ajourner*, to adjourn; *avertir*, to warn (to advert); *avis*, advice.

149. Monsieur is formed of the possessive adjective *mon*, my, and the substantive *sieur*, sir. **Monsieur** corresponds to three English words:—1st, To *Mr.*, before a proper name, as: *Monsieur Delatour*, Mr. Delatour; 2d, to *Sir*, in addressing a man, as: *Bonjour, monsieur*, Good morning, sir; 3d, to *gentleman*, in speaking of a man, as: *Ce monsieur*, This or that gentleman. Its plural is *Messieurs*.

MAISON comes from the Latin *mansio*, dwelling. It is feminine (85).

COMMERCE comes from the Latin *merx*, *mercis*, merchandise. Being masculine, it is an exception (15).

150. Où, seen in the third lesson as an adverb of place, is also used as a relative pronoun, signifying *in which* or *to which*, as: *Le doute où il est*, The doubt in which he is. It may be preceded by *de* and *par*, as: *Les embarras* D'OÙ *il s'est tiré*, The difficulties from which he has extricated himself; *Les villages* PAR OÙ *il passera*, The villages through which he will pass. These pronouns refer to things only, and are properly used when the sense conveys an idea of locality, whether positive or abstract.

PLACÉ is the past participle of the verb *placer* (52), which is

derived from *place*, from the Latin *platea*, place, or square. *Place* signifies place, spot, or room. Its principal derivatives are: *Placement*, placing; *placer*, to place; *déplacer*, to displace; *emplacement*, place, site; *remplacement*, replacement; *remplacer*, to replace, to supply; *replacer*, to replace, to put back.

Ses is the plural of *son* and *sa* (51).

Épargne comes from the Latin *parcere*, to spare. Its principal derivative is *épargner*, to spare, to save.

Suspendirent is the third person plural of the past tense definite of the verb *suspendre*, derived from *pendre*, to hang, to suspend, from the Latin *pendere*.

151. The third person plural of the past tense definite of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **irent**.

The principal derivatives of *pendre* are: *Rependre*, to hang again; *dépendre*, to depend; *dépendance*, dependency; *indépendance*, independence; *indépendant*, independent; *pendant*, pendent, pending, during; *cependant*, in the mean time, however; *pendule*, pendulum, clock, etc.

152. Leurs is the plural of *leur*, coming from the Italian *loro*. It is a possessive adjective that varies in number, but not in gender. Both **leur** and **leurs** correspond to *their*. With the article before it, this word becomes a possessive pronoun, thus: **Le leur**, **la leur**, **les leurs**, theirs.

Paiement comes from the verb *payer*, to pay. The principal derivatives of *payer* are: *Paie*, pay, wages; *payeur*, payer, paymaster; *payable*; *paiement*, payment; *impayable*, invaluable, that cannot be paid too highly.

153. The termination **ment** is added to many verbs, which are thus transformed into substantives; a great number of them are the same in both languages, as: *Engagement*, from *engager*, to engage; *amusement*, from *amuser*, to amuse; *sentiment*, from *sentir*, to feel. Some differ slightly from the English, as: *Jugement*, judgment; *attachement*, attachment; *gouvernement*, government (45).

154. Peu, from the Latin *pauci*, is an adverb corresponding to *little* and *few*. It is sometimes rendered in English by the inseparable particle *un* or *in*, as: *Peu important*, unimportant;

peu considérable, inconsiderable. When followed by a substantive, it requires the preposition *de* before the substantive (39). *Peu* is also used substantively.

155. **Après** is one of the derivatives of *près*, seen in the second lesson. It is a preposition and an adverb, corresponding to *after*, *next*, *next to*, and *afterwards*.

156. **Elles** is the plural of **elle**, from the Latin *illa*, she, that one. **Elle** is a personal pronoun corresponding to *she*, *her*, and *it*. It is feminine and singular; **elles** is feminine and plural, and corresponds to *they* and *them*. Both are used as subjects referring to persons and to things. They are also used as regimens, and then refer to persons more frequently than to things.

Firent is the third person plural of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *faire*, mentioned in the third lesson.

Banqueroute is derived from *banc*, bench, from the Italian *banco*, bench and bank. In this word, *route* means *rupture* or *rout*. The principal derivatives of *banc* are: *Banque*, bank, banking-house; *banquette*, bench; *banquier*, banker; *banquet*, banquet, etc.

Donnèrent is the third person plural of the past tense definite of the verb *donner*, mentioned in the first lesson.

157. The third person plural of the past tense definite of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **èrent**.

Cinq is the radical of *cinquième*, seen in the fifth lesson.

Cent comes from the Latin *centum*, hundred. Its principal derivatives are: *Centenaire*, centenary; *centième*, hundredth; *centime*, centime (the hundredth part of one franc); *centigrade*, centigrade; *centigramme*, centigram; *centimètre*, centimeter, etc.

Nombreux is derived from *nombre*, from the Latin *numerus*, number. Its termination is the same in the singular as in the plural.

158. Adjectives and substantives ending in **x** do not change their termination in the plural.

Créancier is derived from the verb *croire*, to believe, from the Latin *credere*, probably through the Spanish *creer*.

The verb *croire*, in its Spanish form, *creer*, has given birth to *créance*, credence or credit, by substituting the termination *ance* for that of the infinitive (23), and *créance* has produced *créancier*.

159. The termination **ier** or **er**, in adjectives used substantively, generally denotes the person who exercises a profession or trade, who is daily engaged or usually deals in the thing expressed by the radical. It often corresponds to the English termination *er*, as: *Manufacturier*, manufacturer; *messager*, messenger; *officier*, officer; *passager*, passenger; *usurier*, usurer; *banquier*, banker.—It serves besides, when added to the name of a fruit, to designate the tree bearing such fruit, as: *Pommier*, apple-tree, from *pomme*, apple; *prunier*, plum-tree, from *prune*, plum; *cerisier*, cherry-tree, from *cerise*, cherry.—In a limited number of words, it denotes the utensil, the vessel, or the place destined for the use of the thing expressed by the radical, as: *Obusier*, howitzer, from *obus*, shell; *encrier*, inkstand, from *encre*, ink; *sucrier*, sugar-basin, from *sucre*, sugar; *colombier*, dove-house, from *colombe*, dove.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say "LE *succès*," and not "*Succès?*"—35.*

Why should we not say "*Le succès répondit ne pas?*"—38.

Why should we not say "*Aux* AMBITIEUX *espérances?*"—33.

In "*Il avait* PLACÉ *ses épargnes*," why does not the participle *placé* agree with its regimen *épargnes*, which is feminine and plural?—106.

In "*Leurs paiements*" and "*Leurs créanciers*," why is *leurs* in the plural number?—107.

Il répondit **aux** *espérances.*
It answered the hopes.

160. The preposition **to**, which is often omitted in English, before the indirect regimen of a verb, must always be rendered in French, *when that regimen is a substantive*, by **à**, or by the con-

---

* See notes on page 17.

traction of **à** with the article, **au**, **aux** (55, 140). Accordingly, the following phrases: *We answer his question; He told his father; You give the boy; You give the children a lesson*—should be translated thus: *Nous répondons* à *sa question; Il disait* à *son père; Vous donnez* AU *garçon; Vous donnez* AUX *enfants une leçon.*

Des revers de fortune.
Deux maisons de commerce.

In these examples, the substantives *fortune* and *commerce*, are employed without the article.

Fortune determines the sense of *revers*, and *commerce* determines that of *maisons;* but the sense of *fortune* and *commerce* is not determined by any other word.

161. When one substantive determines the sense of another, it is used without the article, provided it be not in its turn qualified by some other words.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 200 adjectives ending with **ous** in English, become French by changing *ous* into *eux*. Ex. Ambitious, *ambitieux*. See Obs. 141.

Many words beginning with the inseparable prefix **ad**, are nearly the same in both languages. Ex. Adverb, *adverbe;* adjective, *adjectif*. See Obs. 148.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Ambitionner,	To aspire to.	*Crédit*,	Credit.
Assaut,	Assault.	*Crédule*,	Credulous.
Bouton,	Bud, button.	*Désespérer*,	To despair.
Boutonner,	To button.	*Désespoir*,	Despair.
Boutonnière,	Button-hole.	*Divers*,	Diverse.
Cesser,	To cease.	*Diversifier*,	To diversify.

---

* See note on page 11.

Envers,	Towards.	*Pervers*,	Perverse.
Espoir,	Hope.	*Pervertir*,	To pervert.
Excéder,	To exceed.	*Précéder*,	To precede.
Excès,	Excess.	*Prospérer*,	To prosper.
Insulte,	Insult.	*Quelconque*,	Whatever, any.
Marchand,	Merchant.	*Renverser*,	To overthrow.
Marchander,	To bargain.	*Résultat*,	Result.
Marchandise,	Merchandise.	*Résulter*,	To result.
Nécessaire,	Necessary.	*Sauter*,	To jump.
Nécessité,	Necessity.	*Sauterelle*,	Grasshopper.
Nécessiter,	To necessitate.	*Seigneur*,	Lord.
Numéro,	Number.	*Senat*,	Senate.
Numéroter,	To number.	*Traverser*,	To cross.
Opéra,	Opera.	*Tressaillir*,	To start.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Il répondit.* See Obs. 133.—He corresponded—He depended—He heard—He hung—He followed—He suspended.

2. Model: *Il répondait* (He was answering; he would answer; he used to answer). See Obs. 136, 137, 138.—He was animating—He used to give—He would desire—He used to exercise—He was examining—He would guide—He used to think—He was passing—He used to place.

3. Model: *Aux espérances.* See Obs. 140.—To the creditors—To the examples—To the children—To the savings—To the sons—To the boys—To the men—To the ideas—To the institutions—To the lessons—To the languages—To the sleeves—To the hands—To the mothers—To the houses—To the workmen—To the fathers—To the vices.

4. Model: *Ambitieux, ambitieuse.* See Obs. 141, 142. (*The following adjectives are to be translated twice: once with the masculine form, and once with the feminine*).—Judicious—Precious—Delicious—Capricious—Vicious—Odious—Melodious—Studious

---

* See note on page 12.

—Contagious—Religious—Bilious—Ceremonious—Harmonious—Serious—Mysterious—Laborious—Victorious.

5. Model: Du *pauvre ouvrier*, De l'*ouvrier*. See Obs. 143.—Of the elbow—Of the creditor—Of the doubt—Of the example—Of the child—Of the son—Of the drone—Of the boy—Of the man—Of the joiner—Of the month—Of the gentleman—Of the eye—Of the proverb—Of the father—Of the payment.

6. Model: *Quelques mois.* See Obs. 144.—Some planes—A few saws—Any success—A few vices—Some time—Any doubt—A few examples—Some hope—Any savings—A few men—Some institutions—Any language—A few lessons.

7. Model: *Ils assaillirent.* See Obs. 147.—They established—They re-established—They united.

8. Model: *Elles suspendirent.* See Obs. 151 (*with the feminine pronoun*).—They corresponded—They depended—They heard—They hung—They followed—They suspended.

9. Model: *Leurs paiements.* See Obs. 152.—Their doubt—Their doubts—Their example—Their examples—Their child—Their children—Their son—Their sons—Their father—Their fathers—Their lesson—Their lessons.

10. Model: Elles *firent.* See Obs. 156 (*with the feminine pronoun*).—She had—It has—She will correct—It gives—She said—It was—She is—She exercised—It does—She thinks—It could—She passes—It answered—They are—She would be—She saw—It goes.

11. Model: *Ils donnèrent, Elles donnèrent.* See Obs. 157.—(*Masc.*) They animated—(*Fem.*) They corrected—(*Fem.*) They desired—(*Masc.*) They exercised—(*Fem.*) They examined—(*Masc.*) They guided—(*Fem.*) They thought—(*Masc.*) They passed—(*Fem.*) They placed.

12. Model: *Leurs* nombreux *créanciers.* See Obs. 158.—His odious creditor—His odious creditors—The precious example—The precious examples—A generous child—The generous children—That laborious boy—Those laborious boys—That mysterious man—Those mysterious men.

13. Model: *Répondit* aux *espérances.* Syntax, 160.—He gives his son—She told her father—They gave their creditors—He answered his mother—He would not answer his children.

14. Model: *Revers de fortune.* Syntax, 161.—Joiner's bench —Child's hand—Workman's son—Man of resolution—Ideas of ambition—Lessons of Latin—Banking-house.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. One day, his creditor followed him *to* [till] his *own* house —133, 135.
2. He heard the workman, but he did not answer him—133, 135.
3. That commercial house *stopped* [suspended]** its payments *for* [pending] a month—133, 135.
4. The other day, they gave you a good example—157, 135.
5. [To] what was he thinking *of?*—He was thinking *of* [to] you—134, 136.
6. The child used to follow his father—137.
7. He was so generous that he would sometimes give *away* all that [which] he had—137.
8. He was examining the saw and the plane—136.
9. She is attentive to the lessons—140.
10. The knowledge of languages is useful to men—140.
11. What will he give to the children?—140.
12. His father is serious—141.
13. His mother is serious—142.
14. Laziness is dangerous—141, 142.
15. He has generous ideas—141, 142.
16. Where have you put the plane of the joiner?—143.
17. The son will possess the savings of the father—143.
18. His creditors gave him [some] time—143.
19. She has some fortune—144.
20. The father and mother *joined* [reunited] their savings —147.
21. The children heard their father and answered him—151.
22. Mr. Alexis is going to Paris—149.

---

* See notes on page 13. ** See note on page 87.

23. Do you know, sir, where [goes] Mr. Delatour *is going?*—149.

24. *Who* (Quel) is that gentleman?—149.

25. It is a gentleman who wishes *to* see you—149.

26. The house in which she was is one of the best in Paris—150, 128.

27. He will place his children in the institution in which he [has] received his *own* education—150.

28. The father and mother corrected their child—152.

29. Some generous men gave their savings—152.

30. He gives lessons for his *own* amusement—153.

31. This is the joiner's bench—56, 161.

32. This is a joiner's bench—56, 161.

SEVENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Septième leçon.
Seventh

Ces tristes circonstances eurent pour
These sad circumstances had

résultat de forcer M. Delatour à retirer
result to force Mr. take back

notre petit paresseux de sa pension, dans
our little lazy (fellow) from boarding-school,

laquelle il avait appris fort peu de chose,
which learned ver thing

et d'où il ne rapportait qu'un penchant
brought back propensity

un peu plus prononcé pour l'indolence,
pronounced (decided) indolence.

avec une aversion complète pour le
with aversion complete

métier de son père, qu'il regardait
trade looked upon

comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.
as base unworthy

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The consequence of these untoward occurrences was, that Mr. Delatour was compelled to remove our little lazy fellow from school, where he had learned very little, and whence he returned with a still stronger propensity to indolence, and a decided aversion to his father's business, which he looked upon as low and unworthy of him.

---

* See notes on pages 15 and 50. ** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la septième.
Quelles circonstances forcèrent M. Delatour à retirer notre petit paresseux de sa pension?	De tristes circonstances—*or*, Des revers de fortune.
Qui est-ce que ces circonstances forcèrent à retirer Alexis de sa pension?	M. Delatour.
Qui forcèrent-elles M. Delatour à retirer de sa pension?	Alexis—*or*, Notre petit paresseux.
D'où le forcèrent-elles à retirer notre petit paresseux?	De sa pension.
Quel résultat eurent ces tristes circonstances?	De forcer M. Delatour à retirer notre petit paresseux de sa pension.
Qu'avait-il appris dans sa pension?	Fort peu de chose.
Où avait-il appris fort peu de chose?	Dans sa pension.
Pourquoi avait-il appris fort peu de chose?	Sans doute parce qu'il* était paresseux.
Pourquoi était-il paresseux?	Nous ne le savons pas.
D'où rapportait-il un penchant prononcé pour l'indolence?	De sa pension.
Que rapportait-il de sa pension?	Un penchant un peu plus prononcé pour l'indolence.
Pour quel métier avait-il une aversion complète?	Pour le métier de son père.
Quel était le métier de son père?	Le métier de menuisier.
Quel sentiment avait-il pour ce métier?	Une aversion complète.
Comment regardait-il ce métier?	Comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.
Pourquoi avait-il une aversion complète pour ce métier?	Parce qu'il le regardait comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Qu'avez-vous appris?	What have you learned?
Nous avons appris fort peu de chose.	We have learned very little.
Nous savons fort peu de chose.	We know very little.
Pourquoi avez-vous appris fort peu de chose?	Why have you learned very little?
Vous ne répondez pas.	You do not answer.
Pourquoi ne répondez-vous pas?	Why don't you answer?
Nous ne le pouvons pas.	We cannot.
Vous le pouvez si vous le voulez.	You can if you will.
Nous n'avons pas eu le temps.	We have had no time.
Mais vous prononcez fort bien.	But you pronounce very well.
Vous avez appris quelque chose.	You have learned something.
Où avez-vous appris ce que vous savez?	Where did you learn what you know?
A notre pension.	At our school.
Mais nous avons eu fort peu de leçons.	But we had very few lessons.
Où est Alexis?	Where is Alexis?
Il est avec son père.	He is with his father.
Est-il actif comme son père?	Is he active like his father?
Il est un peu paresseux.	He is rather lazy.
C'est pourquoi son père l'a retiré de pension.	That is why his father took him back from school.
Mais il est fort jeune.	But he is very young.
Le temps corrigera son penchant pour l'indolence.	Time will correct his propensity to indolence.
C'est possible.	It is possible.
Surtout avec l'exemple d'un homme comme son père.	Above all with the example of such a man as his father.
Qu'est-ce que son père pense faire de lui?	What does his father intend to make of him?
Il le placera dans une maison de commerce.	He will place him in a commercial house.
Il a raison.	He is right.

* See note on page 3.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

How is the word *septième* formed ?*—44.
Of what gender is *circonstance ?*—15.
Of what gender are *résultat, penchant*, and *métier ?*—14.
Of what gender are *pension* and *aversion ?*—50.
In what mood are the verbs *forcer* and *retirer ?*—121.
What is the feminine of *paresseux ?*—142.
What is the plural of *paresseux ?*—158.
Why do we say *d'où*, and not *de où ?*—11.
What is the infinitive of *rapportait ?*—47.
What is the infinitive of *prononcé ?*—52.
Why do we say *l'indolence*, and not *la indolence?*—11.
What is the masculine of *complète ?*—2.
What is the feminine of *indigne ?*—6.

SEPTIÈME comes from *sept*, seven (44), from the Latin *septem*, as can be seen from the derivative *septembre*, September.

CES is the plural of *ce*, *cet*, and *cette* (19).

Examples have now been seen of all the demonstrative adjectives, in the following phrases:

Ce *vice donne naissance à tous les autres*—1st lesson.
A quoi **cet** *idiot passe-t-il son temps ?*—3d lesson.
Cette *langue étant la sienne*—5th lesson.
Ces *tristes circonstances*—7th lesson.

TRISTES is the plural of *triste*, which, ending in *e* mute, is of both genders (6, 25).

CIRCONSTANCE resembles the English word circumstance.

162. **Circon** is an inseparable preposition, coming from the

---

* See notes on page 17.

Latin *circum*, and signifying *about*, *around*. The derivatives formed by means of this particle are very nearly the same in both languages; the Latin spelling of *circum* being preserved in English, and slightly altered in French, as: *Circonférence*, circumference; *circonlocution*, circumlocution; *circonspect*, circumspect; *circonscrire*, to circumscribe.

EURENT is the third person plural of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *avoir*.

RÉSULTAT comes from *résulter*, to result.

163. The termination **at**, often makes a substantive of a verb, and denotes the end obtained, or the action done, as: *Résultat*, from *résulter*, to result; *assassinat*, murder, from *assassiner*, to murder; *certificat*, certificate, from *certifier*, to certify.—It is added also to some titles of persons, and denotes their function or quality, as: *Consulat*, consulate, consulship, from *consul*; *doctorat*, doctorate, doctorship, from *docteur*; *patriarcat*, patriarchate, patriarchship, from *patriarche*.

FORCER comes from the adjective *fort*, from the Latin *fortis*, strong, the principal derivatives of which are: *Effort*, effort; *force*, force, strength; *forteresse*, fortress; *fortifier*, to fortify; *fortification*, fortification; *renforcer*, to strengthen; *renforcement*, strengthening, reinforcement; *renfort*, reinforcement.

M. is the abbreviation of *Monsieur* (149).

RETIRER comes from the verb *tirer*, to draw, from the Latin *trahere*.

TIRER is an important verb, on account of its numerous acceptations. It corresponds to the following English verbs: *to draw*, *to pull*, *to shoot*, *to fire*, *to derive*, *to stretch*, *to tap*, *to drag*, *to strike off*.

164. **Notre**, formerly *nostre*, from the Latin *noster*, is a possessive pronominal adjective of both genders, and of the singular number, corresponding to *our*. Its plural is **nos**, likewise corresponding to *our*.

PETIT is a word often used in English, as in "petit jury, petit-maître."

PARESSEUX is one of the derivatives of *paresse*, seen in the first lesson.

PENSION means *pension*, *allowance*, *board*, *boarding-house*, and *boarding-school*.

LAQUELLE is a relative pronoun, feminine and singular, formed of the article *la* and the pronominal adjective *quelle*. It corresponds to *qui*, *que*, and *quoi*, in French, and to *who*, *whom*, *which*, or *that*, in English.

165. The pronominal adjective **quel** (71) combines with the article, simple or compound, and forms: *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, who, whom, which, or that;—*duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles*, of whom, from whom, of which, from which;—*auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels*, *auxquelles*, to whom, to which.

APPRIS is the past participle of the irregular verb *apprendre*, to learn, coming from *prendre*, to take. The principal derivatives of *prendre* are: *Apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to comprehend, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *rapprendre*, to learn again; *reprendre*, to take back; *surprendre*, to surprise; and a number of substantives and adjectives formed from these verbs, as: *Entreprise*, enterprise; *surprise*, surprise; *compréhension*, *compréhensible*, etc., which will be found explained among the words alike, or nearly so, in both languages.

FORT, as an adverb, comes from the adjective *fort*, strong, mentioned in this lesson as the radical of *forcer*. It is one of three adverbs which correspond to *very*, when placed before adjectives or other adverbs, as: *Fort bon*, very good; *fort bien*, very well. The other two are *très* and *bien*.

166. Chose is a feminine substantive, which signifies *thing*. But *peu de chose*, little, and *quelque chose*, something, any thing, are adverbial forms which are masculine.

D'OÙ. See *où* (150.)

RAPPORTAIT is a form of the verb *rapporter* (47), derived from *porter*, to bear, to carry, to wear, from the Latin *portare*. The principal derivatives of *porter* are: *Apporter*, to bring; *emporter*, to carry away; *exporter*, to export; *importer*, to import; *supporter*, to support; *transporter*, to transport; and a number of substantives and adjectives formed from these verbs, and which will be found explained amongst the words alike, or nearly so,

in French and in English, as: *Importance*, *important*; *supportable*, *insupportable*, etc., etc.

Porter enters also into the formation of some compound words, as: *Porte-crayon*, pencil-case; *portefeuille*, portfolio; *porte-manteau*, portmanteau, etc.

Penchant is a word often used in English in the sense of inclination; it comes from the verb *pencher*, to incline, to lean.

Prononcé is the past participle of the verb *prononcer* (52), which comes from the Latin *pronunciare*, to declare, derived from *nunciare*, to announce. The principal words having an analogy with this are: *Annoncer*, to announce; *annonce*, announcement, notice, advertisement; *dénoncer*, to denounce; *énoncer*, to enunciate; *prononcer*, to pronounce; *prononciation*, pronunciation; *renoncer*, to renounce, etc.

Indolence is alike in French and in English.

167. The termination **ence**, as well as **ance** (23) belongs to substantives which are the same in both languages, as: *Indolence*, *adolescence*, *residence*, *prudence*, *indigence*;—or nearly the same, as: *Agence*, agency; *clémence*, clemency; *décence*, decency.

168. **Avec** is a preposition corresponding to *with*.

Aversion is one of the derivatives of *vers*, mentioned in the sixth lesson.

Complète is the feminine of *complet* (185). The principal derivatives are: *Compléter*, to complete; *complément*, complement; *incomplet*, incomplete, etc.

Métier is of the masculine gender (14).

Regardait is a form of the verb *regarder* (47). *Regard*, a word much used in English, and signifying *consideration*, is derived from *regarder*.

169. **Comme** is derived from the Latin *quomodo*, how. It is used as an adverb and as a conjunction, and corresponds to *as*, *like*, and *how*.

Chose is supposed to be derived from the Latin *causa*, cause.

Basse is the feminine, irregularly formed (2) of the adjective *bas*, which comes from the Greek βαθὺς, deep. Its principal derivatives are: *Abaisser*, to abase; *base*, basis, base; *baser*, to base; *basse*, bass; *basson*, bassoon; *bas-relief*, basso-relievo, etc.

Indigne is derived from *digne*, worthy, which comes from the

Latin *dignus*. The principal derivatives of *digne* are: *Dignitaire*, dignitary; *dignité*, dignity; *indignation; indigner*, to make indignant, etc.

170. The inseparable particle **in** is generally negative, as in English in *invisible*. It corresponds to the English inseparable particles *in* and *un*, and sometimes to the termination *less*, as in *inutile*, useless.—It is changed into *im* before *b*, *m*, and *p*, as in: *imberbe*, beardless, from *barbe*, beard; *immodéré*, immoderate, from *modéré*, moderate; *imprudent*, from *prudent*.—It is changed into *il* before *l*, and *ir* before *r*, as in: *Illogique*, illogical, from *logique*, logical; *irrationnel*, irrational, from *rationnel*, rational.

SYNTAX.

In "*tristes circonstances*," why does the adjective *triste* take an *s*?*—33.

Why should we not say "SON *pension?*"—107.

To what does the pronoun *laquelle* relate?

Why is *ne* placed before *rapportait?*—38.

Why do we say "L'*indolence*," and not "*indolence?*"—35.

Why do we say "*une aversion complète*," and not "*un aversion complet?*"—33, 50.

Notre petit paresseux.

Our little lazy fellow.

171. French adjectives are often used as substantives, in the singular as well as in the plural. Thus, we may render: *The brave man*, by *Le brave*;—*The ambitious man*, by *L'ambitieux*;—*A French woman*, by *Une Française*;—*The poor little boy*, by *Le pauvre petit*,—without being obliged to add the words *homme*, man; *femme*, woman; *garçon*, boy, or any such substantive required in the English.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Sa pension dans **laquelle**.

It has been seen (165) that *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, correspond to *qui*, *que*, and *quoi*, in French, and to *who*, *whom*, *which*, and *that*, in English. But though the meaning is the same, yet we cannot say: *Sa pension dans qui.*

172. **Qui**, after a preposition, relates only to persons; or to personified things, in poetical language.

173. **Lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**, are seldom used as subjects or as direct regimens, unless they become necessary to avoid ambiguity. The subject is generally represented by **qui**, and the direct regimen by **que**, as: *Un bon garçon* QUI *n'avait qu'un défaut;—L'éducation* QU'*il avait reçue.*

But when we say "*La mère d'Alexis* QUI *est pauvre,*" the pronoun QUI may refer to *mère* (mother), which is feminine, or to *Alexis*, which is masculine; and if we wish to avoid this ambiguity, we say, in the first instance, "*La mère d'Alexis,* LAQUELLE *est pauvre,*" and in the second instance, "*La mère d'Alexis,* LEQUEL *est pauvre.*"

174. If the relative pronoun is governed by a preposition, it is generally expressed by **qui**, when it refers to persons, and by **lequel**, **laquelle**, **lesquels**, **lesquelles**, when it refers to things.

Indigne de **lui**.

We have now seen **lui** as a subject and as a regimen: as a subject in "*Il voulait que son enfant fût plus que* LUI;" as a regimen in "*Comment* LUI *faire entendre raison?*" and in "*Indigne de* LUI." We have pointed out the difference between **il** and **lui**, as a subject (104). We shall now explain the difference between **le** and **lui**, as a regimen.

175. **Le** is always a direct regimen, and, except in the imperative mood, always placed before the verb, as in "*Vous* LE *savez.*" **Lui** either precedes the verb, whose indirect regimen it is (meaning *to him*), or is placed after the verb, and is governed by a preposition, as in the above example, "*Indigne* DE

LUI." Accordingly, **il** signifies *he* or *it;* **le** signifies *him* or *it;* and **lui** signifies *he*, *him*, or *it*—and *to him*,* or *to it*.

LEXICOLOGY.

Words beginning with the inseparable prefix **circon** are very nearly the same in both languages. Ex. *Circonstance*, circumstance. See Obs. 162.

Substantives ending with **ence** are alike in French and in English. Ex. *Indolence*. See Obs. 167.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.***

Accomplir,	To accomplish.	*Pensionnaire*,	Boarder.
Attirer,	To attract.	*Petit à petit*,	Little by little.
Attrait,	Attraction.	*Petitesse*,	Littleness.
Bassesse,	Baseness.	*Priser*,	To take snuff.
Confortable,	Comfortable.	*Prison*,	Prison.
Contrat,	Contract.	*Prisonnier*,	Prisoner.
Depense,	Expense.	*Récompense*,	Recompense.
Dépenser,	To spend.	*Récompenser*,	To recompense.
Deuil,	Mourning.	*Répandre*,	To pour out.
Emprisonner,	To imprison.	*Retirer*,	To withdraw.
En bas,	Down, below.	*Retraite*,	Retreat.
Extraire,	To extract.	*Soustraction*,	Subtraction.
Garde,	Guard, care.	*Soustraire*,	To subtract.
Garde-malade,	Nurse.	*Suppléer*,	To supply.
Garde-robe,	Wardrobe.	*Supplément*,	Supplement.
Gardien,	Keeper, warden.	*Tire-botte*,	Boot-jack.
Importuner,	To importune.	*Tire-bouchon*,	Corkscrew.
Indispensable,	Indispensable.	*Tiroir*,	Drawer.
Inopportun,	Inopportune.	*Tristesse*,	Sadness.

---

* LUI signifies also *to her* but we omit it for the present, because no example has yet been seen.

** See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Résultat.* See Obs. 163.—(To be translated into English.) — *Candidat* — *Certificat* — *Decemvirat* — *Magistrat*— *Sénat*—*Triumvirat*—*Doctorat*—*Secrétariat*—*Vicariat.*

2. Model: NOTRE *petit paresseux.* See Obs. 164.—Our fortress—Our force—Our plane—Our prisons—Our pencil-cases —Our pocket-books—Our propensities.

3. Model: *Sa pension dans* LAQUELLE. See Obs. 165.—The trade by which he makes *a* fortune—The house in which he is—The house from which he has removed his son—The faults (defects) of which he will correct himself—The circumstances *by*** [of] which he has profited—The proverbs [to] which we think *of*—The circumstances to which he *alludes* [makes allusion].

4. Model: *Appris* (past participle of *apprendre*).—Taken—Understood—Undertaken—Surprised.

5. Model: *Indolence.* See Obs. 167.—(Translate into English.) —*Présidence*—*Régence*—*Urgence*—*Fréquence*—*Circonférence.*

6. Model: *Indigne.* See Obs. 170.—(Translate into English.)—*Inanimé*—*Incertain*—*Incivil*—*Inclémence*—*Incomplet*—*Incrédule*—*Infatigable*—*Injuste*—*Inutile*—*Immortel*—*Imparfait*—*Irréligieux.*

7. Model: *Un paresseux.* Syntax, 171.—A brave man—A Frenchman—A French woman—The poor man—The poor little fellow—An officious man.

8. Models: *Un garçon* QUI *n'avait qu'un défaut*—*L'éducation* QUE *son père lui donne*—*Sa pension dans* LAQUELLE, etc. Syntax, 172, 173.—A man who is ambitious—An example which is good—That boy who was intelligent—The lesson which is learned—The lesson which you know—The man whom our child saw—The workman to whom we give a plane—His mother with whom he is—Her children for whom she does *every thing* [all].

---

* See note on page 12. ** See note on page 37.

9. Models: *Vous* LE *savez*—*Il* LUI *disait* (He said to him)—*Indigne de* LUI. Syntax, 175.—His father will correct him—He gives it (masc.)—They gave it (masc.)—He forces him—He answered [to] him—She brought back to him—His son is worthy of him—This saw is too small for him—His mother is alone with him.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Why do you force those children to answer?—19.
2. What do you think of these things?—19.
3. Our trade is useful—164.
4. Our idleness is unworthy of us—164.
5. This is the house in which he has placed his children—165, 174.
6. You know the reason for which he removes his son from his school—165, 174.
7. What did he answer to the creditors by whom he was beset (assailed)?—174.
8. What is he to do in the circumstances in which he is placed?—88, 174.
9. It is a fault of which he will never correct himself—174.
10. He has vices of which he will never correct himself—165, 174.
11. It is an example *of* [to] which we think—165, 174.
12. His creditors, to whom he gave little (peu de chose), assailed him—174.
13. He *asks* [makes] you some questions [to] which you can answer—165, 174.
14. He could do something [of] good and [of] useful—166.
15. We are thinking *of* [to] something [of] serious—166.
16. He has something [of] low in his propensities—166.
17. It is useless *to* [of] answer—170.
18. The lesson is incomplete—170.

---

* See notes on page 13.

19. An ambitious man thinks but *of* [to] one thing—171.

20. *A* [the] poor man hopes *to* make *a* fortune—171.

21. The lazy fellow would not learn his lesson—171.

22. That Frenchman does not pronounce [well] his *own* language *well*—171.

23. The workman who gives *an* [some] education to his children, is an honorable man—173.

24. His mother, whom you wish *to* see, is in the house—173.

25. Alexis, whom his father will correct, is a little lazy fellow—173.

26. This reverse of fortune forces him to stop payment—175.

27. Why do you look *at* him without answering [to] him ?—175.

28. What do you bring back to him ?—175.

29. Why do you force him to answer ?—175.

30. And this *joiner's* bench, where do you place it ?—175.

EIGHTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Huitième leçon.
Eighth

Alexis, quand il fut chez son père,
when was in the house of

cessa totalement d'étudier, et s'affran-
ceased totally to study himself freed

chit de toute contrainte. Il eut bientôt
constraint had soon

oublié le peu qu'il savait. Tous les jours
forgotten knew days

il flânait dans les rues, ou sur les boule-
loitered streets on boule-

vards, qui étaient ses promenades
vards were walks

favorites. Il s'arrêtait souvent en con-
favorite stopped often con-

templation muette devant les plus belles
templation dumb before beautiful

boutiques.
shops.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

When Alexis was at home again at his father's, he gave up studying altogether, and freed himself from all restraint. He soon forgot the little he knew. Every day he used to loiter about the streets, or on the boulevards, which was his favorite walk. He often stopped in mute contemplation before the finest shops.

---

* See notes on pages 15 and 50. ** See first note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la huitième.
Qui est-ce qui cessa totalement d'étudier?	Alexis.
Quand cessa-t-il d'étudier?	Quand il fut chez son père.
Comment cessa-t-il d'étudier?	Totalement.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis cessa de faire?	Il cessa d'étudier.
De quoi s'affranchit-il?	Il s'affranchit de toute contrainte.
Qu'est-ce qu'il eut bientôt oublié?	Le peu qu'il savait.
Quand oublia-t-il le peu qu'il savait?	Bientôt.
Quand flânait-il dans les rues, ou sur les boulevards?	Tous les jours.
Où flânait-il tous les jours?	Dans les rues, ou sur les boulevards.
Quelles étaient ses promenades favorites?	Les boulevards.
Où s'arrêtait-il souvent, en contemplation muette?	Devant les plus belles boutiques.
Quand s'arrêtait-il devant les plus belles boutiques?	Souvent.
Comment regardait-il les plus belles boutiques?	En contemplation muette.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Quel est ce jeune homme?	Who is that young man?
C'est le fils d'un brave ouvrier.	He is the son of an honest workman.
Que fait-il?	What does he do?
Il flâne dans les rues.	He loiters about the streets.
Est-ce qu'il n'étudie jamais?	Does he never study?
Il n'étudie pas souvent.	He does not often study.
Pourquoi donc?	Why not?
Parce qu'il n'est pas bien guidé.	Because he is not properly guided.

* See notes on page 2.

** See note on page 3.

Il n'a que sa mère.	He has but his mother.
Et elle est muette.	And she is dumb.
Mais il est fort jeune.	But he is very young.
Il a le temps d'apprendre.	He has time to learn.
Désirez-vous faire une promenade?	Do you wish to take a walk?
Nous vous suivons.	We follow you.
C'est à vous à nous guider.	You must be our guide.
Quelle belle rue!	What a fine street!
Ce n'est pas une rue.	It is not a street.
Qu'est-ce donc?	What is it then?
C'est un boulevard.	It is a boulevard.
C'est notre promenade favorite.	It is our favorite walk.
Nous flânons souvent sur les boulevards.	We often lounge on the boulevards.
Cette boutique est fort belle.	That shop is very fine.
Mais, où est notre petit garçon?	But, where is our little boy?
Il était devant nous.	He was before us.
Nous ne le voyons plus.	We have lost sight of him.
Par où a-t-il passé?	Which way has he gone?
Il est dans cette boutique de menuisier.	He is in that joiner's shop.
Le petit curieux!	What an inquisitive little fellow he is!
Il nous avait oubliés.	He had forgotten us.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *contrainte*, *rue*, *promenade*, and *boutique?**—15.

Of what gender are *jour* and *boulevard?*—14.

Of what gender is *contemplation?*—99.

In what mood is *étudier?*—121.

---

* See notes on page 17.

How would you form the present participle of this verb? —115.

How would you form the past participle?—52

Give the French for: "*He studies* (22)—*We study* (28)—*He studied* or *was studying* (47)—*They did study* (157)—*He will study* (74)—*That he should* or *might study* (124)."

Why do we say "s'*affranchit*," and not "SE *affranchit?*" —11.

What is the infinitive of *oublié?*—52.

What is the infinitive of *savait?*—117.

What is the singular of *tous?*

What is the infinitive of *flânait?*—47.

In the phrase "*les boulevards* QUI *étaient*," what word could we substitute for QUI?—165, 173.

What is the infinitive of *arrêtait?*—47.

HUITIÈME comes from *huit*, eight (44), from the Latin *octo*, as can be seen in the derivative *octobre*, October.

176. Quand comes from the Latin *quando*, when. It is used as an adverb and as a conjunction: as an adverb, it means *when* or *whenever;* as a conjunction, it corresponds to *though*, *even*, *though even*, *if even*, and *what though.*

FUT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *être.* The same person of the past tense of the subjunctive mood (seen in the 4th lesson) differs from it by having a circumflex accent placed over the *u.*

177. Chez is a preposition, which comes from the Italian *casa*, house. It signifies *at* or *in the house of.* It also corresponds to *home*, as: "*Il va* CHEZ *lui*, he is going home; *Il va* CHEZ *vous*, he is going to your house; *Il est* CHEZ *lui*, he is at home; *Il est* CHEZ *sa mère*, he is at his mother's (house)." This preposition is also used in the sense of *among*, *with* or *in*, as: "CHEZ *les Grecs*, among *or* with the Greeks; *Les passions sont violentes* CHEZ *lui*, passions are violent in him *or* his passions are violent."

CESSA is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the verb *cesser*.

178. The third person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **a**.

TOTALEMENT comes from *totale*, the feminine of the adjective *total*, which is English as well as French (30, 31, 32).

ÉTUDIER comes from *étude*, study, from the Latin *studium*, the principal derivatives of which are: *Etudiant*, student; and *studieux*, studious.

AFFRANCHIT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *affranchir*.

179. The third person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **it**. The same person of the past tense of the subjunctive mood differs from it only by having a circumflex accent placed over the *i*, as in *réunît*.

S'AFFRANCHIR is called a pronominal or a reflective verb: *pronominal*, because it is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, as: "*Nous nous affranchissons*, we free ourselves; *Vous vous affranchissez*, you free yourselves; *Ils* or *Elles s'affranchissent*, they free themselves;"—*reflective*, because the same person being at once the subject and object, the action he does is, as it were, reflected on himself. The former denomination seems now to prevail among French grammarians.

180. A pronominal verb is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, both placed before it (except in the imperative mood), the first being the subject and the second the regimen. The corresponding pronouns for each person are: **Je me** (I, me); **Tu te** (thou, thee); **Il se, Elle se**; **Nous nous**; **Vous vous**; **Ils se, Elles se**.

CONTRAINTE is of the feminine gender (15).

EUT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *avoir*. The same person of the past tense of the subjunctive mood (seen in the 4th lesson) differs from it only by having a circumflex accent placed over the *u*.

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of

the past tense definite, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliary verbs, in the following phrases:

"*Il cessa totalement d'étudier.*"—8th lesson.

"*Il s'affranchit de toute contrainte.*"—8th lesson.

"*Le succès ne répondit pas aux espérances.*"—6th lesson.

"*Quand il fut chez son père.*"—8th lesson.

"*Il eut bientôt oublié.*"—8th lesson.

Bientôt is formed of *bien*, well or very, and *tôt*, early, the latter word enters into the formation of several others, as: *Aussitôt*, as soon, immediately; *plus tôt*, sooner; *plutôt*, rather; *si tôt*, so soon; *tantôt*, presently, by and by, etc.

Oublié is the past participle of *oublier* (52), to forget.

Le peu. The adverb *peu* is sometimes used as a substantive, as in the present lesson, in which case it is masculine.

181. Those parts of speech which, without being substantives, are accidentally used as such, are masculine, as: *Un être*, a being; *le savoir*, knowledge; *le faux*, falsehood; *l'utile*, the useful; *un mais*, a but.

Savait is a form of the verb *savoir*, already mentioned.

Jour has been mentioned in the second lesson as the radical of *toujours*.

Flânait is a form of the verb *flâner* (47). This expression is familiar, but very often used.

Rue is of the feminine gender (15).

Boulevard comes from the German *bollwerk* (whence the English *bulwark*). It has no derivatives.

Étaient is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of the verb *être*. This verb is irregular, but not in the imperfect tense.

Promenade comes from *mener*, to lead, from the Latin *minare*, to drive, or to lead. The principal derivatives of mener are: *Amener*, to bring; *emmener*, to take away; *promener*, to lead about; *se promener*, to walk, to take a walk, a ride, a drive, an airing, etc.

182. Pro is a Latin preposition, meaning *before*, *forth* or *forward*, and *for*. In French it is an inseparable participle denoting progress, moving outwardly, lengthening, or diffusion: *Promener* strictly signifies *to lead forth*. This particle exists in many words which are the same, or nearly the same, in both

languages, as: *Procéder*, to proceed; *proclamer*, to proclaim; *productif*, productive; *projet*, project.

FAVORITE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *favori* (2), derived from *faveur*, favor, from the Latin *favor*. The principal derivatives are: *Favorable; favoriser*, to favor; *défavorable*, unfavorable.

ARRÊTAIT is a form of the verb *arrêter* (47), derived from *rester*, to remain, from the Latin *restare*, to stop, to stay, to remain. The root may be traced still farther; it is *stare*, to stand. The principal derivatives are: *Arrestation*, arrest; *arrêt*, sentence, judgment; *arrêter*, to stop, to arrest, to fasten, to resolve; *s'arrêter*, to stop, to pause; *reste*, rest, remainder; *rétif*, restive, etc.

SOUVENT comes from the Latin *subinde*, successively, incessantly.

183. **En** is a preposition coming from the Greek ἐν or the Latin *in*. Its sense is the same with that of *dans*, already seen; but these two prepositions cannot be used indiscriminately. See Syntax, 191, 192.

CONTEMPLATION comes from *temple*, derived from the Latin *templum*, temple (originally an open place). The derivatives of TEMPLE are: *Contempler*, to behold, to contemplate; *contemplation*, contemplation; *contemplatif*, contemplative; *contemplateur*, contemplator, etc.

MUETTE is the feminine of the adjective *muet*, dumb or mute.

184. Adjectives ending in **el**, **eil**, **et**, **ien**, and **on**, form their feminine by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute.

185. The exceptions to this rule are: *Complet; concret*, concrete; *discret*, discrete; *inquiet*, uneasy; *replet*, lusty, fat; *secret*, secret; the feminine of which is *complète, concrète, discrète, inquiète, replète*, and *secrète*.

186. **Devant** comes from *avant*, derived from the Latin *ab*, from, and *ante*, before. It is a preposition denoting place and corresponding to *before, in front of, opposite to, ahead of*. It is also used as an adverb. The principal derivatives of AVANT are: *En avant*, forward; *avancer*, to advance; *avancement*, advancement, etc.

BELLE is the feminine of the adjective *bel* (184) or *beau*, which comes from the Latin *bellus*, handsome. BEL is employed only before a substantive beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as: *Un* BEL *exemple*, *Un* BEL *homme*. In any other case, BEAU is the proper word. Its principal derivatives are: *Beauté*, beauty; *embellir*, to embellish; *embellissement*, embellishment, etc.

BOUTIQUE comes from the Greek ἀποθήκη, repository. It is of the feminine gender (15).

SYNTAX.

What is the difference between:

Quand il fut and *Quand il était;*
Il flâna, and *Il flânait;*
Il s'arrêta, and *Il s'arrêtait?*—134, 135.*

Why is it better to say, "*Les boulevards* QUI *étaient*," than "*Les boulevards* LESQUELS *étaient*"?—173.

Il cessa **d'***étudier.*
Forcer **à** *retirer.*
Faire entendre.

The three verbs, *cesser*, *forcer*, and *faire*, are each of them followed by another verb in the infinitive mood: the first with the preposition **de**; the second with the preposition **à**; the third without a preposition.

187. Some verbs govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, without a preposition. The following is a list of them:

Aimer mieux, to like better, to prefer.
Aller, to go.
Compter, to purpose, to intend.
Croire, to believe.
Daigner, to deign.
Devoir, to be obliged; should, ought, must.
Entendre, to hear.
Espérer, to hope—when not in the infinitive mood; but when in this mood, it requires *de* after it.
Faire, to make, to cause, to get.
Falloir, must.
Laisser, to let. When this verb signifies *to leave*, it is followed by *à* or *de*.
Oser, to dare.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Penser, to think, to believe, to trust.
Pouvoir, to be able; can, may.
Préférer, to prefer.
Prétendre, to mean, to intend.
Savoir, to know how to.
Sembler, to seem.
Sentir, to feel.
S'imaginer, to imagine.
Souhaiter, to wish.
Valoir mieux, to be better.
Venir, to come. This verb may be followed by *de*, but the meaning is different; it is *to have just*, as: *Il venait de parler*, he had just spoken.
Voir, to see.
Vouloir, to will, to wish, to want.

188. Some verbs govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, with the preposition **à**. The following is a list of them:

S'abaisser, to stoop.
Aboutir, to come out, to end.
S'accorder, to agree, to coincide.
S'acharner, to be infuriated, to be implacable.
S'aguerrir, to inure one's self.
Aider, to aid, to help.
Aimer, to like, to be fond of.
Animer, to animate, to incite.
S'appliquer, to apply one's self.
Apprendre, to learn, to teach.
Apprêter, to prepare.
Aspirer, to aspire, to aim.
Assigner, to assign, to summon.
Assujettir, to subject.
S'attacher, to apply one's self, to strive.
S'attendre, to expect.
Autoriser, to authorize.
Avoir, to have.
Balancer, to hesitate.
Borner, to limit, to confine.
Chercher, to try, to attempt.
Se complaire, to take delight.
Concourir, to concur.
Condamner, to condemn.
Consentir, to consent.
Consister, to consist.
Conspirer, to conspire, to concur.
Consumer, to consume, to waste.
Contribuer, to contribute.
Convier, to invite. This verb is sometimes followed by *de*.
Coûter, to cost. When this verb is used impersonally, it is followed by *de*.
Déterminer, to determine.
Disposer, to dispose, to prepare.
Se disposer, to prepare.
Se divertir, to divert one's self.
Donner, to give.
Employer, to employ, to use.
Encourager, to encourage.
Engager, to engage, to invite.
Enhardir, to embolden.
Enseigner, to teach.
S'entendre, to be skilful, to be a judge, to know (how to).
S'étudier, to make it one's study.
S'évertuer, to exert one's self, to strive. This verb may be followed by *pour*.
Exceller, to excel.
Exciter, to excite.
S'exercer, to exercise one's self.
Exhorter, to exhort.
Entreprendre, to undertake.
S'étonner, to wonder.
Etre étonné, to be astonished.
Eviter, to avoid.
Haïr, to hate.
Se hasarder, to venture.
Hésiter, to hesitate.
Instruire, to instruct, to teach.
Intéresser, to interest.
Inviter, to invite.
Mettre, to put—when followed by a substantive as a direct regimen.
Se mettre, to begin, to set about.
Montrer, to teach.
S'obstiner, to be obstinate.
S'offrir, to offer, to propose one's self.
Avoir peine, to be scarcely able, to be hardly able.
Pencher, to incline, to be inclined.
Penser, to think.
Persévérer, to persevere.
Persister, to persist.
Se plaire, to take delight.
Prendre plaisir, to find pleasure, to delight.
Se plier, to bend, to bow, to comply.
Préparer, to prepare.
Prétendre, to lay claim, to sue. When this verb signifies *to mean*, *to intend*, it governs the infinitive without a preposition.
Provoquer, to provoke.
Réduire, to reduce.
Renoncer, to renounce.
Répugner, to be repugnant.

Se résigner, to be resigned.
Résoudre, to resolve.
Réussir, to succeed.
Servir, to serve.
Songer, to dream, to think, to mean, to purpose.
Suffire, to suffice. This verb may govern *pour*, and, when used impersonally, it governs *de*.
Tarder, to defer, to delay. When used impersonally, it is followed by *de* and corresponds to the verb *to long*, as: *Il me tarde de le voir*, I long to see him.
Tendre, to tend.
Tenir, to be anxious.
Travailler, to work, to labor.
Viser, to aim.

189. Some verbs govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, with the preposition **de**. The following is a list of them:

S'abstenir, to abstain.
Accuser, to accuse.
Achever, to complete, to finish.
Affecter, to affect.
Etre affligé, to be grieved.
S'affliger, to grieve, to mourn.
S'agir, to be in question, to be the matter, to be at stake.
Etre bien aise, to be glad.
Ambitionner, to be ambitious, to aspire.
Appartenir, to pertain, to behoove, to become—when used impersonally.
S'applaudir, to applaud one's self.
Appréhender, to be apprehensive, to fear.
Avertir, to warn.
S'aviser, to think, to take it into one's head.
Blâmer, to blame.
Brûler, to burn.
Cesser, to cease.
Charger, to commission.
Se charger, to undertake, to take charge.
Choisir, to choose.
Commander, to command.
Conjurer, to conjure, to entreat.
Conseiller, to advise.
Se contenter, to be contented.
Convenir, to agree, to be becoming.
Corriger, to correct.
Avoir coutume, to be in the habit.
Craindre, to fear.
Dédaigner, to disdain, to scorn.
Défendre, to forbid.
Désaccoutumer, to disaccustom.
Désespérer, to despair.
Désirer, to desire. The preposition *de* is often omitted after this verb.
Se désoler, to be grieved.
Détester, to detest. The preposition *de* may be omitted.
Se devoir, to owe it to one's self.
Différer, to defer, to delay.
Dire, to tell, to bid.
Disconvenir, to disown, to deny.
Discontinuer, to discontinue.
Dispenser, to dispense, to exempt.
Disculper, to exculpate.
Dissuader, to dissuade.
Douter, to doubt.
Empêcher, to prevent.
Enrager, to be enraged.
Entreprendre, to undertake.
S'étonner, to wonder.
Etre étonné, to be astonished.
Eviter, to avoid.
S'excuser, to apologize.
Feindre, to feign.
Féliciter, to congratulate.
Se flatter, to flatter one's self.
Frémir, to shudder.
N'avoir garde, to beware, to forbear.
Se garder, to beware, to forbear.
Gémir, to moan, to lament.
Se glorifier, to glory, to boast.
Rendre grâce, to thank.
Hasarder, to hazard, to risk. Observe that *se hasarder* requires the preposition *à*.
Se hâter, to make haste.
Avoir honte, to be ashamed.
Imputer, to impute.
S'indigner, to be indignant.
S'ingérer, to intermeddle.
Inspirer, to inspire.
Jurer, to swear.
Méditer, to contemplate, to project.
Se mêler, to concern one's self.
Menacer, to threaten.
Mériter, to deserve.
Négliger, to neglect.
Nier, to deny.
Ordonner, to order.
Oublier, to forget.
Pardonner, to forgive.
Parler, to speak.
Permettre, to permit.

Persuader, to persuade.
Avoir peur, to be afraid.
Se piquer, to pride one's self.
Se plaindre, to complain.
Se faire un plaisir, to esteem it a pleasure.
Prescrire, to prescribe.
Presser, to press.
Se presser, to hasten.
Presumer, to presume.
Prier, to pray.
Promettre, to promise.
Proposer, to propose.
Se proposer, to purpose.
Protester, to protest.
Punir, to punish.
Se rassasier, *être rassasié*, to be sated.
Etre ravi, to be overjoyed.
Rebuter, to discourage.
Recommander, to recommend.
Refuser, to refuse.
Regretter, to regret.
Avoir regret, to regret.
Se réjouir, to rejoice.
Se repentir, to repent.
Reprocher, to reproach.
Résoudre, to resolve. When this verb is active, it governs *de*; when passive, it governs *à*.
Se ressouvenir, to remember.
Rire, to laugh.
Risquer, to risk, to venture.
Rougir, to redden, to blush.
Seoir, to be becoming. This irregular verb is only used in the third person.
Avoir soin, to take care.
Prendre soin, to take care.
Sommer, to summon.
Souffrir, to suffer.
Souhaiter, to wish. The preposition may be suppressed.
Soupçonner, to suspect.
Se souvenir, to remember.
Suffire, to suffice. It is only when used impersonally that this verb governs *de*.
Suggérer, to suggest.
Supplier, to beseech.
Etre surpris, to be astonished.
Tarder, when used impersonally and meaning *to long*, as: *Il me tarde de le voir*, I long to see him.
Prendre à tâche, to make it a point.
Tenter, to attempt, to endeavor.
Etre tenté, to be tempted.
Trembler, to tremble.
Se trouver bien, to derive benefit.
Se trouver mal, to fare ill.
Se vanter, to boast.

190. And, lastly, some verbs govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, with the help of either **à** or **de**, according to their different acceptations, or according as the ear or taste of the speaker directs. The following list comprises these verbs:

Accoutumer, to accustom—when used as an active or a pronominal verb, is followed by *à*; when used as a neutral verb, meaning *to be wont*, is followed by *de*, as: *Il était accoutumé d'aller*, he was wont to go.
Commencer, to begin—is followed by *à* much more frequently than by *de*.
Continuer, to continue—requires *à* when it denotes that a thing is doing without interruption; otherwise it is usually followed by *de*.
Contraindre, to constrain.
Défier requires *à* when it means *to challenge*, *to provoke* to a competition, and *de* when it means *to set at defiance*, to do something.
Demander, to demand, to ask.
S'efforcer, to strive—is generally followed by *de*; some writers use it with *à*.
S'empresser, to be eager.
Etre, to be—when joined to *ce*, is followed by *à*, if it denotes *turn*; and by *de*, if it denotes *right*, *duty*, or *attribution*, as: *C'est à vous à parler*, it is your turn to speak; *C'est au maître de commander*, *c'est au serviteur d'obéir*, it is for the master to command, it is for the servant to obey.
Forcer, to force, to compel.
Laisser, to leave—when used in the sense of *transmitting*, is followed by *à*; when in the sense of *ceasing* or *abstaining*, by *de*. We have said already that, in the sense of *permitting* (to let), it governs the next verb without a preposition (187).
Manquer, to fail, to escape, or to have like—In the latter sense, it always takes *de*; in the former, it is sometimes

followed by *à*, but more frequently by *de*.

S'occuper—requires *à* when it means *to occupy* or *to apply one's self;* it is followed by *de*, when it means *to think of, to concern one's self, to take notice.*

Obliger, to oblige.—When used in the sense of *to compel*, it may be followed by *à* or *de:* if the verb is active, *à* is more in use; if passive, *de* is generally preferred. When used in the sense of *to do a service* or *a favor*, *de* always precedes the infinitive.

Tâcher, to endeavor.—After this verb, *de* is more frequently used than *à*.

Essayer, to try.—When this verb is pronominal (*s'essayer*), it requires *à*; otherwise it may be followed by *à* or *de*.

Venir—when meaning that a thing has *just* been done, is followed by *de*. *En venir*, to come, to proceed, requires *à*.

Dans *les rues.*
En *contemplation.*

Both the prepositions *dans* and *en* are expressed in English by the same word, *in*.

191. **Dans** has a precise and determined sense. It is usually followed by an article, unless some other determinative comes after it, as *ce*, *cette*, *un*, *une*, etc.—**En** has a vague and indefinite sense, being very seldom followed by the article. *Il est* EN *boutique* signifies "He is a shopkeeper," and *Il est* DANS LA *boutique*, "He is in the shop."

192. **En** is moreover the only preposition that immediately precedes the present participle, as: *En passant*, *en flânant*, in passing, in lounging.

Il s'arrêtait **souvent.**

193. The place of the adverb is variable in French as in English. The adverb often follows the verb, and sometimes precedes it. We may say, *Souvent il s'arrêtait* as well as *Il s'arrêtait souvent.* But it would not be proper to say, *Il souvent s'arrêtait*, because the adverb must not be placed between the subject and the verb.

LEXICOLOGY.

Words beginning with the prefix PRO are the same or nearly so in both languages: Ex. *Promenade.* See Obs. 182.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Avantage,	Advantage.	*Ci-devant*,	Above, formerly.
Avantageux,	Advantageous.	*Contraindre*,	To constrain.
Beaucoup,	Much, many.	*Davantage*,	More.
Beau-fils,	Son-in-law.	*Désavantage*,	Disadvantage.
Beau-frère,	Brother-in-law.	*Désavantageux*,	Disadvantageous.
Beau-père,	Father-in-law.	*Détresse*,	Distress.
Belle-fille,	Daughter-in-law.	*Détroit*,	Strait.
Belle-mère,	Mother-in-law.	*District*,	District.
Belle-sœur,	Sister-in-law.	*Octogone*,	Octagon.
Belvéder,	Belvidere.	*Remener*,	To take back.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: CHEZ *son père.* See Obs. 177.—He is at home—She was at home—They are in your house—He is in our house—They were in her house—He was at the joiner's—She is at her mother's—They are in their father's house.

2. Model: *Il cessa.* See Obs. 178.—He stopped [himself]—She gave—He grieved [himself]—She wished—He exercised—She examined—He studied—She forced—He forgot She thought—He passed—She pronounced—He looked—She went—He placed—She guided.

3. Model: *Il affranchit.* See Obs. 179.—He assailed—She established—He re-established—She united—He reunited.

4. Model: IL SE *désolait*—IL S'*affranchit.* See Obs. 180.—He will correct himself—She corrects herself—We give our-

---

* See note on page 11. ** See notes on pages 12 and 37.

selves—We are grieved (We grieve ourselves)—You exercise yourselves—You examine yourselves—They forced themselves.

5. Model: *Muette*, feminine of *muet*. See Obs. 184.—(Form the feminine of the following adjectives)—*Bon*—*Continuel*—*Gardien* — *Intellectuel* — *Maternel* — *Naturel* — *Universel* — *Violet*.

6. Model: *Faire entendre*. Syntax, 187.—To go and see—To think *one is* [to be]—He heard you pronounce—We hope to see you—She makes you examine—He thinks *he is able* [to be able]—She could pronounce—You *can* [know how to] unite—He could see us pass—She *wanted* [willed] to see you.

7. Model: *Forcer* À *retirer*. Syntax, 188.—He has learned to give—What has he to say?—She had a lesson to learn—We give you a lesson to learn—He *made it his study* [studied himself] to follow that example.

8. Model: *Il cessa* D'*étudier*. Syntax, 189.—She ceases to study—They ceased to look—He used to bid [to] his son follow him—He has undertaken to examine you—You have forgotten to answer.

9. Models: DANS *les rues*—EN *contemplation*. Syntax, 191, 192.—In this circumstance—To be in fault—To answer *like a* [in] child—To answer *like a* [in] man—In the day—In this lesson—In Latin—In Greek—In the Latin language—In the Greek language—In one month—Within a month (*from this day*)—He is *at* [in] school—He is in the school.

10. Model: *Il s'arrêtait souvent*. Syntax, 193.—We often stop [ourselves]—They soon assailed us—He will never correct himself—He soon ceased—He always gives—We never study—She generally loitered—He always forgets—We never forget—He never knew his lesson.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. He went to see his mother, but she was not at home —177.
2. Is our father at home?—177.
3. You can study at home—177.
4. What have you learned in his house?—177.
5. His son was in the joiner's house—177.
6. We have received him into our house—177.
7. He is going to the joiner's—177.
8. Is he not at his mother's?—177.
9. The poor boy gave us all [that which] he had—178.
10. He *called* [passed] the other day, because he wished to see us—178.
11. When she had learned the first lesson, she wished to know the second—178.
12. In one month, he forgot all [that which] he had learned —178.
13. We exercise ourselves in pronouncing—180.
14. You do not know *how* to free yourselves—180.
15. The children placed themselves before us—180.
16. You forget yourselves—180.
17. *He* [It] is a lazy being—181.
18. *What is agreeable* [The agreeable] is good, but *what is useful* [the useful] is better—181.
19. Our father has a favorite proverb.
20. His son is dumb, but his daughter is not [dumb]—184.
21. Our mother is good—184.
22. What *a* fine day!
23. She had a beautiful child.
24. This child is beautiful.
25. Our joiner has a fine bench.
26. The little boy is going to examine the shop—187.

---

* See notes on pages 13 and 37.

27. They heard you pronounce—187.

28. She makes us pronounce—187.

29. He could study, but he was lazy—187.

30. She knew *how* to answer—187.

31. He *wanted* [willed] to learn, but he *was unwilling* [willed not] to study—187.

32. You have learned to pronounce—188.

33. He has something to tell you—188.

34. What has he to say?—188.

35. He thinks of learning [the] French—188.

36. She ceased to grieve [herself] when she had her child with her—189.

37. He grieves [himself] to see that his son is a lazy fellow —189.

38. Will you tell him to stop [himself]?—189.

39. You have forgotten to answer—189.

40. Was he not forced to answer?—190.

41. What have you learned in the lesson of *to* [this] day? —191.

42. What has he learned in that *school* [pension]?—191.

43. What has he learned at school?—191.

44. In ceasing to study, he forgot *what* [that which] he had learned—192.

45. We always think *of* [to] you, and you never think *of* [to] us—193.

NINTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Neuvième leçon.
Ninth

Il s'étendait quelquefois sur un banc,
extended (stretched) sometimes bench

dans le jardin des Tuileries, ou dans celui
garden that

du Luxembourg, et il s' y assoupissait.
there drowsed

Il fréquentait aussi les quais et les ponts,
frequented also quays bridges,

et demeurait de longues heures, appuyé
dwelled long hours leaned

sur un parapet, à regarder l'eau couler.
parapet look water flow

Il appelait cela une douce et molle rê-
called that sweet soft rev-

verie, une nonchalance poétique.
ery carelessness poetical.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

He would sometimes stretch himself on a bench, in the garden of the Tuileries, or the Luxembourg, and there slumber. He used also to frequent the quays and bridges, and would remain for hours together, leaning on a parapet, looking at the course of the water. He called that a gentle and soft revery, a poetical listlessness.

---

* See notes on pages 15 and 50. ** See note on page 1.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la neuvième.
Quand s'étendait-il sur un banc?	Quelquefois.
Sur quoi s'étendait-il quelquefois?	Sur un banc.
Où était le banc sur lequel il s'étendait?	Dans le jardin des Tuileries, ou dans celui du Luxembourg.
What would he sometimes do?	Il s'étendait sur un banc.
Comment y passait-il son temps?	Il s'y assoupissait.
Que fréquentait-il aussi?	Les quais et les ponts.
Combien de temps demeurait-il appuyé sur un parapet?	Il y demeurait de longues heures.
Où demeurait-il appuyé?	Sur un parapet.
Que regardait-il?	Il regardait l'eau couler.
Comment appelait-il cela?	Une douce et molle rêverie, une nonchalance poétique.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.**

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Où demeurez-vous?	Where do you live?
Nous demeurons sur le quai.	We live on the quay.
Nous y avons une maison.	We have a house there.
Avez-vous un jardin?	Have you a garden?
Nous avons un jardin, mais il est fort petit.	We have a garden, but it is a very small one.
La maison est-elle à vous?	Is the house yours?
Elle est à notre père.	It is our father's.
Voulez-vous la voir?	Do you wish to see it?
Nous ne pouvons pas.	We cannot.
Nous n'avons pas le temps.	We have not time.
Quelle heure est-il?	What o'clock is it?
Il est huit heures.	It is eight o'clock.
Comment appelez-vous ce jardin?	How do you call this garden?
C'est le jardin des Tuileries.	It is the garden of the Tuileries.
C'est une bien belle promenade.	It is a beautiful place for a walk.

---

* See notes on page 2. ** See note on page 3.

Quel est ce beau pont que nous voyons?	What fine bridge is that we see?
C'est le Pont-Royal.	It is the Pont-Royal.
Désirez-vous vous arrêter un peu?	Do you wish to stop a little?
Si vous le voulez bien.	If you please.
Voyez-vous ce monsieur appuyé sur le parapet?	Do you see that gentleman leaning on the parapet?
Comment s'appelle-t-il?	What is his name?
Il s'appelle Alexis.	His name is Alexis.
Que fait-il?	What is he doing?
Il regarde l'eau couler.	He is looking at the course of the water.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *banc*, *jardin*, *pont*, *quai*, and *parapet?* * —14.

Of what gender are *heure*, *rêverie*, and *nonchalance?*—15.

What does the letter *s* denote at the end of the words *quais*, *ponts*, and *heures?*—29.

In what tense are the verbs *fréquentait*, *demeurait*, and *appelait?*—47.

What is the infinitive of *appuyé?*—52.

In what mood are *regarder* and *couler?*—121.

Why do we say "*l'eau*," and not "*la eau?*"—11.

Why does not the adjective *poétique* take an additional *e* in the feminine?—6.

---

* See notes on page 17.

NEUVIÈME comes from *neuf*, nine (44), derived from the Latin *novem*, as can be seen in the derivative *novembre*, November.

ÉTENDAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of *étendre*, derived from *tendre*, to stretch, and to tend.

194. The third person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **ait** (47).

QUELQUEFOIS is an adverb formed of two words already seen: *quelques* and *fois*. The *s*, which marks the plural in *quelques*, is dropped in this compound.

BANC is the radical of *banque* and *banqueroute*, seen in the sixth lesson.

JARDIN comes from the German *garten*, garden. It is masculine (14).

TUILERIES comes from *tuile*, tile. The *Palais des Tuileries* is so called because it was built in a tile-field.

CELUI. See 100, in the fourth lesson.

195. **Y** is sometimes an adverb and sometimes a pronoun. As an adverb, it corresponds to *there* or *thither*, and denotes a place.

ASSOUPISSAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of the verb *assoupir*, coming from the Latin word *sopor*, sleep, as can be seen in the derivative *soporifique*, soporific.

196. § 1.—The third person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ait.**

§ 2.—The syllable **iss,** incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in **ir,** and forms the principal difference between these verbs and those in **er** (47).

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of the imperfect tense in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliary verbs, in the following phrases:

"*Il exerçait la profession de menuisier.*"—2d lesson.

"*Il s'y assoupissait.*"—9th lesson.

"*Il s'étendait sur un banc.*"—9th lesson.

"*Il était assez bon garçon.*"—1st lesson.

"*Il n'avait qu'un seul défaut.*"—1st lesson.

The verbs *assaillir* and *obtenir*, already seen, and the radical

of the latter, *tenir*, are irregular, the third person singular of their imperfect tense being: *Il assaillait*, *Il obtenait*, *Il tenait*, instead of: *Il assaillissait*, *Il obtenissait*, *Il tenissait*.

FRÉQUENTAIT is a form of the verb *fréquenter* (47), derived from the adjective *fréquent*, frequent, from the Latin *frequens*.

197. Aussi is an adverb derived from *si*, so, if, whether, from the Latin *si*, if, or *sic*, thus. AUSSI corresponds to *also*, *too*, *likewise*, *so*, and *as*; with the last meaning, before adjectives and adverbs, it denotes equality, and requires *que* after the adjective or the adverb, as: "*Aussi bon que*, as good as; *aussi bien que*, as well as."

QUAI is a word of doubtful origin. Its only derivative is *quayage*, wharfage.

PONT comes from the Latin *pons*, bridge. It signifies *bridge* and *deck*.

DEMEURAIT is a form (47) of the verb *demeurer*, coming from the Latin *demorari*, to stay, to remain. This verb is frequently used in the sense of *to dwell*, *to live*, *to reside*.

LONGUE is the irregular feminine (2) of the adjective *long*, coming from the Latin *longus*. Its principal derivatives are: *Allonger*, to lengthen; *longitude*, longitude; *long-temps*, long time; *longueur*, length; *oblong*, oblong; *prolonger*, to prolong, etc.

HEURE comes from the Latin *hora*, hour. It is feminine (15).

APPUYÉ is a form (52) of the verb *appuyer*, coming from the substantive *appui*, support, prop, derived from the Latin *podium*, support, rail.

PARAPET comes from the Italian *parapetto*, having the same meaning, and formed of *parare*, to guard, and *petto*, breast; its literal meaning is therefore (a wall) *guarding the breast*, or *breast high*.

REGARDER has been mentioned in the seventh lesson.

EAU is feminine, and is therefore an exception (14). It comes from the Latin *aqua*, as can be seen in the derivatives *Aquarelle*, water-color; *aqua-tinta*, aquatinta; *aquatique*, aquatic; *aqueduc*, aqueduct, etc.

COULER is a verb in the infinitive mood (121).

APPELAIT is a form (47) of the verb *appeler*, to call. The

principal derivatives of this word are: *Appel*, call, appeal; *rappel*, recall, drums beating to arms; and *rappeler*, to call again, to call back, to remind, to remember.

198. Cela, formed of *ce* and *là*, that there, is a demonstrative pronoun corresponding to *that*, and sometimes to *this* and to *it*. It refers to things only. It has no feminine and no plural, in which it differs from *celui* and *celle* (100). In familiar language, chiefly in conversation, it is contracted into *ça*.

Douce is the *irregular* feminine of *doux* (2), which signifies *mild*, *sweet*, or *gentle*, and comes from the Latin *dulcis*. Its principal derivatives are: *Doucement*, sweetly, softly, gently, slowly; *douceur*, mildness, sweetness, gentleness; and *adoucir*, to soften, to smooth, sweeten, relieve, etc.

Molle is the *irregular* feminine of the adjective *mou* (2), soft, mellow, slack, which was formerly spelled *mol*, from the Latin *mollis*, soft. This old form is still used, in poetical language, before a substantive beginning with a vowel, as: "*Le mol édredon*, the soft eider-down."

Rêverie is derived from *rêve*, dream, or *rêver*, to dream. It is often used in English.

199. The termination **ie** is common to substantives, about four hundred of which end in English in *y*, without any or scarcely any other difference of spelling, as: *Maladie*, malady; *anarchie*, anarchy; *astrologie*, astrology; *batterie*, battery; *broderie*, broidery, embroidery; *cavalerie*, cavalry; *coquetterie*, coquetry; *flatterie*, flattery.

Nonchalance comes from the old verb *chaloir*, to care, to be concerned, now out of use.

Poétique comes from *poëme*, derived from the Greek ποίημα, poem, the principal derivatives of which are: *Poésie*, poetry; *poëte*, poet, etc.

200. The termination **ique** is found in a great number of words, some of which are substantives, but the greater part adjectives. Most of these words are nearly the same in both languages, and differ only by the termination, which in English is *ic* for the substantives, and *ic* or *ical* for the adjectives, as: *Musique*, music; *logique*, logic; *comique*, comic or comical; *tragique*, tragic or tragical; *historique*, historic or historical.

SYNTAX.

Why should we not say, "*Il s'*ÉTENDIT *quelquefois,*" rather than "*Il s'*ÉTENDAIT *quelquefois?**—134, 135, 136, 137.

Why is it not correct to say, "EN *le jardin des Tuileries?*"—191, 192.

Why should we not say, "*Il étendait* SE," instead of "*Il s'étendait?*"—43.

Why should we not say, "*Il* AUSSI *fréquentait?*"—193.

Why should we not say, "DES *longues heures?*"—103.

---

*Il s'***y** *assoupissait.*

201. **Y**, whether used as an adverb or as a pronoun, precedes the verb in all the moods, except the imperative.

Les *quais et* **les** *ponts.*

202. The article must be repeated before each substantive.

Il était **à regarder.**

He was looking.

It has been seen (85) that the present participle is not commonly used in French to indicate that an action is, or was, or will be, taking place; consequently, *He is giving* is generally rendered by *Il donne.*

203. The foregoing example shows, however, that there is a way of attaining the same precision as in English, when necessary, the English participle being rendered by the infinitive, with the preposition *à*. Thus, we can translate "*He is studying*" by "*Il est à étudier;*" "*He was lounging*" by "*Il était à flâner.*"

---

* See notes on page 17.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 400 substantives ending with **y** in English change *y* into *ie* in French. Ex. Revery, *rêverie.* See Obs. 199.

A great number of words ending with **ic** or **ical** in English become French by changing these terminations to *ique.* Ex. Poetic or poetical, *poétique.* See Obs. 200.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Amadou,	Tinder.	*Horloger*,	Watchmaker.
Attendre,	To wait, expect.	*Jardiner*,	To garden.
Content,	Contented.	*Jardinier*,	Gardener.
Contentement,	Content.	*Mécontent*,	Discontented.
Contenter,	To content.	*Moëlle*,	Marrow, pith.
Eau de Cologne,	Cologne water.	*Ponton*,	Pontoon.
Eau-de-vie,	Brandy.	*Prétendant*,	Pretender.
Epeler,	To spell.	*Prétendre*,	To pretend.
Etendard,	Standard.	*Tendance*,	Tendency.
Horloge,	Clock.	*Tente*,	Tent.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Il étendait.* See Obs. 194.—He heard—He answered—He suspended—He followed—He pursued—He put.

2. Model: *Il s'assoupissait.* See Obs. 196.—He freed himself—He reunited—He established—He re-established—He united.

3. Model: *Rêverie.* See Obs. 199.—(Translate into English.) *Géographie—Lithographie—Philosophie—Antipathie—Sympathie—Infamie—Economie—Anatomie—Astronomie—Tyrannie—Symphonie—Harmonie—Philanthropie—Misanthropie—Galerie—Draperie—Théorie—Idolâtrie—Industrie—Dynastie.*

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

4. Model: *Poétique.* See Obs. 200.—*Cubique—Spasmodique—Pacifique—Spécifique—Logique—République—Catholique—Panique—Botanique—Laconique—Tonique—Héroïque—Classique—Fanatique—Pathétique—Athlétique—Critique.*

5. Model: *Il s'y assoupissait.* Syntax, 201.—He is there—She was there—He has learned something there—She stopped there—The water flows there—We live (dwell) there—His children made *a* fortune there—He forgot there *what* (that which) he knew—We pass our time there—She was received there.

6. Model: LES *quais et* LES *ponts.* Syntax, 202.—The house and shop—The hand and elbow—Fortune and grandeur—Greek and Latin—The father and mother—The days and hours—The saw and plane.

7. Model: *Il était à regarder.* Syntax, 203.—He is examining—She is studying—They (masc.) were guiding—They (fem.) were learning.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. He wishes to stretch himself on a bench—189.

2. He will pass some hours with us—74.

3. On which bench is his father?—On that which is at the end of the garden—100.

4. He heard us, but he did not answer us—194.

5. The little boy followed his father, when his mother told [it to]** him—194, 47, 175.

6. The joiner would sometimes *assemble* [reunite] all his workmen in the garden—196.

7. That lazy fellow used to free himself from all constraint—196.

8. His father used to obtain more by his example than by his exhortations.

---

* See note on page 13. ** See note on page 37.

9. This bridge is very long—19.
10. This street is very long—19.
11. Is that water good?—19.
12. Why does he look *at* that?—198.
13. Do you know that?—198.
14. Their father is a very mild man.
15. Flattery is sweet, but it is dangerous—141.
16. He is making *a* fortune by his industry—199.
17. She has learned arithmetic—200.
18. His mother gives lessons of music—200.
19. The second division of our lesson is analytical—200.
20. He wishes to see Paris, and he is going thither—201.
21. You see that house? We *live* [dwell] there—201.
22. He stopped in the garden, and there [he] stretched himself on a bench—201.
23. The boulevards are his favorite walk; he lounges there every day—201.
24. The father and mother *lived* [dwelled] with their children—202.
25. The streets and public gardens were his favorite walks—202.
26. He has forgotten the day and hour—202.
27. He was studying Greek and Latin—202, 203.
28. He is lounging in the garden—203.
29. They were studying their lessons in the shop—203.

TENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dixième leçon.
Tenth

La plupart des paresseux prétendent
most part pretend

être poëtes ou artistes; beaucoup d'entre
to be poets or artists many between

eux finissent méme par se persuader
them finish even to themselves to persuade

qu'ils le sont. Nous ne voulons pas dire
they will to say

que tous les poëtes soient des paresseux.
be

A Dieu ne plaise que nous ayons une
God please have

pareille pensée! La justice veut que
like thought justice wills

nous rendions hommage au génie réel.
render homage genius real

---

* As it is desirable to limit the time to be spent in the review indicated in note * on page 15 to a quarter of an hour at the utmost, it would be perhaps well now, in addition to the modification already suggested in note * on page 50, to cease, by degrees, to rehearse the first lessons, the text of which, by this time, may be supposed to have been thoroughly mastered. This observation, however, is not intended to recommend a total neglect of them, but rather a systematical omission of a portion, in the following order, leaving out to begin with the first three, then the 2d, 3d, 4th, and so on.

** The exercises pointed out in note * on page 1 continue as important as ever, and should be faithfully attended to. The writing portion of them, though, could now be entirely prepared at home.

Aussi admirons-nous ce qu'il y a de
admire there is

sublime et de touchant dans les pro-
sublime touching pro-

ductions de l'art et de la poésie.
ductions art poetry.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Most idlers pretend that they are either poets or artists; and many of them persuade themselves in the end that they are so. We do not mean to say that all poets are idlers. God forbid that we should entertain such a thought. It is but just to pay homage to real genius; and we admire all that is sublime and affecting in the productions of art and poetry.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la dixième.
Quels sont les hommes qui prétendent être poëtes ou artistes?	La plupart des paresseux.
Que prétendent la plupart des paresseux?	Ils prétendent être poëtes ou artistes.
Sont-ils persuadés qu'ils sont poëtes ou artistes?	Beaucoup d'entre eux finissent par se persuader qu'ils le sont.
Qu'est-ce que nous ne voulons pas dire?	Que tous les poëtes soient des paresseux.
Pensez-vous que tous les poëtes soient des paresseux?	A Dieu ne plaise que nous ayons une pareille pensée!
A quoi rendons-nous hommage?	Au génie réel.
Pourquoi lui rendons-nous hommage?	Parce que la justice le veut.
Que rendons-nous au génie réel?	Nous lui rendons hommage.
Dans quelles productions y a-t-il quelque chose de sublime et de touchant?	Dans les productions de l'art et de la poésie.

* See notes on page 2. For the sake of making the questions in French, without using any other words than those known to the student, the preceptor is identified with the author; and the sentiments of the latter are regarded as received axioms.

Qu'y a-t-il dans les productions de l'art et de la poésie?	Il y a quelque chose de sublime et de touchant.
Qu'est-ce que nous admirons?	Ce qu'il y a de sublime et de touchant dans les productions de l'art et de la poésie.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Que regardez-vous?	What are you looking at?
Nous regardons ce monument.	We are looking at that monument.
N'est-ce pas qu'il est admirable?	Is it not admirable?
Sans doute. Mais il a des défauts.	Undoubtedly. But there are some imperfections in it.
L'avez-vous bien examiné?	Have you examined it well?
Pourquoi cette question?	Wherefore this question?
Parce que les premiers artistes prétendent qu'il est sans défaut.	Because the first artists maintain it is perfect.
Ce n'est pas notre opinion.	It is not our opinion.
Vous ne rendez pas justice au génie.	You do not do justice to genius.
Nous ne possédons pas beaucoup de monuments pareils.	We do not possess many monuments like this.
Nous ne savons que répondre.	We know not what to answer.
Vous nous avez persuadés.	You have persuaded us.
Vous répondez ironiquement.	You answer ironically.
A Dieu ne plaise!	God forbid!
Où sont les enfants?	Where are the children?
Ils sont dans le jardin.	They are in the garden.
Pourquoi ne les appelez-vous pas?	Why don't you call them?
Parce qu'ils sont fort bien dans le jardin.	Because they are very well in the garden.
C'est vrai.	It is true.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Voulez-vous entendre de la poésie?	Do you wish to hear some poetry?
Si vous le voulez bien.	If you please.

---

* See note on page 8.

Quelle touchante description!	What an affecting description!
Quelles belles pensées!	What beautiful thoughts!
Ce poëte est sublime.	This poet is sublime.
C'est un homme de génie.	He is a man of genius.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *Dieu* and *art?* *—14.
Of what gender are *pensée* and *poésie?*—15.
Of what gender is *justice?*—21.
Of what gender is *production?*—99.
Why do we say *d'entre*, and not *de entre?*—11.
In what mood is *persuader?*—121.
What does *au* stand for?—55.
What is the feminine of *paresseux?*—142.
What is the feminine of *touchant?*—2.
What is the feminine of *sublime?*—6.

Dixième comes from *dix*, ten (44), from the Latin *decem*, as can be seen in the derivative *décembre*, December.

204. Plupart is formed of two words: *plus*, more, most, already seen, and *part*, part, from the Latin *pars*. It is feminine, and always preceded by the article *la*. According to its formation, **la plupart** signifies the most part, the greatest or the major part, the generality. It is called a partitive collective. See Syntax, Nos. 220, 221, 222.

205. There are two sorts of collective words: the general and the partitive. The general collective words are those which

---

* See notes on page 17.

denote the whole of the persons or things spoken of, as: *the army*, *the multitude*, *the people*, *the crowd*. The partitive collective words designate but a part or an undetermined number of the persons or things mentioned, as: *the major part*, *a number*, *a species*, *a sort*. Among the latter are included the adverbs of quantity, as: *Peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many; *assez*, enough; *moins*, less; *plus*, more, etc.

206. The same word may be generally or partially collective, according as it is used, as: "*Le nombre de ses enfants*, the number of his children; *Un grand nombre d'enfants*, a great number of children," or "many children." When a collective substantive is preceded by *un* or *une*, it is commonly partitive.

Prétendent is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *prétendre*, derived from *tendre*, already mentioned.

207. The third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ent**. These last three letters are mute.

208. Pré, from the Latin *præ*, before, is, in French, an inseparable particle, generally denoting priority or superiority. Many of the derivatives in which it is found are nearly the same in French and in English, as: *Préambule*, preamble; *précaution*, precaution; *prédominer*, to predominate; *préférer*, to prefer. Sometimes it corresponds to the English prefix *fore*, as: *Prévoir*, to foresee; *prédire*, to foretell.

In *prétendre*, *pré* has the sense of *forward* or *forth*, and this verb signifies literally *to stretch forth*, *to hold out*. It has two acceptations in French: firstly, *to lay claim*, *to aspire*; secondly, *to mean*, *to intend*, *to maintain*, *to contend*. With the latter meaning it governs the infinitive without a preposition; with the former, it requires the preposition *à* (187, 188).

Être has been mentioned in the fifth lesson.

Poëte, mentioned in the ninth lesson, is masculine, notwithstanding its termination (15), even when it refers to a woman.

Ou is a conjunction corresponding to *or*, *either*, or *else*. It differs from the adverb *où*, where, in not having an accent over the *u*. The pronunciation of both words is the same.

ARTISTE is derived from *art*, from the Latin *ars*, *artis*, art. It is masculine or feminine according as it is used in speaking of a man or of a woman. The principal derivatives of ART are: *Artifice*, artifice, art, contrivance; *artificiel*, artificial; *artificieux*, artful; *artisan*, artisan, mechanic; *artistique*, artist-like, etc.

209. The termination **iste** is found in many words which are the same in both languages, except that the *e* mute, used in French, is suppressed in English, as: *Sophiste*, *journaliste*, *moraliste*, *naturaliste*, *fataliste*, *royaliste*, *fabuliste*, *oculiste*. This termination generally denotes a member of a sect or of a corporation, whether literary, religious, or political; or one given to some intellectual or mechanical occupation, expressed by the radical.

BEAUCOUP is an adverb of quantity, corresponding to *much* and *many*, and is used either in the singular or the plural.

210. **Entre**, from the Latin *inter*, between, is a preposition corresponding to *between*, *betwixt*, *among*, and *amongst*. The elision of the final *e* in this word is authorized only in compounds, such as: *Entr'acte*, interval between the acts; *s'entr'aider*, to help one another. It would be improper to write *entr'eux*, as *entre* and *eux* do not form a compound word.

211. **Eux** is a personal pronoun, generally corresponding to *them* and sometimes to *they*. It is masculine and plural.

FINISSENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *finir*, to finish, derived from *fin*, end, from the Latin *finis*. The principal derivatives of FIN are: *Afin*, in order, to the end; *enfin*, finally, at last, in fine; *défini*, definite; *définir*, to define; *indéfini*, indefinite; *infini*, infinite; and a number of others which will be found explained amongst the words alike or nearly so in both languages, as: *Affinité*, affinity; *infinitif*, infinitive; *définition*, etc., etc.

212. The third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **issent** (196, § 2).

MÊME, seen in the fourth lesson as an adjective, is an adverb in this lesson (101).

SE, in this lesson, signifies *to themselves* (65).

PERSUADER comes from the Latin *persuadere*, to persuade,

from *suadere*, to advise. Its derivatives are: *Persuasif*, persuasive; *dissuader*, to dissuade; *dissuasion*, *persuasion*, etc.

213. Per is a Latin preposition, signifying *by*, *for*, *on*, or *through*. It is used in French as an inseparable particle, generally meaning *thoroughly* or completely; *persuader* is literally *to advise thoroughly*, or beyond the possibility of a doubt. It is often altered into **par**, and forms derivatives, many of which are nearly the same in French as in English, as: *Percevoir*, to perceive; *perforer*, to perforate; *parfumer*, to perfume; *persécuter*, to persecute; *parfait*, perfect; *perfection*.

Ils is the plural of *il*, seen in the third lesson (64).

Voulons is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

Dire is the infinitive of *dit* and *disait*, seen in the first and third lessons. It is an irregular verb.

Soient is the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

Dieu comes from the Latin *Deus*, God. Its derivative *adieu* is often used in English.

Plaise is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the irregular verb *plaire*, coming from the Latin *placere*, to please, the principal derivatives of which are: *Déplaire*, to displease; *plaisir*, pleasure; *déplaisir*, displeasure; *plaisant*, comical; *plaisanterie*, pleasantry, jest, joke; *complaisance*, *complaisant*, etc.

À dieu ne plaise is a gallicism, signifying literally *Let it not please God*, and corresponding to *God forbid*.

Ayons is the first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

Pareille is the feminine of *pareil*, formed by doubling the final consonant and adding *e* mute, on account of its termination *eil* (184). The derivative *nonpareil*, unequalled, is often used in English.

Pensée is derived from the verb *penser*, to think, seen in the first lesson.

Justice is derived from the adjective *juste*, just, coming from the Latin *justus*. It is feminine, notwithstanding its termination

ice (21). The principal derivatives of JUSTE are: *Ajustement*, adjustment; *ajuster*, to adjust; *injuste*, unjust; *justesse*, justness; *justifier*, to justify; and a number of other words which will be found explained amongst the words alike or nearly so in both languages, as: *Injustice*, *justification*, *justificatif*, justificative, etc., etc.

VEUT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

RENDIONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *rendre*, coming from the Latin *reddere*. Its derivative *rendez-vous* is often used in English.

214. The first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ions**.

HOMMAGE is derived from *homme*, seen in the second lesson. It is masculine.

215. The termination **age** enters into the formation of numerous substantives, many of which are the same, or nearly the same, in both languages, as: *Courage*, *équipage*, *outrage*, *patronage*, *présage*, *village*, *avantage*, advantage; *dommage*, damage; *langage*, language. The substantives in **age** are masculine.

216. The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Ambages*, circumlocutions in speech; *cage*, cage; *image*, image; *nage*, swimming; *page*, page (of a book); *plage*, beach; and *rage*, rage, madness, hydrophobia; which are feminine.

GÉNIE comes from the Latin *genius*. It is masculine, and therefore is an exception (15). Its principal derivatives are: *Ingénieux*, ingenious; *ingénu*, ingenuous; *ingénuité*, ingenuousness, etc.

RÉEL comes from the Latin *realis*, real, derived from *res*, thing. Its principal derivatives are: *Réaliser*, to realize; *réalisation*, *réalisable*, *réalité*, reality; *réellement*, really, etc.

217. There are about 90 adjectives ending in **el** in French and in **al** in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*, as: *Réel*, real; *accidentel*, accidental; *annuel*, annual; *continuel*, continual; *éternel*, eternal; *addi-*

tionnel, additional; *conditionnel*, conditional; *ponctuel*, punctual (30).

ADMIRONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *admirer* (28), which is derived from *mirer*, to look, to have in view, from the Latin *mirari*, to stare. The principal derivatives of *mirer* are: *Admirable*, *admiration*, *admirateur*, admirer; *miroir*, mirror, looking-glass, etc.

218. **Il y a** is the present tense of the indicative mood of the impersonal verb **y avoir**, there to be. *Il y a* signifies there is or there are; *il y avait*, there was or there were. Throughout the whole conjugation, the verb *avoir* is used instead of the verb *être*, and is preceded by *il y*. In interrogations, *y* remains before the verb and *il* is placed after it, as: *Y a-t-il*, is there or are there; *y avait-il*, was there or were there.

SUBLIME comes from the Latin *sublimis*. It is the same in both languages.

TOUCHANT is derived from the verb *toucher*, to touch, from the Italian *toccare*.

219. The termination **ant**, already seen as that of the present participle (115), serves to form a great number of adjectives, called verbal adjectives. In other words, the present participle is often used as an adjective, in French as well as in English.

PRODUCTION is derived from *duire* (182), mentioned in the fourth lesson.

POÉSIE has been mentioned in the ninth lesson.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say "*Se persuader*," and not "*Persuader se?*" * —43.

Why do we say "*Nous* NE *voulons* PAS," and not "*Nous voulons* NE PAS?"—38.

Why do we say "*Tous* LES *poëtes*, LA *justice veut*, *hommage*

---

* See notes on page 17.

AU *génie*, L'*art*, LA *poésie*," and not "*Tous poëtes, justice veut, hommage à génie, art, poésie?*"—35.

Why is *rendre* in the subjunctive mood in the phrase "*La justice veut que nous rendions?*"—81.

La plupart des paresseux **prétendent.**
Beaucoup de paresseux **finissent.**
Beaucoup d'entre eux **finissent.**

The verbs *prétendent* and *finissent* agree with the substantive *paresseux*, which is in the plural number.

220. When a partitive collective noun, as *la plupart* (204, 205), or an adverb of quantity, as *beaucoup* (205), is followed by *de* and a substantive, the verb, adjective, participle, and pronoun agree with the latter substantive or with the pronoun which supplies its place, as in "*Beaucoup d'entre* EUX *finissent.*"

Beaucoup **de** *paresseux.*
Un grand nombre **de** *paresseux.*
La plupart **des** *paresseux.*

221. After an adverb of quantity or a partitive collective noun, the preposition DE is commonly used *without* the article, unless the next substantive be determined by some incidental clause. But **la plupart** is an exception, and requires the compound article after it.

La plupart prétendent.

222. **La plupart** is sometimes employed elliptically without a substantive after it. In this case, the following verb is always in the plural number, agreeing with a plural subject understood.

Beaucoup **d'entre** *eux.*

223. Some prepositions may govern others. *De* sometimes governs *après*, after; *avec*, with; *en*, in; *entre*, between; *chez*, in the house of; *par*, by; *près*, *auprès*, near.

Ils finissent par se persuader qu'ils **le** *sont* (i. e., *qu'ils sont* **poëtes** *ou* **artistes**).

224. The pronoun **le** may represent either *a substantive*, or *an adjective*, or *a verb*, or *a preposition*. In the first case only it is variable, and takes the gender and number of the substantive which it represents: it then becomes **la** in the feminine and **les** in the plural of both genders (27). In the other cases, and particularly when it represents an adjective, or even a substantive used adjectively, as *poëtes* and *artistes* in the above example, it is invariable. To these questions: 1stly, *Are they poets?* 2dly, *Are they the poets that we know?* we should, in consequence, answer: 1stly, *Ils* LE *sont;* 2dly, *Ils* LES *sont.*

Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils **soient**.

225. When a verb is subjoined to a negative or an interrogative preposition, the subjunctive mood is generally required, unless this subjoined verb expresses a positive, incontestable fact. Thus: "*Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils* SOIENT *paresseux*," signifies, *We do not mean to say that they are idle* (they may be so or not); and "*Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils* SONT *paresseux*," implies that *We know they* ARE *idle*, but *We will not say that they are so.*

La justice **veut** *que nous* **rendions**.

226. The present tense of the subjunctive mood is employed after the present tense of the indicative.

Nous rendons hommage.

It has been said (35) that, with few exceptions, the substantive must be preceded by the article. The above phrase presents one of these exceptions.

227. The article is not used when substantives are combined with certain verbs, as *avoir*, *faire*, *rendre*, *entendre*, and a few more, with which they express a single idea, as: *Avoir peur*, to have fear, to be afraid; *faire mal*, to do harm, to hurt; *rendre*

hommage, to do homage, to reverence; *entendre raison*, to hear reason, to be sensible.

---

*Aussi admirons-***nous**.
Aussi **nous** *admirons.*

228. A personal pronoun, used as a subject, generally precedes the verb. It may follow it, however, after the words *aussi*, also; *peut-être*, perhaps; *encore*, yet, still; *toujours*, still; *en vain*, in vain; *du moins*, *au moins*, at least.

LEXICOLOGY.

Many words beginning with **pre** or **pér** are the same or nearly the same in French and in English. Ex. *Prétendre,* to pretend, *persuader,* to persuade, etc. See Obs. 208 and 213.

The termination **iste** is found in a great number of substantives and adjectives which are alike in both languages, except that the final *e* mute used in French is suppressed in English. Ex. *Artiste*, artist. See Obs. 209.

A number of substantives ending with **age** are alike or nearly so in both languages. Ex. *Hommage*, homage, *courage*, courage, etc. See Obs. 215.

About 90 adjectives ending with **al** in English become French by changing **al** into **el**. Ex. Real, *réel*. See Obs. 217.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Ajouter,	To add.	*Miracle*,	Miracle.
A part,	Apart, aside.	*Pair*,	Peer.
Appartement,	Apartment.	*Paire*,	Pair, couple.
Comparaison,	Comparison.	*Partage*,	Share.
Comparer,	To compare.	*Partager*,	To share.
Complimenter,	To compliment.	*Participe*,	Participle.
Décimer,	To decimate.	*Participer*,	To participate.
Départ,	Departure.	*Particule*,	Particle.
Deviner,	To guess.	*Partir*,	To depart.
Divin,	Divine.	*Plaisanter*,	To jest.
Impair,	Odd, uneven.	*Repartie*,	Repartee.
Ingénieur,	Engineer.	*Séparer*,	To separate.

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Ils prétendent.* See Obs. 207.—They hear—They put—They answer—They render—They follow—They suspend.

2. Model: *Prétendre.* See Obs. 208.—(*To be translated into English.*)—*Précéder*—*Précepteur*—*Précipiter*—*Prédestiner*—*Prédire*—*Préluder*—*Préoccuper*—*Préparer*—*Préserver*—*Présider*—*Présomptueux*—*Préventif.*

3. Model: *Artiste.* See Obs. 209.—(*To be translated into English.*)—*Généalogiste*—*Chronologiste*—*Naturaliste*—*Evangéliste*—*Oculiste*—*Physionomiste*—*Chimiste*—*Organiste*—*Optimiste*—*Copiste*—*Coloriste*—*Egoïste*—*Linguiste.*

4. Model: *Ils finissent.* See Obs. 212.—They free—They fall asleep—They reunite—They establish—They re-establish.

5. Model: *Persuader.* See Obs. 213.—(*To be translated into English.*)—*Perfidie*—*Perforateur*—*Perpendiculairement*—*Persécuteur*—*Persévérer*—*Persister.*

6. Model: *Que nous rendions.* See Obs. 214.—That we may or should hear—That we may or should put—That we may or should answer—That we may or should follow—That we may or should suspend—That we may or should pretend.

7. Model: *Un hommage.* See Obs. 215.—An adage—A bandage—An assemblage—The pillage—The village—The plumage—The suffrage—An outrage—His courage—His passage—His message—His voyage.

8. Model: *Réel.* See Obs. 217.—(*Translate into English.*)—*Matériel*—*Substantiel*—*Providentiel*—*Essentiel*—*Formel*—*Criminel*—*Constitutionnel*—*Proportionnel*—*Personnel*—*Paternel*—*Maternel.*

9. Model: *Il y a.* See Obs. 218.—There is a man—There are two children—There was a house—There were some artists—Is there a shop?—Are there any benches?—Was there a child?—Were there any gardens?

---

* See note on page 12.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. The major part of those men *do* [render] you justice —204, 220.

2. Most of those idlers hear you, but do not answer you—204, 220.

3. The major part of those commercial houses *stopped* [suspended] their payments—204, 220.

4. Most of those children answer well—204, 220.

5. Many men answer without thinking—205, 220.

6. Many workmen *make a fortune in the end* [finish by making a fortune]—205, 220.

7. Few men free themselves from all restraint—205, 220.

8. This poet has much success.

9. We do not study much, because we have not much time.

10. There are *a great* many shops in this street—218.

11. There are many benches in the garden—218.

12. Is there a bridge at the end of the street?—218.

13. Are there many fine houses on the boulevards?—218.

14. Are there any workmen in the garden?—218.

15. There are some poets without genius—218.

16. There was some water in the shop—218.

17. There were some payments *to be made* [to make]—218.

18. There were some children before the shop—218.

19. Is there any genius in an idiot?—218.

20. Are there any fine thoughts in that poem?—218.

21. Were there many children in that school?—218.

22. Is there a joiner in the street?—218.

23. Was there a plane on the joiner's bench?—218.

24. He has but one son, and he places him in a commercial house—224.

25. He looks *at* his mother as if he saw her for the first time —224.

---

* See notes on page 13.

26. She stops before the shops, and she looks *at* them attentively—224.

27. Those men are active; you know that they are so—224.

28. They pretend that their shops are fine, but they are not so—224.

29. We do not think that these shops are large enough—225, 226.

30. He does not think that we have forgotten him—225, 226.

31. He does not wish that we should hear him—225, 226.

32. Does he think that we shall answer him?—225, 226.

33. Does he wish that we should follow his example?—225, 226.

34. He passes his time in lounging about the streets; *consequently* [also] he is looked *upon* as an idler—203, 228.

ELEVENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Onzième leçon.
Eleventh

Seulement nous avons remarqué que
Only have remarked

bien des gens s'imaginent avoir le feu
many people imagine to have fire

sacré, et sentir "*du ciel l'influence*
sacred to feel heaven influence

***secrete*," pour peu qu' ils aient barbouillé**
secret if ever so little have daubed

quelques feuilles de papier et qu'ils
sheets paper

aiment à se promener les bras croisés
love walk about arms crossed (folded)

et le nez tourné vers les cieux. Ces
nose turned towards heavens (skies)

insignifiants personnages, | bien qu' | ils
insignificant personages though

croupissent dans l'inaction et qu'ils ne
wallow inaction

rendent aucun service à la société,
render no (not any) service society

regardent les travailleurs comme infini-
look upon laborers infinite-

ment | au-dessous d' | eux.
ly below

---

* See 1st note on page 117. ** See 2d note on page 117.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

But we have observed that many people imagine they possess the sacred fire, and fancy they feel the secret influence of heaven, because they have scribbled over a few sheets of paper, and are fond of walking about with their arms folded and with their noses turned up towards the skies. These insignificant people, though they give way to idleness and do no service to society, look upon pains-taking men as far below them.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION *

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la onzième.
Qui est-ce qui s'imagine avoir le feu sacré?	Bien des gens.
Qu'est-ce que bien des gens s'imaginent avoir?	Le feu sacré.
Qu'est-ce que bien des gens s'imaginent sentir?	Du ciel l'influence secrète.
Qu'est-ce que ces gens barbouillent?	Quelques feuilles de papier.
En quelle occasion ces gens s'imaginent-ils avoir le feu sacré?	Pour peu qu'ils aient barbouillé quelques feuilles de papier.
Que tournent-ils vers les cieux?	Le nez.
Vers quoi tournent-ils le nez?	Vers les cieux.
Qu'aiment-ils à faire, les bras croisés et le nez tourné vers les cieux?	Ils aiment à se promener.
Comment aiment-ils à se promener?	Les bras croisés et le nez tourné vers les cieux.
Ces personnages sont-ils utiles?	Ils sont insignifiants.
Dans quoi croupissent-ils?	Dans l'inaction.
Quels sont les hommes qui croupissent dans l'inaction?	Ces insignifiants personnages.
A qui ne rendent-ils aucun service?	A la société.
Qui regardent-ils comme infiniment au-dessous d'eux?	Les travailleurs.
Comment regardent-ils les travailleurs?	Comme infiniment au-dessous d'eux.

---

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Il y a une citation dans cette leçon.	There is a citation (quotation) in this lesson.
Sentir du ciel l'influence secrète est une inversion poétique.	To feel of heaven the secret influence is a poetical inversion.
C'est une expression de Boileau.	It is an expression of Boileau's.
Boileau est un poëte français.	Boileau is a French poet.
C'est un bon poëte.	He is a good poet.
C'est un des meilleurs poëtes français.	He is one of the best French poets.
Son *Art poétique* est excellent.	His "Art of Poetry" is excellent.
Mais ce poëte n'est pas un génie sublime.	But this poet is not a sublime genius.
Il n'est pas même touchant.	He is not even affecting.
Qu'est-il donc?	What is he then?
Il est surtout satirique.	He is principally satirical.
Il y a de basses flatteries dans quelques-unes de ses compositions.	There is base flattery in some of his compositions.
C'est indigne d'un homme de génie.	It is unworthy of a man of genius.
Aimez-vous la poésie?	Are you fond of poetry?
Beaucoup.	Very.
Nous avons étudié les meilleurs poëtes.	We have studied the best poets.
Nous avons même barbouillé quelques feuilles de papier.	We have even scribbled over some sheets of paper.
Aimez-vous à vous promener les bras croisés?	Are you fond of walking about with your arms folded?
Quelquefois.	Sometimes.
Où vous promenez-vous?	Where do you walk?
Dans notre jardin.	In our garden.
Nous y passons trois ou quatre heures tous les jours.	We pass three or four hours there every day.
Voulez-vous suivre notre exemple?	Will you follow our example?
Pas pour cette fois.	Not for this time.

* See note on page 3.

Un autre jour, si vous le voulez bien.	Another day, if you please.
Nous ne pouvons pas demeurer plus longtemps.	We cannot remain longer.
Quelle heure est-il donc?	What o'clock is it then?
Il est onze heures.	It is eleven o'clock.
Adieu.	Farewell.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *feu*, *ciel*, *papier*, *bras*, and *nez?* *—14.
Of what gender is *personnage?*—215.
Of what gender is *service?*—20.
Of what gender are *influence* and *feuille?*—15.
Of what gender is *inaction?*—99.
What is the radical of *seulement?*—32.
What is the infinitive of *barbouillé?*—52.
What is the singular of *feuilles?*—29.
What is the singular masculine of *croisés?*—53.
What is the plural feminine of *croisé?*—53.
What is the feminine of *insignifiant?*—2.
What is the feminine of *aucun?*—2.
What is the radical of *infiniment?*—170, 31.
Why do we say "D'*eux*," and not "DE *eux?*"—11.

ONZIÈME is derived from *onze*, eleven (44).

229. There is a peculiarity in the word **onze** and its derivative **onzieme**: although they begin with a vowel, the elision

---

* See notes on page 17.

or suppression of *e* in *que*, *le*, *la*, or *de*, when any of these words precede them, does not take place. Instead of saying "L'*onzième leçon*," or, "*Il n'avait appris* QU'*onze leçons*," we say "LA *onzième leçon*, *Il n'avait appris* QUE *onze leçons*."

AVONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir*.

REMARQUÉ is the past participle of *remarquer* (52), derived from *marque*, mark. Its principal derivatives are: *Marquer*, to mark; *marqueur*, marker; *remarquable*, remarkable; *remarque*, remark, etc.

230. **Bien**, seen in the fifth lesson in the sense of *well*, becomes a synonym of *beaucoup*, when it is combined with the compound article *du*, *de la*, *des*, and corresponds to *much* and *many*, as: *Bien du tort*, much injury; *bien de l'influence*, much influence; *bien des artistes*, many artists; *bien des gens*, many people.

GENS, which signifies *people*, *folks*, or *persons*, is masculine, and is used only in the plural. Its derivative *gendarme*, formerly spelled *gens d'armes*, is sometimes met with in English.

IMAGINENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *imaginer*, derived from *image*, image, from the Latin *imago*, having the same sense. The verb *imaginer* often takes the pronominal form (180) when it signifies *to figure to one's self*. The pronoun *se*, which precedes it, is its indirect regimen. This verb is one of those which govern the infinitive mood without a preposition (187).

231. The third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ent** (207, 212).

AVOIR is the infinitive mood of the auxiliary verb, of which the following forms have been seen already: *eu*, *il a*, *il avait*, *il eut*, *ils eurent*, *nous ayons*, *il eût*, *nous avons*.

FEU comes from the Latin *focus*, fire. Its derivative *feu de joie*, bonfire, is sometimes used in English. The plural of *feu* is *feux*.

232. Substantives ending in **eu** and **au** form their plural with **x** instead of *s*.

SACRÉ is derived from the verb *sacrer*, to consecrate, coming

from the Latin *sacrare*, the principal derivatives of which are: *Consacrer*, to consecrate; *sacrement*, sacrament; *sacrifier*, to sacrifice; and a number of other words which will be found explained amongst those alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Consécration*, *exécration*, *sacrifice*, *sacrilége*, etc., etc.

SENTIR is an irregular verb, derived from the substantive *sens*, sense, coming from the Latin *sensus*, sense, feeling. The principal derivatives of *sens* are: *Consentir*, to consent; *consentement*, consent; *pressentiment*, presentiment; and a number of other words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Sensible*, *insensible*, *sentiment*, *sentimental*, *sensibilité*, sensibility, etc., etc.

CIEL comes from the Latin *cœlum*, heaven, as can be seen from the derivative *céleste*, celestial, heavenly.

233. **Ciel** has two forms in the plural: **ciels** and **cieux**. *Ciels* is used only in the following instances: *ciels de tableaux*, skies in painting; *ciels de lit*, testers of a bed; *ciels de carrière*, the first layers or strata in a quarry; *ciels*, climates, as, "*L'Italie est sous un des plus beaux* CIELS *de l'Europe*, Italy is one of the finest climates of Europe." In any other case, *cieux* is employed.

INFLUENCE is a word alike in both languages (167).

234. **In** is not always negative (170). It is often a mere transformation of **en**, signifying *in*, *within*, and corresponding to the same particle in English, as: *Influence*, influence; *incorporer*, to incorporate; *invasion*, invasion.

SECRÈTE is the feminine of the adjective *secret* (184, 185), coming from the substantive *secret*, a secret. Its principal derivatives are: *Discret*, discreet; *indiscret*, indiscreet; *discrétion*, *indiscrétion*, etc., etc.

235. **Pour peu que** is a gallicism which corresponds to the English expressions, *ever so little*, or, *at all*, as: "*Pour peu qu'ils regardent*, If they look ever so little;" or, "If they look at all." This conjunctive form is followed by the subjunctive mood (244).

AIENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the irregular verb *avoir*.

BARBOUILLÉ is the past participle of the verb *barbouiller* (52), to daub, to smear, to scribble, which is derived from *barbe*, beard,

from the Latin *barba*, as can be seen from the derivative *barbier*, barber.

Feuille comes from the Latin *folium*, leaf. Its principal derivatives are: *Feuilleton*, small sheet, feuilleton; *folio*, folio; *portefeuille*, portfolio, etc.

Papier comes from the Latin *papyrus*, the name of that plant, the bark of which was used to write on.

Aiment is the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *aimer*, to love, to like, to be fond of, which comes from the Latin *amare*, and the principal derivatives of which are: *Aimable*, amiable; *amateur*, lover, amateur; *aménité*, amenity; *ami*, friend; *amitié*, friendship; *amour*, love; *amour-propre*, self-love, etc., etc.

236. The third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ent**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative (231).

Se promener, derived from *mener*, has been mentioned in the eighth lesson (182).

Bras comes from the Latin *brachium*, arm. It does not take any additional letter in the plural (17). The principal derivatives of *bras* are: *Bracelet*, bracelet, armlet, and *embrasser*, to embrace, to throw one's arm around.

Croisés is the plural of *croisé*, the past participle of the verb *croiser* (53, 63), derived from *croix*, cross, which comes from the Latin *crux*. The principal derivatives of *croix* are: *Croisade*, crusade; *crucifix*, crucifix; *crucifier*, to crucify, etc.

Nez comes from the Latin *nasus*, nose. It does not take any additional termination in the plural.

237. Substantives ending in **z** do not change their termination in the plural.

Tourné is the past participle of *tourner* (52), derived from *tour*, turn, lathe, from the Latin *tornus*, lathe.

Vers is a radical mentioned in the sixth lesson.

Cieux is the irregular plural of *ciel*, seen in this lesson (233).

Insignifiant is derived from *signe*, sign, which comes from the Latin *signum*, sign. The principal derivatives of *signe* are: *Assigner*, to assign; *consigner*, to consign; *désigner*, to desig-

nate; *résigner*, to resign; *signàler*, to signalize; *signer*, to sign; *signifier*, to signify; and a number of other words much the same in both languages, as: *Assignat*, *résignation*, *signal*, *signature*, etc., etc.

PERSONNAGE (215) is derived from *personne*, person, coming from the Latin *persona*, the principal derivatives of which are: *Personnalité*, personality; *personnel*, personal; *personnifier*, to personify; *personnification*, personification, etc.

BIEN QUE is a conjunction corresponding to *though* or *although*. It is followed by the subjunctive mood (244).

CROUPISSENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the verb *croupir*.

238. The third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **issent**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative (212, 236, 239).

INACTION is a derivative of *agir*, to act (49, 170).

RENDENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *rendre*, seen in the tenth lesson.

239. The third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ent**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative (207, 236).

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliary verbs, in the following phrases:

"*Pour peu qu'ils aim*ENT *à se promener.*"—11th lesson.

"*Bien qu'ils croup*ISSENT *dans l'inaction.*"—11th lesson.

"*Bien qu'ils ne rend*ENT *aucun service.*"—11th lesson.

"*Nous ne voulons pas dire qu'ils* SOIENT *des paresseux.*"—10th lesson.

"*Pour peu qu'ils* AIENT *barbouillé.*"—11th lesson.

240. Aucun, from the Italian *alcuno*, contracted from the Latin *aliquis unus*, any one, is an indefinite adjective corresponding to *any*, and, with a negation, to *no*, *none*, *not one*. It is seldom used in the plural. Its feminine is *aucune*. Its only

derivative is *aucunement*, by no means, on no account, not at all.

SERVICE is the same in French and in English (20).

SOCIÉTÉ comes from the Latin *societas*, society, derived from *socius*, partner, companion. It is feminine (241). Most of the derivatives of this word are alike; or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Associer*, to associate; *association*, *social*, *socialisme*, socialism; *socialiste*, socialist, etc., etc.

241. Substantives ending in **té** are very numerous in French; most of them come from Latin words in *tas* and have their correspondents in English in *ty*, as: *Société*, society; *liberté*, liberty; *nécessité*, necessity. They are feminine.

242. The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Aparté*, words spoken aside; *arrêté*, resolution; *bénédicité*, blessing; *comité*, committee; *comté*, county; *côté*, side; *député*, deputy; *été*, summer; *jeté*, jeté (in dancing); *pâté*, pie; *précipité*, precipitate; *traité*, treaty; *velouté*, velveting; which are masculine.

REGARDENT is a form (231) of the verb *regarder*, seen in the seventh lesson.

TRAVAILLEUR is derived from *travailler*, to work, coming from *travail*, work, labor.

243. Many substantives are formed from verbs by means of the termination **eur**, which denotes the agent or the person who performs the action expressed by the verb. This termination corresponds to the English termination *er*, as in *reader*, from the verb *to read*. Thus, from the verb *penser*, to think, we form *penseur*, thinker; from *rêver*, to dream, *rêveur*, dreamer; from *recevoir*, to receive, *receveur*, receiver; from *flâner*, to loiter, *flâneur*, loiterer; from *barbouiller*, to daub, *barbouilleur*, dauber.

INFINIMENT is derived from *fin*, mentioned in the tenth lesson (170, 31).

AU DESSOUS DE is a preposition derived from *sous*, under, coming from the Latin *sub*.

SYNTAX.

Why does not the participle *barbouillé* agree with its direct regimen *feuilles*, which is feminine and plural? *—106.

Why should we not say "*Quelques feuilles* DU *papier*," instead of "*Quelques feuilles* DE *papier?*"—161.

Why is the participle *croisés* used in the plural?—63.

Why should we not say "*Dans inaction, regardent travailleurs, à société*," instead of "*Dans* L'*inaction, regardent* LES *travailleurs, à* LA *société?*"—35.

Why do we say "LES *bras croisés,* LE *nez tourné vers les cieux*," rather than "LEURS *bras croisés,* LEUR *nez tourné vers les cieux?*"—62.

Pour peu qu'ils aient.
Bien qu'ils croupissent.

The two verbs *aient* and *croupissent* are in the subjunctive mood.

244. The subjunctive mood is required after the following conjunctions and connective phrases:

Afin que, in order that.
A moins que, unless.
Avant que, before.
En cas que, au cas que, in case that.
Bien que, quoique, though.
De peur que, de crainte que, lest.
Encore que, even though.
Jusqu'à ce que, till, until.
Loin que, far.
Non que, not that.
Nonobstant que, malgré que, notwithstanding.
Posé que, admitting that.
Pour que, in order that.
Pour peu que, if—ever so little.
Pourvu que, provided.
Sans que, without, *or*, but that.
Si peu que, ever so little.
Si tant est que, if so be that.
Soit que, whether.
Supposé que, supposing that.
Et que, and that—when this last expression is only an abbreviative form of one of the foregoing, as in the example given in the text: "ET QU'*ils aiment*," for "ET POUR PEU QU'*ils aiment*."

---

* See notes on page 17.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 250 ubstantives ending with **ty** in English become French by changing *ty* into *té*. Ex. Society, *société*. See Obs. 241.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Asservir,	To enslave.	*Indigène*,	Native.
Conserver,	To keep.	*Narine*,	Nostril.
Croisée,	Window.	*Observer*,	To observe.
Dégénérer,	To degenerate.	*Préserver*,	To preserve.
Dessein,	Design, plan.	*Régénérer*,	To regenerate.
Engendrer,	To engender.	*Réserver*,	To reserve.
Ennemi,	Enemy.	*Réservoir*,	Reservoir.
Enseigner,	To teach.	*Sacré*,	Sacred, holy.
Entourer,	To surround.	*Sacristie*,	Vestry.
Fleuve,	River.	*Secrétaire*,	Secretary.
Flot,	Wave, billow.	*Sensé*,	Sensible.
Flotte,	Fleet.	*Serf*,	Serf.
Flotter,	To float.	*Servante*,	Maid-servant.
Fluide,	Fluid.	*Serviteur*,	Servant.
Gendre,	Son-in-law.	*Tourne-vis*,	Screw-driver.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *La onzième.* See Obs. 229.—The eleventh day—The eleventh lesson—He saw but eleven men—He stops at the eleventh bridge.

2. Model: *Bien des gens.* See Obs. 230.—Much aversion—Many shops—Many things—Many hopes—Much genius—Much indolence—Much influence—Much time.

3. Model: *Ils imaginent.* See Obs. 231.—They stop—They admire—They love—They daub—They correct—They flow—

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

They give—They desire—They dwell—They exercise—They examine—They study—They force—They loiter—They frequent—They guide—They forget—They think—They pass—They possess—They pronounce—They persuade—They turn.

4. Model: *Influence.* See Obs. 234.—(*Translate into English.*)—*Inaugurer*—*Incarcérer*—*Incisif*—*Incliner*—*Inclusivement*—*Inflammabilité*—*Infuser*—*Initier*—*Inondation.*

5. Model: *Pour peu qu'ils aiment.* See Obs. 235, 236.—If they stop at all—If they love ever so little—If they give at all—If they desire at all—If they study ever so little—If they loiter ever so little—If they think at all.

6. Model: *Bien qu'ils* CROUPISSENT *dans l'inaction et qu'ils ne* RENDENT *aucun service.* See Obs. 238, 239.—Though they free themselves—Though they slumber—Though they hear—Though they stretch themselves—Though they finish—Though they put—Though they pretend—Though they reunite—Though they answer—Though they follow—Though they suspend.

7. Model: *La société.* See Obs. 241.—An absurdity—Her beauty—His brutality—This calamity—The capacity—A cavity—The city—His civility—Her credulity—What curiosity!—No difficulty—What impiety!—His majesty—Her quality.

8. Model: *Travailleur.* See Obs. 243.—(*Translate into English.*)—*Barbouilleur*—*Donneur*—*Flâneur*—*Penseur*—*Promeneur*—*Receveur*—*Tourneur.*

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Do you know all the lessons, from the first to the eleventh?—229.

2. Do you know that this lesson is the eleventh?—229.

3. He stopped *on* the eleventh day—229.

---

* See notes on page 13.

4. He had many lessons to learn—230.
5. That boy has many faults—230.
6. There are many workmen that are laborious—230, 141.
7. You have *a great* [much] aversion *to* [for] that trade—230.
8. They walk about in silence—231.
9. Those children love their father and mother—231.
10. Fathers who love their children correct them—231.
11. Joiners exercise their arms—231.
12. His sons study their lessons—231.
13. All mothers admire their children—231.
14. *Fires were seen* [one saw fires] on the bridges—232.
15. The heavens were *on* [in] fire—233.
16. They doze if they stop ever so little—212, 235, 236.
17. We do not believe that they *will* forget their lessons, if they study ever so little—225, 235, 236.
18. They tuck up their sleeves, if they work ever so little—231, 235, 236.
19. All *their* [the] noses were turned towards the sky—237.
20. Beauty is not her sole quality—241.
21. Curiosity is not always a fault—241.
22. Where is the difficulty?—241.
23. What is the difficulty that stops you?—241.
24. That man is not an artist; he is a dauber—243.
25. The turner's shop is at the end of the street—243, 56.
26. They do not like that poet, though they like poetry—231, 236, 244.
27. They do not answer, though they hear the question—207, 239, 244.
28. They are not lazy, though they free themselves from all restraint—238, 244.
29. We do not think that they *will* finish that house, though they unite all their efforts—225, 238, 244.

TWELFTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Douzième leçon.
Twelfth

Plusieurs des compagnons d'Alexis,
Several companions

ayant le même caractère que lui, contri-
having same character as contrib-

buaient à l'entretenir dans ces dispo-
uted keep dispo-

sitions oisives. "Nous serions bien fous,"
sitions idle should be very foolish

disaient-ils, "de bâiller sur des gram-
said to yawn gram-

maires et des dictionnaires, comme nous
mars dictionaries

le faisions à l'école, où nous périssions
did school were perishing

d'ennui, noircissant nos cahiers de mots
ennui blackening our copy-books words

que nous n'entendions guère, et attendant
understood but little waiting

impatiemment l'heure de la récréation."
impatiently recreation.

---

* See 1st note on page 117. ** See 2d note on page 117.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Several of the companions of Alexis, having the same character as himself, contributed to maintain him in this idle disposition. "We should be very foolish," said they, "to be yawning over grammars and dictionaries, as we used to do at school, where we were ready to die with ennui; blotting our copy-books with words that we scarcely understood, and waiting impatiently for the hour of play."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la douzième.
Qui est-ce qui avait le même caractère qu'Alexis?	Plusieurs de ses compagnons.
Quel caractère avaient plusieurs de ses compagnons?	Le même caractère que lui.
A quoi contribuaient-ils?	A l'entretenir dans ces dispositions oisives.
Qui est-ce qui disait: "Nous serions bien fous de bâiller sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires?"	Les compagnons d'Alexis;—*or*, Plusieurs compagnons d'Alexis.
Sur quoi seraient-ils fous de bâiller?	Sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires.
Où bâillaient-ils sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires?	A l'école.
De quoi périssaient-ils à l'école?	Ils périssaient d'ennui.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils noircissaient?	Leurs cahiers.
De quoi noircissaient-ils leurs cahiers?	De mots qu'ils n'entendaient guère.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils attendaient impatiemment?	L'heure de la récréation.
Comment attendaient-ils l'heure de la récréation?	Impatiemment.

---

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Où sont nos compagnons?	Where are our companions?
Ils sont à l'école.	They are at school.
Comment passent-ils leur temps?	How do they spend their time?
Ils étudient le grec et le latin.	They study Greek and Latin.
Ils noircissent leurs cahiers de mots qu'ils n'entendent guère.	They blacken their copy-books with words that they understand but little.
Aiment-ils cette occupation?	Do they like this occupation?
Ils périssent d'ennui.	They are dying with ennui.
Ils sont toujours à bâiller.	They are always yawning.
Pauvres jeunes gens!	Poor young people!
Ils sont bien tristes.	They are very sad.
Ils n'aiment pas la grammaire, bien qu'ils ne soient pas paresseux.	They do not like grammar, though they are not lazy.
Quand ils étaient chez eux, ils n'étaient jamais oisifs.	When they were at home, they were never idle.
On les voyait toujours faire quelque chose.	They were always seen doing something.
Vous savez qu'ils sont fort intelligents.	You know they are very intelligent.
Pourquoi donc ne sont-ils plus de même?	Why then are they no longer the same?
Il y a pour cela plusieurs raisons.	There are several reasons for it.
La première, c'est qu'ils n'étaient pas forcés de travailler.	The first is, they were not compelled to work.
Ils étaient seulement guidés par leur père, qui était bien bon pour eux.	They were only guided by their father, who was very kind to them.
Ils étudiaient des choses moins sérieuses que la grammaire.	They studied things less serious than grammar.
Vous avez bien de l'aversion pour la grammaire.	You have a strong aversion to grammar.

* See note on page 8.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *compagnon, ennui, cahier*, and *mot?* *—14.

Of what gender are *école* and *heure?*—15.

Of what gender are *disposition* and *récréation?*—99.

Why do we say "L'*entretenir*," and not "LE *entretenir?*"—11.

In what mood are *entretenir* and *bâiller?*—121.

What is the singular of *grammaires, dictionnaires, cahiers*, and *mots?*—29.

What does L'*école* stand for?—11.

What does D'*ennui* stand for?—11.

What does L'*heure* stand for?—11.

DOUZIÈME is derived from *douze*, twelve (44). Another very important derivative of this word is *douzaine*, dozen.

245. **Plusieurs** is an adjective, invariable, plural, and of both genders. It corresponds to *several, some, many*, and is sometimes used as an indefinite pronoun, thus: "*Plusieurs pensent*, some think, several (persons) think."

COMPAGNON is always of the masculine gender, the French of a female companion being *compagne*. The principal derivatives of this word are: *Compagnie*, company; *accompagner*, to accompany; *accompagnateur*, accompanist; and *accompagnement*, accompaniment.

AYANT is the present participle of the irregular verb *avoir*.

CARACTÈRE is masculine, notwithstanding the *e* mute which terminates it. Its derivatives are: *Caractériser*, to characterize, and *caractéristique*, characteristic.

---

* See notes on page 17.

246. Substantives ending in **tère** are masculine.

247. The exceptions are: *Artère*, artery; *estère*, rush-mat; and *patère*, peg, cloak-pin, patera, which are feminine.

CONTRIBUAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of the verb *contribuer*, derived from *tribu*, tribe (75). The principal derivatives of *tribu* are: *Attribuer*, to attribute; *distribuer*, to distribute; *rétribuer*, to remunerate; and a number of other words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Tribut*, tribute; *attribut*, attribute; *tributaire*, tributary; *contribution*, *distribution*, etc., etc.

248. The third person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **aient**.

ENTRETENIR is one of the derivatives of *tenir*, mentioned in the third lesson.

249. The preposition **entre** (210) which sometimes retains its Latin spelling, **inter**, forms various compounds, some of which being nearly similar in English will serve as an exemplification of the rest: *Entreprise*, enterprise; *intercéder*, to intercede; *entrelacer*, to interlace; *entrelarder*, to interlard; *entrevue*, interview; *interposer*, to interpose.

DISPOSITIONS is derived from the verb *poser*, to place, to set, to lay, a verb which enters into the formation of a number of others, as: *Composer*, to compose; *décomposer*, to decompose; *déposer*, to depose; *disposer*, to dispose; *exposer*, to expose, to exhibit; *imposer*, to impose; *opposer*, to oppose; *proposer*, to propose; *reposer*, to place again, to rest, to repose; *supposer*, to suppose; *transposer*, to transpose, etc.; and these in turn give rise to many more words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Compositeur*, composer, compositor; *dépositaire*, depositary; *positif*, positive; *repos*, repose; *position*, *composition*, *décomposition*, *exposition*, *imposition*, *indisposition*, *opposition*, *préposition*, *proposition*, *supposition*, *transposition*, etc., etc.

250. **Dis** is an inseparable particle, which has two very different meanings in the composition of words: the first, negative, as in *disgrâce*, disgrace, from *grâce*, grace; the second, intensive, denoting diffusion, or increasing the import of the radical word, as in *distendre*, to distend, from *tendre*, to stretch. It is some-

times shortened into *di*, as in *diminuer*, to diminish; and sometimes changed into *dif*, when the radical begins with *f*, as in *difforme*, deformed, from *forme*, form. Among the derivatives formed by means of this particle, many are nearly the same in French and in English.

Oisives is the plural of *oisive* (25), the feminine of *oisif*.

251. Adjectives ending in **f**, as *oisif*, form their feminine by changing this termination into **ve**.

Serions is the first person plural of the conditional mood of the irregular verb *être*.

Fou was formerly spelled *fol*, and this old form is still used before a substantive beginning with a vowel, or an *h* mute, as: "*Un fol espoir*, a vain hope; *Un fol hommage*, a foolish hommage." The feminine of *fou* and *fol* is *folle*. Its principal derivative is *folie*, madness, folly, insanity.

Disaient is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *dire*, mentioned in the 1st, 3d, and 10th lessons.

Bâiller is a verb in the infinitive mood (121).

Grammaire is of the feminine gender, though substantives ending with *aire* are generally masculine (254).

Dictionnaire is masculine, notwithstanding the final *e* mute.

252. The termination **aire** is common to substantives and adjectives, many of which end in English in *ary*, or in *ar*, as: *Secondaire*, secondary; *plagiaire*, plagiary; *salaire*, salary; *vocabulaire*, vocabulary; *mercenaire*, mercenary; *ordinaire*, ordinary; *contraire*, contrary; *notaire*, notary; *vulgaire*, vulgar; *similaire*, similar; *populaire*, popular, etc.

253. Substantives ending in **aire** are masculine.

254. This rule is subject however to a few exceptions, the principal of which are: *Affaire*, affair; *chaire*, pulpit; *circulaire*, circular; *grammaire*, grammar; *judiciaire*, judgment; *jugulaire*, jugular; *paire*, pair; and the names of some plants but seldom met with in ordinary conversation, like: *Cicutaire*, water-hemlock; *cymbalaire*, snapdragon; *dentaire*, dentaria; *linaire*, toad-flax; *lunaire*, moon-wort; *pulmonaire*, lung-wort, etc., etc.

Faisions is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *faire*, seen in the third lesson.

ÉCOLE comes from the Latin *schola*, school. Its principal derivatives are: *Ecolier*, scholar; *scolaire*, academic; *scolastique*, scholastic, etc.

PÉRISSIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *périr*, which comes from the Latin *perire*, to go through, to perish, and the principal derivatives of which are: *Dépérir*, to wither, to die away; *périssable*, perishable; *impérissable*, imperishable, etc.

255. The first person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ions** (196).

ENNUI is a word often met with in English. Its principal derivatives are: *Ennuyer*, to weary, to annoy, to tease; *s'ennuyer*, to grow tired, to be wearied; *ennuyant*, annoying, tiresome; and *ennuyeux*, tedious, tiresome.

NOIRCISSANT is the present participle of the verb *noircir*, to blacken, derived from the adjective *noir*, black, coming from the Latin *niger*, black; also the root of *nègre*, negro.

256. The present participle of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ant** (115, 196).

257. A great portion of the verbs in **ir** come from adjectives, as: *Rajeunir*, to grow younger, from *jeune*, young; *unir*, to unite, to make one, from *un*, one; *appauvrir*, to make poor, from *pauvre*, poor; *embellir*, to embellish, from *belle*, fair; *adoucir*, to soften, from *doux*, *douce*, soft. Others, of a different formation, end in English in *ish*, as: *Périr*, to perish; *abolir*, to abolish; *démolir*, to demolish; *accomplir*, to accomplish; *punir*, to punish; *finir*, to finish.

NOS is the plural of *notre* (164).

CAHIERS is the plural of *cahier* (29).

MOT comes from the Italian *motto*, word, bon-mot. Its only derivative is *motet*, motet.

ENTENDIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *entendre*, seen in the third lesson.

258. The first person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ions**.

GUÈRE comes from the Italian *guari*, much. It is always preceded by the negative *ne*, with which it signifies *not much*, *not very*, *but little*, *but few*.

ATTENDANT is the present participle of *attendre*, derived from *tendre*, mentioned in the ninth lesson.

259. The present participle of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **ant** (115).

Examples have now been seen of the present participle in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliary verbs, in the following phrases:

"*Désir*ANT *qu'il réunît toutes sortes de connaissances.*"—5th lesson.

"*Noirc*ISSANT *nos cahiers de mots.*"—12th lesson.

"*Attend*ANT *l'heure de la récréation.*"—12th lesson.

"*Cette langue* ÉTANT *la sienne.*"—5th lesson.

"AYANT *le même caractère.*"—12th lesson.

IMPATIEMMENT is derived from *impatient*, impatient.

260. It has been seen (31) that adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding the termination **ment**. When the adjective ends in **ent**, the adverb is formed by changing this termination into **emment**, and when the adjective ends in **ant**, the adverb is formed by changing this termination into **amment**. In *emment*, the first *e* has the sound of *a*; so that both these terminations, *emment* and *amment*, are pronounced exactly alike.

261. The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *Lentement*, slowly, from *lent*, *lente*, slow; *présentement*, at present, now, from *présent*, *présente*, present; and *véhémentement*, vehemently, from *véhément*, *véhémente*, vehement.

RÉCRÉATION is derived from the verb *créer*, to create, which comes from the Latin *creare*, to create. The principal derivatives of *créer* are: *Recréer*, to re-create, to create anew; *récréer*, to recreate, to divert, to refresh; *créateur*, creator; *création*, *créature*, etc., etc.

262. Verbs may be formed from almost all the substantives ending in **ation**, by changing this termination into **er**, as: *Création*, *créer*, to create; *accusation*, *accuser*, to accuse; *agitation*, *agiter*, to agitate; *augmentation*, *augmenter*, to augment;

circulation, *circuler*, to circulate; *compensation*, *compenser*, to compensate; *consolation*, *consoler*, to console; *continuation*, *continuer*, to continue; *décoration*, *décorer*, to decorate; *préparation*, *préparer*, to prepare, etc.

The substantives in *ation* being very numerous, and being, for the most part, the same in the two languages (49), the foregoing remark will enable the student to find out the signification of many verbs at first sight.

SYNTAX.

Why should we not say "LA *même caractère?*"*—246, 34.

Why should we not say "*Entretenir* LUI," instead of "L'*entretenir?*"—43.

Why should we not say "*Ces dispositions oïsifs?*"—99, 33.

Why is *des* necessary before *grammaires* and *dictionnaires?*—102.

Why do we say "*A* L'*école*," and not "*A école?*"—35.

Why do we say "NOS *cahiers*," and not, "NOTRE *cahiers?*"—164, 107.

Bâiller **sur** *des grammaires et des dictionnaires.*

263. It has been seen (109) that the prepositions *à*, *de*, *en*, must be repeated before each word that is governed by them. The other prepositions, as *sur* in the above example, need not be repeated, unless the regimens have meanings totally different, or express contrary ideas.

Comme nous **le** *faisions à l'école.*

264. It has been seen (224) that the pronoun LE may represent either a *substantive*, or an *adjective*, or a *verb*, or a *preposition*. This pronoun must be used, whether it has an equivalent

---

* See notes on page 17.

in the English construction or not. A few phrases, containing the pronoun with its antecedent, will elucidate the rule.

C'est un proverbe, vous LE savez.	It is a proverb, you know (THAT IT IS A PROVERB).
Il est plus ambitieux que vous ne LE pensez	He is more ambitious than you think (HE IS).
Est-il ambitieux?—Il L'est.	Is he ambitious?—He is (AMBITIOUS).
Est-il ouvrier?—Il L'est.	Is he a workman?—He is (A WORKMAN).
Pouvons-nous le voir?—Nous LE pouvons.	Can we see him?—We can (SEE HIM).
Voulez-vous étudier?—Nous LE voulons.	Will you study?—We will (STUDY).

Nous périssions **d'***ennui.*
Noircissant nos cahiers **de** *mots.*

In these examples DE corresponds to the English preposition WITH.

In the first of them, *ennui* is the cause of that state expressed by the verb *nous périssions.*

In the second, *mots* designates the things used to blacken the copy-books with.

265. Between a verb and a substantive denoting the *cause* of the state or action which this verb expresses, or *the thing made use of* to attain to it, the preposition **with** is very often rendered in French by **de** (16). The article is not employed between *de* and the substantive that follows, unless the sense of the substantive be modified by some restrictive clause.

LEXICOLOGY.

The preposition **entre**, which sometimes retains its Latin spelling **inter**, forms a number of compounds which are alike, or nearly so, in French and in English. Ex. *Entretenir*, to keep, to entertain; *intercéder*, to intercede, etc. See Obs. 249.

Words beginning with the prefix **dis** are generally much the same in both languages. Ex. *Disposition.* See Obs. 250.

Many substantives and adjectives ending with **ary** in English become French by changing *ary* into *aire.* Ex. Dictionary, *Dictionnaire.* See Obs. 252.

Some verbs ending with **ish** in English change *ish* into *ir* in French. Ex. To finish, *finir.* See Obs. 257.

Verbs may be formed from almost all substantives ending with **ation**, by changing this termination into *er.* Ex. *Récréation, récréer*, to recreate. See Obs. 262.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Apathie,	Apathy.	*Imposant*,	Imposing.
A propos,	To the purpose.	*Imposteur*,	Impostor.
Bâillon,	Gag.	*Imposture*,	Imposture.
Compassion,	Compassion.	*Impôt*,	Tax.
Compatissant,	Compassionate.	*Loisir*,	Leisure.
Dépôt,	Depot.	*Oisiveté*,	Idleness.
Disponible,	Disposable.	*Pathétique*,	Pathetic.
Entrepôt,	Warehouse.	*Pause*,	Pause.
Epigramme,	Epigram.	*Pose*,	Posture.
Folâtre,	Playful.	*Programme*,	Programme.
Folâtrer,	To sport, play.	*Sympathie*,	Sympathy.
Grammairien,	Grammarian.	*Sympathiser*,	To sympathize.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Ils contribuaient.* See Obs. 248.—They turned—They looked—They thought—They passed—They possessed—They placed—They pronounced—They persuaded—They forgot—They imagined—They guided—They frequented—They forced—They loitered—They exercised—They examined—They gave—They desired.

2. Model: *Entretenir.* See Obs. 249.—(Translate into Eng-

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

lish.)—*Entr'acte*—*S'entr'aimer*—*S'entre-croiser*—*S'entre-regarder*—*S'entre-répondre*—*Entrevue*—*Intercéder*—*Intercesseur*—*Interdire*—*Interrogatif.*

3. Model: *Disposition.* See Obs. 250.—(Translate into English.)—*Différer*—*Difficulté*—*Diffus*—*Diminutif*—*Discerner*—*Discontinuer*—*Discréditer*—*Disperser*—*Distorsion.*

4. Model: *Oisive.* See Obs. 251.—(Form the feminine of the following adjectives.)—*Actif*—*Persuasif*—*Décisif*—*Pensif*—*Massif*—*Positif*—*Négatif*—*Relatif*—*Productif*—*Instructif*—*Fugitif*—*Attentif*—*Captif.*

5. Model: *Dictionnaire.* See Obs. 252, 253.—An anniversary—An antiquary—The commentary—A dignitary—His itinerary—The janissary—A missionary—The notary—Her salary—The sanctuary—A vocabulary.

6. Model: *Nous périssions.* See Obs. 255.—We freed—We finished—We blackened—We reunited—We established.

7. Model: *Noircissant.* See Obs. 256.—Freeing—Finishing—Perishing—Reuniting—Establishing.

8. Model: *Périr.* See Obs. 257.—(Translate the following verbs into English.)—*Abolir*—*Démolir*—*Polir*—*Accomplir*—*Bannir*—*Finir*—*Garnir*—*Fournir*—*Punir*—*Fleurir*—*Nourrir*—*Languir.*

9. Model: *Nos cahiers.* See Obs. 164.—Our aversion—Our shops—Our commerce—Our creditors—Our companion—Our dispositions—Our child—Our hopes—Our school—Our sons—Our fortune—Our grammars.

10. Model: *Nous entendions.* See Obs. 258.—We waited—We stretched—We put—We pretended—We answered—We rendered—We followed—We suspended.

11. Model: *Attendant.* See Obs. 259.—Hearing—Stretching—Putting—Pretending—Answering—Rendering—Following—Suspending.

12. Model: *Impatiemment.* See Obs. 260.—Elegantly—Constantly—Decently—Recently—Innocently—Evidently—Prudently—Negligently—Insolently—Differently.

13. Models: *Récréation*—*Récréer.* See Obs. 262.—(Form French verbs from the following substantives.)—*Obligation*—*Association*—*Conciliation*—*Expiation*—*Variation*—*Désolation*

— *Déclamation* — *Proclamation* — *Affirmation* — *Formation*— *Transformation*— *Inclination*— *Dissipation*— *Usurpation*— *Séparation*— *Occupation*— *Modération*— *Opération*— *Pénétration* —*Habitation.*

14. Model: *Sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires.* Syntax, 263.—Before the houses and shops—On the quays and bridges—By his character and disposition—Without his defects and vices—With their father and mother—In inaction and laziness—For Latin and Greek.

15. Models: *Nous périssions* D'*ennui*—*Noircissant nos cahiers* DE *mots.* Syntax, 265.—To daub (or to smear) with black—To be animated with ambition.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. That boy has studied several grammars—245.
2. Several of these dictionaries are good—245.
3. The mother and daughters (*filles*, see 3d lesson, page 30, line 10) were looking at the shops—248.
4. They forgot that we were waiting *for* them—248, 258.
5. They did not think *of* [to] us—248.
6. The mother, above all, was very attentive—251.
7. Our father's conversation is instructive—56, 251.
8. She was sad and pensive—251.
9. Our children do not follow the foolish example of their companions—207.
10. That man has foolish ideas—102, 103.
11. He gives a good salary to his workmen—252, 253.
12. The vocabulary of the words that you know is *pretty* long [enough]—252, 253, 36.
13. We were waiting for the notary—258, 252.
14. We were finishing our lesson—255.

---

* See notes on page 13.

15. By freeing himself from all restraint, Alexis grieved his father—192, 256.

16. He fell asleep after finishing his lesson—179, 180, 192, 256.

17. The example of his companions softened his character—257, 196.

18. The workmen are preparing [themselves] to demolish the bridge—262, 180, 257.

19. Where are our copy-books?—164.

20. They are with our grammars—164.

21. We were waiting *for* our companions—258.

22. He does not pronounce well, in answering [to] our questions—259.

23. He could make *a* fortune by following the trade of his father—192, 259.

24. Has he forgotten what he [has] learned recently?—260.

25. She wishes ardently to see you—260, 187.

26. He *is* [has] evidently *right* [reason]—260.

27. The house was elegantly decorated—260, 262.

28. We continue to learn words—262.

29. You know words enough *to* [for] converse with us—36, 39, 129, 262.

30. Is he determined to go to Paris?—262, 52.

31. Does he *still* occupy [always] the same house?—262, 22, 40, 41.

32. All the houses were illuminated—262, 53, 63.

33. He used to stop before the houses and shops—137, 263.

34. With his character and *disposition* [dispositions] he would be useful to society—263.

35. He does not loiter as he did—264.

36. We like to see him study as he does—264.

37. Could he answer you?—He could—264.

38. That man is ambitious, as you know—264.

39. Children, we believe, do not like to go to school—264.

40. She thinks that they are blamable, but we believe that they are not—264.

41. The poor boys were yawning with ennui—248, 265.

42. The workmen's sleeves were smeared with black—56, 265.

THIRTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Treizième leçon.
Thirteenth

"Nos maîtres voulaient que nous
masters willed

eussions du gout pour l'étude; ils vou-
had (*subj.*) study

laient que nous en sentissions les
of it felt (*subj.*)

avantages et que nous y trouvassions du
advantages to it found (*subj.*)

plaisir; mais ils ne savaient pas la rendre
pleasure knew to render

attrayante. Ils s'étonnaient que nous
attractive wondered

répondissions mal à de sèches questions
answered (*subj.*) badly dry questions

auxquelles nous ne comprenions rien
to which understood nothing

| du tout. | Ils exigeaient que nous
at all demanded

fussions attentifs, et ils ne nous parlaient
were (*subj.*) attentive to us spoke

que de choses ennuyeuses."
but tedious

---

* See 1st note on page 117. ** See 2d note on page 117.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Our masters wished us to have a taste for study; they wanted us to feel its advantages and to find pleasure in it; but they did not know how to render it attractive. They wondered at our making wrong answers to dry questions that we did not understand at all. They insisted on our being attentive, though they spoke to us only on tedious subjects."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la treizième.
Pour quoi les compagnons d'Alexis n'avaient-ils pas de goût?	Pour l'étude.
Qui est-ce qui n'avait pas de goût pour l'étude?	Les compagnons d'Alexis.
Qui est-ce qui voulait forcer ces jeunes gens à avoir du goût pour l'étude?	Leurs maîtres.
Que voulaient-ils faire sentir à ces jeunes gens?	Les avantages de l'étude.
A quoi ces jeunes gens ne trouvaient-ils pas de plaisir?	A l'étude.
Que trouve-t-on dans l'étude, quand elle est attrayante?	Du plaisir.
Qu'est-ce que les maîtres de ces jeunes gens ne savaient pas faire?	Ils ne savaient pas rendre l'étude attrayante.
Comment les compagnons d'Alexis répondait-ils aux questions de leurs maîtres?	Mal.
Comment étaient ces questions?	Sèches.
Les comprenaient-ils?	Ils n'y comprenaient rien du tout.
A quoi répondaient-ils mal?	A de sèches questions auxquelles ils ne comprenaient rien du tout.
De quelles choses leurs maîtres parlaient-ils?	De choses ennuyeuses.
Pourquoi ces jeunes gens n'étaient-ils pas attentifs?	Parce que leurs maîtres ne parlaient que de choses ennuyeuses.

---

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Quelle heure est-il?	What o'clock is it?
Il est quatre heures.	It is four o'clock.
Il est temps de suspendre notre étude.	It is time to suspend our study.
Voulez-vous faire une promenade?	Will you take a walk?
Avec plaisir.	With pleasure.
Aimez-vous la promenade?	Are you fond of walking?
Beaucoup.	Very.
Vous voyez bien cette maison? C'est celle de notre maître d'école.	You see that house? It is our schoolmaster's.
Nous y avons passé bien des heures ennuyeuses.	We have spent many tedious hours there.
C'était un bien brave homme que notre maître.	Our master was a very worthy man.
Mais il ne savait pas rendre l'étude attrayante.	But he did not know how to make study attractive.
Il voulait que nous eussions toujours la grammaire à la main.	He wanted us always to have our grammar in our hands.
Rien n'est ennuyeux comme la grammaire.	Nothing is so tedious as grammar.
C'est que vous n'avez pas le goût de l'étude.	It is because you have no taste for study.
Ne croyez pas cela.	Do not believe that.
Nous aimons tous l'étude, quand elle est attrayante.	We all like study, when it is attractive.
Mais nous ne pouvons pas l'aimer, quand elle est sèche et ennuyeuse.	But we cannot like it, when it is dry and tedious.
Trouvez-vous du plaisir à étudier la langue française?	Do you find any pleasure in studying the French language?
Quelquefois, quand la leçon n'est pas longue.	Sometimes, when the lesson is not long.

* See note on page 3.

Comprenez-vous toutes les questions qu'on vous fait en français ?	Do you understand all the questions which are put to you in French ?
Presque toutes, quand on parle doucement.	Almost all of them, when they are pronounced slowly.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender is *maître ?* *—8.

Of what gender are *goût* and *plaisir ?*—14.

Of what gender are *étude* and *chose ?*—15.

Of what gender is *avantage ?*—215.

Of what gender is *question ?*—99.

What is the singular of *nos ?*—164.

In what tense and of what person are *étonnaient* and *parlaient ?*—250.

What are the infinitives of *étonnaient* and *parlaient ?*—248.

In what tense and of what person is *voulaient ?*—117.

What is the infinitive of *voulaient ?*—117.

What is the infinitive of *savaient ?*—117.

In what mood is *rendre ?*—121.

What is the masculine of *attrayante ?*—2.

What is the feminine of *attentif ?*—251.

What is the masculine of *ennuyeuses ?*—142.

TREIZIÈME is derived from *treize*, thirteen (44).

MAÎTRE, formerly *maistre*, is contracted, as well as the English word *master*, from the Latin *magister*, chief, commander, the radical of which is *magis*, more, or *major*, greater. In English,

* See notes on page 17.

the letters *gi* have been suppressed from *magister*. In French, the letter *g* only was suppressed at first, and the final letters *er* were transposed; later the *s* disappeared, and the suppression was indicated by means of the circumflex accent.

266. The circumflex accent (^) often denotes in French that a letter has been suppressed after the vowel over which it is placed. That letter—generally an *s*—has been preserved in about forty English words, coming from the old French, as: *Forêt*, forest; *tempête*, tempest; *île*, isle; *mât*, mast; *hôte*, host, etc.

267. There are also many French words ending in **re**, which have become English, sometimes with the same orthography, as: *sabre*, *fibre*, *massacre*, *théâtre*, *spectre*, *mitre*, *antre;* and sometimes by transposing the final letters, as: *Ambre*, amber; *chambre*, chamber; *membre*, member; *cidre*, cider; *ordre*, order; *offre*, offer; *tigre*, tiger; *ministre*, minister; *monstre*, monster; *lettre*, letter, etc.

Mistress is translated in French by *maîtresse*, unless used as a title before the name of a person, when *madame* is the proper word. Ex. Mrs. B..., *Madame B...*

Voulaient. See 117, 248.

Eussions is the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

Goût comes from the Latin *gustus*, taste. Its principal derivatives are: The verb *goûter*, to taste; the substantive *goûter*, luncheon; *dégoût*, disgust; *dégoûter*, to disgust; *dégoûtant*, disgusting; and *ragoût*, made dish.

Étude is the radical of *étudier*, seen in the eighth lesson.

268. § 1. **En** is a relative pronoun, which sometimes refers to persons, but is more frequently applied to things. It is invariable and of both genders and numbers.

§ 2. It is generally equivalent to *de là*, *de cela*, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, and in consequence is rendered in English by *thence*, *of that*, *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *of them*, or, *from that*, *by that*, *with that*, etc.

§ 3. In speaking of things, it is often substituted for the possessive adjectives *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, and *leurs*, and then it corresponds to *its* and *their*.

§ 4. It is sometimes partitive and signifies *some* or *any*, as: "*Il* EN *avait*, he had some; *Il n'*EN *avait pas*, he had not any."

SENTISSIONS is the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *sentir*, seen in the eleventh lesson. *Sentir* is irregular in some of its forms, but not in the past tense of the subjunctive.

269. The first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ions** (196, § 2).

AVANTAGE is of the masculine gender (215).

270. **Y**, as a relative pronoun (195), is of both genders and numbers. It signifies *to that*, *to him*, *to her*, *to it*, *to them*, or *in that*, *on that* (24). It is more especially used in speaking of things, and very seldom refers to persons.

TROUVASSIONS is the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *trouver*, which comes from the Italian *trovare*, to find.

271. The first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **assions**.

PLAISIR is one of the derivatives of *plaire*, seen in the tenth lesson.

SAVAIENT is a form of *savoir* (117, 248).

LA, before the verb *rendre*, is the feminine of the pronoun *le* (27).

RENDRE has been seen in the tenth lesson.

ATTRAYANT is derived from the old verb *attraire*, which is now obsolete, having been supplanted by *attirer*, to attract, allure, engage.

S'ÉTONNAIENT is a form of the verb *s'étonner*, to wonder (248), derived from *tonner*, to thunder, from the Latin *tonare*, to thunder, the principal derivatives of which are: *Étonnant*, astonishing; *étonnement*, astonishment; *détoner*, to detonate; and *tonnerre*, thunder.

RÉPONDISSIONS is the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *répondre*, seen in the sixth lesson.

272. The first person plural of the past tense of the sub-

iunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **issions** (269, 271, 121).

MAL, ill, or badly, comes from the substantive *mal*, evil, ill, harm, mischief, pain, ache, sore, disease, from the Latin *malum*, evil.

SÈCHE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *sec*, coming from the Latin *siccus*, dry.

QUESTION is derived from the old verb *quérir*, to fetch, which comes from the Latin *quærere*, to seek. The principal derivatives of *quérir* are: *Acquérir*, to acquire; *conquérir*, to conquer; *requérir*, to require; and a number of other words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Questionner*, to question; *quête*, quest, search; *conquête*, conquest; *enquête*, inquest; *inquisiteur*, inquisitor; *acquisition*, *inquisition*, *requisition*, etc.

AUXQUELLES is a combination of the compound article *aux* (140) with the pronominal adjective *quelles* (71). See also 165.

COMPRENIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *comprendre*, which is derived from *prendre*, to take, mentioned in the seventh lesson. *Prendre* is an irregular verb. In the imperfect tense, its irregularity consists in the suppression of the letter *d*, thus: *nous pren-ions*, instead of *nous prend-ions*, we took (258). *Comprendre* (75), being derived from *prendre*, has the same irregularity.

273. The derivatives of irregular verbs are generally conjugated like their radicals.

RIEN comes from the Latin *res*, thing. When used without the negative *ne*, it usually corresponds to *thing*, or *any thing*, as: "*Y a-t-il* RIEN *de plus beau?* Is there ANY THING more beautiful?" But it is much more frequently used with *ne*, and signifies *nothing*.

DU TOUT, formed of the compound article *du* (143) and the substantive *tout*, mentioned in the first lesson, is an adverbial form, joined to *pas*, *point*, not, and *rien*, to render the negative more emphatic. It corresponds to *at all*.

EXIGEAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of *exiger* (248). In this verb, the vowel *e*, which is mute, is interposed between the radical part *exig* and the termination *aient*—*exigeaient* instead of *exigaient*—in order to preserve the soft

sound of *g*, this letter being hard before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u* in French as in English.

274. In the conjugation of verbs ending in **ger**, the **g** is always followed by **e** mute before the vowels **a**, **o**.

FUSSIONS is the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

In this lesson, examples have been seen of the first person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the auxiliary verbs, in the phrases:

"*Ils voulaient que nous y trouv*ASSIONS *du plaisir.*"

"*Ils voulaient que nous sent*ISSIONS *les avantages.*"

"*Ils s'étonnaient que nous répond*ISSIONS *mal.*"

"*Ils exigeaient que nous* FUSSIONS *attentifs.*"

"*Ils voulaient que nous* EUSSIONS *du goût.*"

ATTENTIF is one of those adjectives which become English by changing *if* into *ive* (46).

NOUS, which has hitherto been translated by *we*, signifies *to us* in the phrase "*Ils nous parlaient.*"

275. Nous is an invariable personal pronoun, which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct, and sometimes the indirect regimen of the verb. It corresponds to *we*, *us*, *to us*, *ourselves*, *to ourselves*.

PARLAIENT is the imperfect tense of *parler* (248), which comes from the Italian *parlare*, to speak. The principal derivatives of *parler* are: *Parleur*, speaker; *parloir*, parlor; *parole*, word, parole; *parlant*, speaking, expressive; *parlement*, parliament; *parlementer*, to parley, to come to terms; and *parlementaire*, parliamentary.

ENNUYEUSES is derived from *ennui*, seen in the twelfth lesson.

SYNTAX.

Why are the verbs *eussions*, *sentissions*, *trouvassions* and *fussions* in the subjunctive mood?*—81.

Why are they in the past tense of the subjunctive?—83.

Why do we say "*Du goût pour* L'*étude*," and not "*Du goût pour étude?*"—35.

Why is *y* placed before *trouvassions?*—201.

Why is *la* placed before *rendre?*—43.

Why is the adjective *attrayant* used with its feminine form, *attrayante?*—33.

Why would it be incorrect to substitute *à qui* for *auxquelles* in the phrase: "*De sèches questions auxquelles nous ne comprenions rien du tout?*"—172.

Why are the verbs *voulaient*, *savaient*, *s'étonnaient*, *comprenions*, *exigeaient*, and *parlaient*, in the imperfect tense and not in the past tense definite?—134, 137.

Why is *nous* before *parlaient?*—43.

Why is it not correct to say "DES *sèches questions?*"—103.

How should the words in this phrase be disposed, in order to employ *des* correctly?—103.

Nos maîtres voulaient.

276. The verb **vouloir** is much more frequently used than its English equivalent *to will*. It often corresponds to the verbs *to want* and *to wish*, as: "*Que voulez-vous?* What do you want? *Voulez-vous lui parler?* Do you wish to speak to him?"

Ils voulaient que nous **en** *sentissions les avantages*

This can be rendered by "*They wanted us to feel* ITS *advantages.*"

---

* See notes on page 17.

277. When *its* and *their* refer to a thing which is not the subject of the proposition, they are rendered by **en**.

278. **En**, when it is a pronoun (268, §§ 2, 3, 4), is always placed before the verb, except in the imperative mood.

L'étude a **ses** *avantages.*

279. When the thing to which *its* or *their* relates is the subject of the phrase, these words are rendered by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*.

Nous parlons de **ses** *avantages.*

Let us suppose that in this phrase *ses* refers to *étude*. This substantive is not the subject; nevertheless, *ses* is employed instead of *en*, because it is preceded by the preposition *de*.

280. Even when the thing is not the subject of the phrase, *its* and *their* must be rendered by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*, when they are governed by a preposition.

Ils ne savaient pas la rendre attrayante.

281. "*To know* HOW *to do a thing*" is generally expressed in French by "*Savoir faire une chose.*" The adverb *comment*, which would be the translation of *how*, is usually omitted. *Savoir*, followed by an infinitive, is often used also when *can* or *could* is employed in English, as: "*Savez-vous lire?* Can you read? *Nous savons parler*, we can speak" (188).

Ils s'étonnaient que nous **répondissions** *mal.*

282. The subjunctive mood is used after verbs which, in a principal proposition, express surprise, admiration, doubt, or fear.

LEXICOLOGY.

Many words ending with **re** are the same in both languages, and those ending with **er** generally change *er* into *re* in French. Ex. Fibre, *fibre;* letter, *lettre.* See Obs. 267.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Encan,	Auction.	*Méchant,*	Wicked.
Exquis,	Exquisite.	*Mécontent,*	Discontented.
Magistrat,	Magistrate.	*Mécontenter,*	To dissatisfy.
Maire,	Mayor.	*Médire,*	To slander.
Maître-d'hôtel,	Steward.	*Médisance,*	Slander.
Maître ès-arts,	Master of arts.	*Méfiance,*	Mistrust.
Malade,	Ill, sick.	*Mépris,*	Contempt.
Maladie,	Malady.	*Méprise,*	Mistake.
Maladresse,	Awkwardness.	*Mépriser,*	To despise.
Maladroit,	Awkward.	*Mésalliance,*	Misalliance.
Malheur,	Misfortune.	*Paratonnerre,*	Lightning-rod.
Malheureux,	Unhappy.	*Petit-maître,*	Fop, coxcomb.
Mauvais,	Bad.	*Sécher,*	To dry.
Méchanceté,	Wickedness.	*Sécheresse,*	Drought.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Maître.* See Obs. 266.—(Translate into English.) —*Conquête—Forêt—Hâte—Honnête—Hôpital—Hôte—Intérêt —Ile—Mât—Pâte—Plâtre—Tempête.*

2. Model: *Maître.* See Obs. 267.—(Translate into French.) —Amber—Chamber—September—October—November—December—Member—Sober—Cider—Tender—Cylinder—Order—Offer—Coffer—Tiger—Proper—Diameter—Barometer—Arbiter —Filter—Minister—Letter—Neuter.

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

3. Model: *En.* See Obs. 268, §§ 2, 3, 4.—He was drawn from thence—We speak of that—He freed himself from it—He speaks of him—We speak of her—They speak of them—We admire its shops—We understood their influence—We have some—Has he any?—He does not give any.

4. Model: *Que nous sentissions.* See Obs. 269.—That we should or might assail—That we should or might free—That we should or might finish—That we should or might blacken—That we should or might perish—That we should or might reunite.

5. Model: *Y.* See Obs. 270.—He has contributed to it—He lives (dwells) in it—We think of that—He finds some pleasure in them.

6. Model: *Que nous trouvassions.* See Obs. 271.—That we should or might call—That we should or might admire—That we should or might love—That we should or might cease—That we should or might give—That we should or might desire—That we should or might examine—That we should or might study—That we should or might imagine—That we should or might forget.

7. Model: *Que nous répondissions.* See Obs. 272.—That we should or might wait—That we should or might hear—That we should or might stretch—That we should or might pretend—That we should or might render—That we should or might follow—That we should or might suspend.

8. Models: *Nous comprenions—Appris.* See Obs. 273 (and 7th lesson, page 83, from line 13.)—We took—We learned—We undertook—We took back—We surprised—Taken—Understood—Undertaken—Taken back—Surprised.

9. Model: *Exigeaient.* See Obs. 274.—Correcting—We correct—He corrected (imperfect tense)—They corrected (imperfect tense)—He corrected (past t. definite)—That he might correct (past t. of the subj.)—That we might correct.

10. Model: *Ils* NOUS *parlaient.* See Obs. 275.—We speak—She saw us—He speaks to us—We love ourselves—We talk to ourselves.

11. Model: *Nos maîtres voulaient.* Syntax, 276.—He wanted to see you—We wish to learn our lesson—He wants

to be the master at home—They wished *to take* [to make] a walk.

12. Model: *Ils ne savaient pas la rendre attrayante.* Syntax, 281.—You know how to persuade her—He knew how to find the *necessary* things [necessary]—They knew how to please [to] their masters—What can you do?—He could do all sorts of things.

13. Model: *Ils s'étonnaient que nous répondissions mal.* Syntax, 282.—He wonders that we do not render justice to this poet—He wondered that we did not render him justice—They wonder that we have faults—They wondered that we had faults.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Our host was superstitious—266, 141.
2. There was a house in the forest—218, 266.
3. He said that there were spectres in that house—218, 267.
4. Where is our chamber?—267.
5. Our companion is going to the theatre—85, 267.
6. What does he think of this offer—267.
7. Our fathers wanted us to finish our studies—276, 269.
8. They did not know that we were *dying with* [perishing of] ennui—269.
9. He loves study; he finds pleasure in it, because he appreciates its advantages—270, 277, 278, 262.
10. He loves his master, because he appreciates his qualities—262.
11. She heard our questions and she answered [to] them—270.
12. This dictionary is good; we find all the words in it—270.
13. Our master wanted us to speak French—276, 271.
14. They wanted us to wait for them—276, 272.

---

* See notes on page 13.

15. He did not think that we heard him—272.

16. They wanted us to follow them into all the shops—276, 272.

17. We took that young man for an artist—273 (and 7th lesson, page 83, from line 13).

18. We were learning our lesson—273 (and 7th lesson, page 83, from line 13).

19. We used to undertake many things that we did not finish —273 (and 7th lesson, page 83, from line 13.)

20. We correct our children—274.

21. By correcting them, we *make* [render] them better—192, 274.

22. If we *require* [exact] more than that, he will give us nothing—274, 275.

23. Why does he not answer us?—275.

24. We wish to persuade ourselves that we have a taste for study—276, 275.

25. There is a gentleman who wants to speak to you—218, 276.

26. Does he wish to see the house?—276.

27. This poem is sublime; we admire its beauties—277, 278.

28. He studies the French language; but he does not like its difficulties—277, 278.

29. That poet thought that his compositions were sublime; he did not see their faults—277, 278.

30. This poem has its beauties—279.

31. The French language has its difficulties—279.

32. His compositions had their faults—279.

33. We admire this poem; we like to speak of its beauties—188, 280.

34. He likes the French language; he is not stopped by its difficulties—280.

35. She did not know how to persuade him—281.

36. You do not know how to guide the workmen—281.

37. Can you read Greek?—281.

38. Can you speak French?—281.

FOURTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quatorzième leçon.
Fourteenth

"Nous voilà libres! Oui, nous le sommes
Us behold free Yes we so are

enfin! Pourquoi ne jouirions-nous pas de
at length should enjoy

nos beaux jours? Pourquoi perdrions-
fine should lose

nous des moments précieux? Nous aurions
moments precious should have

grand tort. Faut-il être grave et raisonna-
great Must it grave reasona-

ble à tout âge? Non, non! Divertissons-
ble age No Let us divert

nous. Nos parents ont eu leur temps;
ourselves parents have their

aujourd'hui c'est | le nôtre. | N'attendons
to-day ours Let us not wait

pas que nous soyons trop vieux pour
till be too old

goûter une franche gaieté. N'ayons nulle
taste frank mirth Let us have no

autre pensée que celle de nous amuser."
than to amuse

---

* See 1st note on page 117. ** See 2d note on page 117.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Now we are free! Yes, we are so at last! Why should we not enjoy our happy days? Why should we waste our precious moments? We should be very wrong to do so. Is it necessary to be grave and steady at every age? No, no! Let us divert ourselves. Our parents have had their day; it is ours now. Let us not wait till we are too old to indulge in unfeigned mirth. Let us have no other thought than that of enjoying ourselves."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la quatorzième.
Les compagnons d'Alexis étaient-ils libres?	Oui, ils l'étaient enfin.
Comment étaient les compagnons d'Alexis?	Ils étaient libres.
De quoi voulaient-ils jouir?	De leurs beaux jours.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils ne voulaient pas perdre?	Des moments précieux.
Comment trouvaient-ils leurs jours?	Ils les trouvaient beaux.
Comment trouvaient-ils leurs moments?	Ils les trouvaient précieux.
Pensaient-ils qu'il fût bon de perdre leurs moments précieux?	Non, ils pensaient qu'ils auraient grand tort de les perdre.
Comment ne faut-il pas être à tout âge?	Grave et raisonnable.
Que répondaient-ils à cette question: Faut-il être grave et raisonnable à tout âge?	Non, non! Divertissons-nous.
Quelles étaient les personnes qui avaient eu leur temps?	Leurs parents.
Qu'est-ce que leurs parents avaient eu?	Ils avaient eu leur temps.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Que disaient les compagnons d'Alexis, à cette occasion?	Aujourd'hui c'est le nôtre.
Qu'est-ce qu'on ne goûte pas, quand on est trop vieux?	Une franche gaieté.
Quand ne goûte-t-on pas une franche gaieté?	Quand on est trop vieux.
Quelle était la seule pensée qu'ils voulaient avoir?	Celle de s'amuser.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Bonjour, monsieur, comment cela va-t-il?	Good day, Sir, how are you?
Bien, et vous?	Well, and how are you?
Assez bien. Et comment va monsieur Delatour?	Pretty well. And how is Mr. Delatour?
Il a eu une petite indisposition l'autre jour, mais il va bien aujourd'hui.	He had a slight indisposition the other day, but he is well now.
Il fait bien beau.	It is very fine weather.
Oui, il fait un temps superbe.	Yes, the weather is beautiful.
Est-ce que vous demeurez à Paris?	Do you live in Paris?
Non, nous y sommes seulement en passant.	No, we are here but momentarily.
Vous y amusez-vous?	Are you amused here?
Oui, beaucoup. Nous y passons notre temps à nous divertir.	Yes, very much. We spend our time here in diverting ourselves.
Nous fréquentons toutes les promenades et tous les théâtres.	We visit all the public walks and the theatres.
Nous nous perdons quelquefois dans les rues.	We sometimes lose our way in the streets.
Mais nous savons nous faire comprendre.	But we know how to make ourselves understood.
Vous parlez fort bien.	You speak very well.

---

* See note on page 3.

Vous avez beaucoup d'indulgence.	You are very indulgent.
Non, vraiment. Ce n'est pas un compliment.	No, indeed. It is not a compliment.
Monsieur, que voilà, est un compagnon de voyage.	That gentleman is a fellow-traveller.
Parle-t-il français?	Does he speak French?
Il le parle un peu.	He speaks it a little.
Si vous lui parlez, il vous répondra.	If you speak to him, he will answer you.
Parlez-vous français, monsieur?	Do you speak French, Sir?
Fort mal, monsieur.	Very imperfectly, Sir.
Comprenez-vous notre conversation?	Do you understand our conversation?
Oui, monsieur, parce que vous parlez doucement.	Yes, Sir, because you speak slowly.
Y a-t-il longtemps que vous apprenez le français.	Have you been learning French a long time?
Non, monsieur, il n'y a pas longtemps.	No, Sir, not a long time.
Vous avez un compagnon de voyage qui, sans doute, vous donne des leçons?	You have a travelling companion who gives you some lessons undoubtedly?
Oui, monsieur. Nous parlons français une heure tous les jours.	Yes, Sir. We speak French for an hour every day.
C'est la meilleure des leçons.	It is the best lesson.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *jours*, *tort*, and *temps?**—14.
Of what gender is *pensée?*—15.
Of what gender is *âge?*—215.
Of what gender is *gaieté?*—241.

---

* See notes on page 17.

What is the feminine of *libre*, *grave*, and *raisonnable?*—6.

Why do not *précieux* and *vieux* take an *s* in the plural?—158.

What is the feminine of *grand?*—2.

What is the plural of *temps?*—17.

In what mood are *être*, *goûter*, and *amuser?*—121.

How do you know that *le* is a pronoun and not the article in "*nous* LE *sommes?*"—27.

What is the singular of *nos?*—164.

QUATORZIÈME comes from *quatorze*, fourteen (44).

283. **Voilà** is a contraction of two words: *vois*, the second person singular of the imperative mood of *voir*, to see, to behold, mentioned in the second lesson, and *là*, there; so that its literal meaning is *behold there*. There is a corresponding word, **voici**, which is also in frequent use; it is a contraction of *vois ici*, behold here. These expressions correspond to *there is*, *there are*, *here is*, *here are*, *this is*, *that is*, *these are*, *those are*, or *behold*, as: "*Voilà un homme*, there is a man; *Voici un dictionnaire*, here is a dictionary; *Voilà des cahiers*, there are some copy-books; *Voici un exemple*, this is an example; *Les voici*, here they are; *La voilà*, there she is; *Le voilà sur le pont*, behold him on the bridge." Sometimes they require a different construction in English, as: "*Voilà une heure que nous parlons*, we have been speaking this hour." But this will be seen later.

LIBRE comes from the Latin *liber*, free. Its principal derivatives are: *Libérer*, to liberate; *liberté*, liberty; *libéralité*, liberality; *libérateur*, liberator; *libéral*, *libération*, etc., etc.

OUI is derived from the old verb *ouïr*, to hear, which comes from the Latin *audire*, probably through the Spanish *oir*, to hear. The literal sense of *oui* is therefore *heard*, the past participle of *ouïr*. It is now used as the adverb of affirmation *yes*. By a singular coincidence, *oyez*, the second person of the imperative mood of *ouïr*, used in England at the commencement of a proclamation, is pronounced *O yes*.

SOMMES is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être*.

ENFIN is formed of *en*, in, and *fin*, end, mentioned in the tenth lesson. It corresponds to *at length*, *at last*, and *in short*.

JOUIRIONS is the first person plural of the conditional mood of *jouir*, the principal derivatives of which are: *Joie*, joy; *jouissance*, enjoyment; *jovial*, jovial, jocund; *joyeux*, joyous; *se réjouir*, to rejoice; and *réjouissance*, rejoicing, merry-making.

284. The first person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by adding **ions** to this termination.

JOUIR is a neuter verb in French; it requires the preposition *de* after it.

BEAUX is the plural of *beau*, the masculine of *belle*, seen in the eighth lesson.

285. Adjectives ending in **au** form their plural in **x** instead of **s** (232).

PERDRIONS is the first person plural of the conditional mood of *perdre*.

286. The first person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing the final *e* into **ions** (284).

MOMENT comes from the Latin *momentum*. It is the same in both languages (45).

PRÉCIEUX is derived from *prix*, price, cost, value, worth, prize, reward, which comes from the Latin *pretium*, price.

AURIONS is the first person plural of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

GRAND is the radical of *grandeur*, seen in the fourth lesson.

IL FAUT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *falloir*, must, or to be necessary, to be requisite, which comes from the Latin *fallere*, to be missing or wanting.

287. **Falloir** is an irregular impersonal verb, used only in the third person singular.

The past participle of this verb is . .	*Fallu.*
The present tense, indicative mood . .	*Il faut.*
The imperfect tense	*Il fallait* (117).
The past tense definite	*Il fallut.*
The future tense	*Il faudra.*

The conditional mood . . . . . *Il faudrait.*
The present tense, subjunctive mood . *Qu'il faille.*
The past tense. . . . . *Qu'il fallût.*

It has no present participle and no imperative mood.

GRAVE is the same in French as in English, and means in both languages *serious* and *low*. The latter signification is, however, more particularly confined to music, speaking of the deep bass notes of the human voice, or of an instrument.

RAISONNABLE is one of the derivatives of *raison*, seen in the third lesson.

288. In the derivatives of words ending in **on**, the **n** is doubled, as in *raisonnable*, from *raison ; pardonnable*, from *pardon*.

ÂGE comes from the Latin *ævum*, time, duration, or the Greek αἰών, age. Its only derivative is *âgé*, aged, old.

289. **Non**, from the Latin *non*, no, is the adverb of negation, and signifies *no*, *not*. The negation *ne* and the conjunction *ni*, neither, nor, are only different forms of *non*.

NON corresponds also to the prefixes *un*, *in*, *non*, and as such enters into the formation of a number of words which can be easily understood, as: *Non-paiement*, non-payment; *nonpareil*, unequalled; *non-résidence*, non-residence; *non-sens*, nonsense, etc., etc.

DIVERTISSONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *divertir*.

290. The first person plural of the imperative mood of verbs ending in **ir** is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ons** (196, § 2). It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood.

PARENT comes from the Latin *parens*, parent. It is used in French, not only in the English sense of *parent*, but also of *relation* or *kinsman*.

ONT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir*.

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliary verbs, in the following phrases:

"*Bien des gens s'imagin*ENT *avoir le feu sacré.*"—11th lesson.

"*Beaucoup d'entre eux fin*ISSENT *par se persuader.*"—10th lesson.

"*La plupart des paresseux prétend*ENT *être poëtes.*"—10th lesson.

"*Les proverbes* SONT *généralement vrais.*"—1st lesson.

"*Nos parents* ONT *eu leur temps.*"—14th lesson.

The two words *ont eu*, corresponding to *have had* in English, form a compound tense, called in French grammar the past tense indefinite, and in English grammar the perfect tense. It has been seen already (96) that the compound tenses in French are formed in the same manner as in English. Most of them in consequence require no particular mention. The tense now under consideration is the only one which presents any difficulty to an English student.

291. The past tense indefinite is used not only in speaking indefinitely of any thing past, or of an action done at a period of time which is not completed, as the English perfect tense is used, when we say: "*I* HAVE FINISHED *my letter*, *He* HAS TRAVELLED *much this year;*" but the use of this tense is authorized also in reference to that time which is entirely elapsed. It is not therefore incorrect, as it would be in English, to say: "*Il* A VU *son ami hier*, he HAS SEEN his friend yesterday; *Il lui* A PARLÉ *l'autre jour*, he HAS SPOKEN to him the other day" (139).

LEUR is the singular of *leurs*, seen in the sixth lesson (152).

AUJOURD'HUI is an adverb formed of four words: *Au jour de hui*, at the day of to-day. The last word *hui*, which is obsolete, comes from the Latin *hodie*, to-day. *Aujourd'hui* is not always used for *this very day;* it often signifies *now*, *at the present time.*

292. **Nôtre** is a possessive pronoun, derived from the possessive adjective *notre* (164). It is almost invariably preceded by *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the gender or number of the substantive to which it refers (132), thus: *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, *les nôtres.* These three forms correspond to the English word *ours* (126).

ATTENDONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *attendre.*

293. The first person plural of the imperative mood of verbs

ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ons**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood (290).

SOYONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

TROP, from the Italian *troppo*, excessive, is an adverb corresponding to *too*, *too much*, and *too many*.

VIEUX comes from the Latin *vetus*, old. This adjective has another form, *vieil*, which is sometimes, but not invariably, used before a substantive beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as: "*Un vieil ami*, an old friend; *un vieil homme*, an old man." Its feminine is *vieille*. The principal derivatives are: *Vieillard*, old man; *vieillesse*, old age; and *vieillir*, to grow old.

GOÛTER is derived from *goût*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

FRANCHE is the irregular feminine of *franc*, mentioned in the fifth lesson.

GAIETÉ, which is also spelied *gaîté*, is derived from the adjective *gai*, which comes from the Italian *gaio*, gay.

AYONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *avoir*.

NULLE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *nul*, which comes from the Latin *nullus*, no. This adjective, corresponding to *no*, *not any*, *none*, *nobody*, is often used as a synonym of *aucun* (240). The French say indifferently: "*N'ayons* AUCUNE *autre pensée*," or "*N'ayons* NULLE *autre pensée*." *Nul* also signifies *null*, *void*, or *invalid*.

AMUSER is derived from *muser*, to loiter, to trifle, which comes from the Italian *musare*, having the same meaning. Its principal derivatives are *Amusant*, amusing, and *amusement*, which is the same in both languages (45).

SYNTAX.

Why would it be incorrect to say "*Nous* LES *sommes*," instead of "*Nous* LE *sommes?*" *—224.

Why is *nous* placed after *jouirions* and *perdrions* in the phrases "*Pourquoi ne jouirions-nous pas, Pourquoi perdrions-nous?*"—40.

Why do we not say "*Jouirions-nous ne pas*," instead of "*Ne jouirions-nous pas?*"—42.

Why is *beaux* in the plural?—33.

Why is *des*, and not *de*, used before *moments précieux?*—103.

Would it be correct to say "*des précieux moments?*"—103.

Why is the verb *être* in the subjunctive mood in the phrase "*N'attendons pas que nous* SOYONS *trop vieux?*"—244.

Why do we employ the infinitive, and not the present participle of the verb *amuser*, in the phrase "*Que celle de nous amuser?*" —129.

Nous voilà.

294. The personal pronoun which precedes *voilà* and *voici*, is the regimen of these words, which signify *behold* (283): consequently we say, LE *voilà*, LA *voilà*, there he is, there she is, and not, *il voilà*, *elle voilà*. This is not apparent with the pronouns *nous* and *vous*, which are invariable (275).

Nous aurions tort.

295. There are various states, dispositions, and sensations both of body and mind, expressed in English by the verb *to be*, joined to an adjective, which are generally rendered in French by

---

* See notes on page 17.

means of the verb *avoir*, with a substantive, as: To be wrong, *avoir tort;* to be right, *avoir raison;* to be warm, *avoir chaud;* to be cold, *avoir froid;* to be hungry, *avoir faim;* to be thirsty, *avoir soif;* to be ashamed, *avoir honte;* to be afraid, *avoir peur.*

Faut-il qu'on **soit** *grave?*
Faut-il **être** *grave?*

296. The verb *falloir*, being impersonal, is generally followed by the subjunctive mood (130). However, in phrases in which the subject is undefined and may be anybody, the verb that follows *falloir* may be employed in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive, with the indefinite pronoun *on* (61) as a subject. Even when the subject is the person speaking or spoken to, the infinitive is sometimes used, as: "*Faut-il attendre?* Must I wait, or, Must we wait? *Il faut attendre,* you must wait."

Divertissons-nous.

297. In the imperative mood, the personal pronoun, which is the regimen of the verb, is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative.

Ne nous divertissons pas.

298. But when the phrase is negative, the pronoun precedes the verb.

LEXICOLOGY.

A number of words beginning with the prefix **non**, which corresponds to *un*, *in*, and *on* in English, can be easily understood. Ex. *Non-paiement*, non-payment; *nonpareil*, unequalled, etc. See Obs. 289.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Anéantir,	To annihilate.	*Négliger*,	To neglect.
Anéantissement,	Annihilation.	*Négoce*,	Trade, business.
Annihiler,	To annihilate.	*Négociant*,	Merchant.
Annuler,	To annul.	*Négociateur*,	Negociator.
Apprécier,	To appreciate.	*Négocier*,	To negociate.
Déprécier,	To depreciate.	*Ni*,	Neither, nor.
Egayer,	To enliven.	*Nier*,	To deny.
Enjoué,	Playful.	*Ouï-dire*,	Hearsay.
Enjouement,	Sprightliness.	*Ouïe*,	Hearing (faculty).
Eperdu,	Distracted.	*Parenté*,	Kindred.
Eperdument,	Desperately.	*Perte*,	Loss.
Momentané,	Momentary.	*Sinon*,	If not.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Voilà, voici.* See Obs. 283, and Syntax, 294.—There is a poet—Here are the boulevards—There is a shop—There are some benches—Here is a thing—These are our companions—Those are our copy-books—This is a child—Those are his savings—Here he is—Here she is—Here they are—There he is—There she is—There they are.

2. Model: *Nous jouirions.* See Obs. 284.—We should free—We should divert—We should finish—We should blacken—We should perish—We should reunite—We should feel.

3. Model: *Nous perdrions.* See Obs. 286.—We should learn—We should wait—We should understand—We should say—We should hear—We should stretch—We should put—We should pretend—We should please—We should answer—We should render—We should follow—We should suspend.

4. Model: *Raisonnable*, from *raison.* See Obs. 288.—Vis-

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

ionary — Missionary — Conditional* — Exceptional* — Proportional.*

5. Model: *Divertissons.* See Obs. 290.—Let us free—Let us enjoy—Let us finish—Let us blacken—Let us perish—Let us reunite.

6. Model: *Nôtre.* See Obs. 292.—This saw is ours—This plane is ours—These papers are ours—These houses are ours—This garden is ours—This grammar is ours—These savings are ours.

7. Model: *Attendons.* See Obs. 293.—Let us lose—Let us hear—Let us stretch—Let us put—Let us pretend—Let us answer—Let us render—Let us follow—Let us suspend.

8. Model: *Nous aurions tort.* Syntax, 295.—She is right—He is wrong—He was right—She was wrong—They (masc.) are right—They (fem.) are wrong—They (fem.) were right—They (masc.) were wrong.

9. Model: *Divertissons-nous.* Syntax 297.—Let us finish them—Let us blacken them—Let us free him—Let us wait *for* her—Let us stretch ourselves.

10. Model: *Ne nous divertissons pas.* Syntax, 298.—Let us not lose them—Let us not answer him—Let us not follow her—Let us not free them—Let us not free ourselves.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION**

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Here is a sheet of paper—283.
2. There is a fine shop—283.
3. Here are our relations—283.
4. These are our dictionaries—283.
5. This is a letter [to] which must be answered—283, 296.

---

* In Conditional, Exceptional, and Proportional, the *a* must also be converted into an *e* in French (217).

** See notes on page 13.

6. That is a study which we do not like—283.
7. These are words which are not in the dictionary—283.
8. Those are people who are very brave—283.
9. Where is the little boy?—Here he is—294.
10. He was speaking of his mother; there she is—294.
11. Where are the children?—Here they are—294.
12. Behold them *diverting* [who divert] themselves—294.
13. We should enjoy their conversation, if they were more reasonable—284.
14. Why should we not divert ourselves?—284.
15. We should answer you, if we understood you—286.
16. We should hear them with pleasure—286.
17. Why should we suspend our studies?—286.
18. He has a fine house and a fine garden.
19. It is his taste, but it is not ours—292.
20. Their pleasures are ours—292.
21. This grammar is better than ours—292.
22. Let us enjoy our liberty—290.
23. Let us finish our lesson—290.
24. Let us answer [to] their questions—293.
25. Let us follow our companions—293.
26. Where are they?—There they are—294.
27. Where is she?—Here she is—294.
28. We do not know who is right or who is wrong—295.
29. Must one lose one's time?—296.
30. The French language must be studied—296.
31. Must I speak to him?—296.
32. You must not speak to him—296.
33. You must hear him without answering him—296.
34. We must divert ourselves—296.
35. You must divert yourselves—296.
36. What must I do?—296.
37. You must speak French—296.
38. Our companions are calling us, let us follow them—293, 297.
39. Let us render ourselves useful—293, 297.
40. Time is precious, let us not lose it—293, 298.
41. She goes too *slowly* [softly], let us not follow her—298.

FIFTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quinzième leçon.
Fifteenth

Ces étourdis avaient toujours quelque
giddy fellows had

nouvelle partie à lui proposer. L'un
new party propose

d'eux, par exemple, lui disait un jour :

" Venez avec moi demain. Nous irons
Come me to-morrow will go

en bateau sous l'ombre fraiche des grands
boat under shade cool

saules qui bordent la rivière, et là nous
willows skirt river there

pêcherons. J' aurai ma ligne ; vous pren-
will fish I shall have line will

drez la vôtre, | ainsi que | vos hameçons.
take yours as well as your hooks

---

* The mode of reviewing mentioned in first note on page 117 could now be made still shorter, by leaving out five of the earlier lessons, translating the 6th, 7th, and 8th from the French into English, the 9th, 10th, and 11th from the English into French, and only the 12th, 13th, and 14th in the complete manner required in first note on page 15. In all these attempts to gain time, however, due regard should be paid to the particular degree of proficiency attained, for the neglect of any portion of the text would of necessity cause much inconvenience in the studies, and tend to retard considerably all kinds of improvements.

** See 2d note on page 117.

Nous aurons de bonnes amorces, et je
will have good baits I

vous réponds que le poisson mordra.
warrant fish will bite

Votre ami, le gros Guillaume, et son
Your friend big William

frère, Jacques le roux, seront des nôtres.”
brother James red-haired will be ours

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

These madcaps had always some new party to propose to him. One of them, for instance, said to him one day: “Come with me to-morrow. We will go in a boat in the cool shade of the large willows that skirt the river, and there we will fish. I shall have my line; you will take yours, together with your hooks. We will have some good bait, and I warrant you the fish will bite. Your friend, fat William, and his brother, James the red-haired, will join us.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C’est la quinzième.
Qui avait toujours quelque nouvelle partie à lui proposer?	Ces étourdis.
Quels étourdis?	Les compagnons d’Alexis.
Qu’avaient-ils toujours à proposer?	Quelque nouvelle partie.
A qui avaient-ils quelque partie à proposer?	A Alexis.
Qui lui disait un jour: “Venez avec moi demain?”	L’un d’eux.
Que lui disait l’un d’eux?	Venez avec moi demain.
Comment lui proposait-il d’aller sous les saules?	En bateau.
Où lui proposait-il d’aller en bateau?	Sous l’ombre fraîche des saules.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Qu'est-ce que les saules bordaient?	La rivière.
De quoi la rivière était-elle bordée?	De grands saules.
Comment était l'ombre des saules?	Elle était fraîche.
Que voulaient-ils faire là?	Ils voulaient pêcher.
Que faut-il avoir pour pêcher?	Des lignes, des hameçons et des amorces.
Que fait-on avec des lignes, des hameçons et des amorces?	On pêche.
Que pensaient-ils prendre avec leurs amorces?	Du poisson.
Comment était Guillaume, l'ami d'Alexis?	Il était gros.
Comment était son frère Jacques?	Il était roux.
Comment s'appelaient les deux frères?	Guillaume et Jacques.
Comment s'appelait l'étourdi qui proposait la partie?	Nous ne le savons pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Nous avons une partie à vous proposer.	We have a party to propose to you.
Vous n'avez qu'à parler.	You have but to speak.
Nous nous proposons de pêcher à la ligne. Voulez-vous être des nôtres?	We intend to go fishing. Will you make one of us?
Avec beaucoup de plaisir.	With much pleasure.
Avez-vous des lignes et des hameçons?	Have you any lines and hooks?
Oui, oui, nous avons tout ce qu'il faut.	Yes, yes, we have all that is necessary.
Et où pêcherons-nous?	And where shall we fish?
Dans la rivière.	In the river.
Croyez-vous que nous prendrons beaucoup de poisson?	Do you think we shall catch many fish?
Mais, oui; c'est probable.	Why, yes; it is probable.

* See note on page 3.

Y a-t-il longtemps que vous n'avez pêché ?	Is it a long time since you went a fishing ?
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight.
Voilà la rivière. La voyez-vous ?	There is the river. Do you see it ?
Non. Où est-elle ?	No. Where is it ?
Voyez-vous cette petite maison devant laquelle il y a des saules ?	Do you see that little house before which there are some willows ?
Oui, sans doute.	To be sure, I do.
Eh bien, les saules que vous voyez bordent la rivière.	Well, the willows you see border the river.
Nous y voilà.	Here we are.
Passerons-nous le pont ?	Shall we go over the bridge ?
Non, nous avons un petit bateau.	No, we have a little boat.
Nous passerons l'eau dans notre bateau.	We will cross the river in our boat.
Venez avec moi.	Come with me.
Attendez ; retroussons nos manches.	Wait ; let us tuck up our sleeves.
Comme l'eau est fraîche !	How cool the water is !
Nous ne sommes pas bien placés. Venez à l'ombre.	We are not well here. Come into the shade.
Combien avez-vous de lignes ?	How many lines have you ?
Trois. Voilà celle de Guillaume, et voici la vôtre.	Three. That is William's, and this is yours.
Voyons qui prendra le premier poisson.	Let us see who will catch the first fish.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *jour*, *bateau*, *hameçon*, and *poisson ?* *—14.
Of what gender are *ombre*, *rivière*, *ligne*, and *amorce ?*—15.
What is the singular of *ces ?*—19.
In what mood is *proposer ?*—121.

---

* See notes on page 17.

In what tense and of what person is *bordent*, and what is its infinitive?—231.

What is the plural of *bateau?*—232.

What is the masculine of *bonne?*—184.

What is the singular of *étourdis?*—25.

What is the feminine of *étourdi?*—2.

Of what gender is *frère?*—8.

QUINZIÈME comes from *quinze*, fifteen (44).

ÉTOURDI, which is here an adjective used substantively, is also the past participle of the verb *étourdir*, to stun, to din, to astound, to make giddy.

AVAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of *avoir*.

NOUVELLE is the feminine of *nouveau* and *nouvel*, derived from *neuf*, new, which comes from the Latin *novus*, new. *Nouvel* is used only before a substantive beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, as: "*Un nouvel ami, Un nouvel homme.*" See *beau*, *bel*, and *belle*, in the eighth lesson; *mou*, *mol*, and *molle*, in the ninth; *vieux*, *vieil*, and *vieille*, in the fourteenth.

PARTIE is one of the derivatives of *part*, seen in the tenth lesson.

PROPOSER is one of the derivatives of *poser*, mentioned in the twelfth lesson.

VENEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *venir*, which is an irregular verb of much importance, because it enters into the formation of many others, such as: *Convenir*, to agree, to suit, to own; *disconvenir*, to disown, to deny; *contrevenir*, to act contrarily, to transgress; *devenir*, to become; *intervenir*, to intervene, to interfere; *parvenir*, to attain, to reach, to arrive; *prévenir*, to anticipate, to prevent, to prepossess, to apprise, to forewarn; *provenir*, to proceed, to come; *revenir*, to come back, to return; *se souvenir*, to remember, to recollect; *subvenir*, to relieve, to assist, to provide, to supply, etc.; and these in turn give rise to a number of words more, some of which will be found to be alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Con-*

vention, contravention, intervention ; avenue, avenue, walk ; *parvenu*, upstart; *souvenir*, remembrance, recollection, keepsake, etc., etc.

299. **Moi** is a personal pronoun, of the first person singular, of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pronoun *me* or *to me*. Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *I*.

Demain is generally an adverb, though sometimes a substantive. Its principal derivatives are: *Après-demain*, after to-morrow; and *lendemain*, following day, next day.

Irons is the first person plural of the future tense of *aller*. This irregular verb, in its infinitive mood and in the greater part of its conjugative forms, comes from the Latin *ambulare ;* its future tense and conditional mood are derived from *ire*, as: *Nous irons*, we shall go; *nous irions*, we should go; part of the present tense of the indicative mood, and one person of the imperative, come from *vadere*, as: *Il va*, he goes, seen in the third lesson. The three Latin verbs signify to walk or to go. The principal derivatives of *aller* are: *Allée*, alley, walk, passage; and *allure*, gait, carriage, pace, manner.

Bateau comes from the Italian *battello*, boat. Its principal derivative is *Batelier*, boatman, waterman.

300. **Sous**, from the Latin *sub*, under, is a preposition which generally corresponds to *under*, *below*, or *beneath*. In a few cases it is rendered by *with*, *on*, or *upon*.

Ombre comes from the Latin *umbra*, shade. Its principal derivatives are: *Ombrer*, to tint, to shade; *ombrage*, shade, umbrage, distrust; *ombrager*, to shade; *ombrageux*, shy, skittish; and *ombrelle*, parasol, sun-shade.

Fraîche is the irregular feminine of the adjective *frais*, which comes from the Latin *frigidus*, cold, cool. This adjective does not always signify *cool ;* it is also used in the sense of *fresh*, *recent*, *new*, *blooming*. The words having an immediate analogy with this, are: *Fraîcheur*, coolness, freshness, floridness, bloom, flaw of wind; *rafraîchir*, to refresh, to cool; *rafraîchissement*, cooling, cooling beverage, refreshment. *Froid*, cold (seen in Obs. 295), and its derivatives *frigidité*, frigidity, *réfrigération*, etc., etc., also properly belong to this root.

SAULE comes from the Latin *salix*, willow. It is masculine, notwithstanding its termination.

301. The names of trees and shrubs are masculine.

302. The following are feminine by exception: *Bourdaine*, berry-bearing buckthorn; *épine*, thorn; *ronce*, brier, bramble; *vigne*, vine; *viorne*, white bryony; *yeuse*, holly, holm oak.

BORDENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative (231) of *border*, derived from *bord*, border, verge, edge, bank, shore, which has been mentioned in the fifth lesson.

303. Many verbs in **er** are derived from substantives, as: *Scier*, to saw, from *scie*, saw; *raboter*, to plane, from *rabot*, plane; *manier*, to handle, from *main*, hand; *raisonner*, to reason, from *raison*, reason; *douter*, to doubt, from *doute*, doubt; *jardiner*, to garden, from *jardin*, garden; *goûter*, to taste, from *goût*, taste; *questionner*, to question, from *question* (288).

RIVIÈRE is derived from *rive*, bank, shore, skirt, which has also given rise to the word *rivage*, shore.

Là is an adverb of place, which comes from the Latin *illac*, that way. It is distinguished from the article *la*, the, and from the pronoun *la*, her, by the grave accent over the *a*, but without making any difference in the pronunciation.

PÊCHERONS is the first person plural of the future tense of *pêcher*, coming from the Latin *piscari*, to fish, the radical of which is *piscis*, fish. The principal derivatives of *pêcher* are: *Pêche*, fishing; *pêcherie*, fishery, fishing-place; and *pêcheur*, fisher, fisherman.

304. The first person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ons** to this termination.

J'AURAI stands for *je aurai* (11).

305. **Je**, from the Latin *ego*, I, is a personal pronoun of the first person singular and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the verb. When the verb begins with a vowel, the elision already mentioned (11) takes place.

AURAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *avoir*.

306. **Ma**, from the Latin *mea*, mine, is the feminine of the possessive adjective **mon**; the plural of both genders is **mes**. These three forms, *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, correspond to *my* (51, 107).

LIGNE comes from the Latin *linea*, thread or line, and has the various acceptations of the English word *line*. Its principal derivatives are: *Lignée*, lineage, progeny; *ligner*, to draw lines on; *linéaire*, linear, lineal; *linéament*, lineament. The verb *ligner* also enters into the formation of a number of others, as: *Aligner*, to trace in a line, to square, to dress, to range; *interligner*, to lead; *souligner*, to underline, to score, etc.

PRENDREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *prendre*, seen in the seventh lesson. This verb, as has been said before, is irregular, but not in the future tense.

307. The second person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing the final *e* into **ez**.

308. Vôtre, from the Latin *vester*, is a possessive adjective of both genders and of the singular number. Its plural, likewise of both genders, is **vos**. These two forms correspond to *your* (164).

309. Vôtre, derived from *votre*, is a possessive pronoun, almost invariably preceded by the article, thus: **le vôtre**, masculine and singular; **la vôtre**, feminine and singular; **les vôtres**, plural of both genders. These three forms correspond to *yours* (126, 292).

AINSI is an adverb, derived from the Latin *in sic*, in this manner. It corresponds to *so*, *thus*, *in this way*, *in that way*, *therefore*. With *que* after it, as in this lesson, it signifies, *in the same manner as*, *as well as*, *likewise*, *too*, *together with*.

HAMEÇON is of the masculine gender (14).

AURONS is the first person plural of the future tense of *avoir*.

AMORCE is of the feminine gender (15).

JE RÉPONDS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *répondre*, seen in the sixth lesson.

310. The first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **s**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense and mood, and to the second person singular of the imperative.

POISSON comes from the Latin *piscis*, fish, as can be seen from the derivative *piscine*, pool, piscina.

MORDRA is the third person singular of the future tense of *mordre*, which comes from the Latin *mordere*, to bite.

311. The third person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing the final *e* into **a**.

AMI is one of the derivatives of *aimer*, seen in the eleventh lesson.

GROS comes from the low Latin *grossus*, big. Its feminine, which is irregular, is *grosse*.

FRÈRE comes from the Latin *frater*, as can be seen from the derivatives *fraternel*, fraternal; *fraterniser*, to fraternize; *fraternité*, fraternity, etc.

ROUX comes from the Latin *rufus*, reddish, or *russeus*, deep red. Its feminine, which is irregular, is *rousse*.

SERONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *être*.

SYNTAX.

Why is there no substantive after the adjective *etourdis?* * — 171.

Why is *lui*, and not *le*, employed before *proposer?*—175.

What difference is there between "*Nous irons* EN *bateau*," and "*Nous irons* DANS *un bateau?*"—191.

Why would it not be correct to say "*J'aurai* MON *ligne*," instead of "*J'aurai* MA *ligne?*" and "VOTRE *hameçons*," instead of "VOS *hameçons?*"—107.

Why would it not be correct to say "DES *bonnes amorces?*"—103.

Why is *vous* before the verb, in "*Je vous réponds?*"—43.

L'un *d'eux lui disait.*

312. When **un** is used as a pronoun, as in the present example, it often takes the article. If *un* is joined or opposed to *autre*, the article is indispensable before each of these pronouns,

---

* See notes on page 17.

as will be seen hereafter. If *un* is not followed by *autre*, but is determined by *de* or *des*, the article may be used or omitted before it, according as the sense of this pronoun is more or less restricted by the construction of the phrase. When *un de* precedes a pronoun, as in "*L'un d'*EUX *lui disait*," custom seems to require the article more imperatively than when it precedes a substantive; for we could say with propriety: "UN *de ses* COMPAGNONS *lui disait*." But no absolute rule can be given on this subject. The use of the article before *un de* is sometimes merely euphonic and sometimes optional.

Venez avec **moi**.

313. Of the three pronouns of the first person singular, two of which—*je* and *moi*—are already known, *moi* is the only one that can be governed by a preposition, thus: *A moi*, to me; *avec moi*, with me; *de moi*, of me, from me; *par moi*, by me; *pour moi*, for me.

Le *gros Guillaume.*

314. The article, which is often omitted in English before an adjective or a title preceding a proper name, as: *Old Rowley*, *Young Romeo*, *King William*, must not be suppressed in French.

LEXICOLOGY.

Many verbs in **er** can be easily formed from substantives. Ex. *Bord*, border, verge, *border*, to border; *scie*, saw, *scier*, to saw, etc. See Obs. 303.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Arrivée,	Arrival.	*Etourderie*,	Thoughtlessness.
Arriver,	To arrive.	*Etourdissant*,	Stunning.
Dérivé,	Derivative.	*Etourdissement*,	Giddiness.
Dériver,	To be derived.	*Evénement*,	Event.
En gros,	By wholesale.	*Frisson*,	Shivering.

* See note on page 11.

Frissonner,	To shiver.	*Morceler*,	To parcel.
Grosseur,	Largeness, bulk.	*Mors*,	Bit (of a bridle).
Grossier,	Coarse, rough.	*Morsure*,	Bite.
Grossir,	To grow large.	*Remords*,	Remorse.
Grossissement,	Magnifying.	*Rouille*,	Rust.
Inventer,	To invent.	*Rouillé*,	Rusty.
Inventeur,	Inventor.	*Rouiller*,	To rust.
Morceau,	Morsel, piece.	*Rouillure*,	Rustiness.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Venez.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate by verbs derived from *venir*, given on page 191, from line 26, in the second person plural of the imperative.)—Agree—Disown—Transgress—Become—Intervene—Attain—Prevent—Proceed—Come back—Remember (you).

2. Model: *Border*, from *bord.* See Obs. 303 and 288.—(Form verbs in the infinitive mood from the following substantives.)—*Amorce—Coude—Commerce—Doute—Epargne—Goût—Jardin—Influence—Ombre—Pension—Question—Rabot—Raison—Scie.*

3. Model: *Nous pêcherons.* See Obs. 304.—We shall admire—We shall love—We shall amuse—We shall yawn—We shall correct—We shall cease—We shall give—We shall examine—We shall study—We shall imagine—We shall forget—We shall think—We shall pronounce—We shall look—We shall find.

4. Model: *Ma ligne.* See Obs. 306 and 107.—My father—My mother—My children—My friend—My shop—My boat—My companions—My dictionary—My grammar—My copy-books—My son—My fortune—My masters—My house—My trade—My workmen.

5. Model: *Vous prendrez.* See Obs. 307.—You will learn—You will wait—You will understand—You will say—You will hear—You will put—You will bite—You will pretend—You

---

* See note on page 12.

will please—You will lose—You will answer—You will render—You will follow—You will suspend.

6. Model: *Votre ami.* See Obs. 308 and 107.—Your father—Your mother—Your children—Your friend—Your shop—Your boat—Your companions—Your dictionary—Your grammar—Your copy-books—Your son—Your fortune—Your masters—Your house—Your trade—Your workmen.

7. Model: *La vôtre.* See Obs. 309.—My friend and yours—His shop and yours—Their companions and yours—My dictionary is with yours—His grammar is with yours—Their copy-books are with yours.

8. Model: *Je réponds.* See Obs. 310.—I take—I learn—I wait—I understand—I say—I hear—I bite—I pretend—I please—I lose—I answer—I render—I suspend.

9. Model: *Il mordra.* See Obs. 311.—He will take—He will learn—He will wait—He will understand—He will say—He will hear—He will put—He will pretend—He will please—He will lose—He will answer—He will render—He will follow—He will suspend.

10. Model: *Venez avec moi.* Syntax, 313—Come to me—He passes after me—She is with me—He speaks of me—She is before me—Between you and me—It is for me—He goes without me—I take that upon myself—His eye is turned towards me.

11. Model: *Le gros Guillaume.* Syntax, 314.—Kind William—Fat George—Young Alexis—Poor James—Little Charles—Old William.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Your new friend is very ambitious.
2. We know some new words.
3. It was always with a new pleasure that he saw his friends.
4. We shall study a new lesson to-morrow—304.

---

* See notes on page 13.

5. Agree with him *about* [of] the day and hour—273 (and page 191, from line 26).

6. Remember [you of] this lesson, and become more reasonable—273 (and page 191, from line 26).

7. Why will you not come with me?—313.

8. Come to my house—177, 313.

9. He does not like fish, when it is not fresh.

10. This water is very cool; it is even cold.

11. There was an old willow on the *bank* [border] of the river—301.

12. Our friends will not be influenced by that consideration—303.

13. When shall we speak French as well as he?—304.

14. Come on the bridge; we shall look *at* the workmen—304.

15. We shall study another day—304.

16. That is my grammar, and this is yours—283, 306, 309.

17. My friends are yours—306, 309.

18. My father and yours are old friends—306, 309.

19. Come with us; you will not lose your time—307, 308.

20. When you [will] hear them come, you will tell us—307, 264.

21. I take a lesson *every day* [all the days]—310.

22. I understand many words—310.

23. I learn with *great* [much] difficulty—310.

24. I do not understand you, but my brother will understand all [that which] you [will] tell him—310, 311.

25. He will answer [to] your questions—311, 308.

26. The fish will not bite—311.

27. William's mother was red-haired.

28. He is speaking to one of his friends—312.

29. Here is one of your best compositions—312.

30. One of us stopped *the* [that] man and spoke to him thus—312.

31. One of you is a great artist—312.

32. Little James is not very attentive—314.

33. Old William desires to speak to you—314.

34. Young Alexis will wait *for* you—314.

SIXTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Seizième leçon.
Sixteenth

"Ils auront du Champagne, des gâteaux
will have some Champagne some cakes

et d' autres friandises que leur fourniront
some nice things to them will furnish

à crédit des marchands qui les connais-
on credit some tradesmen them know

sent. Moi, je me chargerai du pain et de
(myself) will charge bread

la viande. | Quant à | vous, mon cher,
meat As for my dear

vous apporterez | ce que | vous voudrez.
will bring what will will

Ces messieurs savent des histoires qui vous
gentlemen know stories

surprendront et qui vous feront rire. Je
will surprise will make laugh.

suis sûr que vous ne serez pas fâché d'être
am sure will be sorry

venu. Je vous avertis que nous serons
come warn shall be

| de bonne heure | au rendez-vous. Hier,
early rendez-vous Yesterday

---

* See 1st note on page 187. ** See 2d note on page 117.

nous y étions avant six heures du matin.
were before morning.

Nous avions un filet qu'on nous avait
had net

prêté. Nous passâmes une journée très-
lent passed day very

agréable."
agreeable

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"They will have some Champagne, some cakes, and other nice things, which some tradesmen of their acquaintance will supply them with on credit. I shall provide the bread and meat. As for you, my dear fellow, bring whatever you please. Those young men know some stories that will surprise you and make you laugh. I am sure you will not be sorry to have come. I warn you that we shall be early at the place of rendez-vous. Yesterday we were there before six o'clock in the morning. We had a net which was lent us. We spent a very pleasant day."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la seizième.
Qu'est-ce que les amis d'Alexis auront?	Ils auront du Champagne, des gâteaux et d'autres friandises.
Comment auront-ils ces choses?	Des marchands qui les connaissent les leur fourniront à crédit.
De quoi se chargera l'ami qui parle à Alexis?	Il se chargera du pain et de la viande.
Qui se chargera du pain et de la viande?	L'ami qui parle à Alexis.
Et Alexis, qu'apportera-t-il?	Il apportera ce qu'il voudra.
Quels sont les messieurs qui savent des histoires?	Guillaume et Jacques.—Le gros Guillaume et Jacques le roux.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Que savent ces messieurs?	Ils savent des histoires qui surprendront Alexis et qui le feront rire.
Qui est-ce qui ne sera pas fâché d'être venu?	Alexis.
De quoi Alexis ne sera-t-il pas fâché?	D'être venu.
Quand les amis seront-ils au rendez-vous?	Ils y seront de bonne heure.
Où seront-ils de bonne heure?	Au rendez-vous.
Quel jour y étaient-ils avant six heures du matin?	Hier.
A quelle heure y étaient-ils hier?	Avant six heures du matin.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils avaient pour pêcher?	Ils avaient un filet qu'on leur avait prêté.
Qui est-ce qui leur avait prêté un filet?	Nous ne le savons pas.
Comment passèrent-ils la journée?	Ils la passèrent très-agréablement.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Comment cela va-t-il aujourd'hui, mon cher?	How are you to-day, my dear fellow?
Assez bien. Et vous?	Pretty well. How are you?
Mais, très-bien, comme vous voyez.	Why, very well, as you see.
Qu'avez-vous fait hier?	What did you do yesterday?
Des amis sont venus me prendre pour faire une partie de pêche avec eux.	Some friends came and took me to go fishing with them.
Avez-vous pris beaucoup de poisson?	Did you catch much fish?
Nous n'avons rien pris du tout.	We did not catch any thing at all.
Pauvres garçons! Comment cela se fait-il?	Poor fellows! How was that?

---

* See note on page 3.

Il y avait là de jeunes étourdis, qui parlaient, qui riaient, et qui rendaient la pêche impossible.	There were some young madcaps there, who were talking and laughing, and who made it impossible to fish.
Et aujourd'hui, comment passez-vous la journée ?	And to-day, how do you spend your time ?
Je suis forcé de travailler.	I am obliged to work.
Bah ! Vous travaillerez un autre jour.	Pshaw ! You can work another day.
Trois de nos camarades nous attendent pour faire une promenade.	Three of our comrades are waiting for us, to take a walk.
Je suis bien fâché de ne pas pouvoir être des vôtres.	I am very sorry that I cannot go with you.
Vous le pouvez, si vous le voulez.	You can, if you will.
Ce ne serait pas raisonnable.	It would not be reasonable.
Vous aurez tout le temps d'être raisonnable, quand vous serez vieux.	You will have plenty of time to be reasonable when you are old.
Pour quelle heure est le rendez-vous ?	For what o'clock is the rendez-vous ?
Pour dix heures. Il n'y a pas de temps à perdre.	For ten o'clock. There is no time to be lost.
Et où irons-nous ?	And where shall we go ?
Nous irons chez notre ami Guillaume, qui a une petite maison à lui, sur le bord de la rivière.	We will go and see our friend William, who has a little house of his own on the bank of the river.
Votre proposition est bien attrayante.	Your proposal is very tempting.
Aimez-vous le Champagne ?	Do you like Champagne ?
Oui, beaucoup.	Yes, very much.
Il y en aura, et du meilleur.	There will be some, and of the best sort.
Je me rends.	I consent.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *gâteau*, *crédit*, *marchand*, *pain*, *rendez-vous*, *matin*, and *filet?* *—14.

Of what gender are *friandise*, *viande*, *heure*, and *journée?* —15.

Why is the plural of *gâteau* in *x* instead of *s?*—232.

What is the plural of *rendez-vous?*—17.

In what mood is the verb *rire?*—121.

What is the infinitive of *avait?*

What is the infinitive of *prêté?*—52.

Of what gender is *agréable?*—6.

What is the feminine of *cher?*—3.

How do you know that *les* is a pronoun and not the article in "*des marchands qui* LES *connaissent?*"—27.

What is the singular of *messieurs?*—149.

What does *au* stand for?—55.

What does *du* stand for?—143.

What does *des* stand for?—113.

SEIZIÈME is derived from *seize*, sixteen (44).

AURONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *avoir*.

CHAMPAGNE, the name of a province of France, is feminine, as its termination denotes; but when used as a laconism for VIN *de Champagne*, wine of Champagne, it becomes masculine.

315. When a proper name is used to specify some peculiar production of a place, it takes the gender of the substantive which is understood.

---

* See notes on page 17.

GÂTEAU is a word of unknown origin; it is masculine according to analogy (14).

FRIANDISE is derived from *friand*, nice, dainty, fond, epicure; it is feminine according to analogy (15).

316. The termination **ise**, added to certain adjectives, makes substantives of them, as: *Sottise*, foolishness, from *sot*, fool; *franchise*, frankness, from *franc*, *franche*, frank; *gourmandise*, gluttony, from *gourmand*, glutton; and *friandise*, from *friand*.

LEUR before *fourniront* has not the same meaning as *leur* before *temps*, in the fourteenth lesson, or *leurs* before *paiements* in the sixth (152); it is here a personal pronoun.

317. Leur, when a personal pronoun, is of both genders and signifies *à eux, à elles*, to them. It is chiefly used in speaking of persons, and always accompanies a verb, whereas the possessive adjective *leur*, *leurs*, precedes a substantive. It never takes an *s*.

FOURNIRONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *fournir*.

318. The third person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ont** to this termination.

CRÉDIT means credit, interest, influence. The English expression, ON *credit*, or ON *trust*, is rendered in French by À *crédit*.

MARCHAND and *merchant* sound a good deal alike, but these words have, however, not exactly the same acceptation: *marchand* corresponds to *tradesman;* the French for *merchant* is *négociant*.

CONNAISSENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *connaître*, mentioned in the fifth lesson. This verb is irregular (207).

319. Me is a personal pronoun of the first person singular and of both genders. It is never used as a subject. It is sometimes a direct, and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *me*, *to me*, *myself*, *to myself*. It always precedes the verb, and cannot, like *moi* (312), be governed by a preposition. It is one of the words in which the elision of *e* takes place (11).

CHARGERAI is the first person singular of the future tense of

charger, derived from *char*, car, chariot, which comes from the Latin *carrus*, car. The principal derivatives of CHAR are: *Chariot*, wagon; *charrette*, cart; *charretier*, carman; *charron*, wheelright; *charrue*, plough; and a number of other words whose analogy with the English will be readily seen, as: *Charge*, burden, load, charge; *chargeur*, loader, shipper, gunner; *chargement*, lading, cargo, freight, shipment; *décharger*, to unload, to discharge; *recharger*, to load again; *surcharger*, to overburden; etc., etc.

320. The first person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by adding **ai** to this termination.

PAIN comes from the Latin *panis*, bread. Its principal derivatives are: *Pain à cacheter*, wafer; *pain d'épice*, gingerbread; *panade*, panada, bread-soup; *paner*, to cover with bread-crumbs; and *panetier*, pantler.

VIANDE comes through the Italian *vivanda*, meat, from the Latin verb *vivere*, to live, to subsist. It corresponds to *meat* or *viand*, but only in the sense of *flesh*.

QUANT, which must not be confounded with QUAND, when, comes from the Latin *quantum*, as much as. This adverb is always followed by *à*, and signifies *with regard to*, *with respect to*, *as to*, *as for*.

MON is the masculine of MA, seen in the fifteenth lesson (306).

CHER comes from the Latin *carus*, dear. Its principal derivatives are: *Caresse*, caress; *caresser*, to caress; *caressant*, caressing; *chéri*, cherished, beloved; and *chérir*, to cherish.

APPORTEREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *apporter*, which is one of the derivatives of *porter*, seen in the seventh lesson.

321. The second person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by adding **ez** to this termination.

VOUDREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of the irregular verb *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

MESSIEURS is the plural of *monsieur*, seen in the sixth lesson (149).

SAVENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *savoir*, seen in the first lesson.

HISTOIRE comes from the Latin *historia*, history. It is feminine, though, by a rule which will be seen later, substantives in *toire* are masculine. Its principal derivatives are: *Historien*, historian; *historiette*, tale, story; *historiographe*, historiographer; and *historique*, historical.

322. The termination **oire** is common to substantives and adjectives, about one hundred of which end in English in ORY, as: *Gloire*, glory; *mémoire*, memory; *accessoire*, accessory; *obligatoire*, obligatory; *victoire*, victory; *ivoire*, ivory; etc.

VOUS, which has hitherto been seen as a subject, is a regimen before *surprendront*, *feront*, and *avertis*.

323. **Vous** is an invariable personal pronoun, which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct and sometimes the indirect regimen of the verb. It corresponds to *you*, *yourself*, *yourselves*, *to you*, *to yourself*, *to yourselves*.

SURPRENDRONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *surprendre*, one of the derivatives of *prendre*, already known. *Prendre* and its derivatives are irregular, as has been seen; but the irregularity does not extend to the future tense.

324. The third person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing the final **e** into **ont**.

FERONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *faire*, seen in the third lesson.

RIRE is an irregular verb, which comes from the Latin *ridere*, to laugh. Its principal derivatives are: *Dérision*, derision; *dérisoire*, derisive; *ridicule* (subst.), ridicule; *ridicule* (adj.), ridiculous; *rieur*, laugher; *risée*, laughter, jest, butt, laughing-stock; and *risible*, laughable.

SUIS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être*.

SÛR comes from the Latin *securus*, safe, sure. It is distinguished from the preposition *sur*, upon, and from the adjective *sur*, sour, by a circumflex accent over the *u*; but the sound is not modified by this accent. The principal derivatives of SÛR

are: *Assurance*, assurance, insurance, safety; *assurer*, to assure, to insure, to secure; and *sûreté*, sureness, safety, security.

SEREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *être*.

FÂCHÉ is the past participle, used adjectively, of the verb *fâcher*, to offend, to anger, to vex. Its most important derivatives are: *Se fâcher*, to get angry, to take offence; and *fâcheux*, unpleasant, vexatious.

VENU is the past participle of the irregular verb *venir*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

J'AVERTIS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avertir*.

325. The first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similâr to the second person singular of the same tense and mood,—to the first and second person singular of the past tense definite,—and to the second person singular of the imperative mood.

SERONS is the first person plural of the future tense of *être*.

DE BONNE HEURE, literally *of good hour*, is an idiomatic adverbial locution, which signifies *early* or *betimes*.

RENDEZ-VOUS is a compound substantive, formed of the second person plural of the imperative of *rendre* and the pronoun *vous*; its literal sense is *repair you*, or *betake yourself*.

326. The radicals forming a compound word, as *rendez-vous*, are joined by a hyphen.

HIER comes from the Latin *heri*, yesterday. Its only derivative is *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday.

ÉTIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *être*.

327. **Avant**, which has been mentioned in the eighth lesson, is a preposition signifying *before*. It must not be confounded with *devant* (186), which simply denotes place or situation. *Avant* marks priority of time or of place.

MATIN comes, through the Italian *mattina*, from the Latin *matutinum*, morning. Its derivatives are: *Matinal*, early; *matinée*, morning; and *matineux*, early, early riser.

AVIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *avoir*.

FILET is derived from *fil*, thread, which comes from the Latin *filum*, thread. The principal derivatives of FIL are: *Enfiler*, to thread, to string, to run through; *filasse*, tow, bast; *filer*, to spin; and *fileur*, spinner.

PRÊTÉ is the past participle of *prêter*, which comes from the Latin *præstare*, to furnish. The principal derivatives are: *Prêt*, loan; and *prêteur*, lender.

PASSÂMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *passer*, seen in the third lesson.

328. The first person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **âmes**.

JOURNÉE is one of the derivatives of *jour*, seen in the eighth lesson. These two words, *jour* and *journée*, are rendered in English by the same expression: *day;* but they are not perfectly synonymous. *Jour* is the general term for day, without reference to its duration. *Journée* defines the whole or full day. The same difference exists between *an* and *année*, year; *matin* and *matinée*, morning; *soir* and *soirée*, evening.

329. The termination **ée** in substantives commonly denotes the whole, the sum total of that which is expressed by the radical, as in *journée*, a whole day, from *jour*, day. This termination also corresponds in many substantives to the English termination *ful*, or *full*, as in: *Bouchée*, mouthful, from *bouche*, mouth; *cuillerée*, spoonful, from *cuiller*, spoon; *aiguillée*, needleful, from *aiguille*, needle; *assiettée*, plateful, from *assiette*, plate.

TRÈS comes from the Latin *tres*, three. It is joined to adjectives and adverbs to form the superlative of eminence, as the word *very* does in English. *Très-agréable*, very agreeable, signifies literally *three times agreeable*. The adverbs *fort* and *bien* have been seen employed as synonyms of *très*, in "*Fort peu de chose*" (7th lesson), and "*Nous serions bien fous*" (12th lesson).

330. The adverb **très** is joined to the word that follows it by a hyphen. This sign is not used after *fort* and *bien*.

AGRÉABLE is derived from *gré*, inclination, taste, liking, which comes from the Latin *gratum*, agreeableness. The principal derivatives of GRÉ are: *Agréer*, to please, to approve, to allow;

agrément, pleasantness, charm, ornament, consent, approbation; *bon gré, mal gré*, willing or unwilling; *désagréable*, disagreeable; *désagrément*, disagreeableness; *malgré*, notwithstanding, in spite of, etc.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say "D'*autres friandises*," and not "DES *autres friandises?*" *—103.

Why is *leur* before *fourniront*, and *les* before *connaissent?* —43.

Why is there no preposition between *feront* and *rire?*—187.

Why is *y* placed before *étions?*—201.

Why is the imperfect tense properly used in "*Nous y étions*" and "*Nous avions un filet?*"—134.

Why is the past tense definite properly used in "*Nous passâmes une journée?*"—135.

Why is "*Which had been lent us*" rendered by "*Qu'*ON *nous avait prêté?*"—61.

With what does the past participle *prêté* agree, in "*Qu'on nous avait prêté?*"—105.

Du *Champagne*, **des** *gâteaux et* **d'***autres friandises.*

331. The partitive article **de, du, de la, des** (93), corresponding to *some* or *any*, must be repeated before each substantive, as well as the simple article (202) and the preposition *de* (109).

Que leur fourniront des marchands qui les connaissent.

In this phrase, *des marchands*, which is the subject, is placed after the verb, contrary to the general rule, which, in French as well as in English, is that the subject precedes the verb.

---

* See notes on page 17.

This inversive construction, though not obligatory, is often employed when the subject is qualified by an incidental phrase, as *des marchands* is here qualified by *qui les connaissent.*

332. When the subject is a substantive followed by other words which qualify it, it is sometimes proper to place it after the verb.

Moi, *je me chargerai.*

333. Moi is joined to **je**, by apposition and reduplication, for the sake of emphasis, which in English is represented by underlining the pronoun or printing it in italic. In French, the reduplication either precedes the verb, as in the above phrase, or follows it, thus : "*Je me chargerai*, MOI." The personal pronouns are also susceptible of this reduplication. In this construction, *quant à* is generally understood, or may be expressed as in the text : "*Quant à vous, mon cher, vous apporterez.*" We might have said : "*Quant à moi, je me chargerai,*" and "*Vous, mon cher, vous apporterez.*"

Vous apporterez ce que vous **voudrez**.

The two verbs, *apporter* and *vouloir*, are in the future tense. In English, the second verb would be in the present tense.

334. The present tense, used in English to point out the relative time of a future action, must be rendered in French by the future.

---

*Vous ne serez pas fâché d'***être venu**.

335. There are about six hundred neuter verbs in French, of which about five hundred and fifty are conjugated in their compound tenses by means of the auxiliary verb *avoir*. Among the remainder, some take either *être* or *avoir* as an auxiliary, according to the sense in which they are used, as will be explained later, and the following invariably require *être :*

Aller, to go.
Arriver, to arrive, to happen.
Choir, to fall (seldom used).
Décéder, to decease.
Eclore, to hatch.
Mourir, to die.
Naître, to be born.
Tomber, to fall.

Venir, to come.
Devenir, to become, to grow.
Intervenir, to intervene.
Parvenir, to reach, to succeed.
Revenir, to come back, to return.
* Observe that not all the derivatives of *venir*, but only four of them, are included in this list.

Six **heures** *du matin.*

336. The distinction made in English between *hour* and *o'clock* has no equivalent in French: the word *heure* being used indifferently to express an interval of sixty minutes, or that moment of time which the clock indicates. In consequence, we render "*It is six o'clock*," by "*Il est six heures*," and "*He works six hours a day*," by "*Il travaille six heures par jour*."

LEXICOLOGY.

About 100 substantives ending with **ory** in English, become French by changing *ory* into *oire*. Ex. History, *histoire*. See Obs. 322.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Affiler,	To sharpen.	*Champêtre*,	Rural.
Camp,	Camp.	*Champignon*,	Mushroom.
Campagnard,	Countryman.	*Champion*,	Champion.
Campagne,	Country.	*Charité*,	Charity.
Campement,	Encampment.	*Effiler*,	To unravel.
Cargaison,	Cargo.	*Filière*,	Draw-plate.
Caricature,	Caricature.	*Filigrane*,	Filigree.
Carrière,	Career.	*Filoselle*,	Floss-silk.
Carrosse,	Coach, carriage.	*Profil*,	Profile.
Carrossier,	Coach-maker.	*Quantité*,	Quantity.
Carrousel,	Tournament.	*Sourire*,	Smile.

---

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Que* LEUR *fourniront.* See Obs. 317.—You will bring (to) them—He has said to them—She gives (to) them—He said to them—They gave (to) them—He could say to them—They spoke to them—He could propose to them—She has lent (to) them.

2. Model: *Fourniront.* See Obs. 318.—They will assail—They will free—They will warn—They will divert—They will finish—They will enjoy—They will blacken—They will perish—They will reunite—They will feel.

3. Model: *Je* ME *chargerai.* See Obs. 319.—I shall correct myself—He will correct me—They know me—He gives me—They gave me—They said to me—I stretch myself—They will furnish me—He has guided me—She will bite me—Blackening myself—They have forgotten me—I shall talk to myself.

4. Model: *Je chargerai.* See Obs. 320.—I shall love—I shall bring—I shall give—I shall examine—I shall imagine—I shall forget—I shall think—I shall pass—I shall lend.

5. Model: *Vous apporterez.* See Obs. 321.—You will stop—You will admire—You will amuse—You will contribute—You will charge—You will exercise—You will study—You will force—You will lounge—You will possess—You will speak—You will look.

6. Model: *Histoire.* See Obs. 322.—Glory—Memory—Interrogatory—Inflammatory—Laboratory—Observatory—Refectory—Victory—Territory—Promontory—Repertory—Ivory.

7. Model: *Vous.* See Obs. 323.—He called you—We admire you—They love you—You will understand yourself—You will give yourself—You will exercise yourself—They will furnish (to) you—He speaks to you—He said to you—You will say to yourself.

8. Model: *Surprendront.* See Obs. 324.—They will learn—

---

* See note on page 12.

They will wait—They will understand—They will say—They will hear—They will put—They will bite—They will pretend—They will please—They will lose—They will answer—They will render—They will laugh—They will follow.

9. Model: *J'avertis.* See Obs. 325.—I free—I divert—I finish—I furnish—I enjoy—I blacken—I perish—I reunite.

10. Model: *Nous passâmes.* See Obs. 328.—We brought—We gave—We examined—We imagined—We forgot—We thought—We studied—We animated—We tucked up.

11. Model: *Très-agréable.* See Obs. 330.—Very active—Very ambitious—Very attentive—Very good—Very fine—Very dear—Very true—Very false—Very frank—Very cool—Very great—Very grave.

12. Model: *Du Champagne, des gâteaux*, etc. Syntax, 331.—Some bread and water—Any friends or companions—Some stories and proverbs—Some lines, hooks, and baits—Any shade and coolness—Some bread and fish.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Champagne is better than water—35, 315.
2. Our friends are in the boat. We will go *and* [to] speak to them—317.
3. What shall we propose to them?—317.
4. We will lend them our lines—317.
5. Their parents have given them some nice things—317.
6. They will enjoy their hours of recreation—318.
7. They will divert you *with* [by] their mirth—318.
8. My son gives me all that [which] he has—319.
9. All my friends have forgotten me—319.
10. Does he think that I shall speak French with facility?—320.
11. Does he think that I shall pronounce well?—320.

---

* See notes on page 13.

12. I shall not forget the good examples which he has given me—320, 319, 105.

13. Where shall you pass the day?—321, 329.

14. Your friend has forgotten his lesson; he has very little memory—322.

15. Your brothers will wait for you—323, 324.

16. They will take their nets with them—324.

17. I *assemble* [reunite] all my friends—325.

18. We lent a boat to your companions—328.

19. We proposed to them to come with us—328, 189.

20. We found the tradesman in his shop—328.

21. The morning is beautiful—329.

22. That year was one of the best for tradesmen—329.

23. The poor man has nothing but bread and water—331.

24. Do you know whether (if) he has any relations or friends?—331.

25. We shall have some bread, meat, fish, and nice things—331.

26. We like to follow the example which [the] men, who have more experience than we, give us—332.

27. Do you know what Boileau, that satirical poet, said?—332.

28. What he has not had, *I* shall have—333, 264.

29. They are waiting *for* you; *I* am not waiting *for* you—333.

30. Come when you will—246.

31. We shall be reasonable when we are old—334.

32. When they have children, they will be more serious—334, 141.

33. Where has he gone with his boat?—335.

34. Your master has come [for] to give you a lesson—335.

35. We have come [for] to see you—335.

36. Have our friends come back?—335.

37. What o'clock is it?—336.

38. It is seven o'clock—336.

39. At what o'clock shall you take your lesson?—336.

40. At eight o'clock—336.

41. You will take a lesson of two hours—336.

SEVENTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dix-septième leçon.
Seventeenth

"Il est vrai que, pendant plusieurs
during

heures, nous ne vîmes rien venir. Mais
saw to come

nous eûmes de la patience, et nous en
had patience for it

fûmes récompensés outre mesure; car
were rewarded beyond measure for

nous prîmes quatre grosses carpes dorées,
took four big carps gilded

une anguille qui avait un mètre, | c'est-
eel metre that is

à-dire | environ trois pieds de longueur,
to say about three feet length

et tant de goujons, d'ablettes et de menu
so many gudgeons bleaks small

fretin que nous en remplîmes un panier.
fry with them filled basket

Nous voulûmes savoir le poids de notre
willed to know weight

pêche. Le tout pesait quinze kilogrammes
fishing whole weighed fifteen kilograms

---

* See 1st note on page 187. ** See 2d note on page 117.

et demi, | ce qui | équivaut à trente et
half which is equivalent thirty

une livres. Nous en vendîmes la moitié.
pounds of it sold half

Je ne doute pas que nous ne réussissions
doubt but succeed (subj.)

encore cette fois-ci."
again here

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"For some hours, it is true, we had no result. But we had patience, and were amply rewarded for it; for we caught four large golden carps, an eel that was a metre, that is about three feet long, and so many gudgeons, bleaks, and small fry, that we filled a basket with them. We wanted to know the weight of our fish. The whole weighed fifteen kilograms and a half, which is equivalent to thirty-one pounds. We sold the half of it. I do not doubt but we shall succeed this time also."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la dix-septième.
Pendant combien de temps attendirent-ils sans voir rien venir?	Pendant plusieurs heures.
Qu'est-ce qu'ils eurent?	De la patience.
Comment leur patience fut-elle récompensée?	Outre mesure.
Qu'est-ce qui fut récompensé outre mesure?	Leur patience.
Combien de carpes pêchèrent-ils?	Quatre.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Comment étaient les carpes qu'ils pêchèrent?	Grosses et dorées.
Que pêchèrent-ils encore?	Une anguille.
Quelle était la longueur de cette anguille?	Un mètre, ou environ trois pieds.
Que pêchèrent-ils encore?	Des goujons, des ablettes et du fretin.
Pêchèrent-ils beaucoup de goujons, d'ablettes et de fretin?	Ils en pêchèrent tant, qu'ils en remplirent un panier.
Que désirèrent-ils savoir?	Ils désirèrent savoir le poids de leur pêche.
Combien pesait le tout?	Quinze kilogrammes et demi.
A quoi cela équivaut-il?	A trente et une livres.
Que firent-ils de ce poisson?	Ils en vendirent la moitié.
L'étourdi qui parlait à Alexis pensait-il réussir encore?	Il n'en doutait pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Mon cher maître, voulez-vous me rendre un service?	My dear master, will you do me a service?
Avec grand plaisir, si c'est en mon pouvoir.	With great pleasure, if it is in my power.
De quoi est-il question?	What is the matter?
Je ne comprends rien du tout aux poids et aux mesures de France.	I understand nothing at all about the weights and measures of France.
Et vous voulez que je vous en donne l'explication?	And you want me to give you an explanation of them?
C'est cela même.	Exactly so.
Ce n'est pas très-facile.	It is not very easy.
Pourquoi donc?	Why not?
Parce que vous ne savez pas tous les mots qui me sont nécessaires pour me faire comprendre.	Because you do not know all the words which I require to make myself understood.
Cela ne fait rien.	That does not signify.

---

* See note on page 3.

Parlez toujours; je suis sûr de vous comprendre.	Speak nevertheless; I am sure to understand you.
Il y a tant de mots qui ont de la ressemblance entre eux dans les deux langues!	There are so many words which bear a resemblance to each other in the two languages!
Vous pouvez faire usage de quelques-uns de ces mots-là.	You can make use of some of those words.
Eh bien, comme vous voudrez.	Well, as you please.
D'abord, qu'est-ce que le mètre?	First, what is the meter?
C'est la dix millionième partie de la distance de l'équateur au pôle.	It is the ten millionth part of the distance from the equator to the pole.
A laquelle de nos mesures cela correspond-il?	To which of our measures does that correspond?
Au *yard*, mais c'est plus long d'un quart de pied environ.	To the yard, but it is longer by about a quarter of a foot.
Quelles sont les divisions du mètre?	What are the divisions of the meter?
Le décimètre, qui est la dixième partie du mètre.	The decimeter, which is the tenth part of the meter.
Le centimètre, qui en est la centième partie.	The centimeter, which is the hundredth part of it.
Et le millimètre, qui en est la millième partie.	And the millimeter, which is the thousandth part of it.
Quels sont les multiples du mètre?	What are the multiples of the meter?
Le décamètre, qui équivaut à dix mètres.	The decameter, which is ten metres.
L'hectomètre, ou cent mètres.	The hectometer, or a hundred meters.
Le kilomètre, ou mille mètres.	The kilometer, or a thousand meters.
Et le myriamètre, ou dix mille mètres.	And the myriameter, or ten thousand meters.
Une autre fois, nous parlerons des autres mesures.	Another time, we shall speak of the other measures.
En voilà assez pour aujourd'hui.	This is enough for to-day.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *pied*, *goujon*, *panier*, and *poids?* *—14.

Of what gender are *heure*, *patience*, *mesure*, and *pêche?*—15.

Of what gender is *longueur?*—95.

Why is there an *s* added to *heure*, *carpe*, *pied*, *goujon*, and *livre?*—29.

What is the plural of *poids* and *fois?*—17.

In what mood are *venir*, *dire*, and *savoir?*—121.

What are the infinitives of *récompensés* and of *dorées?*—52.

What is the infinitive of *pesait?*—47.

What is the masculine of *grosse?*

What is the plural of *notre?*—164.

What is the masculine of *cette?*—19.

What is the plural of *cette?*—19.

Dix-septième is derived from *dix*, seen in the tenth lesson, and *sept*, seen in the seventh.

337. The hyphen is used between two numbers, when the latter does not exceed nineteen. It is also used in *quatre-vingts*, four score, or eighty, and *quinze-vingts*, fifteen score, or three hundred.

Pendant is one of the derivatives of *pendre*, mentioned in the sixth lesson.

Vîmes is the first person plural of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *voir*, mentioned in the second lesson.

Venir has been mentioned in the fifteenth lesson.

---

* See notes on page 17.

EÛMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *avoir*.

PATIENCE is a word alike in both languages (167).

FÛMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *être*.

RÉCOMPENSÉS is the past participle of the verb *récompenser*, to recompense, to reward (52). It is here in the masculine plural (53).

NOUS FÛMES RÉCOMPENSÉS, we were rewarded, is a form of the passive verb *être récompensé*.

338. **Passive verbs**, in French as well as in English, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb ÊTRE, to be, thus: "*Je suis récompensé*, I am rewarded; *Elle fut récompensée*, she was rewarded; *Vous serez récompensés*, you will be rewarded; *Elles seront récompensées*, they will be rewarded."

339. **Outre**, from the Latin *ultra*, beyond, is a preposition which signifies *beyond*, *over and above*, *besides*, *in addition to*. It is also used adverbially, and corresponds to *beyond*, *farther*, or *further*.

MESURE comes from the Latin *mensura*, measure. Its principal derivatives are: *Mesuré*, measured, moderate, cautious; *mesurer*, to measure; *mesureur*, measurer; and *démesuré*, immoderate.

340. The termination **ure** is common to about one hundred substantives which are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, as: *Censure*, *créature*, *miniature*, *nature*, *stature*, *agriculture*; *mesure*, measure; *littérature*, literature; *conjoncture*, conjuncture; *aventure*, adventure.

CAR, formerly written *quar*, comes from the Latin *quare*, wherefore, therefore, formed of *quâ* and *re*, literally, from which thing, for which reason.

PRÎMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *prendre*, already seen.

QUATRE is the radical of *quatrième*, seen in the fourth lesson.

GROSSE is the irregular feminine of *gros*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

CARPE, from the low Latin *carpio*, carp; is of the feminine gender according to analogy (15).

Dorées, employed in this lesson as an adjective, is the feminine form of the past participle of *dorer*, to gild, which is derived from *or*, gold. The principal derivatives of or are: *Orfèvre*, goldsmith; *oriflamme*, oriflame; *doreur*, gilder; *dorure*, gilding, etc.

Anguille comes from the Latin *anguilla*, eel, derived from *anguis*, snake. Its principal derivative is *anguillade*, cut or lash given with an eel-skin.

Mètre, from the Greek μέτρον, measure, is masculine (341, 347), and is the unity of the French measure of length, equal to 39 $\frac{37}{100}$ English inches. It enters into the formation of a number of words, many of which will be found to be nearly the same in both languages, as: *Baromètre*, barometer; *centimètre*, centimeter; *decimètre*, decimeter; *diamètre*, diameter; *gazomètre*, gasometer; *thermomètre*, thermometer, etc.

341. Substantives ending in **tre** are masculine.

342. The following are feminine by exception: *Chartre*, charter; *dartre*, disease of the skin; *épître*, epistle; *fenêtre*, window; *guètre*, gaiter; *huître*, oyster; *lettre*, letter; *loutre*, otter; *mitre*, mitre; *montre*, watch; *outre*, leathern-bottle; *piastre*, piaster; *poutre*, beam; *rencontre*, encounter; *vitre*, pane of glass.

C'est-à-dire is an adverbial expression composed of words which have been seen already, and corresponding to *that is*, or *that is to say*.

343. The hyphen is used between words combined to form an idiomatic locution.

Environ is here an adverb, and means about. The substantive *environs*, environs, vicinity, is often met with in English.

Trois is the radical of *troisième*, seen in the third lesson.

Pied, from the Latin *pes*, *pedis*, has the same variety of acceptations as the English word *foot*, as: "*Les pieds d'un homme*, the feet of a man; *Le pied d'une colline*, the foot of a hill; *Long de trois pieds*, three feet long, etc."

Longueur is one of the derivatives of *long*, *longue*, seen in the ninth lesson.

344. **Tant**, from the Latin *tantus*, so great, is an adverb of quantity, corresponding to *so much*, *as much*, *so many*, *as many*,

so far, as far, so long, as long, to such a degree. Before a substantive it takes *de* (39).

GOUJON comes from the Latin *gobio*, gudgeon; it is masculine according to analogy (14).

ABLETTE is derived from the French *able*, which has the same sense and comes from the Latin *albus*, white.

345. The termination **ette** is a diminutive found in about three hundred substantives, some of which have their correspondents in English ending in *et*, as: *Lancette*, lancet; *hachette*, hatchet; *jaquette*, jacket; *cassette*, casket; *tablette*, tablet; *bandelette*, bandelet; *chansonnette*, canzonet; *fleurette*, floweret.

MENU means *small*, rather in the sense of thin, trifling, inconsiderable, and should not be confounded with *petit*, little, small, a word in much more general use.

FRETIN is of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

REMPLÎMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *remplir*.

346. The first person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **îmes**.

PANIER is of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

VOULÛMES is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

SAVOIR is the infinitive mood of *savez*, seen in the first lesson.

POIDS is a substantive that is the same in the singular as in the plural (17).

PÊCHE is one of the derivatives of the verb *pêcher*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

TOUT, seen in the first lesson as an adjective in its plural form, is a substantive in this lesson.

PESAIT is a form (47) of the verb *peser*, one of the derivatives of *poids*. Seen above.

QUINZE is one of the derivatives of *cinq*, seen in the fifth lesson.

KILOGRAMME is formed of the two Greek words χίλιοι, thousand, and γράμμα or γραμμάριον, scruple, the 24th part of an ounce.

GRAMME is the unity of weight in the metrical system now used in France. It is the weight of a cubic centimetre of dis-

tilled water in its state of maximum density, equal to 15.4325 grains troy. It is masculine (347).

347. In the system of weights, measures, and coins, now established in France, all the words in the nomenclature are masculine. Of those which have not yet been seen, and which will be explained later, we shall mention the principal: *Are*, a superficial measure; *litre*, a measure of capacity; *stère*, a solid measure; *décime*, *centime*, subdivisions of the *franc*, which is the unity of coins.

Demi is derived from *mi*, half, an invariable adjective or particle, used only in combination with certain words. *Mi* comes from the Latin *medius*, middle, or mean, or the Greek ἡμι, half. Its principal derivatives are: *Midi*, midday, noon; *minuit*, midnight; *milieu*, middle, midst, medium; *demi*, half; *hémisphère*, hemisphere; *hémicycle*, semicircle, etc.

Équivaut is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *équivaloir*, derived from *valoir*, to be worth, to be as good as, which comes from the Latin *valere*, to be worth. *Valoir* is an irregular verb.

Livre, in the sense of pound, a weight, comes from the Latin *libra*, pound. It is also the old name of a coin equal to twenty cents in value, and now superseded by the *franc*. In both these senses *livre* is feminine, and accordingly regular; but this word has a third meaning, *book*, from the Latin *liber*, and in this sense it is masculine.

Vendîmes is the first person plural of the past tense definite of *vendre*, which comes from the Latin *vendere*, to sell.

348. The first person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **âmes** (346).

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the past tense definite in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Nous pass*âmes *une journée très-agréable.*"—16th lesson.

"*Nous rempl*îmes *un panier.*"—17th lesson.

"*Nous en vend*îmes *la moitié.*"—17th lesson.

"*Nous* fûmes *récompensés.*"—17th lesson.

"*Nous* eûmes *de la patience.*"—17th lesson.

MOITIÉ is feminine by exception. *Moitié* and *demi* are both rendered in English by the same word, *half;* but *moitié* is a substantive, and *demi* an adjective.

JE DOUTE is the first person singular of the present tense of *douter*, derived from *doute*, which has been seen in the fourth lesson.

349. The first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** is formed by changing this termination into **e** mute (310, 325). It is similar to the third person singular of the same tense and mood (22), to the second person singular of the imperative mood, and to the first and third persons singular of the present tense of the subjunctive.

RÉUSSISSIONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *réussir*, which comes from the Italian *riuscire*, to come out again, to succeed. The only derivative of this verb is *réussite*, success or issue.

350. The first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ions** (196, § 2). It is similar to the same person of the past tense of this mood, and to the same person of the imperfect tense of the indicative.

ENCORE usually corresponds to *again*, *yet*, *still*, and is occasionally used in the sense of *besides*, *moreover*, *more*, *longer*, *else*, and *even*.

351. Ci is the abbreviation of the adverb *ici*, here, from the Latin *hic*, here. It is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting nearness, in opposition to *là*, which marks remoteness, as: *Cette fois-ci*, this time; *cette fois-là*, that time. *Ci* and *là* are joined to the preceding word by a hyphen.

352. Ci and **là** are likewise added to the demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and *celles* (100), thus: *Celui-ci*, this one; *celui-là*, that one, etc.

353. Ci is sometimes prefixed to adjectives, as: *Ci-joint*, annexed; *ci-inclus*, herein inclosed; and it forms adverbial expressions with the following prepositions:

Ci-après, hereafter.
Ci-contre, herewith, on the other side.
Ci-dessus, above.
Ci-dessous, underneath, below, hereafter.
Ci-devant, before, previously, formerly, former.

SYNTAX.

Why do we say, "*Nous ne vîmes rien*," instead of "*Nous vîmes rien*," or, "*Nous vîmes ne rien?*" *—38.

Why do we say, "*Nous eûmes* DE LA *patience*," instead of "*Nous eûmes patience?*"—102.

Why is *en* before *fûmes* in "*Nous en fûmes récompensés;*" before *remplîmes* in "*Nous en remplîmes un panier*," and before *vendîmes* in "*Nous en vendîmes la moitié?*"—268, 278.

Why do we say "*Tant* DE *goujons*" and not "*Tant goujons?*" —39.

Why is *de* repeated before *ablettes* and *menu fretin?*—109.

Why is *ne* before the verb in "*Je ne doute pas?*"—38.

Why is the participle *dorées* feminine and plural?—63.

Why is there no preposition between *vîmes* and *venir*, between *voulûmes* and *savoir?*—187.

Nous fûmes récompensés.

Here *récompensés* has the plural masculine termination. It agrees with its subject, *nous*.

354. The past participle, when conjugated with the verb *être*, agrees in gender and number with its subject.

There is an exception to this rule: when the verb has the reflective or pronominal form, as will be explained later.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Carpes dorées.

355. The past participle, when used as an adjective, is almost invariably placed after the substantive.

Une anguille qui **avait** *trois pieds* **de longueur.**

356. In English, the usual manner of expressing dimensions is to employ the verb *to be*, with the noun of measure *followed* by an adjective, as: *An eel which* WAS *three feet* LONG. In French, the verb *être* may also be employed, with the adjective and the preposition DE *preceding* the measure, thus: *Une anguille qui* ÉTAIT LONGUE DE *trois pieds;* but the construction with the verb *avoir* is more commonly used. The measure, as in the above example, immediately follows *avoir* and precedes *de* and a *substantive* of dimension.

Une anguille **longue de** *trois pieds.*
Une anguille **de** *trois pieds* **de longueur.**
Une anguille **de** *trois pieds* **de long.**

357. When neither *être* nor *avoir* is used, an *adjective* of dimension with *de* may precede the measure, as in the first of the above examples; or the measure with *de* before and after it may precede a *substantive* of dimension, as in the second example.

The third example is only intended to show that an adjective of dimension may in such case be used substantively.

Quinze kilogrammes et **demi.**
Quinze livres et **demie.**

358. When the adjective **demi** follows a substantive, it takes its gender, but always remains in the singular number. The reason of this is obvious; for *demi*, after *quinze kilogrammes* or *quinze livres*, does not mean the half of fifteen kilograms or pounds, but the half of *one* kilogram, of *one* pound.

Trente **et** *une livres.*

359. After *vingt*, twenty; *trente*, thirty; *quarante*, forty; *cinquante*, fifty; *soixante*, sixty; and *mille*, thousand, the numeral adjective UN requires the conjunction ET before it. *Dix* requires it only after *soixante*. In any other combination of numbers the conjunction *et* is not employed.

Je ne doute pas que nous **ne** *réussissions.*

360. After the verb *douter*, used in the negative form, the particle **ne** precedes the next verb.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 100 substantives ending with **ure** are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages. Ex. *Mesure*, measure; *nature*, nature. See Obs. 340.

The termination **ette** is a diminutive found in about 300 substantives, some of which have their correspondents in English ending in *et*. Ex. *Lancette*, lancet. See Obs. 345.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Antipode,	Antipode.	*Oranger*,	Orange-tree.
Bipède,	Biped.	*Orangerie*,	Orange-grove.
Contre-poids,	Counterpoise.	*Parmi*,	Among.
Empêcher,	To prevent.	*Pédale*,	Pedal.
Equilibre,	Equilibrium.	*Pesant*,	Heavy.
Expédient,	Expedient, shift.	*Pesanteur*,	Heaviness.
Expédier,	To expedite.	*Piédestal*,	Pedestal.
Expéditeur,	Sender, shipper.	*Piége*,	Snare.
Expédition,	Expedition.	*Quadrupède*,	Quadruped.
Lorsque,	When.	*Tandis*,	Whilst.
Orange,	Orange.	*Vente*,	Sale.

---

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Nous fûmes récompensés.* See Obs. 338, and Syntax, 354.—I am called—He is admired—She is loved—We are corrected—They are charged—He was exercised—She was astonished—We were (imperfect) forced—He was (past t. def.) guided—She was (past t. def.) put—We shall be forgotten—You (sing. masc.) will be placed—You (sing. fem.) will be persuaded—You (plur. fem.) will be looked *at.*

2. Model: *Un mètre.* See Obs. 267, 341.—The diameter—A thermometer—A chronometer—This barometer—The register—That monster.

3. Model: *Tant de goujons.* See Obs. 344.—So much aversion—So many shops—So many boats—So much constraint—So much credit—So much ennui—So many children—So much genius—So many cakes.

4. Model: *Nous remplîmes.* See Obs. 346.—We assailed—We freed—We diverted—We furnished—We enjoyed—We blackened—We reunited—We succeeded—We felt.

5. Model: *Nous vendîmes.* See Obs. 348.—We waited—We heard—We bit—We pretended—We answered—We rendered—We followed—We suspended.

6. Model: *Je doute.* See Obs. 349.—I admire—I love—I bring—I yawn—I give—I desire—I dwell—I study—I imagine—I forget—I think—I possess—I speak—I look—I find.

7. Model: *Que nous réussissions.* See Obs. 350.—That we may free—That we may divert—That we may finish—That we may furnish—That we may enjoy—That we may blacken—That we may reunite.

8. Model: *Cette fois*-CI.—*Cette fois*-LÀ. See Obs. 351, 352.—This boulevard—This shop—This thing—This copy-book—That character—That defect—That disposition—That dictionary

---

* See note on page 12.

—These examples—These children—These leaves (or sheets)—These people—Those grammars—Those men—Those days—Those gardens.

This *one* (masculine)—This *one* (feminine)—That *one* (masc.)—That *one* (fem.)—These (masc.)—These (fem.)—Those (masc.)—Those (fem.).

9. Model: *Carpes dorées.* Syntax, 355.—The lessons learned—The admired poets—The folded arms—Some exercised workmen—Some forgotten words.

10. Model: *Quinze kilogrammes et demi.* Syntax, 358.—One hour and a half—Two hours and a half—Three days and a half—Ten pounds and a half—One month and a half—Four meters and a half.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Seventeen is the half of thirty-four—337.
2. This thermometer is very good—341.
3. We have an excellent barometer—341.
4. They have so much patience that they will *soon* learn [soon]—344.
5. They sold so many cakes that they made *a* fortune—151, 344.
6. They had so much fish that they did not know what to do with it—344, 72, 80, 268, 278.
7. He *asks* [makes] us so many questions that we cannot answer [to] them—344, 80, 270.
8. We felt that our friend was right—346, 295.
9. We finished our lesson at four o'clock—346.
10. If we succeeded, it was not without great difficulties—346, 102, 103, 241.
11. A gram is the weight of a *cubic* centimeter [cube]** of water—347.
12. A pound is the half of a kilogram—347.

---

* See note on page 13. ** See note on page 37.

13. We waited for them two days, and we lost our time—348.

14. We returned them the half of what they had given us —348, 317, 52.

15. We heard him when he called us, but we did not answer [to] him—348, 178, 77.

16. I pass *through* [in] that street three times *a* [by] day—349.

17. I lend you this net *on* [at] condition that you will return it to-morrow—349, 307.

18. I speak French as often as possible—349, 197.

19. When I am in the street, I look *at* all the shops—349.

20. We must free ourselves—296, 350.

21. I doubt whether we shall fill this basket—282, 350.

22. They doubt whether we shall finish to-day—282, 350.

23. These copy-books are corrected—351.

24. Those people are very extraordinary—351, 252.

25. The basket is weighed—354.

26. The gudgeons are weighed—354.

27. The meat is weighed—354.

28. The eels are weighed—354.

29. James was rewarded *for* [of] his patience—354.

30. The patience of James was rewarded—354.

31. The river is bordered with willows—354, 265.

32. Our lessons will not be forgotten—354.

33. It *requires* [must] an exercised hand [for] to do that—355.

34. He gave us some blotted paper which could not serve—355.

35. The bridge was a hundred feet long—356.

36. The joiner's bench is three meters long—56, 356.

37. We saw a carp thirty centimeters long—357.

38. We shall be at your house in two hours and a half— —177, 358.

39. There are thirty-one or thirty-two shops in this street— 218, 359.

40. I do not doubt but we shall sell our fish—225, 360.

41. I do not doubt but we shall fill this basket—360.

42. He does not doubt but we shall be rewarded—360.

43. We do not doubt but they have studied—360.

44. They did not doubt but we spoke French—360.

45. We do not doubt but they study their lesson—360.

EIGHTEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION —PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dix-huitième leçon.
Eighteenth

Un autre jour, des apprentis du voisi-
apprentices neighbor-
nage se réunissaient pour aller se prome-
hood reunited to go walk
ner dans les champs. "Dites donc, cama-
fields Say com-
rade," s'écriaient-ils en apercevant Alexis,
rade exclaimed perceiving
"vous viendrez | tout à l'heure | faire
will come presently
un tour avec nous, n'est-ce pas? Nous
turn
attendrons que vous soyez prêt. Nous
will wait till be (subj.) ready
partirons tous ensemble, mais dépêchez-
will depart together speed
vous; soyez un peu plus alerte que de
be (imper.) quick than
coutume." — "Où allez-vous?" demandait
custom (usually) go asked
celui-ci. — "Nous n'en savons rien," ré-
know an-

---

* See 1st note on page 187. ** See 2d note on page 117.

pondaient-ils. "Qu'importe, pourvu que
swered matters provided

nous nous amusions?"
amuse (subj.)

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Another day, some apprentices of the neighborhood met together for the purpose of going to take a walk in the fields. "Halloo, comrade," exclaimed they, on perceiving Alexis, "you will come presently and take a turn with us, will you not? We will wait till you are ready. We will all start together—but make haste; be somewhat quicker than usual." "Where are you going?" inquired the latter. "We do not know," answered they. "What matters, provided we enjoy ourselves?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la dix-huitième.
Quand des apprentis du voisinage se réunissaient-ils?	Un autre jour.
Quels étaient les jeunes gens qui se réunissaient un autre jour?	Des apprentis du voisinage.
Pourquoi se réunissaient-ils?	Pour aller se promener dans les champs.
Quand s'écriaient-ils: "Dites donc, camarade?"	En apercevant Alexis.
Par quelle exclamation appelaient-ils l'attention d'Alexis.	Dites donc, camarade!
Que lui proposaient-ils?	De faire un tour avec eux.
Que voulaient-ils attendre?	Qu'Alexis fût prêt.
Comment voulaient-ils partir?	Tous ensemble.
Que lui demandaient-ils?	De se dépêcher et d'être un peu plus alerte que de coutume.
Que demandait Alexis?	Où allez-vous?
Que répondaient-ils?	Nous n'en savons rien.
Que disaient-ils encore?	Qu'importe, pourvu que nous nous amusions?

---

* See notes on page 2.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Vous m'avez dit l'autre jour que nous reparlerions des poids et des mesures.	You told me the other day that we should talk again of weights and measures.
C'est vrai ; et je suis prêt à vous donner les explications que vous me demanderez.	It is true; and I am ready to give you the explanations that you may require.
Parlons aujourd'hui des poids, si vous le voulez bien.	Let us talk of weights to-day, if you please.
J'attends vos questions.	I am ready to hear your questions.
Qu'est-ce qu'un kilogramme?	What is a kilogram?
C'est mille grammes.	It is a thousand grams.
Qu'est-ce qu'un gramme?	What is a gram?
C'est le poids d'un centimètre cube d'eau distillée.	It is the weight of a cubic centimeter of distilled water.
Pourquoi distillée?	Why distilled?
Parce que le poids de l'eau distillée est invariable.	Because the weight of distilled water is invariable.
Un kilogramme est donc le poids d'un décimètre cube d'eau distillée?	A kilogram is the weight of a cubic decimeter of distilled water, then?
Précisément.	Exactly so.
Auquel de nos poids le kilogramme équivaut-il?	To which of our weights does the kilogram correspond?
A un peu plus de deux livres.	It is a little more than two pounds.
L'autre jour, un homme demandait un pain de deux livres. Vous avez donc aussi des livres?	The other day, a man asked for a two-pound loaf. Do you then make use of pounds also?
La livre actuelle est seulement nominale: c'est une autre expression pour cinq cents grammes, ou un demi-kilogramme.	The pound, at present, is only nominal: it is another expression for five hundred grams, or half a kilogram.
Quelles sont les subdivisions du gramme?	What are the subdivisions of the gram?

* See note on page 3.

Le décigramme, le centigramme et le milligramme.	The decigram, the centigram, and the milligram.
Comprenez-vous ce que cela veut dire?	Do you understand what these mean?
Oui, très-bien: la dixième, la centième et la millième partie du gramme.	Yes, very well: the tenth, the hundredth, and the thousandth part of a gram.
Comment le savez-vous?	How do you know that?
Parce que vous m'avez parlé l'autre jour du décimètre, du centimètre et du millimètre.	Because you spoke to me the other day of the decimeter, the centimeter, and the millimeter.
Et comme vous m'avez dit tout à l'heure que le kilogramme équivaut à mille grammes, je suppose que les autres multiples sont: le décagramme, l'hectogramme et le myriagramme.	And as you told me just now that the kilogram is a thousand grams, I suppose that the other multiples are: the decagram, the hectogram, and the myriagram.
C'est cela même.	Just so.
Vous avez une excellente mémoire.	You have an excellent memory.
Je trouve qu'il y a une grande simplicité dans votre système métrique.	I find great simplicity in your metrical system.
Oui. Et il y a aussi une grande stabilité.	Yes. And there is also great stability in it.
Comment cela?	How so?
Nos mesures ayant pour base le globe lui-même, il est impossible qu'elles se perdent.	Our measures having the globe itself for their basis, it is impossible they can be lost.
C'est vrai.	That is true.
Mais il y a encore les mesures de capacité, de superficie et de solidité.	But there are still the measures of capacity, the superficial and solid measures.
Ont-elles, comme les poids, le mètre pour base?	Are they, like the weights, founded on the meter?
Oui, sans doute. Nous en parlerons un de ces jours.	Yes, undoubtedly. We shall speak of them one of these days.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *jour*, *champ*, and *tour ?* *—14.

Of what gender are *heure* and *coutume ?*—15.

Of what gender is *voisinage ?*—215.

Of what gender are the adjectives *autre* and *alerte ?*—6.

In what mood are the verbs *aller*, *promener*, and *faire ?*—121.

What is the meaning of *se* before *promener*, and what sort of verb does it denote it to be ?—65, 66, 180.

In what tense and of what person is *écriaient*, and what is the infinitive mood of this verb ?—248.

What is the feminine of *prêt ?*—2.

What is the singular of *tous ?*

In what tense and of what person is *demandait*, and what is the infinitive mood of this verb ?—47.

What does *ci* denote after *celui ?*—351, 352.

Why is *nous* used twice before *amusions ?*—180.

Why would it be incorrect to say : SE *écriaient*, LA *heure*, NE *est-ce pas*, *nous* NE *en savons rien*, QUE *importe ?*—11.

DIX-HUITIÈME is derived from *dix*, seen in the tenth lesson, and *huit*, seen in the eighth.

APPRENTI is of the masculine gender according to analogy (8).

VOISINAGE is of the masculine gender, though it ends with an *e* mute (215).

RÉUNISSAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of *réunir*, to reunite, to assemble.

361. The third person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs

---

* See notes on page 17.

ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **iss-aient** (196, § 2).

ALLER is an irregular verb already mentioned. See "*Où va-t-il*," in the third lesson, and "*Nous irons*," in the fifteenth.

CHAMP is of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

DITES is the second person plural of the imperative mood of the irregular verb *dire*, seen in the first lesson. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood.

DITES DONC is a familiar way of calling a person's attention to what you are going to say to him. It corresponds to the English expression, *I say!*

CAMARADE is applicable to persons of either sex, and is therefore of both genders.

362. The termination **ade** is found in about 150 substantives, a third of which have become English, some without any alteration, as: *Balustrade*, *barricade*, *cavalcade*, *brigade*, *arcade*, *parade;* and some presenting a slight difference, as: *Camarade*, comrade; *embuscade*, ambuscade; *limonade*, lemonade; *mascarade*, masquerade.

S'ÉCRIAIENT is a form (248) of the verb *s'écrier*, which is always pronominal in the sense of *to exclaim.* This verb is derived from *cri*, cry, shout, scream, shriek. The principal derivatives of CRI are: *Crier*, to cry, to cry out, to shout, to scream, to shriek; *criant*, crying (notorious); *criard*, clamorous, shrill; *décrier*, to decry, etc.

363. The inseparable particle **é** or **ex**, from the Latin *e*, *ex*, signifies *from, out of;* it generally denotes extraction or derivation. Most of the words into which it is incorporated have their correspondents in English, nearly similar, as: *Exclusif*, exclusive; *excursion*, excursion; *expatrier*, to expatriate; *éluder*, to elude; *émaner*, to emanate; *énerver*, to enervate; *échanger*, to exchange; *expulser*, to expel, or to throw out; *extraire*, to extract, or to draw out.

364. Among the French pronominal verbs (180) some are accidentally so, and others are invariably conjugated with a double pronoun. The former are called *accidental* and the latter *essential* pronominal verbs. The accidental pronominal verbs, by taking this form, express that the same person is at once the

subject and the object of the action, as: "*Il s'affranchit*, he freed himself;" or that the action is reciprocal, as: "*Nous nous aimons*, we love each other;" or they correspond to the English neuter form, as: "*Il se désolait* (66), *il se promenait*, he grieved, he walked." The number of these verbs is unlimited. As to the essential pronominal verbs, they are as follows. It will be noticed that many of them have already appeared in the course of our studies.

S'abstenir, to abstain.
S'accouder, to lean on one's elbow.
S'accroupir, to cower, to squat.
S'adonner, to give one's self, to apply one's self.
S'agenouiller, to kneel.
S'agrifer, to cling (by its claws).
S'aheurter, to be stubborn (in).
S'arroger, to arrogate.
Se blottir, to cower, to squat down.
Se cabrer, to rear, to prance, to fly out.
Se démener, to throw one's self about, to struggle.
Se désister, to desist.
S'ébahir, to be amazed, to wonder.
S'ébattre, to sport, to frolic, to gambol.
S'écrier, to exclaim, to cry out.
S'écrouler, to fall down, to fall to pieces.
S'emparer, to take possession, to seize, to get hold.
S'empresser, to hasten, to be eager.
S'en aller, to go away.
S'enfuir, to flee, to run away.
S'enquérir, to inquire.
S'enquêter, to inquire.
S'en retourner, to go back.
S'estomaquer, to take offense.
S'évader, to escape.
S'évanouir, to faint, to swoon, to vanish.
S'évertuer, to exert one's self, to strive.
S'extasier, to be in extasy.
Se formaliser, to take offense.
Se gargariser, to gargle.
S'ingénier, to tax one's ingenuity.
Se méfier, to mistrust.
Se méprendre, to mistake.
Se moquer, to mock, to deride, to laugh.
Se parjurer, to forswear one's self, to be perjured.
Se prosterner, to prostrate one's self, to fall down.
Se ratatiner, to shrivel.
Se raviser, to alter one's mind, to think better of it.
Se rebeller, to rebel.
Se rebéquer, to be insolent.
Se récrier, to exclaim, to cry out.
Se rédimer, to redeem one's self.
Se refrogner, or *se renfrogner*, to frown, to scowl.
Se réfugier, to take refuge, to take shelter.
Se rengorger, to bridle up.
Se repentir, to repent.
Se ressouvenir, to remember.
Se souvenir, to remember.
Se soucier, to care, to be concerned.

365. The following verbs, though not essentially pronominal, require a particular mention, on account of the different meaning which they acquire by being used in the pronominal form.

Acharner, to flesh, to excite, to set on.
S'acharner, to be infuriated, to be implacable.
Attacher, to fasten, to tie, to attach.
S'attacher, to stick, to cleave, to endeavor, to apply one's self.
Attendre, to wait.
S'attendre à, to expect.
Aviser, to perceive, to inform.
S'aviser, to bethink one's self, to take it into one's head.
Carrer, to square.
Se carrer, to strut.
Comporter, to admit of, to allow.
Se comporter, to behave.
Défier, to defy, to challenge.

Se défier, to distrust.
Dépêcher, to dispatch.
Se dépêcher, to make haste.
Disputer, to dispute, to contend for.
Se disputer, to quarrel.
Douter, to doubt.
Se douter, to suspect.
Gendarmer, to dragoon.
Se gendarmer, to resist, to fly out.
Ingérer, to ingest.
S'ingérer, to intermeddle.
Louer, to praise.
Se louer, to congratulate one's self.
Mécompter, to strike wrong (in speaking of clocks).
Se mécompter, to miscalculate.
Passer, to pass.
Se passer de, to do without.
Plaindre, to pity.
Se plaindre, to complain.
Prévaloir, to prevail.
Se prévaloir, to take advantage (of).
Servir, to serve.
Se servir, to make use of.
Taire, to suppress, to conceal.
Se taire, to be silent.

APERCEVANT is the present participle of the irregular verb *apercevoir*, to perceive, to see.

VIENDREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *venir*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

TOUT À L'HEURE is an adverbial expression which corresponds to *just now*, *presently*, and *by and by*. It refers to past time as well as to future time, as: "*Il est venu tout à l'heure*, he came just now; *Il viendra tout à l'heure*, he will come presently."

TOUR is the radical of *tourné*, seen in the eleventh lesson. It signifies *turn*, *trip*, *tour*, *circuit*, *trick*, and *turning-lathe*. In all these senses, it is masculine, according to its termination (14). *Tour* signifies also *a tower*; in this acceptation it is feminine.

ATTENDRONS is the first person plural of the future tense of *attendre*, to wait, to expect.

366. The first person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing the final *e* into **ons**.

SOYEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*. It is also the second person plural of the imperative mood of this verb.

PRÊT comes from the Latin *præsto*, ready. Its principal derivatives are: *Apprêt*, preparation, affectation, cooking, dressing; and *apprêter*, to get ready, to prepare.

PARTIRONS is the first person plural of the future tense of *partir*, which is an irregular verb, but the irregularity does not extend to the future tense.

367. The first person plural of the future tense of verbs ending

in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by adding **ons** to this termination.

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the future tense in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Et là nous pêch*ERONS."—15th lesson.

"*Nous part*IRONS *tous ensemble.*"—18th lesson.

"*Nous attend*RONS *que vous soyez prêt.*"—18th lesson.

"*Nous* SERONS *de bonne heure au rendez-vous.*"—16th lesson.

"*Nous* AURONS *de bonnes amorces.*"—15th lesson.

ENSEMBLE is derived from *sembler*, which comes from the Latin *simulare,* to make like, derived from *similis*, like. The principal derivatives of SEMBLER are: *Assembler*, to assemble; *rassembler*, to reassemble, to collect, to gather; *ressembler*, to resemble, to be like; *simuler*, to feign; *dissimuler*, to dissemble; *semblable*, similar; *semblant*, seeming; *ressemblance*, resemblance, likeness; *ressemblant*, like, alike; *vraisemblable*, likely, probable; *vraisemblance*, likelihood; *assemblage*, *similitude*, *dissimilitude*, *assimulation*, *dissimulation*, etc., etc.

DÉPÊCHEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *dépêcher*.

368. The second person plural of the imperative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood.

ALERTE is an adjective, the same in the masculine as in the feminine (6).

COUTUME comes from the Italian *costume,* custom. Its principal derivatives are: *Accoutumer*, to accustom; *accoutumé*, accustomed; *désaccoutumer*, to disaccustom; and *inaccoutumé*, unaccustomed, unusual.

ALLEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *aller*, already mentioned. It is similar to the same person of the imperative mood (368).

DEMANDAIT is a form (47) of the verb *demander*, derived from *mander*, to send, to send for, to write, which comes from the Latin *mandare*, to enjoin, to inform, to send. The principal derivatives of MANDER are: *Mandat,* mandate, order, check;

commandant, commander; *commande*, order; *commandement*, command, bidding; *commander*, to command; *contremander*, to countermand; *demande*, demand, claim, question, request, suit; *recommandation*, recommendation; *recommander*, to recommend; *réprimande*, reprimand; *réprimander*, to reprimand, etc.

SAVONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *savoir*, seen in the first lesson.

RÉPONDAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of *répondre*, already seen.

369. The third person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **aient**.

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the imperfect tense in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Plusieurs de ses compagnons contribu*AIENT."—12th lesson.

"*Des apprentis se réun*ISSAIENT."—18th lesson.

"*Nous n'en savons rien, répond*AIENT-*ils*."—18th lesson.

"*Les boulevards* ÉTAIENT *ses promenades favorites*."—8th lesson.

"*Ces étourdis* AVAIENT *toujours quelque nouvelle partie*."—15th lesson.

IMPORTE is a form (22) of the verb *importer*, one of the derivatives of *porter*, mentioned in the seventh lesson.

POURVU QUE is one of the conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood (244). It is formed of the past participle of *pourvoir*, to provide, and the conjunction *que*, that.

AMUSIONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *amuser*.

370. The first person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ions**. It is similar to the same person of the imperfect tense (214). The consequence of this rule is that if the termination of the verb is *ier* in the infinitive, as in *étudier, oublier*, the *i* is doubled, thus: *Que nous étudiions, que nous oubliions.*

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the

present tense of the subjunctive in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Qu'importe, pourvu que nous nous amus*IONS?"—18th lesson.

"*Je ne doute pas que nous ne réuss*ISSIONS."—17th lesson.

"*La justice veut que nous rend*IONS *hommage.*"—10th lesson.

"*N'attendons pas que nous* SOYONS *trop vieux.*"—14th lesson.

"*A Dieu ne plaise que nous* AYONS *une pareille pensée!*"—10th lesson.

SYNTAX.

Why is *se* before *réunissaient* and *promener?* *—43.

Why is there no preposition between *aller* and *se promener?*—187.

Why do we say "*Dans les champs,*" and not "*En les champs?*"—191.

Why do we say "*En apercevant,*" and not "*Dans apercevant?*"—192.

Why is there no preposition between *vous viendrez* and *faire?*—187.

Why is *être* in the subjunctive mood in "*Nous attendrons que* (till) *vous* SOYEZ *prêt?*"—244.

Why is *vous* after *dépêchez?*—297.

Why is the pronoun after the verb in "*Où allez-vous?*"—40.

Why is *en* before the verb in "*Nous n'en savons rien?*"—43.

Why is *amuser* in the subjunctive mood in "*Pourvu que nous nous* AMUSIONS?"—244.

In the phrase "*Pourvu que nous nous amusions,*" why is *nous* employed twice?—180.

Se réunissaient **pour** *aller.*

371. When the English preposition **to**, before the infinitive mood, signifies *in order to*, it is rendered in French by **pour**.

---

* See notes on page 17.

Pour aller se promener.

A verb of motion, as *aller*, to go, *venir*, to come, is often joined to the next verb in English, by means of the conjunction *and*, both verbs being in the same tense and mood, as: *To go and* (*to*) *take a walk; Let us go and* (*let us*) *take a walk; We shall go and* (*we shall*) *take a walk.*

372. The verb which follows a verb of motion in French is in the infinitive mood, and requires no conjunction before it. The preceding examples should therefore be translated: *Aller se* PROMENER; *Allons nous* PROMENER; *Nous irons nous* PROMENER.

S'écriaient-ils.
Demandait celui-ci.
Répondaient-ils.

373. The subject is placed after the verb in the incidental phrase by which we designate the person whose words are quoted.

En *apercevant Alexis.*

374. The preposition **on**, used in the English before the present participle to denote the time at which any thing happens, is rendered in French by **en**.

Vous viendrez **faire** *un tour.*

375. The verb **faire** is commonly employed in phrases which denote that distance or space is gone over, as: "*Faire un pas*, to take a step; *Faire un tour*, to take a turn, a trip; *Faire une promenade*, to take a walk; *Faire un voyage*, to perform a journey; *Faire un mille à pied*, to walk a mile; *Faire une lieue à cheval*, to ride a league."

Vous viendrez avec nous, **n'est-ce pas?**

376. The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as

many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In French this form is invariably *n'est-ce pas ?* thus : "*Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas ?* you will come, will you not ? *Vous ne viendrez pas, n'est-ce pas ?* you will not come, will you ? *Vous venez, n'est-ce pas ?* you are coming, are you not ? *Il n'est past venu, n'est-ce pas ?* he is not come, is he ? *Il parlait bien, n'est-ce pas ?* he spoke well, did he not ? *Il ne serait pas chez lui, n'est-ce pas ?* he would not be at home, would he ? "

Plus alerte que de coutume.

377. There are two ways of forming the comparative degree in English, when it denotes superiority, as *brisker*, or *more brisk ;* there is but one in French : the adverb *plus* is placed before the adjective or the adverb. When in English the conjunction *than* follows, it is rendered by *que.* The same conjunction follows *moins*, less, when the comparative denotes inferiority, as : "*Moins alerte que de coutume*, less brisk than usual" (197).

LEXICOLOGY.

About 50 substantives ending with **ade** are alike or nearly so in both languages. Ex. *Camarade*, comrade ; *balustrade*, *cavalcade*, *brigade*, etc. See Obs. 362.

Most of the words beginning with the prefix **é** or **ex** are nearly the same in French and in English. Ex. *Exclusif*, exclusive ; *excursion*, excursion, etc. See Obs. 363.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Antichambre,	Antechamber.	*Preste*,	Nimble, quick.
Assemblée,	Assembly.	*Prestige*,	Prestige, illusion.
Assimiler,	To assimilate.	*Rassemblement*,	Gathering.
Avoisiner,	To be near.	*Redemander*,	To ask again.
Chambellan,	Chamberlain.	*Similaire*,	Similar.
Chambre,	Chamber, room.	*Simulacre*,	Feint, image.
Commandite,	Partnership.	*Simultané*,	Simultaneous.
Mandataire,	Proxy.	*Voisinage*,	Neighborhood.

* See note on page 11.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.*

1. Model: *Ils réunissaient.* See Obs. 361.—They freed—They warned—They diverted—They finished—They furnished—They blackened—They perished—They filled—They succeeded.

2. Model: *Ils s'écriaient.* See Obs. 364, 180.—To abstain ** —I hasten—We escape—He took possession—You are going away—They are going back—You will remember.

3. Model: *Se promener.* See Obs. 365, 180.—I expect ** to see him—He will behave well—We shall make haste—You will suspect—They will make use of that.

4. Model: *Vous viendrez.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate by verbs derived from *venir* in the second person plural of the future tense)—You will agree—You will disown—You will transgress—You will become—You will intervene—You will attain —You will prevent—You will come again.

5. Model: *Nous attendrons.* See Obs. 366.—We shall learn —We shall understand—We shall say—We shall hear—We shall put—We shall bite—We shall pretend—We shall please —We shall lose—We shall take—We shall answer—We shall render—We shall follow—We shall suspend—We shall sell.

6. Model: *Nous partirons.* See Obs. 367.—We shall assail —We shall free—We shall warn—We shall divert—We shall finish—We shall furnish—We shall blacken—We shall perish —We shall reunite—We shall fill—We shall succeed—We shall feel.

7. Model: *Dépêchez.* See Obs. 368.—Stop—Call—Admire —Love—Bring—Go—Charge—Give—Ask—Examine—Study —Imagine—Forget—Think—Pass—Pronounce—Speak—Propose—Lend—Look—Turn—Find.

8. Model: *Ils répondaient.* See Obs. 369.—They heard—They put—They bit—They pretended—They lost—They an-

---

* See notes on page 12.

** These verbs will be found among those in the lists on pages 238 and 239.

swered—They rendered—They laughed—They followed—They suspended—They sold.

9. Model: *Pourvu que nous amusions.* See Obs. 370.—Provided we admire—Provided we love—Provided we bring—Provided we go—Provided we charge—Provided we give—Provided we ask—Provided we examine—Provided we imagine—Provided we think—Provided we pass—Provided we pronounce—Provided we speak—Provided we look—Provided we find.

10. Model: *En apercevant.* Syntax, 374.—On calling—On looking—On turning—On finding—On finishing—On filling—On hearing—On putting.

11. Model: *Plus alerte que.* Syntax, 377.—More active than—More ambitious than—More attentive than—Finer (masc.) than—Finer (fem.) than—Dearer than—Sweeter than—Falser (masc.) than—Falser (fem.) than—Cooler (masc.) than—Cooler (fem.) than.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. They were filling their basket with cakes—361, 265.
2. Our friends were diverting themselves—361.
3. I say! we shall give them a serenade—317, 304, 362.
4. You will remember [of] what we have said—364.
5. You did not expect [to] our visit, did you?—365, 376.
6. If they make haste, they will be on the bridge before you—365.
7. We shall answer [to] all your questions—366.
8. We shall sell our boat—366.
9. If you speak *slowly* [softly], I think that we shall understand you—366.
10. Where shall we put our fish?—366.
11. You will put it into this basket—307.
12. We shall divert ourselves in the fields—367.

---

* See notes on page 13.

13. We shall finish this story another day—367.
14. If we are not victorious, we will perish together—141, 367.
15. Amuse yourselves, my dear children—368, 297.
16. Weigh your bread and meat—368, 108.
17. Reward your children—368.
18. Lend me your dictionary—368, 297, 299.
19. They heard without understanding—369, 129.
20. They laughed without knowing why—369, 129.
21. They were losing their time in looking *at* the shops—369, 203.
22. It is necessary that we should *take* [bring] some provisions—370.
23. They talk to exercise themselves—371.
24. We are going into the fields to take a walk—371, 375.
25. I am come to see you—371.
26. Come and see the bridge—372.
27. Go and speak to your mother—372.
28. You will *often* come [often] and see us—372.
29. "Where are our friends?" said (dit) James—373.
30. "They are in the fields," answered William—373.
31. "Where are we?" asked Alexis—373.
32. "On the boulevard," answered his comrade—373.
33. On hearing these words he stopped—374, 66.
34. On putting his feet into the water, he felt an eel—374.
35. We have learned many words, have we not?—376.
36. Your comrades like fish, do they not?—376.
37. We should not have time to go and see them, should we?—372, 376.
38. We shall wait *for* our friends, shall we not?—376.
39. She was studying her lesson, was she not?—376.
40. They have not forgotten us, have they?—376.
41. James was more active than William—377.
42. This shop is finer than the other—377.
43. Meat is dearer than bread—377.
44. William was younger than his brother—377.
45. This lesson is not longer than the seventeenth—377.

NINETEENTH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Dix-neuvième leçon.
Nineteenth

"Nous courrons, nous sauterons, nous
shall run shall leap

jouerons aux barres, au cheval fondu et
shall play prisoners' base horse melted

à d'autres jeux. Garnissez vos poches,
games Stock pockets

si vous le pouvez. Si vous n'avez pas
can have

d'argent, | n'importe | ; suivez-nous tou-
money no matter follow

jours et n'ayez aucun souci du reste."
have care rest

Toutes les invitations du même genre
invitations kind

étaient joyeusement acceptées, en quelque
joyfully accepted whatever

moment qu'elles arrivassent, quelque
arrived (subj.) however

inopportunes qu'elles fussent, quelques
untimely were (subj.) whatever

---

* See 1st note on page 187 ** See 2d note on page 117.

pressantes occupations qu'elles interrom-
pressing occupations inter-

pissent, quelques inconvénients qu'elles
rupted (subj.) whatever inconveniences

eussent, et | quels que | fussent ceux qui
had (subj.) whoever were those

les faisaient, pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air
them made had air

de bons enfants.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"We shall run and jump and play at prisoners' base, at leap frog, and other games. Line your pockets, if you can. If you have no money, it matters not; come with us, and never mind the rest."

All invitations of the same kind were joyfully accepted, at whatever moment they might arrive, however untimely they might be, whatever pressing occupations they might interrupt, whatever inconveniences might attend them, and whoever they might be who made them, provided they looked like good fellows.

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la dix-neuvième.
Que feront les camarades d'Alexis?	Ils courront, ils sauteront, ils joueront.
A quels jeux joueront-ils?	Aux barres, au cheval fondu et à d'autres jeux.
Qu'est-ce que c'est que le cheval fondu?	C'est un jeu.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Quelle recommandation les apprentis faisaient-ils à Alexis?	De garnir ses poches, s'il le pouvait.
Etait-il indispensable qu'il eût de l'argent?	Non; car les apprentis lui disaient: "Si vous n'avez pas d'argent, n'importe."
Que lui disaient-ils encore?	"Suivez-nous toujours, et n'ayez aucun souci du reste."
Comment toutes les invitations du même genre étaient-elles acceptées?	Elles étaient joyeusement acceptées.
Qu'est-ce qui était joyeusement accepté?	Toutes les invitations du même genre.
En quel moment étaient-elles joyeusement acceptées?	En quelque moment qu'elles arrivassent.
Ces invitations étaient-elles toujours opportunes?	Non. Elles étaient quelquefois inopportunes.
Etaient-elles acceptées de même, quand elles étaient inopportunes?	Oui; quelque inopportunes qu'elles fussent.
Qu'est-ce que ces invitations interrompaient quelquefois?	Elles interrompaient de pressantes occupations.
Comment étaient-elles reçues, quand elles avaient des inconvénients?	Elles étaient joyeusement acceptées, quelques inconvénients qu'elles eussent.
Acceptait-il ces invitations quels que fussent ceux qui les faisaient?	Oui, pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air de bons enfants.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Avez-vous encore des explications à me demander sur le système métrique?	Have you any more explanations to ask me on the metrical system?
Oui, certainement. Et d'abord sur les mesures en usage pour les liquides, les grains, et cætera.	To be sure, I have. And firstly, on the measures used for liquids, grains, and so forth.

---

* See note on page 3.

Nous les appelons mesures de capacité.
C'est comme chez nous.
L'unité de mesure est le litre.
C'est un décimètre cube.
A laquelle de nos mesures cela équivaut-il?
A environ deux pintes.
Ou, plus exactement, à une pinte et trois quarts.
Je ne vous demande pas la dénomination des autres mesures de capacité: je la trouverai tout seul.
Un de mes amis a un champ de deux hectares; combien d'acres cela fait-il?
Environ cinq acres.
Je suppose que le mot hectare est pour *hectoare*, c'est-à-dire cent ares.
Vous avez raison: l'are est l'unité des mesures de superficie.
Un are est une surface de cent mètres carrés.
Je ne comprends pas le mot *carrés.*
Le carré est une surface limitée par quatre lignes de la même longueur, formant quatre angles pareils.
Cette feuille de papier a quatre angles pareils: est-elle carrée?
Non, pas exactement; parce que ses quatre bords ne sont pas de la même longueur.
Quelle est l'unité de mesure pour les solides?
Le stère, ou le mètre cube.
N'avons-nous rien oublié?
Nous n'avons pas parlé de la monnaie.

We call them measures of capacity.
It is the same in our country.
The unity of measure is the liter.
It is a cubic decimeter.
To which of our measures does that correspond?
To about two pints.
Or, more exactly, to a pint and three quarters.
I do not ask you to tell me the names of the other measures of capacity: I shall find them out by myself.
A friend of mine has a field of two hectares; how many acres does that make?
About five acres.
I suppose that the word hectare is for *hectoare*, that is one hundred *ares.*
You are right: the *are* is the unity of superficial measures.
An *are* is a surface of one hundred square meters.
I do not understand the word *carrés.*
The square is a surface limited by four lines of the same length, forming four similar angles.
This sheet of paper has four similar angles: is it square?
No, not exactly; because its four sides are not of the same length.
What is the unity of solid measures?
The stere, or cubic meter.
Have we forgotten nothing?
We have not spoken of coins.

Comprenez-vous le mot *monnaie?*	Do you understand the word *monnaie?*
Oui, par sa ressemblance avec notre mot *money*.	Yes, from its resemblance to our word *money*.
Le franc est l'unité.	The franc is the unity.
C'est une pièce d'argent du poids de cinq grammes.	It is a piece of silver weighing five grams.
A quoi cela équivaut-il?	What is it equivalent to?
A vingt sous.	To twenty cents, or sous.
Y a-t-il des décifrancs, des décafrancs et des centifrancs?	Are there any decifrancs, decafrancs, and centifrancs?
Non, ces dénominations ne sont pas en usage.	No, these denominations are not used.
Les subdivisions du franc sont appelées centimes.	The subdivisions of the franc are called centimes.
Un centime est le centième d'un franc.	A centime is the hundredth part of a franc.
Il y a des pièces de cinq centimes, ou des sous.	There are pieces of five centimes, or sous.
Il y a des pièces de dix, de vingt et de cinquante centimes.	There are pieces of ten, twenty, and fifty centimes.
Il y a aussi des pièces de deux francs et de cinq francs.	And there are pieces of two francs and of five francs.
De quel métal sont-elles faites?	What metal are they made of?
D'argent.	Of silver.
N'avez-vous pas de pièces d'or?	Have you no pieces of gold?
Nous avons des pièces de dix francs, de vingt francs et de quarante francs.	We have pieces of ten, twenty, and forty francs.
Je vous suis bien obligé de vos explications.	I am much obliged to you for your explanations.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender are *cheval, jeu, argent, souci, moment*, and *air ?* *—14.

Of what gender are *barre* and *poche ?*—15.

Of what gender are *invitation* and *occupation ?*—99.

In what tense and of what person are *sauterons* and *jouerons ?* —304.

Why is there an *s* added to *poche, inconvénient*, and *enfant ?* —29.

Why is the plural of *jeu* formed with an *x* instead of an *s ?* —232.

What does *aux* stand for ?—140.

What does *au* stand for ?—55.

What is the singular of *vos ?*—308.

What does *du* stand for ?—143

From what adjective is *joyeusement* derived ?—31, 32.

What is the masculine of *joyeuse ?*—141, 142.

Of what gender and number is the participle *acceptées ?*—53, 2, 25.

What is the infinitive of *accepté ?*—52.

Of what gender and number is the participle *pressantes ?*—53, 2, 25.

What is the infinitive of *pressant ?*—115.

What is the singular masculine of *inopportunes ?*—2, 25.

What is the feminine of *bon ?*—184.

Dix-neuvième is derived from *dix* and *neuf*, already seen.

Courrons is the first person plural of the future tense of *courir*, which comes from the Latin *currere*, to run. This verb is irreg-

---

* See notes on page 17.

ular (318). Its principal derivatives are: *Accourir*, to run up; *concourir*, to concur, to compete; *discourir*, to discourse, to descant; *encourir*, to incur; *parcourir*, to go over, to look over, to run over; *recourir*, to run again, to have recourse; *secourir*, to succor, to relieve, to help; and these give rise to a number of other words nearly the same in both languages, as: *Concours*, concourse, concurrence, competition; *concurrence*, competition; *concurrent*, competitor; *courrier*, courier, post-boy, messenger, mail, post; *cours*, course, current, way, currency, rate; *course*, running, race, career, course, trip, errand; *coursier*, steed, courser; *discours*, discourse, speech; *recours*, recourse; *secours*, succor, relief, etc.

SAUTERONS is a form (304) of the verb *sauter*, to leap, to jump, to skip.

JOUERONS is a form (304) of the verb *jouer*, to play.

BARRE, from the Spanish *barra*, or the Italian *sbarra*, bar, corresponds to the English word *bar*. In the sense of *base* or *prisoners' base*, it is always plural.

CHEVAL FONDU, literally, horse melted, is an idiomatic expression, signifying leap-frog. CHEVAL comes from the Greek καβάλλης, horse. Its plural is CHEVAUX.

378. Besides the adjectives in **al** (30), there are about 60 substantives having this termination, 40 of which are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, as: *Métal*, *vassal*, *animal*, *arsenal*, *amiral*, admiral; *caporal*, corporal; *cristal*, crystal; *hôpital*, hospital.

379. Substantives ending in **al** form their plural by changing this termination into **aux**, as: *Cheval*, *chevaux*; *canal*, *canaux*; *signal*, *signaux*.

380. The principal exceptions are: *Bals*, balls; *carnavals*, carnivals; and *regals*, treats.

The principal derivatives of CHEVAL are: *Chevalier*, knight; *chevalerie*, knighthood, chivalry; *chevaleresque*, knightly, chivalrous; *cavalcade*, cavalcade; *cavale*, mare; *cavalerie*, cavalry, horse; *cavalier*, horseman, rider, trooper, cavalier, gentleman; *cavalier*, (adj.), easy, free; and *cavalièrement*, cavalierly.

FONDU is the past participle of *fondre*, to melt, which comes from the Latin *fundere*, to cause to flow, to make fluid.

381. The past participle of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **u**.

The principal derivatives of FONDRE are: *Fonderie*, foundry; *fondeur*, founder, melter; *fonte*, melting, casting, cast-iron, cast; *fuser*, to expand, to liquefy; *fusible; fusion; diffus*, diffuse; *confondre*, to confound, to blend, to confuse; *confus*, confused, confounded; *confusion*, *diffusion*, *infusion*, etc.

JEUX is the plural of JEU (232), mentioned in this lesson.

GARNISSEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *garnir*, to furnish, to stock, to decorate, to trim, to garnish.

382. The second person plural of the imperative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood (196).

POCHE comes from the Saxon *pocca*, pocket. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

POUVEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *pouvoir*, seen in the third lesson.

AVEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir*.

ARGENT, silver, money, comes from the Latin *argentum*, silver. Its principal derivatives are: *Argenter*, to silver over, to plate; *argenteur*, silverer; *argenterie*, silver-plate, silver; *argentin*, silvery; *argenture*, silvering; and *vif-argent*, quicksilver.

383. N'importe, being in frequent use, and giving rise to several idiomatic locutions, requires a particular mention. It is the negative form of *il importe*, it is important, the third person singular of the present tense of *importer*, to be important, a verb which, in this sense, is only used in the infinitive or in the third person singular, with the impersonal pronoun *il*. *N'importe* means *no matter*, *never mind*, *it does not signify*. Its principal combinations are: *N'importe lequel*, no matter which, be it which it may. *N'importe où*, anywhere. *N'importe quand*, at any time. *N'importe qui*, any one, whoever you like. *N'importe quoi*, no matter what.

SUIVEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *suivre* seen in the third lesson.

384. The second person plural of the imperative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood (368).

AYEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *avoir*.

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the imperative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Dépêch*EZ-*vous*."—18th lesson.

"*Garn*ISSEZ *vos poches*."—19th lesson.

"*Suiv*EZ-*nous*."—19th lesson.

"SOYEZ *plus alerte que de coutume*."—18th lesson.

"*N'*AYEZ *aucun souci*."—19th lesson.

385. Pas d'argent, Aucun souci. Pas de, like **aucun**, corresponds to *no* or *not any* (240); but it differs from *aucun*, inasmuch as it refers to the plural as well as the singular, and has besides a more indefinite sense. *Aucun* usually means *not one*: thus, we say indifferently, "*N'ayez* PAS DE *souci*," or "*N'ayez* AUCUN *souci*;" but we cannot say, "*Vous n'avez* AUCUN *argent*," for "*Vous n'avez* PAS D'*argent*."

SOUCI is contracted from the Latin *sollicitudo*, care. Its principal derivatives are: *Sans souci*, careless; *se soucier*, to care, to concern one's self; *soucieux*, anxious, full of care; *insouciance*, carelessness; and *insouciant*, careless.

RESTE, mentioned in the eighth lesson, is masculine by exception (15).

INVITATION is derived from *inviter*, to invite. It is the same in French and in English (49).

GENRE is masculine by exception (15).

JOYEUSEMENT comes from *joie* (141, 142, 31, 32), mentioned in the fourteenth lesson as one of the derivatives of *jouir*.

ACCEPTER, to accept, is much the same in both languages (262, 303).

386. Quelque (144) followed by **que**, corresponds to *whatever* and *however*.

ARRIVASSENT is the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *arriver*.

387. The third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **assent**.

INOPPORTUN is one of the derivatives of *porter* (170, 68), mentioned in the seventh lesson.

FUSSENT is the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

PRESSANTES is the plural feminine form of *pressant*, the present participle of *presser* (115), which comes from the Latin *pressare, premere*, to press. The principal derivatives of PRESSER are: *Pressoir*, press, wine-press; *pression*, pressure; *empressé*, eager, earnest; *s'empresser*, to be eager; *comprimer*, to compress, to restrain; *déprimer*, to depress; *exprimer*, to express; *imprimer*, to imprint, to impress, to print; *opprimer*, to oppress; *réprimer*, to repress, to check; *supprimer*, to suppress; and these in turn give rise to a number of other words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Expressif*, expressive; *oppressif*, oppressive; *compression, compressible, dépression, expression, impression, oppression, suppression*, etc.

OCCUPATION is alike in both languages (68, 49).

INTERROMPISSENT is the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *interrompre*, derived from *rompre* (249), to break, which comes from the Latin *rumpere*, to break, to tear in pieces.

388. The third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **issent**.

INCONVÉNIENT is the same in French and in English (45).

EUSSENT is the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

CEUX is the plural masculine of *celui* (100).

FAISAIENT is the third person plural of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *faire*, already mentioned.

AIR comes from the Greek ἀήρ, air. Its principal derivatives are: *Aérien*, aerial, airy; *aériforme*, aeriform; *aérolithe*, aerolite; *aéronaute*, aeronaut; *aérostat*, air-balloon, etc.

AVOIR L'AIR, word for word, To have the air, signifies *to look, to look like, to seem.*

SYNTAX.

Why would it not be correct to say, "*Nous jouerons à barres, à cheval fondu?*" *—35.

Why do we say "D'*autres jeux*," and not "DES *autres jeux?*" —102.

What does the pronoun LE represent in "*Si vous* LE *pouvez?*"—264.

Why is *nous* after *suivez?*—297.

Why does the participle *acceptées* agree with its subject *invitations?*—354.

Why is *les* before *faisaient?*—43.

Why is the verb in the subjunctive mood in the phrase "*Pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air de bons enfants?*"—244.

Nous *courrons*, **nous** *sauterons*, **nous** *jouerons.*

389. It would not be incorrect to say, "*Nous courrons, sauterons, jouerons,*" etc. The repetition of the subject pronoun depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet, it may be stated in a general way that the repetition of the pronoun is more frequent in French than in English.

Vous n'avez pas d'argent.

390. The article is generally suppressed before a substantive following a verb in a negative phrase, unless this substantive be modified by some words annexed to it.

If the phrase were affirmative or interrogative, we should say, "*Vous avez* DE L'*argent—Avez-vous* DE L'*argent?*" (93, 102).

391. When the sense of the substantive, which follows a verb in a negative phrase, is modified or restricted by some additional words, it takes the article, as in this example: "*Vous n'avez pas*

---

* See notes on page 17.

DE L'*argent qu'on vient de frapper à la Monnaie*, you have none of the money which has just been coined at the mint."

En **quelque** *moment* **qu'***elles arrivassent.*
Quelques *inconvénients* **qu'***elles eussent.*

392. **Quelque**, followed by **que**, may be joined to a substantive, to an adjective, or to an adverb.—*Quelque* may also be joined to a verb, but then it is not followed by *que* (396).

393. **Quelque**, joined to a substantive and signifying *whatever* or *whatsoever*, is an adjective, and agrees in number with the substantive to which it is joined, as, *quelque moment que*, *quelques inconvénients que.* The word *que* follows the substantive, as *soever* sometimes does in English, as: *What moment soever.*

Quelque *inopportunes* **qu'***elles fussent.*

394. **Quelque** joined to an adjective or an adverb, and signifying *however* or *howsoever*, is an adverb, and therefore invariable.

Quelques *pressantes occupations* **qu'***elles interrompissent.*

395. But when the adjective which comes after **quelque** is connected with a substantive, *quelque* agrees with that substantive, according to rule 393.

Quels que *fussent* **ceux** *qui les faisaient.*

396. **Quel que**, followed by a verb, signifies *whoever* or *whatever.* It forms two words, the first of which is an adjective agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb, thus: QUEL *que fût* CELUI, QUELLE *que fût* CELLE, QUELLES *que fussent* CELLES.

---

397. The subjunctive mood is required after these expressions *quelque... que*, *quel que*, *qui que*, *quoi que*, corresponding to *whatever*, *however*, *whoever*, and *whichever.*

Pressantes occupations.

398. When the present participle is used as an adjective, it follows the rule of the adjective, and agrees in gender and number with the substantive.

LEXICOLOGY.

About 40 substantives ending with **al** are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages. Ex. *Métal*, *vassal*, etc. See Obs. 378.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Abrupt,	Abrupt.	*Corsaire*,	Corsair.
Barreau,	Bar.	*Courtier*,	Broker.
Barricade,	Barricade.	*Débarras*,	Riddance.
Barricader,	To barricade.	*Débarrasser*,	To rid, to clear.
Barrière,	Barrier, fence.	*Embarras*,	Embarrassment.
Bijou,	Jewel, trinket.	*Embarrassant*,	Embarrassing.
Bijouterie,	Jewelry.	*Embarrasser*,	To embarrass.
Bijoutier,	Jeweller.	*Empocher*,	To pocket.
Corridor,	Gallery passage.	*Exprès* (adv.),	On purpose.
Corrompre,	To corrupt.	*Garnison*,	Garrison.
Corrupteur,	Briber.	*Roture*,	Plebeian state.
Corruption,	Bribery.	*Roturier*,	Plebeian.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Chevaux*, plural of *cheval*. See Obs. 378, 379.—Animals—Arsenals—Canals—Cardinals—Generals—Journals—Metals—Minerals—Originals—Signals—Tribunals—Vassals.

2. Model: *Fondu*, past participle of *fondre*. See Obs. 381.—

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

Waited—Heard—Bitten—Pretended—Lost—Answered—Rendered—Suspended—Sold.

3. Model: *Garnissez.* See Obs. 382.—Free—Warn—Divert—Finish—Furnish—Enjoy—Blacken—Perish—Reunite—Fill.

4. Model: *Suivez.* See Obs. 384.—Wait—Hear—Melt—Bite—Pretend—Lose—Answer—Render—Suspend—Sell.

5. Model: *Arrivassent.* See Obs. 387.—That they might call—That they might love—That they might bring—That they might accept—That they might give—That they might desire—That they might ask—That they might examine—That they might study—That they might imagine—That they might play.

6. Model: *Interrompissent.* See Obs. 388.—That they might wait—That they might hear—That they might bite—That they might pretend—That they might lose—That they might answer—That they might render—That they might follow—That they might suspend—That they might sell.

7. Model: *Vous n'avez pas d'argent.* Syntax, 390.—He has no bread—We have no aversion—There are no shops—You have no comrades—They have no horses.

8. Model: *En quelque moment qu'elles arrivassent.* Syntax, 393, 397.—Whatever aversion we may have—Whatever advantages they may have—In whatever circumstances we may find ourselves—Whatever faults they may have.

9. Model: *Quelque inopportunes qu'elles fussent.* Syntax, 394.—However active we may be—However attentive you may be—However grave he might be—However young we might be—However poor they might be.

10. Model: *Occupations pressantes.* Syntax, 398.—An amusing game—An amusing study—The diverting stories—The astonishing examples—A pressing letter—A *smiling* [laughing] air—The following words.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION*

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Come and see the generals—372, 378, 379.
2. Silver is one of the precious metals—378, 379.
3. The children were playing with the animals—378, 379.
4. Here are two journals and several other publications—378, 379.
5. They were making signals, but we did not understand them—378, 379.
6. We have answered [to] all your questions—381.
7. We are waited *for* by our friends—381, 354.
8. The tradesmen have sold all their provisions—381, 106.
9. Have you heard his question ?—381.
10. *Assemble* [reunite] all your comrades—382.
11. Succeed if you can—382, 264.
12. Fill their baskets with provisions—382, 265.
13. Divert yourselves whilst you can—382, 297, 264.
14. Enjoy [of] your moments of recreation—382.
15. Finish that story—382.
16. Put your basket into the boat—384.
17. Sell me your horse—384, 299, 297.
18. We have no meat. But no matter, we have some bread—385, 390, 383.
19. We shall not play at any game—385.
20. He has no comrades—385.
21. They do not study, because they have no books—385.
22. You will follow them and play with them—389.
23. He has no occupation—390.
24. Have you any occupation ?—390.
25. They have money, but they have no bread—390.
26. Have you any books ?—No, we have no books—390.
27. Has she any friends ?—No, she has no friends—390.
28. Has he any patience ?—No, he has no patience—390.

---

* See notes on page 13.

29. We have no eels, but we have some gudgeons—390.

30. He has no occupations like yours—391.

31. He does not *ask* [make] any questions of that kind—391.

32. Do not give them any examples that are (subj.) dangerous—298, 317, 391, 141.

33. Whatever [thing] they might ask *for*, they were sure to have it—392, 397, 387.

34. Whatever services they might render, they were never rewarded—392, 397, 388.

35. They were never sorry, whatever money they might lose —392, 397, 388.

36. They will make you laugh, however serious you may be —394.

37. He is attentive to all the lessons, however tedious they may be—394.

38. They have some bread, meat, and fish, however poor they may be—394.

39. Come with your friends, whoever they may be—396, 397.

40. Whatever might be the invitation, it was accepted—396, 397.

41. All books were studied, whatever they might be—396, 397.

42. They *asked* [made] us the following question—398.

43. We have heard an amusing story—381, 398.

44. He gave us the following examples—398.

45. She has received two very pressing letters—398.

TWENTIETH LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.**

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingtième leçon.
Twentieth

| Il y avait, | parmi les anciennes con-
There was among old ac-

naissances d'Alexis, un étudiant austère
quaintances student austere

et froid, qui le sermonnait de temps en
cold lectured

temps, et qui, la dernière fois qu'ils se
last each other

rencontrèrent, lui tint | à peu près | ce
met held nearly

langage : "Croyez-moi, cher condisciple :
language Believe fellow-student

fuyez les flatteuses séductions de cette
shun flattering seductions

compagnie frivole et corruptrice. Quand
company frivolous corrupting Though

même vous auriez de la fortune, vous
even should have

seriez à blâmer de ne songer qu'à boire,
would be to blame to dream drink

à manger, à dormir et à tuer le temps,
eat sleep kill

---

* See 1st note on page 187. ** See 2d note on page 117.

sans rien faire de profitable. Vous finirez
profitable will finish

par vous lasser de cette vie dissipée, et
to tire life dissipated

vous en reconnaîtrez le vide ; mais ne
of it will acknowledge empty (emptiness)

sera-t-il pas trop tard ? "
will be late

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

There was, among the old acquaintances of Alexis, an austere and frigid student, who lectured him now and then, and who, the last time they met, spoke to him nearly as follows : " Take my advice, dear fellow-student, shun the enticements of that frivolous and corrupting society. Even though you were wealthy, still you would be to blame to think of nothing but eating and drinking, and sleeping and killing time, without doing any thing profitable. You will at last get tired of this life of dissipation, and you will acknowledge the futility of it ; but will it not be too late ? "

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.*

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingtième.
Qui est-ce qui sermonnait Alexis ?	Un étudiant.
Quand le sermonnait-il ?	De temps en temps.
Quel était le caractère de cet étudiant ?	Il était austère et froid.
Etait-ce un ami d'Alexis ?	C'était une de ses anciennes connaissances.
Que faisait-il de temps en temps ?	Il sermonnait Alexis.
Quand lui dit-il : " Croyez-moi, cher condisciple ? "	La dernière fois qu'ils se rencontrèrent.
Comment appelait-il Alexis ?	Cher condisciple.

---

* See notes on page 2.

Que pensait-il de la compagnie que fréquentait Alexis ?	Que c'était une compagnie frivole et corruptrice.
Avec quelles expressions lui parla-t-il de cette compagnie ?	"Fuyez les flatteuses séductions de cette compagnie frivole et corruptrice."
De quoi un homme serait-il à blâmer, quand même il aurait de la fortune ?	Il serait à blâmer de ne songer qu'à boire, à manger, à dormir et à tuer le temps, sans rien faire de profitable.
Comment l'étudiant parla-t-il de la vie dissipée d'Alexis ?	"Vous finirez par vous lasser de cette vie dissipée, et vous en reconnaîtrez le vide ; mais ne sera-t-il pas trop tard ?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.*

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Que pensez-vous de cette histoire ?	What do you think of this story ?
De quelle histoire voulez-vous parler ?	What story do you mean ?
De celle d'Alexis Delatour.	This of Alexis Delatour.
Faut-il vous parler franchement ?	Must I speak frankly ?
Oui, sans doute.	Yes, undoubtedly.
Je ne la trouve pas fort amusante.	I do not find it very amusing.
Quel défaut y trouvez-vous ?	What fault do you find with it ?
D'abord, il n'y a guère d'incidents.	Firstly, there are but few incidents.
C'est vrai.	It is true.
A tout moment la narration est interrompue par des réflexions et des conversations.	At every moment the narration is interrupted by reflections and conversations.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Nous serions plus attentifs si l'histoire était plus attrayante.	We should be more attentive if the story were more attractive.
Avez-vous d'autres observations à faire ?	Have you any other observations to make ?

---

* See note on page 8.

Je pense que c'est bien assez.	I think it is quite enough.
Je suis forcé de dire d'abord que vos observations sont très-justes.	I am forced to say first that your observations are very right.
Cela me fait plaisir.	I am glad to hear it.
Mais soyez assez bon pour répondre à quelques questions.	But be kind enough to answer me a few questions.
Je suis prêt à vous entendre et à vous répondre.	I am ready to hear and to answer you.
Où avez-vous appris les mots que vous venez de prononcer ?	Where have you learned the words that you have just pronounced ?
Dans l'histoire d'Alexis.	In the story of Alexis.
Quand je vous parle, vous comprenez tous les mots que je prononce, n'est-ce pas ?	When I speak to you, you understand every word I pronounce, don't you ?
Oui, monsieur.	Yes, sir.
Et quand vous avez quelque chose à dire, vous trouvez des expressions pour rendre votre pensée ?	And when you have something to say, you find expressions to render your thought ?
Pas toujours ; mais souvent.	Not always ; but often I do.
Où avez-vous appris toutes ces expressions ?	Where have you learned all these expressions ?
Dans l'histoire d'Alexis.	In the story of Alexis.
S'il n'y avait pas de conversations dans cette histoire, croyez-vous qu'il vous serait possible de trouver tant d'expressions ?	If there were no conversations in this story, do you believe it would be possible for you to find so many expressions ?
Je ne le pense pas.	I do not believe it would.
Dans une conversation, l'on parle à la première et à la seconde personne.	In a conversation, we speak in the first and second persons.
Dans une narration non interrompue, nous n'apprendrions que la troisième personne.	In an uninterrupted narration, we should learn but the third person.
Et nous n'aurions les verbes qu'au passé.	And we should have the verbs but in the past tense.
Voilà ce qui fait que cette histoire n'est pas très-amusante.	That is why this story is not very amusing.
Mais nous avons une compensation.	But we have a compensation.

Nous pouvons nous entendre en français.	We can understand each other in French.
A partir de la vingt et unième leçon, je ne vous parlerai plus anglais.	From the twenty-first lesson, I shall no longer speak English to you.
Et vous croyez que nous vous comprendrons ?	And do you believe that we shall understand you ?
J'en suis sûr.	I am sure of it.
Vous savez assez de mots pour cela.	You know words enough for that.
Voyez quelle longue conversation nous avons eue aujourd'hui !	See what a long conversation we have had to-day !

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

Of what gender is *étudiant ?* *—14.

Of what gender is *condisciple ?*—8.

Of what gender are *connaissance*, *compagnie*, and *fortune ?*—15.

Of what gender is *langage ?*—215.

Of what gender is *séduction ?*—99.

What is the present tense of *Il y avait ?*—218.

Of what gender is the adjective *austère ?*—6.

What is the feminine of *froid ?*—2.

What is the feminine of *cher ?*—3.

In what tense and of what person is *sermonnait*, and what is its infinitive ?—47.

What is the masculine of *dernière ?*—3.

In what tense and of what person is *rencontrèrent*, and what is the infinitive mood of this verb ?—157.

---

* See notes on page 17.

In what mood are the verbs *blâmer*, *songer*, *boire*, *manger*, *dormir*, *tuer*, *faire*, and *lasser ?*—121.

What is the plural of *temps ?*—17.

Of what gender is the adjective *profitable ?*—6.

What is the masculine of *dissipée ?*—53.

What is the infinitive of *dissipé ?*—52.

In what tense and of what person is *reconnaîtrez*, and what is the infinitive mood of this verb ?—307.

Why is *il* placed after *sera ?*—40.

What is the use of *t* between *sera* and *il ?*—41.

VINGTIÈME is derived from *vingt*, twenty (44).

PARMI is a preposition which means, *among*, *amongst*, and *amid*, *amidst*.

ANCIENNES is the plural feminine of *ancien* (184).

CONNAISSANCE, seen in the fifth lesson translated by *knowledge*, signifies *acquaintance* in this lesson. It is used to express either male or female acquaintance, but whether it refers to males or females it remains feminine, and in speaking of a man we say: "*C'est* UNE *de mes connaissances.*"

ÉTUDIANT is one of the derivatives of *étudier*, seen in the eighth lesson.

399. The present participle sometimes becomes a substantive, as: *Étudiant*, student, from the verb *étudier ; commandant*, commander, from the verb *commander*, to command; *prétendant*, pretender, from the verb *prétendre*, to pretend; *mendiant*, beggar, from the verb *mendier*, to beg.

AUSTÈRE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

FROID is one of the derivatives, or rather co-derivatives of *frais*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

SERMONNAIT is a form (47) of the verb *sermonner*, derived from *sermon* (303, 288), which comes from the Latin *sermo*, speech, discourse.

De temps en temps is an adverbial expression corresponding to *now and then*, *every now and then*, *ever and anon*.

Dernière is the feminine of the adjective *dernier* (3).

Rencontrèrent is a form (157) of the verb *rencontrer*, derived from *contre*, against, which comes from the Latin *contra*. The principal derivatives of contre are: *Contraire*, contrary; *au contraire*, on the contrary; *contrarier*, to contradict, to counteract, to thwart; *contrariant*, provoking, annoying; *contrariété*, contrariety, annoyance, vexation; *rencontre*, meeting, adventure, encounter; *contraste*, contrast; *contraster*, to contrast; *contralto*, contralto; and *à contre cœur*, unwillingly.

Se rencontrer is a pronominal verb (364) denoting reciprocity.

400. The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action, expressed in English by adding the pronouns *each-other* or *one-another* to the verb, is rendered in French by means of two pronouns of the same person: *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*, placed before the verb; that is, by the pronominal form (180), which is likewise employed with reflective verbs; the only difference being that reciprocal verbs of course are only used in the plural number. *Nous nous aimons*—*Vous vous voyez*—*Ils se blâment*—may consequently mean: *We love each-other*, or, *We love ourselves; You see each-other*, or, *You see yourselves; They blame each-other*, or, *They blame themselves.* When the rest of the construction does not clearly show the sense, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre*, *les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal; and *nous-mêmes*, *vous-mêmes*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*, when it is reflective.

Tint is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *tenir*, which is irregular, and has been mentioned in the third lesson.

It must be observed that the irregularities of the two verbs *venir* and *tenir* are the same throughout the conjugation: accordingly, the third person singular of the past tense definite of *venir* is *il vint;* and the past participle of *venir* being *venu*, the past participle of *tenir* is *tenu.*

Près, near, has been mentioned in the second lesson.

À peu près is an adverbial expression signifying *nearly*, *almost*, or *pretty much.*

LANGAGE has been mentioned in the fifth lesson.

CROYEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of *croire*, to believe.

CONDISCIPLE is derived from *disciple* (75), which comes from the Latin *discipulus*, disciple. The principal derivatives of DISCIPLE are: *Discipliné*, disciplined; *discipliner*, to discipline; and a few other words, alike or nearly so in both languages, as: *Discipline*, *disciplinable*, *indisciplinable*, *disciplinaire*, disciplinary; etc.

FUYEZ is the second person plural of the imperative mood of the irregular verb *fuir*, which comes from the Latin *fugere*, to flee. The principal derivatives of FUIR are: *S'enfuir*, to flee, to run away; *fuite*, flight, leakage; *se réfugier*, to take refuge; *réfugié*, refugee; *refuge*, *subterfuge*, etc.

FLATTEUSES is the plural feminine of the adjective *flatteur*, derived from the verb *flatter*, to flatter. The derivatives of FLATTER are the substantives *Flatteur*, flatterer, and *flatterie*, flattery.

401. Adjectives ending in **eur** have their feminine in **euse** when they can be derived from a present participle, by changing the termination ANT into EUR, as *flatt*ANT, *flatt*EUR, from the verb *flatter*.

SÉDUCTION is a word alike in both languages (49).

COMPAGNIE is one of the derivatives of *compagnon*, seen in the twelfth lesson (199).

FRIVOLE comes from the Latin *frivolus*, trifling. It is of both genders (6). Its only derivative is *frivolité*, frivolousness, trifle.

CORRUPTRICE is the feminine of the adjective *corrupteur*, allied to the verb *corrompre*, to corrupt, one of the derivatives of *rompre* (75), mentioned in the nineteenth lesson.

402. Adjectives ending in **teur** form their feminine by changing this termination into **trice**, when they cannot be derived from a present participle, as *corrupteur*, the participle of the corresponding verb, *corrompre*, being *corrompant* and not *corruptant*.

403. There are about 260 adjectives and substantives ending in **teur**, most of which have preserved in English their Latin

termination *tor*, as: *Acteur*, actor; *auditeur*, auditor; *créateur*, creator; *modérateur*, moderator, etc., etc.

Quand, seen in the eighth lesson as an adverb meaning *when* (176), is employed in this lesson as a conjunction, and signifies *though*. With this sense it is often followed by *même*, and sometimes by *bien même*, which serves only to make it more emphatic, without altering the sense: *Quand bien même* corresponds to *though even* in English.

Auriez is the second person plural of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

Seriez is the second person plural of the conditional mood of *être*.

Blâmer is derived from the substantive *blâme* (303), slander, invective.

Songer, which properly means *to dream*, is often used in the sense of *to think*. It is derived from *songe*, dream (303), which is supposed to come from the Latin *somnium*.

Boire comes from the Latin *bibere*. It is an irregular verb. Its principal derivatives are: *Boisson*, beverage, drink; *buvable*, drinkable; *buveur*, drinker; and *imbiber*, to imbibe.

Manger comes from the Latin *mandere*, to chew, or *manducare*, to chew, to eat. Its principal derivatives are: *Mangeoire*, manger, crib; *mangeable*, eatable; *mangeur*, eater; *blanc-manger*, blanc-mange; and *garde-manger*, pantry, buttery, safe.

Dormir comes from the Latin *dormire*, to sleep. It is an irregular verb. Its principal derivatives are: *Dormant*, sleeping, stagnant, dull; *dormeur*, sleeper; *dormeuse*, carriage adapted for sleeping; *endormir*, to lull, to send to sleep; *endormi*, asleep; *dortoire*, dormitory, etc.

Tuer, to kill, or to slay, comes from the Greek θύειν, to sacrifice. Its principal derivative is *tueur*, killer.

Profitable, derived from the verb *profiter*, to profit, is a word alike in both languages (97).

Finirez is the second person plural of the future tense of *finir*, seen in the tenth lesson.

404. The second person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by adding **ez** to this termination (321, 307).

LASSER is derived from the adjective *las*, fatigued, tired, weary, which comes from the Latin *lassus*, fatigued. The principal derivatives of LAS are: *Lassitude*, weariness; *délassement*, repose from fatigue, relaxation, recreation; *délasser*, to refresh, to unweary.

VIE comes from the Latin *vita*, life. Its principal derivatives are: *Vif*, quick, lively, vivacious; *vivant*, alive, living; *vivifier*, to vivify, to quicken; *vivre*, to live; *revivre*, to return to life, to be alive again; *survivre*, to survive; *convive*, guest, table-companion; *savoir-vivre*, good breeding, genteel manners; and a number of other words alike, or nearly so, in both languages, as: *Vivacité*, vivacity; *vitalité*, vitality; *vital; vivat*, hurra; *qui vive?* who goes there? etc.

DISSIPÉE is a form (52, 53) of the verb *dissiper*, to dissipate.

RECONNAÎTREZ is a form (307) of the verb *reconnaître*, to know again, to recognize, to acknowledge, which is one of the derivatives of *connaître*, mentioned in the fifth lesson.

VIDE, emptiness, nothingness, vacuum, is derived from the adjective *vide*, empty, vacant, void, coming from the Latin *viduus*, deprived. It is masculine.

405. When adjectives are employed as substantives, or when they become real substantives, they are of the masculine gender (181).

SERA is the third person singular of the future tense of *être*.

TARD comes from the Latin *tardè*, slowly. Its principal derivatives are: *Tarder*, to delay, to defer, to linger; *tardif*, tardy, late, slow; *retard*, delay, slowness; and *retarder*, to delay, to defer, to retard, to go too slow.

SYNTAX.

Why is the imperfect tense employed, and not the past tense definite, in the phrase "*Il y* AVAIT *un étudiant qui le* SERMONNAIT?" *—134.

Why is the past tense definite employed, and not the imperfect

---

* See notes on page 17.

tense, in "*La dernière fois qu'ils se* RENCONTRÈRENT," and "*Lui* TINT *ce langage?*"—135.

Why is *le* placed before *sermonnait*, *se* before *rencontrèrent*, *lui* before *tint*, *vous* before *lasser*, and *en* before *reconnaîtrez?*—43.

Why is *moi* placed after *croyez?*—297.

Why is it proper to employ *de la* before *fortune?*—102.

Why is *songer* preceded by *de?*—189.

Why is *boire* preceded by *à?*—188.

Why is *à* repeated before *manger*, *dormir*, and *tuer?*—109.

Why is "*without* DOING" rendered by "*sans* FAIRE?"—129.

Why would it not be correct to place *dissipée* before *vie?*—355.

According to what example is the following phrase constructed: "*Ne sera-t-il pas trop tard?*"—42.

---

*Croyez-***moi**.

406. In the imperative mood, MOI is used instead of ME after the verb, when the phrase is not negative.

There is an exception to this rule, when the word *en* follows, in which case there is a contraction, thus: "*Donnez-*M'*en*, give me some."

Ne **me** *croyez pas.*

407. But when the phrase is negative, ME, instead of MOI, is placed before the verb (297, 298).

Quand *même vous* **auriez** *de la fortune.*

408. When QUAND signifies *though*, *although*, it is always followed by a verb in the conditional mood.

Quand must not be confounded with *quoique*, which signifies *though*, *although*, but requires the subjunctive mood after it (244).

Vous seriez **à blâmer.**
You would be TO BLAME.

409. In this particular example, the construction is the same in both languages. In French this construction is perfectly regular; but in English, it is exceptional, the passive form being the usual corresponding construction, as will be seen by the following examples :

Il est À PLAINDRE.	*He is* TO BE PITIED.
Fautes À CORRIGER.	*Faults* TO BE CORRECTED.
C'est une chose À VOIR.	*It is a thing* TO BE SEEN.
Il y a quelque chose À FAIRE.	*There is something* TO BE DONE.

Sans rien faire.

The privative *sans* in this phrase equals the negation *ne*, which should otherwise accompany *rien.*

410. After the preposition SANS, the negatives *ne*, *pas*, *point*, are not used.

Sans **rien** *faire* **de** *profitable.*

411. The preposition **de** must be prefixed to an adjective which follows RIEN or an indefinite expression such as: *quelque chose*, something, any thing; *quoi que ce soit*, any thing whatever.

LEXICOLOGY.

There are about 260 adjectives and substantives ending with **or** in English, which become French by changing *or* into *eur.* Ex. Actor, *acteur ;* creator, *créateur*, etc. See Obs. 403.

*ADDITIONAL WORDS.**

Ancêtres,	Ancestors.	*Fugue*,	Fugue.
Antique,	Antique.	*Fuyard*,	Fugitive.
Convier,	To invite.	*Sermonneur*,	Sermonizer.
Démangeaison,	Itching.	*Sermonner*,	To lecture.
Démanger,	To itch.	*Vegéter*,	To vegetate.
De rencontre,	Second-hand.	*Vider*,	To empty.
Dévider,	To wind.	*Vivandière*,	Sutler.
Dévideur,	Winder.	*Vigoureux*,	Vigorous.
Dévidoir,	Winder, reel	*Vigueur*,	Vigor.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.**

1. Model: *Un étudiant.* See Obs. 399.—*Un assaillant*—*Un mordant*—*Un passant*—*Un prétendant*—*Un perdant*—*Un répondant*—*Une suivante.*

2. Model: *Ils se rencontrèrent.* See Obs. 400.—We call each-other—You will admire each-other—They love each-other—We blame each-other—You will correct each-other.

3. Model: *Il tint.* See the observation after *tint*, p. 270, also the derivatives of *venir* in fifteenth lesson, p. 191.—Hold (imper. 2d. pers. plur.)—Held (past part.)—You will hold—Obtain—Obtained—You will obtain—He came (past t. def.)—He came back—He became—He intervened.

4. Model: *Flatteuse*, feminine of *flatteur*. See Obs. 401.—(Translate the following by French adjectives of the feminine gender)—Dauber—Sleeper—Lounger—Eater—Lender—Laugher—Seller.

5. Model: *Corruptrice*, feminine of *corrupteur*. See Obs. 402, 403.—(Translate the following by French adjectives of the feminine gender)—Creator—Mediator—Conciliator—Spectator—Inspector—Director—Conductor.

---

* See note on page 11. ** See note on page 12.

6. Model: *Vous finirez.* See Obs. 404.—You will warn—You will divert—You will sleep—You will finish—You will furnish—You will enjoy—You will blacken—You will perish—You will fill—You will succeed—You will feel.

7. Model: *Le vide.* See Obs. 405.—The sublime—The grave *style*—The sweet *tone*—The useful—The useful and the agreeable.

8. Model: *Croyez*-MOI. Syntax, 406.—Call me—Love me—Wait *for* me—Warn me—Correct me—Give me—Tell me—Hear me—Furnish me.

9. Model: *Ne* ME *croyez pas.* Syntax, 407.—Do not bite me—Do not blacken me—Do not forget me—Do not speak to me—Do not answer me.

10. QUAND *vous* AURIEZ *de la fortune.* Syntax, 408.—Though you were my son—Though he were at home—Though we were attentive—Though we had forgotten some words—Though you had children—Though we should wait an hour—Though we drank water.

11. Model: *Vous seriez à blâmer.* Syntax, 409.—There is a lesson to be learned—There was no water to be *had* [drunk] *—It is to be wished—Is there any thing to be done?—That society is not to be frequented—Here are some words to be pronounced—There is no time to be lost—Here is an example to be followed.

12. Model: *Rien* DE *profitable.* Syntax, 411.—Nothing good—Nothing attractive—Nothing agreeable—Nothing low—Something handsome—Something dear—Something grave—Something insignificant.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION**

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. I am looking *at* the passers-*by*—399.
2. All those *suitors* [pretendants] are ambitious—399.
3. They love each-other like two brothers—400.

---

* See note on page 37. ** See notes on page 13.

4. We looked *at* each other, but we did not speak *to* each-other—328, 400.

5. What shall you say *to* each-other, when you meet?—40, 334, 321, 400.

6. I think that your friends are flatterers—102.

7. I accept your flattering invitation—401.

8. She is the directress of that institution—402.

9. Do you understand the French actors when they play?—403.

10. The doctor *came* [is come] during our absence—403.

11. You will sleep well after this long walk—404.

12. You will warn us when the boat passes—404, 334, 74.

13. Boileau recommends to poets to pass from the grave *style* to the *gay* [sweet]—405.

14. Give me some bread and water—406.

15. Do not give me any meat—407.

16. Interrupt me when you *do* [will] not understand me—406.

17. Speak to me very *slowly* [softly]—406.

18. Do not forget me, when you are *in* [at] Paris—407, 334.

19. Though we were poorer than we are, we should not sell this house—408, 377, 264, 286.

20. Though we had more time than we have [of it], we should not finish to-day—408, 268, 278.

21. There is a composition to be made—409.

22. This is one thing to be wished—409.

23. There are many words to be learned—409.

24. We passed *the whole* [all the] day without eating any thing—410.

25. We heard them without understanding any thing—410.

26. Do you know any thing new?—411, 166.

27. No, we know nothing new—411.

28. We shall eat something good—411.

29. There is something tedious in that poem—411.

TWENTY-FIRST LESSON.*

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt et unième leçon.
first

"Si vous poursuiviez vos études, elles
pursued

vous conduiraient loin; car vous ne
would conduct far

manquez ni de mémoire ni de jugement.
lack memory judgment

Vous apprendriez facilement et vous
would learn easily

trouveriez bien vite l'occasion d'utiliser
would find quickly to profit by

votre savoir et vos talents. Alors vous
knowledge Then

adouciriez la position de votre père, qui
might alleviate which

n'est pas heureuse. Vous souvenez-vous
happy Do you remember

qu'un jour, à notre pension, le maître

---

* We now cease to refer to the notes given in the early lessons as a guide to the manner of studying them, practice having most likely by this time rendered any further aid of that kind unnecessary. We would, however, improve this opportunity to recommend once more a close observance of the plan laid down, especially to those who would make rapid progress.

promit une semaine de congé à celui qui
promised week holiday

ferait le meilleur thème et la meilleure
would make exercise

version ?"
translation

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"If you pursued your studies, they would advance you in the world; for you want neither memory nor judgment. You would learn easily, and would soon find an opportunity of profiting by your learning and talents. You might then alleviate your father's position, which is not a happy one. Do you remember that one day, at your school, the master promised a week's holiday to him who should make the best exercise and translation?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt et unième.
Qu'arriverait-il si Alexis poursuivait ses études?	Elles le conduiraient loin.
A quelle condition Alexis pouvait-il aller loin?	A condition qu'il poursuivît ses études.
Qu'est-ce qui pouvait le conduire loin?	Ses études.
De quoi ne manquait-il pas?	De mémoire ni de jugement.
Comment apprendrait-il?	Facilement
Pourquoi apprendrait-il facilement?	Parce qu'il ne manquait ni de mémoire ni de jugement.
Que faut-il avoir pour apprendre facilement?	De la mémoire et du jugement.
Quelle occasion Alexis trouverait-il bien vite?	L'occasion d'utiliser son savoir et ses talents.
Qu'adoucirait-il alors?	La position de son père.
Comment était la position de son père?	Elle n'était pas heureuse.

Quand le maître promit-il une semaine de congé?	Un jour.
Qu'est-ce que le maître promit un jour?	Une semaine de congé.
Où promit-il cela?	A leur pension.
A qui promit-il cela?	A celui qui ferait le meilleur thème et la meilleure version.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
D'où venez-vous, mon cher ami?	Where do you come from, my dear friend?
J'arrive de Paris.	I am just arrived from Paris.
Avez-vous fait un bon voyage?	Have you had a good journey?
Excellent. Les communications sont si faciles et si rapides aujourd'hui.	Excellent. The communication is so easy and rapid now.
Comment va monsieur votre père?	How is your father?
Il ne va pas très-bien.	He is not very well.
Vraiment! Qu'est-ce qu'il a donc?	Indeed! What is the matter with him?
Il a bien des infirmités.	He has many infirmities.
Il est bien vieux, n'est-ce pas?	He is very old, is he not?
Il a quatre-vingts ans.	He is eighty years old.
Que fait votre frère?	What does your brother do?
Il est dans le commerce.	He is in trade.
Est-il toujours aussi étourdi?	Is he still the same madcap that he was?
Non, il est un peu plus raisonnable.	No, he is somewhat more reasonable.
Passerez-vous quelques jours avec nous?	Shall you spend a few days with us?
Oui, j'ai un congé de huit jours.	Yes, I have leave of absence for a week.
Que je suis heureux de vous voir!	How happy I am to see you!
Croyez que je suis bien heureux moi-même.	Believe me, I am very happy too.
Il y a bien longtemps que je vous attends.	I have been expecting you a very long time.

Eh bien! comment utiliserons-nous notre temps?	Well, how shall we make the best of our time?
D'abord, nous irons voir toutes les curiosités.	We shall first go and see all the curiosities.
On dit qu'il y en a beaucoup à voir.	They say there are many things to be seen.
Oh! je vous en réponds.	Yes, I warrant you.
Mais, j'oubliais de vous demander si vous voulez prendre quelque chose.	But, I forgot to ask you whether you would take any thing.
Non, je vous suis bien obligé.	No, I am much obliged to you.
Vous ne voulez pas goûter de mon vin avec quelques gâteaux?	Won't you taste some of my wine, with a few cakes?
Plus tard, si vous le voulez bien.	By and by, if you please.
Il me serait impossible de boire ou de manger à présent.	It would be impossible for me to eat or drink at present.
Je pense que vous ne feriez pas de cérémonies avec moi.	I think you would not stand on ceremonies with me.
Non, vraiment.	No, indeed.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

UNIÈME is one of the derivatives of *un*, seen in the first lesson. For the difference between *unième* and *premier*, see Syntax, 421.

POURSUIVIEZ is the second person plural of the imperfect tense of *poursuivre*, one of the derivatives of *suivre*, seen in the third lesson.

---

* The test questions which have hitherto preceded these observations will be henceforth omitted. They have not become useless, however, and it will be for the teacher in future to supply the deficiency, the examples given in previous lessons being sufficient to show how this exercise is to be continued. See page 17 from line 25, and page 21 from line 2.

412. The second person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **iez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the subjunctive mood.

CONDUIRAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *conduire*, which is an irregular verb, but the irregularity does not extend to the conditional mood.

413. The third person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing the final **e** into **aient**.

LOIN is an adverb corresponding to the word *far*.

MANQUEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *manquer*, to fail, to miss, to want, to lack. When *manquer* signifies to want, or to stand in need of, it requires the preposition *de* before its regimen.

414. The second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ez**. It is similar to the same person of the imperative mood (368).

NI, *neither*, *nor*, is one of the forms of the negative *non*, seen in the fourteenth lesson (289.)

MÉMOIRE comes from the Latin *memoria*. In its primary sense of *memory*, *remembrance*, or *recollection*, it is feminine. *Mémoire* signifies also memorandum, memorial, memoir, bill, account. With these acceptations it is masculine.

JUGEMENT is nearly alike in French and in English (153).

APPRENDRIEZ is the second person plural of the conditional mood of *apprendre*, already seen.

415. The second person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing the final **e** into **iez**.

FACILEMENT is an adverb derived from *facile*, easy (31).

TROUVERIEZ is the second person plural of the conditional mood of *trouver*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

416. The second person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by adding **iez** to this termination (415).

VITE is here an adjective used adverbially.

OCCASION is a word alike in French and in English (49, 68).

UTILISER is one of the derivatives of *utile*, seen in the fifth lesson.

417. The termination **iser** is common to many verbs, about 80 of which terminate in English in *ize* or *ise*, without any other difference in their spelling, as: *Scandaliser*, to scandalize; *naturaliser*, to naturalize; *fertiliser*, to fertilize; *familiariser*, to familiarize; *réviser*, to revise, etc.

SAVOIR, seen in the seventeenth lesson as a verb, is employed here as a substantive.

418. The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively in French. In this case, it is determined by the article or by pronouns and adjectives, like any other substantive. We say, *Le boire*, *le manger*, *le rire*, *le savoir*, for, Drinking, eating, laughter, knowledge, etc.

TALENT comes from the Latin *talentum*, a weight or a sum of money, and metaphorically, riches, treasure.

ALORS is derived from *lors*, then, which is corrupted from *l'heure*, formerly used in the same sense.

ADOUCIRIEZ is the second person plural of the conditional mood of *adoucir*, one of the derivatives of *doux*, *douce*, seen in the ninth lesson (257).

419. The second person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by adding **iez** to this termination (415, 416).

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the conditional mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Vous trouv*ERIEZ *l'occasion.*"—21st lesson.

"*Vous adouc*IRIEZ *la position de votre père.*"—21st lesson.

"*Vous apprend*RIEZ *facilement.*"—21st lesson.

"*Vous* SERIEZ *à blâmer.*"—20th lesson.

"*Vous* AURIEZ *de la fortune.*"—20th lesson.

POSITION is one of the derivatives of *poser*, mentioned in the twelfth lesson.

HEUREUSE is the feminine of the adjective *heureux* (142), derived from *heur*, luck, hap.

SOUVENEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of

the indicative mood of *se souvenir*, one of the derivatives of *venir*, mentioned in the fifteenth lesson. This verb is always pronominal (364).

PROMIT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *promettre*, one of the derivatives of *mettre*, mentioned in the fifth lesson.

SEMAINE comes from the Italian *settimana*, week. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

CONGÉ comes from the Italian *congedo*, leave, and is masculine according to analogy (14).

FERAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of the irregular verb *faire*, seen in the third lesson.

THÈME comes from the Greek θέμα, that which is laid down. It is masculine.

420. § 1. Substantives ending in **ème** or **ême** are masculine.

§ 2. The exceptions are *birême*, bireme; *trirême*, trireme; and *crème*, cream, which are feminine.

VERSION is a word alike in French and in English (49).

SYNTAX.*

Vingt et **unième.**

421. The adjective *first*, when it is not preceded by another number, is translated by **premier**, **première**, as has been seen in the first lesson; but when preceded by *vingt*, twenty; *trente*, thirty; *quarante*, forty; *cinquante*, fifty; *soixante*, sixty; *quatre-vingt*, eighty; *cent*, hundred; and *mille*, thousand, it is rendered by **unième**.

For the use of the conjunction *et* between *vingt* and *unième*, see 359.

---

* See note on page 282.

Si *vous* **poursuiviez** *vos études.*

The verb *poursuiviez*, here, is in the imperfect tense, and may be literally rendered thus: *If you* PURSUED *your studies;* but the sense being conditional, it would also be correct in English to make use of the conditional mood, and to say: *If you* SHOULD PURSUE *your studies;* whereas in French the use of the conditional mood in this case would be improper.

422. When the conjunction **si** corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conjunction is used in the present tense of the indicative with the correlative verb of the phrase in the future; or the conjunction is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second verb in the conditional mood, as in these examples: "*Si vous me* PARLEZ, *je vous* RÉPONDRAI, if you (shall) speak to me, I shall answer you; *Si vous me* PARLIEZ, *je vous* RÉPONDRAIS, if you should speak to me, I should answer you."

Il ne savait pas **si** *vous* **poursuivriez** *vos études.*

423. But when **si** corresponds to the English conjunction *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence.

Vous ne manquez **ni** *de mémoire* **ni** *de jugement.*

424. The conjunction **ni** corresponds to the two words *neither* and *nor*, or to *either* and *or*, with *not*, as: *You do* NOT *want* EITHER *memory* OR *judgment.* The negative words *pas* and *point* must not be employed when the conjunction NI is repeated in a phrase.

La position de votre père, **qui** *n'est pas heureuse.*

The pronoun QUI referring to persons as well as to things, it might be doubtful here whether it is the *position*, or the *father*,

that is not happy, if the adjective *heureuse* did not show, by its feminine termination, that *qui* refers to *position.*

This phrase which, though correct, is not elegant, has been introduced only as affording an opportunity to insist on a remark already made (173), that the relative pronoun, when a subject, is generally expressed by QUI, and that *lequel*, *laquelle*, etc., are seldom used in this case, unless they become necessary to avoid ambiguity.

A **celui** *qui ferait.*
To *him* who should make.

425. When *he*, *him*, *she*, *her*, *they*, *them*, do not refer to any person or persons mentioned before, but are used in an indefinite sense, they must be rendered by the demonstrative pronouns, CELUI, CELLE, CEUX, CELLES, instead of the personal pronouns, *il*, *lui*, *elle*, *la*, *ils*, *eux*, *elles*, as : "HE *who does not work*, CELUI qui ne travaille pas ; SHE *whom I love*, CELLE que j'aime ; THEY *who have memory*, CEUX qui ont de la mémoire."

Le **meilleur** *thème.*

426. It has been seen already (377, 197) that the degrees of comparison in French are not expressed by means of terminations added to adjectives or adverbs, but with the help of the words *aussi*, *plus*, and *moins.* There are but three exceptions, or three adjectives, which by themselves express comparison ; they are : **Meilleur**, better or best, the comparative and superlative of *bon*, good ; **Moindre**, less or least, the comparative and superlative of *petit*, little ; **Pire**, worse or worst, the comparative and superlative of *mauvais* bad.

Le **meilleur** *thème et la* **meilleure** *version.*
The best exercise and (the best) translation.

427. The comparative adjectives *meilleur*, *moindre*, and *pire*, must be repeated before each substantive which they modify ;

as also the adverbs of comparison *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*, *plus*, and *moins*, must be repeated before each adjective, verb, or adverb which they modify.

LEXICOLOGY.

This branch of study will after this cease to appear separately, the few remaining rules being comparatively of less importance, and sufficiently explained among the Theoretical Observations in the Second Part of each lesson. See page 284, No. 417.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Vous poursuiviez.* See Obs. 412.—You waited—You heard—You put—You pretended—You lost—You promised—You answered—You rendered—You laughed—You followed—You suspended—You sold.

2. Model: *Elles conduiraient.* See Obs. 413.—(Use the feminine pronoun.)—They would wait—They would hear—They would put—They would pretend—They would lose—They would promise—They would answer—They would render—They would laugh—They would follow—They would suspend—They would sell.

3. Model: *Vous manquez.* See Obs. 414.—You call—You love—You bring—You accept—You arrive—You blame—You cease—You give—You ask—You study—You taste—You play—You eat—You forget.

4. Model: *Vous apprendriez.*—See Obs. 415.—You would wait—You would hear—You would put—You would pretend—You would lose—You would promise—You would answer—You

would render—You would laugh—You would follow—You would suspend—You would sell.

5. Model: *Vous trouveriez.* See Obs. 416.—You would think—You would pass—You would possess—You would place—You would pronounce—You would speak—You would propose—You would lend—You would look.

6. Model: *Utiliser.* See Obs. 417.—(Translate into English.)—*Sympathiser—Réaliser—Légaliser—Immortaliser—Civiliser—Organiser—Pulvériser—Coloniser.*

7. Model: *Vous adouciriez.* See Obs. 419.—You would sleep—You would finish—You would furnish—You would blacken—You would perish—You would succeed—You would feel.

8. Model: *Vous vous souvenez.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate the following by *venir* and its derivatives: see page 191, from line 23.)—You come—You agree—You disown—You become—You attain—You prevent—You come again.

9. Model: *Il promit.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate the following by *mettre* and its derivatives: see page 53, from line 23.)—He put—He admitted—He committed—He dislocated—He omitted—He permitted—He compromised—He put back—He submitted—He transmitted.

10. Model: *Vingt et unième.* Syntax, 421.—The first month—The twenty-first day—The thirty-first week.

11. Model: *Si vous poursuiviez.* Syntax, 422.—If he should speak—If he should finish—If he should answer—If we should perish—If we should hear—If you should pretend—If they should forget—If they should succeed.

12. Model: *Si vous poursuivriez.* Syntax, 423.—He did not know whether she would be—Whether we should enjoy—Whether we should lose—Whether you would find—Whether they would learn.

13. Model: NI *mémoire* NI *jugement.* Syntax, 424.—Neither shops nor houses—Neither friends nor acquaintances—Neither grammar nor dictionary—Neither the first nor the last—Neither to-day nor to-morrow—Neither great nor little—Neither well nor ill.

14. Model: *Celui qui ferait.* Syntax, 425.—We admire him who speaks—You call her who arrives—He stops them (or those)

who pass—He who blames us—She who gives—They who doubt.

15. Model: *Le meilleur thème et la meilleure version.* Syntax, 427.—The best poet and artist—The largest houses and gardens—The greatest and most detestable faults—The sweetest and most flattering hopes.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Why did you not follow our example?—412.
2. Did you not hear our question?—412.
3. They would drink if they had water—413.
4. Your friends would laugh if they heard you—413.
5. You *always* stop us [always] when we are speaking—414.
6. Do you accept what he proposes?—414.
7. Would you believe that this child *is* [has] fifteen years *old?*—415.
8. Would you understand her if she spoke fast?—415.
9. Should you like the trade of *a* joiner?—416.
10. Why would you not play at leap-frog?—416.
11. Your talent will immortalize you—417.
12. Our hopes will be realized—417.
13. Laughing is sometimes a good thing—418.
14. Your occupations will make you forget drinking and eating—418.
15. You would sleep well *in* [at] the shade—419.
16. Why would you not enjoy [of] your liberty?—419.
17. Do you remember [of] the first lesson?—421.
18. My son is in his twenty-first year—421.
19. In twenty-one lessons, we have learned many things—359.
20. Our friends will be *in* [at] Paris in twenty-four hours—359.
21. If you ate too *much*, you would be blamable—422.

22. If they should accept, we should be happy—422.

23. If we followed that example, we should be mad—422.

24. We did not know whether we should *catch* [take] any fish—423.

25. We did not know whether we should finish *in* [at] time —423.

26. He *wanted* [willed] to know whether you would wait for him—423.

27. We have neither friends nor acquaintances *in* [at] Paris —424.

28. They have neither bread nor money—424.

29. He that is not attentive, forgets his lessons—425.

30. She who is speaking to you is a flatterer—425.

31. They who want memory do not always want judgment —425.

32. We did not understand them (or those) who spoke fast —425.

33. Do not interrupt him who speaks—425.

34. Follow her whom you love—425.

35. He that will not work shall not eat—425.

36. He is as good and handsome as his mother—427.

37. That street will be the longest and finest *in* [of] Paris —427.

38. There is the most serious and austere of my friends—427.

TWENTY-SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-deuxième leçon.

"Vous étiez, je crois, le moins avancé
were believe least advanced

de la classe. Vous languissiez dans l'obs-
class languished ob-

curité. Jamais vous n'aviez obtenu le
security had obtained

moindre prix. Cependant, stimulé par
least prize However stimulated

une si charmante perspective, vous fîtes
charming prospect did

des prodiges. Vous travaillâtes avec une
prodigies worked

ardeur telle que vous vous rendîtes ma-
ardor such rendered

lade. Vous finîtes votre tâche avant tous
ill finished task

vos rivaux, et vous fûtes vainqueur. Voilà
rivals were victorious

ce que vous eûtes le courage d'accomplir;
had courage accomplish

et ce courage, vous l'aurez toutes les fois
will have

que vous le voudrez."

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"You were, I think, the most backward in the class. You were lost in obscurity. You had never gained the least prize. However, stimulated by such a charming prospect, you did wonders. You worked with such ardor that you made yourself ill. You completed your task before all your rivals, and were victorious. This you had the courage to perform; and that courage you will have whenever you please."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-deuxième.
Alexis était-il avancé?	Il était le moins avancé de la classe.
Etait-il remarqué?	Non, il languissait dans l'obscurité.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'avait jamais obtenu?	Il n'avait jamais obtenu le moindre prix.
Par quoi fut-il stimulé cependant?	Par une si charmante perspective.
Quelle charmante perspective?	Celle d'une semaine de congé.
Que fit Alexis, stimulé par cette perspective?	Il fit des prodiges.
Comment travailla-t-il?	Il travailla avec ardeur.
Travailla-t-il avec beaucoup d'ardeur?	Il travailla avec une ardeur telle qu'il se rendit malade.
Que finit-il avant tous ses rivaux?	Sa tâche.
Quand finit-il sa tâche?	Avant tous ses rivaux.
Quel fut le résultat de ses efforts?	Il fut vainqueur.
Qui est-ce qui fut vanqueur?	Alexis.
Que dit l'étudiant, après avoir parlé de cette circonstance?	Voilà ce que vous eûtes le courage d'accomplir; et ce courage vous l'aurez toutes les fois que vous le voudrez.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Que ferons-nous aujourd'hui?	What shall we do to-day?
Tout ce que vous voudrez.	Whatever you please.
Voulez-vous faire une promenade?	Will you take a walk?
Oui, vraiment.	To be sure, I will.
Où irons-nous?	Where shall we go?
Allons aussi loin que possible.	Let us go as far as possible.
Eh bien, alors, nous irons au village où demeure notre ami.	Well, then, we will go to that village where our friend lives.
Savez-vous où c'est?	Do you know where it is?
Pas très-bien, mais nous demanderons.	Not very well, but we shall inquire.
Je crois que ce sera trop loin pour moi.	I believe it will be too far for me.
Non, non, vous pouvez aller beaucoup plus loin.	No, no, you can go much farther.
Vous savez que je suis encore un peu malade.	You know I am still rather unwell.
La promenade vous fera du bien.	Walking will do you good.
Croyez-vous?	Do you believe it will?
J'en suis sûr.	I am sure of it.
Notre ami ne sera pas fâché de nous voir.	Our friend will not be sorry to see us.
Je vous réponds qu'il sera bien joyeux.	I warrant you he will be very glad.
Mais, s'il n'était pas chez lui?	But, if he should not be at home?
Il y sera, soyez-en bien sûr.	He will be at home, depend upon it.
Il n'est heureux que dans son jardin.	He is never happy but when he is in his garden.
Sommes-nous encore bien loin du village?	Are we still very far from the village?
Non, nous arriverons avant dix minutes.	No, we shall be there in less than ten minutes.
Vous voyez bien ces saules devant une petite maison?	Do you see those willows before a small house?
Oui, très-bien.	Yes, perfectly well.
C'est là qu'il demeure.	There he lives.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

ÉTIEZ is the second person plural of the imperfect tense of *être.*

JE CROIS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *croire*, mentioned in the sixth lesson, and of which another form (*croyez*) has been seen in the twentieth lesson.

428. **Moins** is an adverb corresponding to *less* and *least.* It is the comparative of *peu*, little, few. Before adjectives and adverbs, it denotes inferiority in the comparative and superlative degrees (197, 377).

AVANCÉ is the past participle, used adjectively, of the verb *avancer*, to advance, to forward.

CLASSE, from the Latin *classis*, class, is feminine according to analogy (15).

LANGUISSIEZ is the second person plural of the imperfect tense of *languir.*

429. The second person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **issiez**. It is similar to the same person of the present and past tenses of the subjunctive mood.

OBSCURITÉ, derived from *obscur*, obscure, dark, is feminine (241.)

AVIEZ is the second person plural of the imperfect tense of *avoir.*

OBTENU is the past participle of *obtenir*, one of the derivatives of the irregular verb *tenir*, mentioned in the third lesson. It has been seen already that the irregularities of conjugation of *tenir* and *venir* are the same.

MOINDRE, less or least, is one of the three adjectives which, by themselves, express comparison (426).

---

* See note on page 282.

PRIX has been mentioned in the fourteenth lesson, as the radical of *précieux*. It signifies *price*, *cost*, and *prize* or *reward*. It takes no additional termination in the plural.

430. Substantives, as well as adjectives, ending in **x** do not change their termination in the plural (158).

CEPENDANT is one of the derivatives of *pendre*, seen in the sixth lesson. It is formed of *ce*, this, and *pendant*, pending or during. Its first meaning is therefore *during this*, or *in the mean time*, *meanwhile*. It signifies also, *yet*, *still*, *however*, *nevertheless*.

STIMULÉ is the past participle (52) of *stimuler*, coming from the Latin *stimulare*, to goad, to stimulate.

CHARMANTE is the feminine of *charmant* (2), derived from *charme*, charm or spell.

PERSPECTIVE is derived from *spectacle*, coming from the Latin *spectare*, to look at. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

FÎTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *faire*.

PRODIGE comes from the Latin *prodigium*. It is masculine by exception (15).

TRAVAILLÂTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *travailler*, one of the derivatives of *travail*, mentioned in the eleventh lesson.

431. The second person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **âtes**.

ARDEUR is of the feminine gender (95).

TELLE is the feminine of the adjective *tel*, such (184).

RENDÎTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *rendre*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

432. The second person plural of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **îtes** (433.)

MALADE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

FINÎTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *finir*, one of the derivatives of *fin*, seen in the tenth lesson.

433. The second person plural of the past tense definite of

verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **îtes** (432).

TÂCHE is feminine according to analogy (15).

RIVAUX is the plural of *rival*, rival (379).

FÛTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *être*.

VAINQUEUR is derived from the verb *vaincre*, to vanquish, to conquer, which comes from the Latin *vincere*, having the same meaning.

EÛTES is the second person plural of the past tense definite of *avoir*.

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the second person plural of the past tense definite in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Vous travaill*ÂTES *avec ardeur*."

*Vous fin*ÎTES *votre tâche*."

" *Vous vous rend*ÎTES *malade*."

"*Vous* FÛTES *vainqueur*."

"*Vous* EÛTES *le courage*."

COURAGE is a word alike in French and in English (215).

AUREZ is the second person plural of the future tense of *avoir*.

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the future tense in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Vous appor*TEREZ *ce que vous voudrez*."—16th lesson.

"*Vous fin*IREZ *par vous lasser*."—20th lesson.

"*Vous prend*REZ *la vôtre*."—15th lesson.

"*Vous* AUREZ *ce courage*."—22d lesson.

"*Vous ne* SEREZ *pas fâché*."—16th lesson.

SYNTAX.*

Une si charmante perspective.

434. In English, after the adverbs *so*, *as*, *too*, and *how*, the word A is placed between the next adjective and substantive. In

---

* See note on page 282.

French, the first three of these adverbs, rendered by *si*, *aussi*, and *trop*, are preceded by *un*, *une*. As for the place of the adjective it is often optional: We may say: "*Une perspective si charmante*," as well as "*Une si charmante perspective;*" "*Une perspective trop charmante*," or "*Une trop charmante perspective.*"

The adverb *how*—in French, *comment* or *combien*—cannot be preceded by *un*, and requires a different construction or a different expression, as: "How charming a prospect! *Quelle charmante perspective!*" or, "*Que cette perspective est charmante!*"

Et ce courage, vous l'*aurez.*

435. The regular construction would be, *Et vous aurez ce courage*, and the pronoun LE would be useless and even improper.

But in inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the verb, this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pronoun, which is generally LE, LA, or LES, according to the sense, as: "*Ce qu'il dit, je* LE *ferai*, what he says, I will perform; *Cette personne, je* LA *connais*, that person I know; *Ces prodiges, nous* LES *avons vus*, those prodigies we have seen."

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Moins avancé.* See Obs. 428.—The least active—Less ambitious than—Less attentive than—The least tedious—Less dear than—The least cold—Less flattering than—The least numerous—Less sick than.

2. Model: *Vous languissiez.* See Obs. 429.—You freed—You softened—You accomplished—You diverted—You enjoyed—You blackened—You perished—You filled—You succeeded—You united.

3. Model: *Vous fîtes.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate the follow-

ing by derivatives of FAIRE: see page 31, line 6.)—You undid—You counterfeited—You did again—You satisfied.

4. Model: *Vous travaillâtes.* See Obs. 431.—You called—You loved—You brought—You went—You accepted—You gave—You asked—You studied—You tasted—You played—You ate—You forgot—You passed—You spoke.

5. Model: *Vous rendîtes.* See Obs. 432.—You waited—You heard—You stretched—You melted—You interrupted—You bit—You pretended—You lost—You pursued—You answered—You followed—You suspended—You sold.

6. Model: *Vous finîtes.* See Obs. 433.—You assailed—You freed yourselves—You alleviated—You accomplished—You diverted—You slept—You enjoyed—You languished—You blackened—You perished—You departed—You filled—You succeeded.

7. Model: *Une si charmante perspective.* Syntax, 434.—So great an aversion—As agreeable an invitation—Too ambitious a poet—So good a *fellow* [boy]—As worthy a man—Too insignificant a personage.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Your brother is less ambitious than you—428.
2. She is not less attentive than *she was* the first time—428.
3. That young man was the least attentive of students—428.
4. The least tedious of these poems is still very tedious—428.
5. You were finishing your exercise, when he arrived—429.
6. You always succeeded *in finishing* [to finish] your task before us—429.
7. Were you not filling your basket with provisions, when we passed?—429.
8. Do you remember that you used to divert us with your stories—429.
9. You were sick, because you ate too *much* fish—431.

10. *On* that day, you spoke with energy—431, 199.

11. You did not want courage—431.

12. You found the task *a* tedious *one*—431.

13. Why did you not answer him?—432.

14. You followed your friend's example—432.

15. You pursued your studies, and you did not lose your time—432.

16. To whom did you sell your horse?—432.

17. *How* [what] did you feel, when you were in the water?—433.

18. You slept six hours—433.

19. You departed at five o'clock in the morning—433.

20. You will never have so fair an *opportunity* [occasion]—434.

21. He will not accept so tedious a task—434.

22. Where will you find as good a friend?—434.

23. Too long a story makes us yawn—434.

24. You have too good an opinion of him—434.

25. What he was *at* [in] that time, he is still—435.

26. What we have heard, we will not tell—435.

27. What you have told us, we shall never forget—435.

28. This task we will fulfil—435.

29. That prize which you have obtained, you will not accept—435.

TWENTY-THIRD LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-troisième leçon.

"Je ne dis pas qu'il soit nécessaire que
say be necessary

vous vous rendiez malade, que vous
render (subj.)

passiez des nuits à écrire, ou que vous
pass (subj.) nights to write

jaunissiez sur des livres. Je voudrais seule-
grow yellow (subj.) books would

ment que vous perdissiez moins de temps,
lost (subj.)

que vous sentissiez ce dont vous êtes ca-
felt (subj.) of which are ca-

pable, et que vous eussiez de l'ambition."
pable had (subj.) ambition.

Alexis reconnut peut-être la justesse de
acknowledged perhaps justness

ces observations; mais il n'aimait pas les
observations liked

remontrances, et il répondit brusquement
remonstrances abruptly

à ce sage conseiller: "Je voudrais, moi,
wise counsellor

que vous fussiez moins sérieux, ou, sinon,
were (subj.) serious if not
que vous me laissassiez tranquille."
left (subj.) quiet

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"I do not say that it is necessary you should make yourself ill, sit up for whole nights writing, or pore over books till you turn yellow. I only wish you would lose less time, and that you could feel what you are capable of, and that you had some ambition."

Alexis probably felt the justness of these observations, but he disliked remonstrances, and abruptly replied to his sage adviser: "I wish you would be less serious, or else that you would let me alone."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-troisième.
L'étudiant voulait-il qu'Alexis se rendît malade?	Non, il ne disait pas que cela fût nécessaire.
A quoi ne voulait-il pas qu'il passât des nuits?	A écrire.
Sur quoi ne voulait-il pas qu'il jaunît?	Sur des livres.
Qu'est-ce qui n'était pas nécessaire?	Qu'Alexis se rendît malade, qu'il passât des nuits à écrire, ou qu'il jaunît sur des livres.
L'étudiant voulait-il qu'Alexis perdît son temps?	Non, il voulait qu'il perdît moins de temps.
Que voulait-il qu'il sentît?	Il voulait qu'il sentît ce dont il était capable.
Que voulait-il- qu'il eût?	Il voulait qu'il eût de l'ambition.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis reconnut peut-être?	La justesse de ces observations.
Que n'aimait-il pas?	Il n'aimait pas les remontrances.
A qui répondit-il brusquement?	A ce sage conseiller

Comment répondit-il à ce sage conseiller ?	Il lui répondit brusquement.
Que répondit-il ?	"Je voudrais, moi, que vous fussiez moins sérieux, ou, sinon, que vous me laissassiez tranquille."
Pourquoi répondit-il si brusquement et si sèchement ?	Parce qu'il n'aimait pas les remontrances.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Pardon, monsieur, si je vous arrête. N'êtes-vous pas M. Delatour ?	I beg pardon, sir, for stopping you. Are you not Mr. Delatour ?
Oui, monsieur.	Yes, sir.
Vous ne me reconnaissez pas ?	You don't remember me ?
Mais, non, monsieur.	Why, no, sir.
Vous ne vous souvenez pas du petit Jacques, l'ami de votre fils ?	You do not remember little James, your son's friend ?
Quoi ! c'est vous ?	What ! is it you ?
Oui, vraiment.	Yes, indeed.
Comme vous voilà grand !	Why, you are quite a man !
Savez-vous qu'il y a bien longtemps que nous ne nous sommes rencontrés ?	Do you know it is very long since we met ?
Oui ; vous étiez alors un enfant.	Yes ; you were quite a boy then.
J'espère que mon ami va bien.	I hope my friend is well.
Très-bien. Il sera charmé de vous voir.	Very well. He will be delighted to see you.
Demeure-t-il toujours avec vous ?	Does he still live with you ?
Oui, toujours ; mais il n'est pas souvent à la maison.	Yes, he does ; but he is not often at home.
Que fait-il ?	What does he do ?
Il est dans le commerce.	He is in trade.
Travaille-t-il beaucoup ?	Does he work much ?
Oui, toute la journée.	Yes, all day long.

Je voudrais cependant bien le voir.	I should very much like to see him, however.
Il faut venir de très-bonne heure.	You must come very early.
A quelle heure le trouverai-je?	At what o'clock shall I find him?
Venez à sept heures du matin.	Come at seven o'clock in the morning.
C'est que je suis bien paresseux.	The fact is, I am very lazy.
Eh bien, il passera chez vous.	Well, he shall call upon you.
Cela me ferait grand plaisir.	It would do me great pleasure.
Où demeurez-vous?	Where do you live?
Sur le quai, tout près du pont.	On the quay, close to the bridge.
Je le lui dirai.	I will tell him.
Au plaisir de vous revoir.	Good-bye.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

Je dis is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *dire*, of which various forms have been seen in lessons 1, 3, 10, 12, and 18.

Soit is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

Nécessaire is a word nearly the same in both languages (252).

Rendiez is the second person plural of the present tense ot the subjunctive mood of *rendre*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

436. The second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **iez**. It is similar to the same person of the imperfect tense (412).

---

* See note on page 282.

PASSIEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *passer,* seen in the third lesson.

437. § 1. The second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **iez** (436). It is similar to the same person of the imperfect tense.

§ 2. According to this rule, when a verb ends in **ier** in the infinitive, the vowel *i* is doubled: "*Que vous oubliiez*, that you may forget."

NUIT comes from the Latin *nox*, *noctis*, night. It is feminine by exception (14).

ÉCRIRE, formerly *escrire*, from the Latin *scribere*, to write, is an irregular verb. Its principal derivatives, which are likewise irregular, are: *Circonscrire*, to circumscribe; *décrire*, to describe; *inscrire*, to inscribe, to enter, to record; *prescrire*, to prescribe; *proscrire*, to proscribe; *récrire*, to write again; *souscrire*, to subscribe; and *transcrire*, to transcribe.

JAUNISSIEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *jaunir*, derived from *jaune*, yellow (257), which comes from the Italian *giallo*, having the same meaning.

438. The second person plural of the present tense of the subjuctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **issiez** (436, 437, 196). It is similar to the same person of the imperfect tense of the indicative (429) and of the past tense of the subjunctive.

LIVRE, when it signifies *book*, is masculine, notwithstanding its termination (15). See *livre* in the seventeenth lesson.

VOUDRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of the irregular verb *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

PERDISSIEZ is the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *perdre*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

439. The second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **issiez**.

SENTISSIEZ is the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *sentir*, seen in the eleventh lesson. It has already been said that, though *sentir* is an irregular verb, its irregularity does not extend to the past tense of this mood.

440. The second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **issiez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the subjunctive (438), and of the imperfect tense of the indicative (429).

441. **Dont** comes, through the Italian *donde*, from the Latin *de unde*, having the same meaning. It is a relative pronoun of both genders and numbers. It is used in speaking of persons or of things. It has the different significations of *de qui*, *de quoi*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, and *desquelles ;* and therefore corresponds to the English expressions *whose*, *of whom*, *from whom*, *of which*, *from which* (37, 165, 174). Although these pronouns have the same meaning as *dont*, they cannot be used indiscriminately for it, as will be explained later.

All the relative pronouns have now been seen respectively in the following phrases :

"*Un bon garçon*, QUI *n'avait qu'un seul défaut.*"—1st lesson.

"*Les boulevards*, QUI *étaient ses promenades favorites.*"—8th lesson.

"QUE *fait-il ?*"—3d lesson.

"*Celle* QU'*il avait reçue.*"—4th lesson.

"*Des mots* QUE *nous n'entendions guère.*"—12th lesson.

"*A* QUOI *cet idiot passe-t-il son temps ?*"—3d lesson.

"*Je voudrais que vous sentissiez ce* DONT *vous êtes capable.*"—23d lesson.

"*Deux maisons de commerce* OÙ *il avait placé ses épargnes.*"—6th lesson.

"*Sa pension* D'OÙ *il ne rapportait qu'un penchant.*"—7th lesson.

"*Sa pension dans* LAQUELLE *il avait appris fort peu de chose.*"—7th lesson.

"*De sèches questions* AUXQUELLES *nous ne comprenions rien.*"—13th lesson.

"CE QUI *équivaut à trente et une livres.*"—17th lesson.

"*Vous apporterez* CE QUE *vous voudrez.*"—16th lesson.

ÊTES is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être*.

CAPABLE is a word alike in French and in English (97).

EUSSIEZ is the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

AMBITION is a word alike in both languages (49).

RECONNUT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *reconnaître*, one of the derivatives of *connaître*, mentioned in the fifth lesson.

PEUT-ÊTRE is an adverb formed of the two words *peut* and *être*, exactly as *may be*, in English.

PEUT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *pouvoir*, already seen.

JUSTESSE is one of the derivatives of *juste*, mentioned in the tenth lesson.

442. The termination **esse** is added to about 40 adjectives, to form them into substantives, as: *Justesse*, from *juste*, just; *délicatesse*, delicacy, from *délicat*, delicate; *faiblesse*, weakness, from *faible*, weak; *hardiesse*, boldness, from *hardi*, bold. It denotes the abstract of that which is expressed by the radical.

OBSERVATION is a word the same in French and in English (49).

AIMAIT is a form of the verb *aimer* (47) seen in the eleventh lesson.

REMONTRANCE (23, 146) is derived from *montrer*, to show, which comes from the Latin *monstrare*, to show, to point out.

BRUSQUEMENT is derived from *brusque*, abrupt, sharp, gruff (31).

SAGE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

CONSEILLER is derived from *conseil*, advice, counsel, or council, which comes from the Latin *consilium*, having the same significations.

FUSSIEZ is the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

SÉRIEUX comes from the Latin *serius*, serious; its feminine is *sérieuse* (142).

SINON is formed of the two words *si* (122) and *non* (289). It is a conjunction corresponding to *if not*, *otherwise*, *or else*, *except*, *save*, *but*, *unless*.

LAISSASSIEZ is the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *laisser*, to leave, and to let.

443. The second person plural of the past tense of the sub-

junctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **assiez**.

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the second person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Je voudrais que vous me laiss*ASSIEZ."
"*Je voudrais que vous sent*ISSIEZ."
"*Je voudrais que vous perd*ISSIEZ."
"*Je voudrais que vous* FUSSIEZ."
"*Je voudrais que vous* EUSSIEZ."

TRANQUILLE comes from the Latin *tranquillus*, calm. *Laisser tranquille* is often used for *to let alone.*

SYNTAX.*

Ce **dont** *vous êtes capable.*

In this phrase, *dont* is equivalent to *de quoi*, of what, of which; *Ce* DONT *vous êtes capable*, signifying, *That* OF WHICH *you are capable*, or, WHAT *you are capable* OF. But, *Ce* DE QUOI *vous êtes capable*, would sound harshly.

444. **Dont** is generally used after *ce*, rather than *de quoi.*

WHAT *you are capable* OF.

This could not be rendered literally by, CE QUE *vous êtes capable* DE, or, QUOI *vous êtes capable* DE.

445. The inversive construction, so frequent in English, by which the preposition governing a relative pronoun is thrown to the end of a phrase, never takes place in French.

---

* See note on page 282.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Que vous rendiez.* See Obs. 436.—That you may wait—That you may hear—That you may put—That you may pretend—That you may lose—That you may pursue—That you may promise—That you may answer—That you may laugh—That you may follow—That you may suspend—That you may sell.

2. Model: *Que vous passiez.* See Obs. 437.—That you may call—That you may love—That you may go—That you may accept—That you may arrive—That you may advance—That you may blame—That you may correct—That you may cease—That you may charge.

3. Model: *Que vous jaunissiez.* See Obs. 438.—That you may alleviate—That you may accomplish—That you may finish—That you may furnish—That you may enjoy—That you may languish—That you may blacken—That you may perish.

4. Model: *Que vous perdissiez.* See Obs. 439.—That you might wait—That you might hear—That you might pretend—That you might pursue—That you might answer—That you might follow—That you might sell.

5. Model: *Que vous sentissiez.* See Obs. 440.—That you might soften—That you might accomplish—That you might finish—That you might enjoy—That you might languish—That you might blacken—That you might perish.

6. Model: *Dont vous êtes capable.* See Obs. 441.—Alexis whose [the] father was old—The artist whose [the] productions are admired—The friend of whom we speak—The shop of which you speak—His trade from which he draws [a] great profit.

7. Model: *Justesse*, from *juste.* See Obs. 442.—Baseness—Youth—Littleness—Wisdom—Sadness—Quickness.

8. Model: *Que vous laissassiez.* See Obs. 443.—That you might give—That you might wish—That you might doubt—That you might ask—That you might examine—That you might

taste—That you might imagine—That you might play—That you might forget—That you might think—That you might speak.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Is it prudent that you should lose your time?—436.
2. It is necessary that you should hear us—436.
3. It is just that you should reward the students—437.
4. I desire that you may find this book useful—437.
5. I do not believe that you will finish your task to-day—438.
6. We do not doubt but you will succeed—438.
7. That book is too serious.
8. The eel weighed one pound.
9. I *wish* [would] that you would return me my book—439.
10. It was necessary for you to pursue your studies—439.
11. I *wish* [would] that you would finish your task—440.
12. It would be necessary for you to alleviate the position of your father—440.
13. It would be possible for you to succeed—440.
14. The observation of which you speak is not just—441.
15. The man of whom I speak is wise and serious—441.
16. There is the shop of the man whose [the] cakes are so good—441.
17. Youth is generous—442.
18. We admire the wisdom of your father—442.
19. I *wish* [would] that you would love study—443.
20. I *wish* [would] that you would examine that book—443.
21. You do not know what he is capable of—444, 445.
22. Do you know what they were speaking of?—444, 445.
23. Whom do you speak to?—445.
24. We have a house which we can dispose of—441, 445.
25. It is a circumstance which I am not sorry *for* [of]—441, 445.

TWENTY-FOURTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-quatrième leçon.

Delatour commençait à devenir vieux.
began become

Il se plaignait de plus en plus amèrement
complained bitterly

de l'apathie de son fils. "Méchant en-
apathy Wicked

fant," disait-il, "il semble que tu aies
it seems thou have (subj.)

résolu de me faire mourir de chagrin. Je
resolved to die sorrow

veux que tu m'écoutes à la fin, et que tu
will listen (subj.) end

m'obéisses. Après tout ce que j'ai fait
obey (subj.) I have done

pour toi, je veux que tu te rendes utile
thee thee render (subj.)

d'une manière quelconque; et tu le feras,
manner whatever wilt do

à moins que tu ne sois un ingrat. Tu ne
unless be (subj.) ungrateful

réfléchis donc jamais? Tu n'as donc point
reflectest hast not

de souci de l'avenir?"
future

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

Delatour began to grow old. He complained more and more bitterly of his son's apathy. "You wicked boy," said he, "you seem resolved to make me die with sorrow. But you shall listen to me at last, and obey me. After all I have done for you, you shall make yourself useful in one way or another; and you will, if you are not an ungrateful boy. Do you never reflect? Have you no care of the future?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-quatrième.
Delatour était-il vieux?	Il commençait à devenir vieux, *or*, Il commençait à le devenir.
Qui est-ce qui commençait à devenir vieux?	Delatour.
Qui était-ce que Delatour?	C'était le père d'Alexis.
De quoi se plaignait-il de plus en plus amèrement?	De l'apathie de son fils.
Comment se plaignait-il de l'apathie de son fils?	De plus en plus amèrement.
Comment appelait-il son fils?	Méchant enfant.
Que semblait-il que son fils eût résolu?	De le faire mourir de chagrin.
Que voulait Delatour?	Il voulait que son fils l'écoutât, à la fin, et qu'il lui obéît.
Comment le lui disait-il?	"Je veux que tu m'écoutes, à la fin, et que tu m'obéisses."
Que voulait-il encore, après ce qu'il avait fait pour lui?	Il voulait qu'il se rendît utile.
De quelle manière voulait-il qu'il se rendît utile?	D'une manière quelconque.
Comment le lui disait-il?	"Je veux que tu te rendes utile d'une manière quelconque."
Que lui disait-il pour rendre son exhortation plus pressante?	"Et tu le feras, à moins que tu ne sois un ingrat."
Quelles questions lui faisait-il?	"Tu ne réfléchis donc jamais? Tu n'as donc point de souci de l'avenir?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Parlons un peu de nos anciens camarades.	Let us talk a little about our old comrades.
Il y en avait trois ou quatre pour lesquels nous avions beaucoup d'affection.	There were three or four of them that we were very fond of.
Oui: le petit Charles, le gros Robert, le grand Guillaume, et encore un autre.	Yes: little Charles, fat Robert, tall William, and another.
Que fait le premier?	What is the first doing?
Il est dans le commerce.	He is in trade.
Il a toujours aimé les spéculations.	He was always fond of speculations.
Fait-il fortune?	Is he making a fortune?
Mais, je pense que oui.	Why, I think he is.
Vous savez combien il est actif.	You know how active he is.
Oui; mais ce n'est pas toujours une raison pour réussir.	Yes; but that does not always insure success.
Dans le commerce, on est exposé à des revers inattendus.	In trade, one is exposed to unforeseen mischances.
Je pense comme vous.	I think as you do.
Et le second?	And the second?
Qui? le gros Robert?	Who? fat Robert?
Oui.	Yes.
Il est poëte.	He is a poet.
Pas possible!	Impossible!
C'est très-vrai. Il compose en ce moment une tragédie.	It is very true. He is now composing a tragedy.
Quoi! ce gros garçon si jovial? C'est à n'y pas croire!	What! that fat fellow, who was so jovial? You don't say so!
Il n'est plus le même aujourd'hui.	You would not know him again.
Il est tranquille et grave.	He is grave and steady.
Il passe les nuits à barbouiller du papier.	He spends his nights in scribbling.
A-t-il du talent, au moins?	Has he any talent at least?
On le dit; mais j'en doute.	It is said he has; but I doubt it.
Et le grand Guillaume? Est-il toujours aussi bon enfant?	And tall William? Is he still the same good fellow?
Oui, vraiment. Nous nous voyons presque tous les jours.	Oh! yes. We see each-other almost every day.

Que fait-il ?	What is he doing?
Il est artiste, et se fait une belle réputation.	He is an artist, and is getting into high repute.
Mais, quel était donc le quatrième de nos camarades ?	But, who was our fourth comrade?
C'était Martin, le paresseux.	It was that lazy fellow, Martin.
Le voyez-vous toujours ?	Do you still see him?
Non, nous avons cessé de nous voir.	No, we have ceased to see each-other.
Pourquoi cela ?	How so?
Parce que son père lui a laissé une grande fortune, et qu'il regarde ses anciennes connaissances comme au-dessous de lui.	Because his father has left him a large fortune, and he looks upon his old acquaintances as below him.
C'est un ingrat.	He is an ungrateful fellow.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

COMMENÇAIT is a form (47, 48) of the verb *commencer,* to begin. This verb generally governs *à* before the infinitive mood (190).

DEVENIR is one of the derivatives of *venir*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

PLAIGNAIT is the third person singular of the imperfect tense of *plaindre*, which signifies *to bewail, to pity.* It is an irregular verb. *Se plaindre* means *to complain* (194).

446. All the verbs ending in **indre** undergo a change of the letters ND into GN: 1st, in the three persons plural of the present tense of the indicative mood; 2dly, throughout the imperfect tense; 3dly, throughout the past tense definite; 4thly, in the first and second persons plural of the imperative mood; 5thly,

---

* See note on page 282.

throughout the subjunctive mood, present and past; 6thly, in the present participle.

Amèrement is derived from *amer*, bitter (31, 32).

Apathie, from the Greek ἀπάθεια, is feminine according to analogy (15).

Méchant is an adjective which signifies *wicked*, *bad*, *naughty*. Its feminine *méchante* is formed regularly (2).

Semble is a form (22) of the verb *sembler*, mentioned in the eighteenth lesson.

447. **Tu**, from the Latin *tu*, thou, is a personal pronoun of the second person singular and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the verb.

448. The use of the second person singular is much more frequent in French than in English. It generally denotes familiarity and intimacy. In addressing inferiors, it denotes authority. In dignified and poetical language, the use of this form is the same as in English.

Aies is the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

Résolu is the past participle of the irregular verb *résoudre*, to resolve.

Mourir, from the Latin *mori*, to die, is an irregular verb.

Chagrin. This substantive is often used as an adjective, meaning sorrowful or peevish.

Je veux is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *vouloir*, seen in the fourth lesson.

Écoutes is the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *écouter*.

449. The second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **es**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood.

Fin has been mentioned in the tenth lesson as being the radical of *finir*.

Obéisses is the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *obéir*, to obey.

450. The second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed

by changing this termination into **isses**. It is similar to the same person of the past tense of the same mood.

Ai is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir*.

Fait is the past participle of the irregular verb *faire*, seen in the third lesson.

451. **Toi**, derived from *tu*, is a personal pronoun of the second person singular, and of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pronoun *thee*, or *to thee*. Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *thou*.

452. **Te**, derived from *tu*, is a personal pronoun of the second person singular, and of both genders. It is never used as a subject. It is sometimes a direct and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *thee*, *to thee*, *thyself*, *to thyself*. It always precedes the verb. It is one of the words in which the elision of the *e* takes place (11).

Rendes is the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *rendre*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

453. The second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **es** (449, 450).

Manière is feminine according to analogy (15).

Quelconque is formed of *quel*, seen in the third lesson, and *conque*, altered from the Latin particle *cumque*, or *cunque*, denoting universality, and corresponding to *ever*, or *soever*. It is an adjective of both genders, which signifies *whatever*, or *any*. It is always placed after a substantive.

Feras is the second person singular of the future tense of *faire*, already seen.

À moins que is one of the conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood after them (244).

Sois is the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être*.

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the second person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Je veux que tu m'écout*ES."
"*Je veux que tu m'obé*ISSES."
"*Je veux que tu te rend*ES *utile.*"
"*A moins que tu ne* SOIS *un ingrat.*"
"*Il semble que tu* AIES *résolu.*"

INGRAT comes from the Latin *ingratus*, ungrateful. It is an adjective, which in this lesson is used substantively (171).

TU RÉFLÉCHIS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *réfléchir*, to reflect.

454. The second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similar to the first person of the same tense and mood (325), to the first and second persons singular of the past tense definite, and to the second person singular of the imperative mood.

TU AS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *avoir*.

The whole of the present tense of this verb has now been seen: *J'ai*, *Tu as*, *Il a*, *Nous avons*, *Vous avez*, *Ils ont.*

POINT, from the Latin *punctum*, point, has a negative meaning only when preceded by *ne*, in which case the two words together signify *not*, like *ne pas* (10). *Ne point* is more emphatically negative than *ne pas.*

AVENIR is one of the derivatives of *venir*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

SYNTAX.*

De *plus* en *plus.*

455. This may be taken as a model of construction for adverbial phrases marking augmentation or diminution, by the repetition of the comparative. *Less and less* should therefore be translated by *de moins en moins; farther and farther*, by *de plus en plus loin*, etc.

---

* See note on page 282.

Il semble que tu **aies** *résolu.*

456. After *il semble*, the subjunctive mood is generally required; but this rule is not absolute; thus, when the verb *sembler* is preceded by one of the pronouns, *me*, *te*, *lui*, *nous*, *vous*, *leur*, and used affirmatively, as: *Il me semble*, *il te semble*, etc., the indicative mood is necessary, as: "*Il me semble quê tu* AS *résolu*, it seems to me that thou hast resolved."

Ce que j'ai fait pour **toi.**
Il faut que **tu te** *rendes utile.*

457. All the observations made on the three pronouns of the first person, *je*, *me*, *moi*, are applicable to the three pronouns of the second person, **tu**, **te**, **toi** (305, 313, 319, 333, 406, 407).

A moins que tu **ne** *sois.*

458. The negative **ne** always follows *à moins que*, unless.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Models: *Venez—Venu—Vous viendrez.* See Obs. 273.—Become (imper.)—Become (past part.)—You will become.

2. Model: *Plaignait.* See Obs. 446.—They pity—We pitied (imperf.)—You pitied—They pitied—He pitied (past t. def.)—We pitied—You pitied—They pitied—Let us pity—Pity—Provided thou pity—Provided we pity—Provided he pitied—Provided you pitied.

3. Model: *Je veux que* TU ÉCOUTES. See Obs. 449.—That thou mayest admire—That thou mayest love—That thou mayest accept—That thou mayest blame—That thou mayest correct—

That thou mayest begin—That thou mayest give—That thou mayest ask.

4. Model: *Que* TU OBÉISSES. See Obs. 450.—That thou mayest warn—That thou mayest accomplish—That thou mayest finish—That thou mayest furnish—That thou mayest enjoy—That thou mayest perish—That thou mayest fill—That thou mayest succeed—That thou mayest reflect.

5. Model: *Pour* TOI. See Obs. 451, and Syntax, 457.—To thee—After thee—With thee—Before thee—Of thee—By thee—Without thee—On thee—Under thee—Towards thee.

6. Model: *Que* TU RENDES. See Obs. 453.—That thou mayest wait—That thou mayest hear—That thou mayest bite—That thou mayest pretend—That thou mayest lose—That thou mayest pursue.

7. Model: *Tu réfléchis.* See Obs. 454.—Thou freest—Thou accomplishest—Thou finishest—Thou furnishest—Thou enjoyest—Thou languishest—Thou blackenest—Thou obeyest—Thou perishest—Thou fillest—Thou succeedest.

8. Model: *Il faut que tu* TE *rendes.* See Obs. 452, and Syntax, 457.—I give thee—He speaks to thee—Thou freest thyself—We ask thee—They listen to thee—He warned thee (imperf.)—We obeyed thee (imperf.)—He answered thee (past t. def.)—They will surprise thee.

9. Model: *A moins que tu* NE *sois.* Syntax, 458.—Unless thou hast—Unless he is—Unless we listen—Unless you pass—Unless they succeed—Unless we interrupt—Unless he possessed—Unless we found—Unless you felt.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. We do not pity the ungrateful—446.
2. He always complained without reason—446.
3. We complained of our poverty—66, 180, 446.
4. You complained of the laziness of your son—66, 180, 446.
5. They pitied us when it was too late—135, 446.

6. Let us pity those who want memory—446.
7. Pity us, for we are to be pitied—446, 409.
8. He wished that you would pity him—83, 446.
9. Thou must begin to study—449.
10. I do not think that thou likest remonstrances—449.
11. I will reward thee, provided thou wilt study—449.
12. I desire that thou wilt reflect on what we have said—450.
13. Thou must finish thy task to-day—450.
14. I do not doubt but thou wilt succeed—450.
15. I do not listen to thee—452.
16. He will be ungrateful, whatever service thou mayest render him—453.
17. I will have thee answer me in *a* few words—453.
18. I will not have thee interrupt me—453.
19. Why dost thou not obey?—454.
20. Thou never finishest what thou hast begun—38, 454.
21. Why dost thou not fill this basket?—454.
22. THOU hast said that!—457, 333.
23. I do not listen *to* him, but I do listen *to* THEE—457, 333.
24. We will go with thee—457, 313.
25. We give thee our books—452, 457.
26. Work more and more—455.
27. She studies less and less—455.
28. It seems that you are displeased—456.
29. It seems that observations are useless—456.
30. It seems to me that you arrive very late—456.
31. It seems to me that I understand more easily—456.
32. Does it seem to you that this man is happy?—456.
33. He is always eating, unless he is sick—458.
34. You will be victorious, unless you want courage—458
35. We shall listen to their observations, unless they are too tedious—458.
36. We shall finish our task, unless we are interrupted—458.

TWENTY-FIFTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-cinquième leçon.

"A quoi penses-tu? Parle. Comment
thinkest speak

peux-tu espérer de faire ton chemin, si tu
canst to hope thy way

perds ton temps | comme cela | ? Com-
losest thus

ment te défendras-tu de la misère, quand
thyself wilt defend misery

je ne serai plus? Quelles ressources
shall be no more What resources

auras-tu. quand tu seras obligé de te
wilt have wilt be obliged to thyself

suffire à toi-même? Réponds. Ne te
to suffice thyself Answer

repentiras-tu pas alors? Jette les yeux
wilt repent Cast eyes

sur les enfants de mes confrères. Ils sont
my brethren (fellows)

tes égaux, songes-y bien. Ne les vois-tu
thy equals think to it well seest

pas à l'ouvrage depuis le matin jusqu'au
work since (from) till

soir? N'es-tu pas aussi fort qu'eux? Ils
evening art strong

se servent de leurs bras; pourquoi ne
themselves serve

te sers-tu pas des tiens?"
servest thine

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"What are you thinking of? Speak. How can you hope to thrive, if you waste your time thus? How will you save yourself from beggary, when I am dead? What resources will you have, when you are obliged to shift for yourself? Tell me, don't you think you will repent then? Just look at the children of my fellow-workmen. They are in the same position as yourself, remember; and yet, do you not see them at work from morning till night? Are you not as strong as they? They put their hands to work; why don't you put yours?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-cinquième.
Par quelle question cette leçon commence-t-elle?	"A quoi penses-tu?"
Qui faisait cette question?	Le père d'Alexis.
A qui faisait-il cette question?	A son fils.
Qu'est-ce que le fils ne pouvait pas espérer, s'il perdait son temps?	Il ne pouvait pas espérer de faire son chemin.
Que perdait-il?	Il perdait son temps.
De quoi sera-t-il obligé de se défendre, quand son père ne sera plus?	Il sera obligé de se défendre de la misère.
Quand sera-t-il obligé de se défendre de la misère?	Quand son père ne sera plus.
Quand manquera-t-il de ressources?	Quand il sera obligé de se suffire à lui-même.

Qu'arrivera-t-il probablement, quand il manquera de ressources?	Il se repentira.
Sur qui son père lui disait-il de jeter les yeux?	Sur les enfants de ses confrères.
Ces enfants étaient-ils les supérieurs ou les inférieurs d'Alexis?	Ils étaient ses égaux.
Que faisaient-ils depuis le matin jusqu'au soir?	Ils travaillaient—*or*, Ils étaient à l'ouvrage.
Quand travaillaient-ils?	Depuis le matin jusqu'au soir.
Alexis était-il moins fort qu'eux?	Il était aussi fort qu'eux.
De quoi ces enfants se servaient-ils?	Ils se servaient de leurs bras.
Quelle question le père faisait-il, après avoir dit qu'ils se servaient de leurs bras?	"Pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des tiens?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Bonjour, camarade.	Good morning, comrade.
Bonjour, mon ami.	Good morning, my dear fellow.
Comment cela va-t-il?	How are you?
Toujours de même. Et toi?	Always the same. And how are you?
Mais, assez bien.	Why, pretty well.
Tu as l'air triste.	You look sad.
Je le suis aussi.	I am so indeed.
Pourquoi donc?	Why?
J'ai perdu mon père.	I have lost my father.
Pauvre garçon! Tu es bien à plaindre.	Poor fellow! You are much to be pitied.
C'était un brave et digne homme.	He was an honest worthy man.
T'a-t-il laissé de la fortune?	Has he left you any fortune?
Rien du tout, mon cher.	Nothing at all, my dear fellow.
As-tu des ressources?	Have you any resources?
Quand un homme est jeune, fort et actif, il a toujours des ressources.	When a man is young, strong, and active, he always has resources.

Que fais-tu ?	What are you doing ?
Je travaille chez un menuisier.	I work at a joiner's.
Quoi ! tu es ouvrier ?	What ! are you a workman ?
Pourquoi pas ?	Why not ?
Tu as cependant reçu une belle éducation.	You have received a fine education however.
C'est vrai ; mais pour utiliser une belle éducation, il faut de l'argent ou des protections.	It is true ; but in order to avail one's self of a fine education, one must have money or protection.
De l'argent, nous en avons à ton service.	As for money, we have some at your service.
Je te suis obligé, mais je n'en veux pas.	I am obliged to you, but I will not have any of it.
Et des protections, tu peux en avoir bien facilement.	And as for protection, you can very easily get that.
Oui, mais il faut les demander, et c'est ce que je n'aime pas faire.	Yes, but I must beg for it, and that is what I do not like to do.
Tu es un original.	You are an eccentric fellow.
Je me trouve heureux comme cela.	I am happy such as I am.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

PENSES is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *penser*, seen in the first lesson.

459. The second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **es**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the subjunctive mood (449).

The whole of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs

---

* See note on page 282.

in *er* has now been seen: *Je doute*, *tu penses*, *il donne*, *nous pensons*, *vous manquez*, *ils imaginent*.

Parle is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *parler*, seen in the thirteenth lesson.

460. The *second* person singular of the imperative mood is similar to the *first* person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, in all the regular verbs, whether in *er*, *ir*, or *re*.

Peux is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *pouvoir*, seen in the third lesson. This verb governs the infinitive without a preposition (187).

Espérer is the radical of *espérance*, seen in the sixth lesson. When in the infinitive mood and followed by another infinitive, it generally requires the preposition *de* (187); but this rule is not absolute. In any other mood, *espérer* governs the infinitive without a preposition (187).

461. **Ton** is a possessive adjective, masculine and singular; its feminine is **ta**; the plural of both genders is **tes**. These three forms, *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, correspond to *thy* (51, 107, 306).

Chemin comes from the Italian *cammino*, way. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

Perds is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *perdre*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

462. The second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **s**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense and mood (310).

Comme cela, or in familiar language, *comme ça*, is often used for *thus*, *in that way*, *in this way*.

Défendras is the second person singular of the future tense of *défendre*, which comes from the Latin *defendere*, to defend, and to hinder. *Défendre* signifies *to defend*, and *to forbid*; with the latter meaning, it requires *de* before an infinitive (189).

463. The second person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing the final **e** into **as**.

Misère comes from the Latin *miseria*, misery. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

Serai is the first person singular of the future tense of *être*.

QUELLES is the plural feminine of *quel* (71).

RESSOURCE is derived from *source*, source (146).

AURAS is the second person singular of the future tense of *avoir*.

SERAS is the second person singular of the future tense of *être*.

The whole of the future tense of *être* has now been seen: *Je serai, tu seras, il sera, nous serons, vous serez, ils seront.*

OBLIGÉ is the past participle of *obliger*, to oblige.

SUFFIRE, from the Latin *sufficere*, to be sufficient, is an irregular verb.

TOI-MÊME is a combination of the two words, *toi*, thee, and *même*, same, or self.

464. The personal pronouns, **moi**, **toi**, **lui**, **elle**, **soi**, **nous**, **vous**, **eux**, **elles**, combine with the adjective **meme**, and acquire the following significations: *Moi-même*, myself; *toi-même*, thyself; *lui-même*, himself, itself (masc.); *elle-même*, herself, itself (fem.); *soi-même*, one's self; *nous-même*, ourself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *vous-même*, yourself; *vous-mêmes*, yourselves; *eux-mêmes*, themselves (masc.); *elles-mêmes*, themselves, (fem.).

RÉPONDS is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *répondre*, seen in the sixth and in the fifteenth lessons. It is similar to the first and second persons singular of the present tense of the indicative mood (310, 460).

The whole of the imperative mood of verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Réponds, attendons, suivez.*

465. The **imperative mood** in French verbs has no first person singular, and no third person either singular or plural. The English forms, *let me answer, let him wait, let them follow*, are rendered in French by the subjunctive, thus: *Que je réponde, qu'il attende, qu'ils suivent.*

REPENTIRAS is the second person singular of the future tense of *se repentir*, to repent, which is always pronominal (364). This verb is irregular, but the irregularity does not extend to the future tense.

466. The second person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **as** to this termination (463).

JETTE is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *jeter*, to throw.

467. § 1. Verbs ending in **eter** and **eler**, as *jeter*, *appeler*, double the consonant *t* or *l* before *e* mute, as: *Je jette*, *j'appelle*, *nous jetterons*, *nous appellerons*.

§ 2. According to the French Academy, the following verbs are excepted: *Acheter*, to buy; *becqueter*, to peck; *bourreler*, to torture; *celer*, to conceal; *déceler*, to disclose; *dégeler*, to thaw; *décolleter*, to bare the neck; *geler*, to freeze; *harceler*, to harass; *peler*, to peel; *racheter*, to redeem. In these the *t* or *l* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do; thus: *J'achète*, *il gèle*. This arbitrary departure from the general rule is blamed by many grammarians.

§ 3. The verbs ending in **eter** and **eler** must not be confounded with those in **éter** and **éler**, as *inquiéter*, to disquiet; *révéler*, to reveal. In the latter, the acute accent (′) is changed into a grave accent, without doubling the consonant before *e* mute; thus: *J'inquiète*, *je révèle*.

YEUX is the irregular plural of *œil*, seen in the second lesson.

468. The word **œil** is sometimes used to denote other objects than the organ of sight, in which case its plural is often formed regularly, as: *Des* ŒILS-*de-bœuf*, circular-windows, or bull's-eyes; *des* ŒILS *de perdrix*, soft corns (on the feet).

MES is the plural of *mon* and *ma* (306).

CONFRÈRE is one of the derivatives of *frère*, seen in the fifteenth lesson.

TES is the plural of *ton* and *ta* (461).

ÉGAUX is the plural of *égal*, which comes from the Latin *æqualis*, equal.

469. Adjectives ending in **al** generally form their plural by changing *al* into **aux**. There are some exceptions, as *fatals*, *finals*, *nasals*.

SONGES is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *songer*, seen in the twentieth lesson. The first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood being *je songe* (394), this second person should be, and is indeed, *songe*, when followed by any other word than *y* or the pronoun *en*.

470. When the second person singular of the imperative mood ends in *e* mute, and is followed by the pronoun Y or the pronoun EN, a euphonic *s* is added to it, to prevent the hiatus, as: *Songes-y, donnes-en.*

VOIS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *voir*, seen in the second lesson.

OUVRAGE is one of the derivatives of *œuvre*, mentioned in the sixth lesson. It is masculine (215).

DEPUIS is a preposition formed of *de*, from, and *puis*, then, or next. It corresponds to *from*, *since*, and *after*.

SOIR comes from the Latin *serus*, late. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

ES is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *être*.

The whole of this tense has now been seen: *Je suis, tu es, il est, nous sommes, vous êtes, ils sont.*

Examples have now been seen of the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*A quoi pens*ES-*tu?*"—25th lesson.

"*Tu ne réfléch*IS *donc jamais?*"—24th lesson.

"*Si tu perd*S *ton temps.*"—25th lesson.

"*N'*ES-*tu pas aussi fort qu'eux?*"—25th lesson.

"*Tu n'*AS *donc point de souci de l'avenir?*"—24th lesson.

FORT is the radical of *forcer*, seen in the seventh lesson.

SERVENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *servir*, which is an irregular verb. *Servir* signifies to serve; *se servir* signifies to use, to employ, to make use (of).

SERS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *servir*.

TIENS, or rather *les tiens*, is the plural masculine of *le tien*.

471. The possessive pronoun of the second person singular, corresponding to the possessive adjective *ton*, is **le tien**. The singular feminine is **la tienne**; the plural masculine, **les tiens**, and the plural feminine, **les tiennes**. All these forms correspond to *thine* (126).

SYNTAX.*

Quand je ne **serai** *plus.*

472. When a verb is preceded by an adverb or a conjunction of time, as *when*, *while*, *as soon as*, etc., and when the future tense is implied from the reference of that verb to another verb in the future tense (334) or in the imperative mood, the present tense, generally employed in English, must be rendered by the future tense in French.

Te *suffire à* **toi-méme.**

473. In this phrase, *à toi-même* is not indispensable, for it has precisely the same meaning as *te*, placed before the verb. The pronouns *moi-même*, *toi-même*, *nous-mêmes*, etc., sometimes necessary to avoid ambiguity (400), may also be used as mere expletives, for the sake of emphasis.

Songes-y **bien.**

474. The adverb **bien** is often used redundantly, and cannot be either translated literally, or even be translated at all, into English, as in the following instances: *Pouvez-vous* BIEN *dire cela!* Can you say that! *Je me doutais* BIEN *de cela*, I did suspect it; *Je le veux* BIEN, I will; *Allez-y, ou* BIEN *nous irons nous-mêmes*, Go thither, or *we* shall go; *Voilà* BIEN *les amis!* See what friends are! *Vous voudrez* BIEN *faire cela*, You will please to do that.

N'es-tu pas **aussi** *fort* **qu'***eux?*
or, *N'es-tu pas* **si** *fort* **qu'***eux?*

475. In the comparative of equality, the word *as* is expressed by **aussi** before the adjective, the participle, or the adverb, and by **que** after it (197). In negative phrases the adverb *so*, be-

---

* See note on page 282.

fore the adjective, the participle, or the adverb, may be rendered either by **aussi** or by **si**.

---

*Aussi fort qu'***eux**.
*Aussi fort qu'***ils** *le sont.*

476. The pronouns *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *you*, *they*, are rendered by MOI, TOI, LUI, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, EUX, ELLES, after a conjunction, when the verb which they govern is understood. But when the verb is expressed, the subject pronouns are: JE, TU, IL, ELLE, NOUS, VOUS, ILS, ELLES.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Tu penses.* See Obs. 459.—Thou workest—Thou findest—Thou seemest—Thou meetest—Thou speakest.

2. Models: *Parle—Avertis—Réponds.* See Obs. 460.—Bring—Accept—Finish—Obey—Wait—Learn—Drink—Believe.

3. Models: TON *temps*—TA *mère*—TES *égaux.* See Obs. 461.—Thy money—Thy shop—Thy arms—Thy elbow—Thy sorrow—Thy hopes—Thy son—Thy fortune—Thy brothers.

4. Model: *Tu perds.* See Obs. 462.—Thou learnest—Thou waitest—Thou drinkest—Thou believest—Thou sayest—Thou defendest—Thou hearest—Thou writest.

5. Model: *Tu défendras.* See Obs. 463.—Thou wilt hear—Thou wilt write—Thou wilt interrupt—Thou wilt bite—Thou wilt lose—Thou wilt take—Thou wilt pursue.

6. Model: *Tu te repentiras.* See Obs. 466.—Thou wilt serve—Thou wilt feel—Thou wilt reflect—Thou wilt fill—Thou wilt depart—Thou wilt perish—Thou wilt obey—Thou wilt languish.

7. Models: *Jette*, from *jeter*—*Appelle*, from *appeler.* See Obs. 467.—I throw—Thou throwest—He throws—They throw—I shall throw—He will throw—We shall throw—You will throw—You would throw—I call—Thou callest—He calls—They call——I shall call—He will call—We shall call—You would call.

8. Model: *Egaux*, plural of *égal*. See Obs. 469.—(Form the plural of the following adjectives.)—*Brutal—Général—Libéral—Loyal—Minéral—National—Original—Principal—Rival.*

9. Model: *Songes-y*. See Obs. 470. See also 268, § 2 and 4, and 270.—Bring some—Accept some—Give some—Study [of it] the half *of it*—Listen *to* [of it] a part *of it*—Taste some—Taste [to] it—Play at it—Eat some—Think *of* [to] it—Speak of it—Look to it—Work at it.

10. Model: *Pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des* TIENS. See Obs. 471.—This money is thine—This eel is thine—These boats are thine—These carps are thine—This horse will be thine—This school will be thine—These gardens will be thine.

11. Model: *Pas* AUSSI *fort* QUE, or *Pas* SI *fort* QUE. Syntax, 475.—Not so active as—Not so ambitious as—Not so agreeable as—Not so good as—Not so dear as—Not so cold as—Not so great as—Not so big as.

12. Model: *N'es-tu pas aussi fort qu'*EUX? Syntax, 476.—I am as active as thou—Thou art as attentive as I—He is as brave as she—She is as young as he—We are as happy as you—You are as ungrateful as they (masc.)—You are as wicked as they (fem.)—They are as free as we.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Thou workest much—459.
2. Thou obligest an ungrateful *man*—459.
3. What dost thou hope *for?*—459.
4. Thou dost not listen *to* me—459.
5. Work whilst thou art young—460.
6. Think of our conversation—460.
7. Bring thy *fishing*-hooks—460, 461.
8. Finish thy task—460, 461.
9. Obey [to] thy father—460, 461.
10. Defend thy friends—460, 461.
11. Do not lose thy books—460, 461.

12. Thou learnest easily—462.
13. Dost thou understand what I say?—462.
14. Thou dost not drink enough—462.
15. Thou wilt not lose thy time—463.
16. When wilt thou write to thy friends?—463.
17. I love him as *I do* myself—464.
18. Thou art in contradiction with thyself—464.
19. He was talking to himself—464.
20. Let us answer all together—465.
21. Let him be our friend—465.
22. Let them sell their fish—465.
23. Thou wilt reflect *on* [to] that—466.
24. Wilt thou obey without hesitation?—466.
25. Call thy comrade—467.
26. Hast thou called him?
27. You will come when I call you—467, 472.
28. Do you call me?—Yes, I call you—467.
29. Those men are brutal—469.
30. The principal works of this poet are sublime—469.
31. Thou hast money, give some to thy brother—470, 268.
32. Do not forget that, speak of it to thy friends—470, 268.
33. This example is good, think of it *every day*—470, 270.
34. This is my book, and that is thine—471.
35. My position is not better than thine—471.
36. My comrades are not thine—471.
37. I have made my invitations, hast thou made thine?—471.
38. It will be too late when thou repentest—472.
39. We shall answer [to] him when he speaks to us—472.
40. When he was alone, he used to talk to himself—473.
41. You do not blame me, but I blame myself—473.
42. Will you come with me?—I will—474.
43. The son is not so active as the father—475.
44. William is not so ungrateful as James—475,
45. She was not so happy as her mother—475.
46. Thy comrade is as serious as thou—476.
47. You pronounce as well as he—476.
48. You are younger than I—476.

TWENTY-SIXTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-sixième leçon.

"Lorsque j'étais à mon aise, je nour-
When was ease nour-

rissais l'espoir de te voir occuper dans le
ished hope to see to occupy

monde un rang plus brillant que le mien.
world rank brilliant than mine

Je désirais que tu t'élevasses | au-dessus
desired rose (subj.) above

de | ta famille, et que tu en fusses l'orgueil
thy family of it wert pride

et l'appui. Il fallait pour cela que tu
support must (imperf.)

eusses de l'instruction; aucun sacrifice
hadst (subj.) instruction sacrifice

ne m'a coûté pour te mettre à même d'en
cost to put in condition some

acquérir. Ton excellente mère, dont je
to acquire excellent whose

ne cesse de pleurer la perte, avait
cease to weep loss

combattu mes projets; mais j'avais fini
fought (contended) projects had finished

par les lui faire partager. J'attendais de
to her to share expected

ton élévation le bonheur de ma vieillesse."
elevation happiness old age.

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"When I was in easy circumstances, I entertained a hope of seeing you hold in the world a more brilliant station than mine. I wished you might rise above your family, to be our pride and support. For this, it was necessary you should have learning; I grudged no sacrifice to enable you to acquire it. Your excellent mother, whose loss I incessantly lament, opposed my projects; but I had at last prevailed on her to adopt them. I relied on your advancement for the happiness of my old age."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon ?	C'est la vingt-sixième.
Quel rang Delatour désirait-il que son fils occupât dans le monde ?	Un rang plus brillant que le sien.
Où désirait-il qu'il occupât un rang plus brillant que le sien ?	Dans le monde.
Quel espoir nourrissait-il ?	L'espoir de voir son fils occuper dans le monde un rang plus brillant que le sien.
Quand nourrissait-il cet espoir ?	Lorsqu'il était à son aise.
Que désirait-il encore ?	Que son fils s'élevât au-dessus de sa famille, et qu'il en fût l'orgueil et l'appui.
Que fallait-il pour cela ?	Il fallait que son fils (*or* qu'Alexis) eût de l'instruction.
Le père avait-il fait quelque chose pour le mettre à même d'en acquérir ?	Aucun sacrifice ne lui avait coûté pour cela.
Pourquoi le père avait-il fait des sacrifices ?	Pour mettre son fils à même d'acquérir de l'instruction.

Qui est-ce qui avait combattu ses projets ?	L'excellente mère d'Alexis.
Qu'est-ce qu'elle avait combattu ?	Les projets de Monsieur Delatour.
Les avait-elle toujours combattus ?	Non. Il avait fini par les lui faire partager.
Alexis avait-il encore sa mère ?	Non ; car Delatour ne cessait de pleurer sa perte.
Qu'est-ce que Delatour attendait de l'élévation de son fils ?	Il en attendait le bonheur de sa vieillesse.
De quoi attendait-il le bonheur de sa vieillesse ?	De l'élévation de son fils.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Eh bien, mon cher monsieur, où en sommes-nous de nos études ?	Well, my dear sir, how do we get on with our studies ?
Est-ce de l'étude du français que vous voulez parler ?	Do you mean the study of the French language ?
Oui. Cela va sans dire.	Of course, I do.
Mais, j'avance petit à petit.	Well, I am getting forward by degrees.
Vous prononcez très-bien.	You pronounce very well.
Vous avez bien de l'indulgence.	You are very indulgent.
Non. Je vous dis ce que je pense.	No. I say what I think.
Je parle plus facilement que je ne comprends.	I speak more easily than I understand.
Mais vous me comprenez bien, cependant.	But you understand me very well, however.
Quand vous me parlez, je comprends tout ce que vous dites.	When you speak to me, I understand every word you say.
Mais quand vous parlez avec vos amis, je m'imagine quelquefois que ce n'est plus la même langue.	But when you are talking with your friends, I sometimes imagine it is not the same language.
C'est que je ne parle pas aussi doucement avec eux qu'avec vous.	That is because I do not speak so slowly with them as I do with you.

Je m'en doute bien.	I suppose that is it.
Combien y a-t-il que vous apprenez?	How long have you been learning?
Il y a quatre mois.	Four months.
Vous n'avez pas perdu votre temps.	You have not lost your time.
Mon ami, qui a commencé bien plus tard, parle plus facilement que moi.	My friend, who began much later, speaks more easily than I do.
Il travaille sans doute plus que vous?	He probably works more than you?
Non. Il ne travaille pas du tout.	No. He does not work at all.
Alors, c'est qu'il a beaucoup de mémoire.	Then, he must have a very good memory.
C'est possible.	It may be.
Prenez-vous beaucoup de leçons?	Do you take many lessons?
J'en prends une tous les huit jours.	I take one every week.
Ce n'est pas assez.	It is not enough.
Vous croyez?	You believe it is not?
J'en suis sûr. Vous avez le temps d'oublier d'une leçon à l'autre ce que vous avez appris.	I am positive. You have time between one lesson and another to forget what you have learned.
Je crois que vous avez raison.	I believe you are right.
Il faut prendre une leçon tous les deux jours.	You must take a lesson every other day.
Bien.	Very well.
Mais, je voudrais savoir si vous êtes très-attentif pendant votre leçon.	But I should like to know whether you are very attentive during your lesson.
Il me semble que oui.	I think I am.
Est-ce que vous ne pensez jamais à autre chose?	Do you never think of any thing else?
Pourquoi cette question?	Wherefore this question?
Parce-que nous appelons souvent manque de mémoire ou de capacité ce qui est seulement manque d'attention.	Because we often call want of memory or capacity what is merely want of attention.
Quand vous prenez votre leçon, il ne faut penser qu'à votre leçon.	When you are taking your lesson, you should think of nothing but your lesson.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

LORSQUE is derived from *lors*, mentioned in the twenty-first lesson. It has the same meaning as *quand*, when, but cannot be used in interrogations. The elision of its final vowel takes place before *il*, *elle*, *on*, *un*, *une*.

J'ÉTAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *être*.

AISE, ease, is feminine, though preceded by *mon* (483).

NOURRISSAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *nourrir*, to feed, to nourish, which comes from the Latin *nutrire*, to feed.

477. The first person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ais**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense.

ESPOIR is one of the derivatives of *espérer*, mentioned in the sixth lesson. It is a synonym of *espérance*, which denotes an habitual disposition, while *espoir* is rather applicable to a determined object. *Espérance* is the virtue; *espoir*, the presentiment, the trust we have of the fulfilment of our wishes.

VOIR is an irregular verb, two forms of which have been seen: *on voyait*, in the second lesson, and *vois-tu*, in the twenty-fifth. It is one of the verbs which govern the infinitive mood without a preposition (187).

OCCUPER, in Latin *occupare*, is a word nearly the same in French and in English (262).

MONDE, from the Latin *mundus*, world, is masculine by exception (15).

RANG, from the German *rang*, rank, is masculine according to analogy (14).

---

* See note on page 282.

BRILLANT is derived from the verb *briller*, to shine.

478. Le mien is the possessive pronoun of the first person singular, corresponding to the possessive adjective, *mon*. The singular feminine is **la mienne**; the plural masculine, **les miens**; and the plural feminine, **les miennes**. All these forms correspond to *mine* (126, 471).

DÉSIRAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *désirer*, derived from *désir*, mentioned in the fifth lesson.

479. The first person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ais**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense.

ÉLEVASSES is the second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *élever*, derived from *lever*, to raise (363). *Élever* signifies to raise, or to bring up; and *s'élever*, to rise, to arise.

480. The second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **asses**.

AU-DESSUS DE is a compound preposition derived from *sur*, seen in the fifth lesson.

TA is the feminine of *ton* (461).

All the possessive adjectives have now been seen in the following phrases:

"MON *cher, vous apporterez, etc.*"—16th lesson.

"*J'aurai* MA *ligne.*"—15th lesson.

"*Les enfants de* MES *confrères.*"—25th lesson.

"*Tu perds* TON *temps.*"—25th lesson.

"*Au-dessus de* TA *famille.*"—26th lesson.

"*Ils sont* TES *égaux.*"—25th lesson.

"*On le voyait à* SON *établi.*"—2d lesson.

"*L'éducation qu'il avait reçue de son père et de* SA *mère.*"—4th lesson.

"*Il avait placé* SES *épargnes.*"—6th lesson.

"NOTRE *petit paresseux.*"—7th lesson.

"*Noircissant* NOS *cahiers.*"—12th lesson.

"VOTRE *ami, le gros Guillaume.*"—15th lesson.

"*Ainsi que* VOS *hameçons.*"—15th lesson.

"*Nos parents ont eu* LEUR *temps.*"—14th lesson.

"LEURS *nombreux créanciers.*"—6th lesson.

FAMILLE comes from the Latin *familia*, family. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

FUSSES is the second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être.*

ORGUEIL comes from the Greek ὀργή, pride, arrogance. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

APPUI is the radical of *appuyer*, seen in the ninth lesson.

FALLAIT is the imperfect tense of the irregular impersonal verb *falloir* (287).

EUSSES is the second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir.*

INSTRUCTION is derived from the verb *instruire*, to instruct, to teach. It is feminine (99).

SACRIFICE, from the Latin *sacrificium*, is masculine (20).

COÛTÉ is the past participle of *coûter*, to cost (52).

METTRE is the infinitive mood of *mis*, seen in the fifth lesson.

METTRE À MÊME is an idiomatic locution, which signifies *to enable.*

ACQUÉRIR is one of the derivatives of *quérir*, mentioned in the thirteenth lesson. It is an irregular verb.

EXCELLENTE is the feminine of *excellent* (2).

CESSE is a form (349) of *cesser*, one of the derivatives of *céder*, mentioned in the sixth lesson. It is one of the verbs after which *pas* may be suppressed (80). It governs the infinitive mood with the preposition *de* (189).

PLEURER comes from the Latin *plorare*, to weep, to bewail.

PERTE is one of the derivatives of *perdre*, mentioned in the fourteenth lesson.

COMBATTU is the past participle of *combattre* (381), to fight, to contend, derived from the irregular verb *battre* (75), to beat. The irregularity of *battre* and its derivatives is very slight. It consists in not doubling the *t* in the three persons singular of the present tense of the indicative: *Je bats, tu bats, il bat*, instead of *je batts*, etc. (310).

PROJET is derived from *jeter* (182), seen in the twenty-fifth lesson.

J'AVAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *avoir*.

FINI is the past participle of *finir*, one of the derivatives of *fin*, mentioned in the tenth lesson.

481. The past participle of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **i**.

PARTAGER is one of the derivatives of *part*, mentioned in the tenth lesson.

J'ATTENDAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *attendre*, seen in the twelfth lesson.

482. The first person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ais**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense (479).

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases :

"*Je désir*AIS *que tu t'élevasses.*"

"*Je nourr*ISSAIS *l'espoir.*"

"*J'attend*AIS *le bonheur.*"

"*Lorsque j'*ÉTAIS *à mon aise.*"

"*J'*AVAIS *fini par les lui faire partager.*"

ÉLÉVATION is derived from *élever*, seen in this lesson. It is feminine (99) though preceded by *ton* (483).

BONHEUR is formed of *bon* (1st lesson) and *heur*, mentioned as the radical of *heureux*, in the twenty-first lesson.

VIEILLESSE is derived from *vieil*, a form of the adjective *vieux*, seen in the fourteenth lesson (442).

SYNTAX.*

Mon *aise*—**Ton** *élévation.*
Ton *excellente mère.*

483. Before a feminine substantive or adjective beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the possessive adjectives **mon**, **ton**,

---

* See note on page 282.

son, are substituted for **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, in order to avoid the hiatus.

---

*Pour te mettre à même d'***en** *acquérir.*

The literal translation of this phrase is: *To enable thee to acquire* SOME. The pronoun *some* is the direct regimen of *acquire.*

484. When *some* or *any* is the direct regimen of a verb, it is rendered by **en**, placed before the verb, except in the imperative mood (268, § 4, and 278).

Dont *je ne cesse de pleurer* **la perte.**

In this phrase, *dont* signifies *whose.* It determines the substantive *perte*, which is the regimen of *pleurer*, and is preceded by the article *la.*

485. When **dont** signifies *whose,* and accordingly determines the sense of a substantive, that substantive must always be preceded by the article; and, if it is the regimen of a verb, it must be placed after the verb, instead of following the pronoun as it does in English, when we say: WHOSE LOSS *I do not cease to lament.*

Dont la perte *me désole.*
Whose loss grieves me

486. If the substantive determined by **dont** is the subject of the verb, it occupies the same place as in English, but is still preceded by the article.

Les **lui** *faire partager.*

In this phrase, *lui* is the indirect regimen of *faire partager* (89). It refers to *mère*, and signifies *à elle*, to her.

487. The pronoun **lui** never refers to a feminine substantive except when it is an indirect regimen.

Les lui *faire partager.*

488. When several objective pronouns precede a verb, *le*, *la*, *les* are placed before *lui* and *leur*, and after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Je nourrissais.* See Obs. 477.—I warned—I softened—I accomplished—I diverted—I finished—I enjoyed—I languished—I obeyed—I perished—I filled—I reflected.

2. Model: *Un rang plus brillant que* LE MIEN. See Obs. 478. —Thy friend and mine—Thy shop and mine—Thy arms and mine—Thy savings and mine—This child is mine—This family is mine—These nets are mine—These pockets are mine.

3. Model: *Je désirais.* See Obs. 479.—I worked—I found —I seemed—I shared—I wept—I spoke—I thought—I occupied—I obliged—I left—I threw—I hoped—I listened.

4. Model: *Que tu t'élevasses.* See Obs. 480.—That thou mightest begin—That thou mightest listen—That thou mightest hope—That thou mightest throw—That thou mightest leave—That thou mightest oblige—That thou mightest occupy—That thou mightest forget.

5. Model: *Fini.* See Obs. 481.—Assailed—Freed—Warned —Softened—Accomplished—Furnished—Blackened—Obeyed—Perished—Departed—Felt—Served.

6. Model: *J'attendais.* See Obs. 482.—I defended—I heard —I interrupted—I put—I pretended—I lost—I pursued—I promised—I answered—I rendered—I laughed—I followed—I sold.

7. Model: MON *aise.* Syntax, 483.—My aversion—Thy ambition—His apathy—My education—Thy hope—His school—My study—Thy story—His hour—My idea—Thy influence—His invitation.

8. Model: *A même d'*EN *acquérir.* Syntax, 484.—I have some—Have you any?—He has not any—She brings some—They have not given any—Ask *for* some—Leave some—Put some.

9. Model: LES LUI *faire partager.* Syntax, 488.—He gives it to me—He leaves her to thee—You give it him—They restore her to us—We bring them to you—We sold it to them.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. I reflected little when I was young—477.
2. I did not obey [to] my masters—477.
3. But I diverted myself *very* much—477.
4. James is your friend, but he is not mine—478.
5. I love her children as if they were mine—478.
6. Your resources are greater than mine—478.
7. I *employed* [occupied] several workmen—479.
8. I often worked with them—479.
9. I listened *to* all their observations—479.
10. I *wish* [would] thou wouldst share my provisions—480.
11. I would not have thee weep—480.
12. I would have thee forget thy sorrow—480.
13. Have you reflected on this project?—481.
14. The father is not obeyed *by* [of] all his children—481.
15. You have alleviated our position—481.
16. I was so giddy that I used to answer before *I had* [of to have] reflected—482.
17. I used to interrupt those who were speaking—482.
18. I used to promise things which I could not give—482, 102.
19. My ambition is great—483.
20. Thy observation is just—483.
21. His apathy will be fatal to him—483.
22. Dost thou accept my invitation?—483.
23. Yes, I accept thy invitation—483.

24. His history will not be long—483.

25. If you want money, I have some at your service—484.

26. You are *very kind* [well good], but I do not want any —484.

27. My father has given me some—484.

28. The man, whose support you have promised me, is grave and austere—485.

29. I will not go with a man whose companions are madcaps —486.

30. My friend, whose companions you do not like, is however a good fellow—485.

31. I render justice to your friend, whose character I admire —485.

32. But I will not see his comrades, whose defects are great —486.

33. When shall I speak to her?—487.

34. What have you to say to her?—487.

35. She says that you never speak to her, that you forget her, and that you do not render her happy—487.

36. It seems to her that you do not love her—487.

37. These books are dear to him, because you *gave* [have given] them to him—488.

38. We shall not be ungrateful, you will tell them so—488, 224.

39. You believe it, because he tells it to you—488.

40. They have my dictionary, and they do not *return* [render] it to me—488.

41. They wished to have that net; *so* my brother gave it to them—488.

TWENTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-septième leçon.

"Quelque place que tu remplisses, je ne
Whatever place filledst (subj.)

doutais pas que tu ne répondisses à mon
doubted answeredst (subj.)

attente. Mon fils, me disais-je, aura les
expectation said will have

professeurs les plus distingués; il s'ins-
professors most distinguished will

truira, deviendra célèbre, et me bénira
instruct will become celebrated will bless

de lui avoir ouvert la carrière de la vraie
to him opened career

gloire, de celle que l'on tient de soi-même
glory holds one's self

et non de ses aïeux. Mais, tu le sais, des
not one's ancestors knowest some

personnes sur l'honneur desquelles je
persons honor of whom

croyais pouvoir compter, trahirent ma
believed to be able to rely betrayed

confiance de la manière la plus honteuse
trust in shameful

et la plus infâme. Je perdis subitement
infamous lost suddenly

le fruit de trente ans de travail."
fruit years labor

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Whatever place you might occupy, I did not doubt but you would realize my expectations. My son, thought I, will have the most eminent professors; he will acquire learning, will become a celebrated man, and bless me for having pointed out to him the path of true glory; that glory for which we are indebted to ourselves and not to our ancestors. But, you know, some persons, on whose honor I thought I might rely, betrayed my trust in the most shameful and infamous manner. I suddenly lost the fruit of thirty years' labor."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-septième.
De quoi Delatour ne doutait-il pas?	Il ne doutait pas que son fils ne répondît à son attente.
Dites cela avec les expressions de Delatour.	"Quelque place que tu remplisses, je ne doutais pas que tu ne répondisses à mon attente."
Pour parler encore comme Delatour, quels professeurs son fils aura-t-il?	Les professeurs les plus distingués.
Que fera-t-il avec l'assistance de ces professeurs?	Il s'instruira.
Que deviendra-t-il?	Il deviendra célèbre.
Qui bénira-t-il?	Il bénira son père.
De quoi le bénira-t-il?	De lui avoir ouvert la carrière de la vraie gloire.
Quelle est la vraie gloire?	Celle que l'on tient de soi-même, et non de ses aïeux.
Quelles étaient les personnes qui trahirent la confiance de Delatour?	Des personnes sur l'honneur desquelles il croyait pouvoir compter.
Que firent ces personnes?	Elles trahirent sa confiance.
De quelle manière trahirent-elles sa confiance?	De la manière la plus honteuse et la plus infâme.
Qu'est-ce que Delatour perdit subitement?	Le fruit de trente ans de travail.

Perdit-il en plusieurs fois le fruit de son travail?	Non; il le perdit subitement.
Savez-vous comment il le perdit?	Oui; ce fut par la banqueroute de deux maisons de commerce
Pendant combien de temps Delatour avait-il travaillé, quand il perdit ses épargnes?	Pendant trente ans.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Je suis allé chez vous hier, mais vous n'y étiez pas.	I called on you yesterday, but you were not at home.
On me l'a dit. Je suis bien fâché de ne pas m'y être trouvé.	So I heard. I am very sorry I was out.
J'ai un projet dont je désire vous entretenir.	I have a project I wish to speak to you about.
Je suis à votre disposition.	I am at your service.
J'ai quelques épargnes que je voudrais utiliser.	I have a few savings that I wish to make the best of.
C'est bien facile.	That is very easy.
Pas si facile que vous le croyez.	Not so easy as you think.
Comment donc cela?	How so?
Je ne voudrais pas m'exposer à perdre mon argent.	I should not like to run the risk of losing my money.
Bien entendu.	Of course.
Et cependant je voudrais en retirer le plus possible.	And yet I want to make it produce as much as possible.
Vous avez raison.	You are right.
Je ne veux pas faire de spéculations, parce que je n'y entends rien.	I will not speculate, because I am unfit for it.
Mais alors, que comptez-vous faire?	Well, then, what do you intend to do?
Si je plaçais mon argent dans une maison de commerce?	Suppose I were to place my money in a commercial house?
Vous feriez peut-être bien.	Perhaps you would do well.
Connaissez-vous la maison Jacques, Guillaume et compagnie?	Do you know the firm of James, William and company?
J'en ai entendu parler.	I have heard of it.

Est-elle bonne?	Is it solvent?
Je le crois.	I believe it is.
On me dit que si j'y place mon argent, il me rapportera de dix à douze pour cent.	They tell me that if I place my money there, it will produce between ten and twelve per cent.
Cela ne m'étonne pas.	I should not be surprised if it did.
Que me conseillez-vous?	What do you advise me to do?
Je vous conseille de ne pas trop vous presser.	I advise you not to be too hasty.
Vous pensez donc que la maison n'est pas sûre?	So, you think the house is not to be trusted?
Je ne dis pas cela. Mais je prendrai des informations.	I do not say that. But I will make some inquiries.
Vous êtes bien bon.	You are very kind.
Où vous retrouverai-je?	Where shall I meet you again?
Où vous voudrez. Donnez-moi un rendez-vous.	Where you please. Make an appointment.
Eh bien, chez moi, demain, à deux heures.	Well, at my place, to-morrow, at two o'clock.
J'y serai.	I will be there.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

PLACE is the radical of *placer*, seen in the sixth lesson.

REMPLISSES is the second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *remplir*, seen in the seventeenth lesson.

489. The second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isses**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the same mood.

This remark however is not applicable to the verb *sentir*, given as an example in the 13th and 23d lessons; because this verb,

---

* See note on page 282.

though regular in the past tense, is irregular in the present tense of the subjunctive.

DOUTAIS is a form (479) of *douter*, seen in the seventeenth lesson. It has been said (360) that after this verb, used in the negative form, the particle *ne* precedes the next verb.

RÉPONDISSES is the second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *répondre*, seen in the sixth lesson.

490. The second person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isses**.

Examples have now been seen of the second person singular of this tense and mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Je désirais que tu t'élev*ASSES."—26th lesson.

"*Quelque place que tu rempl*ISSES."—27th lesson.

"*Je ne doutais pas que tu ne répond*ISSES."—27th lesson.

"*Que tu en* FUSSES *l'orgueil.*"—26th lesson.

"*Il fallait que tu* EUSSES *de l'instruction.*"—26th lesson.

ATTENTE is feminine according to analogy (15). It is preceded by *mon*, instead of *ma*, because it begins with a vowel (483).

DISAIS-JE is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *dire*, seen in the first lesson.

AURA is the third person singular of the future tense of *avoir*. The whole of the future tense of this verb has now been seen: *J'aurai*, *tu auras*, *il aura*, *nous aurons*, *vous aurez*, *ils auront*.

PROFESSEUR is one of the derivatives of *professer*, mentioned in the second lesson.

DISTINGUÉ is the past participle, used adjectively, of the verb *distinguer*, to distinguish.

INSTRUIRA is the third person singular of the future tense of *instruire*, mentioned in the twenty-sixth lesson as the radical of *instruction*. This verb is irregular, but its irregularity does not extend to the future tense.

DEVIENDRA is the third person singular of the future tense of *devenir*, seen in the twenty-fourth lesson.

CÉLÈBRE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

BÉNIRA is the third person singular of the future tense of *bénir*, to bless. *To bless for* is rendered by *bénir de.*

491. The third person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by adding **a** to this termination (74, 311).

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of the future tense in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Est-ce qu'il ne se corrig*ERA *jamais?*"—3d lesson.

"*Mon fils me bén*IRA."—27th lesson.

"*Je vous réponds que le poisson mord*RA."—15th lesson.

"*Ne* SERA-*t-il pas trop tard?*"—20th lesson.

"*Mon fils* AURA *les professeurs.*"—27th lesson.

OUVERT is the past participle of the irregular verb *ouvrir.*

CARRIÈRE is one of the derivatives of *char*, mentioned in the sixteenth lesson.

GLOIRE comes from the Latin *gloria*, glory (322).

In L'ON, the letter L is merely euphonic (497).

TIENT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *tenir*, seen in the twentieth lesson, and mentioned in the third, as being the radical of *obtenir.*

492. Soi, *one's self*, sometimes *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, is a personal pronoun of the third person singular. It is of both genders and refers to things as well as to persons. It is generally used in an undetermined sense, as a correlative of an indefinite pronoun, such as: *On*, one; *quiconque*, whoever; *aucun*, any one, etc. (65).

SOI-MÊME has the same meaning as *soi;* only it is more emphatic (101).

All the personal pronouns have now been seen, in the following phrases: *

"JE *vous réponds—J'aurai ma ligne.*"—15th lesson.

"*Je* ME *chargerai du pain.*"—16th lesson.

"*Venez avec* MOI *demain.*"—15th lesson.

"*Je veux que* TU *m'écoutes.*"—24th lesson.

---

* The pronoun ELLE has been seen only in its plural form, ELLES, but the sense of the singular is clearly inferred from that of the plural.

"*Je veux que tu* TE *rendes utile.*"—24th lesson.

"*Tout ce que j'ai fait pour* TOI."—24th lesson.

"IL SE *désolait.*"—3d lesson.

"*Vous* LE *savez.*"—1st lesson.

"*Comment* LUI *faire entendre raison?*"—3d lesson.

"*Que son enfant fût plus que* LUI."—4th lesson.

"*Une chose indigne de* LUI."—7th lesson.

"*J'avais fini par les* LUI *faire partager.*"—26th lesson.

"*Ils ne savaient pas* LA *rendre.*"—13th lesson.

"*Celle que l'on tient de* SOI."—27th lesson.

"NOUS *pensons que les proverbes sont vrais.*"—1st lesson.

"*Ils* NOUS *parlaient de choses ennuyeuses.*"—13th lesson.

"*Divertissons-*NOUS."—14th lesson.

"VOUS *le savez.*"—1st lesson.

"*Je* VOUS *réponds que le poisson mordra.*"—15th lesson.

"*Se persuader qu'*ILS *le sont.*"—10th lesson.

"*Des marchands qui* LES *connaissent.*"—16th lesson.

"*Des gâteaux que* LEUR *fourniront des marchands.*"—16th lesson.

"*Beaucoup d'entre* EUX *finissent.*"—10th lesson.

"ELLES *firent banqueroute.*"—6th lesson.

"*Quels que fussent ceux qui* LES *faisaient.*"—19th lesson.

"*Ils voulaient que nous* EN *sentissions les avantages et que nous* Y *trouvassions du plaisir.*"—13th lesson.

AÏEUX is the irregular plural of *aïeul.*

493. Aïeul has two forms in the plural: AÏEULS and AÏEUX. The first is used only for grandfathers. *Aïeux* signifies ancestors or forefathers.

TU SAIS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *savoir*, seen in the first lesson.

PERSONNE has been mentioned in the eleventh lesson, as being the radical of *personnage.* As a substantive, *personne* is always feminine, even when it is used to denote persons of the male sex. So, in speaking of a man, we should not say, *C'est un excellent personne*, but, *C'est une excellente personne*, he is an excellent person. *Personne* is not always a substantive. It will be seen later as an indefinite pronoun, signifying *nobody, anybody,* in which case it is always masculine and singular.

HONNEUR comes from the Latin *honor*, honor. It is masculine, and has been overlooked in the list of exceptions to rule (95).

DESQUELLES is formed of the compound article *des* and *quelles*, the plural feminine of *quel* (165).

JE CROYAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *croire*, mentioned in the sixth lesson. It is one of the verbs which govern the infinitive mood without a preposition (187).

POUVOIR is an irregular verb, seen in the imperfect tense in the third lesson, and in the present tense in the nineteenth and twenty-fifth lessons. It is one of the verbs which govern the infinitive mood without a preposition (187).

COMPTER comes from the Latin *computare*, to reckon. It signifies *to count*, *to reckon*, *to calculate*, and *to rely*.

TRAHIRENT is a form (147) of the verb *trahir*, to betray.

CONFIANCE is derived from *fier*, to trust (75, 23).

HONTEUSE is the feminine of *honteux* (136).

INFÂME is an adjective alike in the masculine and feminine (2).

JE PERDIS is the first person singular of the past tense definite of *perdre*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

494. The first person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense.

SUBITEMENT is derived from the adjective *subit* (31, 32), which comes from the Latin *subitus*, sudden.

FRUIT, from the Latin *fructus*, fruit, is a word alike in French and in English.

AN, from the Latin *annus*, year, is masculine according to analogy (14).

TRAVAIL has been mentioned in the eleventh lesson, as being the radical of *travailleur* and *travailler*. The plural of this word, when it signifies *labor* or *work*, which is its usual acceptation, is *travaux ;* but when it means *brake* or *trave*, its plural is regular.

SYNTAX.*

Les *professeurs* **les** *plus distingués.*

495. When an adjective, in the superlative degree, precedes the substantive, one article serves for both, as: LES *plus célèbres professeurs;* but when the adjective follows, the article must be repeated before it.

In this example, *distingués* is placed after the substantive, because it is a participle used adjectively (355).

De **la** *manière* **la** *plus honteuse et* **la** *plus infâme.*

496. When there are several adjectives, the article is repeated each time before the words *plus*, more; *moins*, less; *mieux*, better.

Celle que **l'on** *tient.*

497. The **l'** before **on** is merely euphonic, and used after *et*, *si*, *ou*, *que*, and *qui*, to avoid the hiatus. It may however be omitted after *que*, this word being contracted into *qu'* before a vowel. We might accordingly say *Celle* QU'ON *tient.*

Et **non** *de ses aïeux.*

498. **Non** is often used for *not*, instead of *ne pas*, particularly in elliptical phrases where the verb is not repeated, as in this instance: *La gloire que l'on tient de soi-même et* NON *de ses aïeux*, which stands for *La gloire que l'on tient de soi-même et que l'on* NE *tient* PAS *de ses aïeux.*

Des personnes **sur** *l'honneur* **desquelles.**

Some persons ON WHOSE honor.

499. **Dont** is never preceded by a preposition. Accordingly, when *whose* follows a preposition, it must be rendered by *duquel*,

---

* See note on page 282.

de laquelle, *desquels*, or *desquelles*, placed after the substantive in connection with *whose*.

Je croyais **pouvoir compter**.

500. Two verbs in the infinitive mood are often placed in succession, the second being the regimen of the first.

Je perdis **subitement** *le fruit.*

501. Contrary to the rule observed in English construction, the adverb is often placed between the verb and its regimen.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Que tu remplisses.* See Obs. 489.—That thou mightest accomplish—That thou mightest sleep—That thou mightest finish—That thou mightest open—That thou mightest reflect.

2. Model: *Que tu répondisses.* See Obs. 490.—That thou mightest wait—That thou mightest defend—That thou mightest lose—That thou mightest pursue—That thou mightest render—That thou mightest follow—That thou mightest sell.

3. Model: *Il bénira.* See Obs. 491.—He will serve—He will feel—He will perish—He will obey—He will languish—He will furnish—He will sleep.

4. Model: *Il tient.* See Obs. 273. (See also *tint* in the twentieth lesson, page 270, line 29, and translate by *venir*, *tenir*, and their derivatives, in the present tense.)—He comes—He agrees—He becomes—He attains—He prevents—He comes again—He remembers [himself]—He obtains—He contains—He detains—He entertains—He sustains—He maintains.

5. Model: *Il deviendra.* See Obs. 273. (See also *tint*, as

above, and translate by *venir*, *tenir*, and their derivatives, in the future tense.)—He will come—He will agree—He will attain—He will prevent—He will come again—He will remember [himself]—He will hold—He will obtain—He will contain—He will detain—He will entertain—He will sustain—He will maintain.

6. Model: *Soi.* See Obs. 492.—To think but *of* [to] one's self—To have nothing *of one's own* [to one's self]—To rely on one's self—To be at home (177)—To study for one's self.

7. Model: *Je perdis.* See Obs. 494.—I waited—I defended—I heard—I pursued—I pretended—I answered—I rendered—I followed—I suspended—I sold.

8. Model: LES *professeurs* LES *plus distingués.* Syntax, 495, 496.—(Place the adjectives after the substantive.)—The most attentive students—The longest lessons—The bravest and most ambitious men—The most frivolous and giddy person—The largest (biggest) and best fruits.

9. Model: *Je croyais* POUVOIR COMPTER. Syntax, 500.—I believe I shall be able to come—He wishes to go and play—Do you think you can write?

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Thy mother did not doubt but thou wouldst obey [to] her—489.

2. I did not doubt but thou wouldst succeed—489.

3. It was necessary for thee to sleep after thy labor—489.

4. Thou wast sorry, though thou pretendedst the contrary—490.

5. He was victorious, though thou defendedst thyself with courage—490.

6. He would be ungrateful, whatever service thou mightest render him—490.

7. That man is a false friend; he will betray you—491.

8. He will enjoy [of] the fruit of your labor—491.

9. How will that man feed his numerous children?—491.

10. One thinks of one's self before *one thinks* [of to think] of others—492.

11. One labors for one's self and for one's children—492.

12. No condition is mean in itself—492.

13. When I say his two grandfathers, I *mean* [will say] his father's father and his mother's father—493.

14. Our forefathers were not wiser than we—493.

15. I waited *for* him two hours, but he did not come—494.

16. The other day, your friends *asked* [made] me several questions [to] which I answered—494.

17. They have had the most sublime courage—495.

18. You have *given* [made] us the most flattering invitation —495.

19. You have obtained the most *decided* [complete] approbation—495.

20. Your father is the best, the bravest, and most generous of men—496.

21. We shall hear the most distinguished and celebrated artists—496.

22. One is ambitious if one loves glory—497.

23. One likes to know to whom one is speaking—497.

24. He asks *for* money and not *for* bread—498.

25. I have lost my fortune, but not my cheerfulness—498.

26. Is that man ambitious or not?—498.

27. There was a merchant before whose shop he often used to stop—499.

28. He has a good mother for whose happiness *he spares* no sacrifice [costs him]—499.

29. Go with those gentlemen, in whose company you find so much pleasure—499.

30. I hope I shall be able to go with them—500.

31. I *fancied* [believed] I could understand their conversation —500.

32. He loves his children too much—501.

33. He does not love his parents enough—501.

34. We have had a long conversation to-day—501.

TWENTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-huitième leçon.

"Quand tu revins au domicile paternel,
returnedst domicile paternal

tu prétendis que tu n'étais pas fait pour
pretendedst wast made

manier des outils. Tu m'assuras que tu
to handle tools assuredst

réfléchissais aux moyens de tirer parti de
reflectedst means to draw advantage

tes hautes facultés; car tu prétendais être
high faculties pretendedst

propre à tout, et personne n'était mieux
proper nobody better

disposé que moi à te croire. Tu finis par
disposed to believe finishedst

me demander du temps pour te décider
to ask to decide

sur le choix d'un état. D'autres, à ma
choice state (condition)

place, auraient été durs et sévères. Tu
place would have been hard severe

sais pourtant avec quelle indulgence tu
however what indulgence

fus écouté. Tu n'eus pas de peine à
wast listened (to) hadst pain (difficulty)

obtenir de ma tendresse les délais que tu
tenderness delays

souhaitais.”
wishedst

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

“ When you were again under the paternal roof, you said that you were not made to handle tools. You assured me that you were musing on the best way of employing your eminent faculties; for you boasted of being fit for any thing, and no one was better disposed than I to believe you. At last, you begged I would grant you time to make up your mind as to the choice of a profession. Others, in my place, would have been harsh and severe. You know, however, with what indulgence you were listened to. You had no difficulty to obtain from my fondness the delay you wished for.”

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C’est la vingt-huitième.
Quand Alexis prétendit-il qu’il n’était pas fait pour manier des outils?	Quand il revint au domicile paternel.
Que prétendit-il, quand il revint au domicile paternel?	Qu’il n’était pas fait pour manier des outils.
A quoi réfléchissait-il, quand il revint au domicile paternel?	Aux moyens de tirer parti de ses hautes facultés.
En êtes-vous sûr?	Non. Mais il assura à son père qu’il y réfléchissait.
A quoi prétendait-il être propre?	A tout.
Delatour était-il disposé à le croire?	Personne n’était mieux disposé que lui à le croire.
Pourquoi Alexis demanda-t-il du temps?	Pour se décider sur le choix d’un état.
Que demanda-t-il, pour se décider sur le choix d’un état?	Il demanda du temps.

Comment d'autres, à la place du père, auraient-ils été ?	Ils auraient été durs et sévères.
Comment Alexis fut-il écouté ?	Avec indulgence.
Par qui fut-il écouté avec indulgence ?	Par son père.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'eut pas de peine à obtenir de son père ?	Les délais qu'il souhaitait.
Lui fut-il difficile d'obtenir les délais qu'il souhaitait ?	Non. Il n'eut pas de peine à les obtenir.
Par quel sentiment son père fut-il guidé ?	Par la tendresse.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Vous avez l'air bien sérieux. A quoi pensez-vous ?	You look very serious. What are you thinking about ?
Je pense à aller en France.	I am thinking of going to France.
Quand vous proposez-vous d'y aller ?	When do you purpose going thither ?
Aussitôt qu'il me sera possible de me faire comprendre.	As soon as I can make myself understood.
Croyez-vous que ce sera bientôt ?	Do you think it will be soon ?
Mais, oui, je l'espère.	Why, yes, I hope it will.
Vous êtes plus avancé que moi.	You are more advanced than I am.
Je ne sais pas. Mais je commence à trouver des mots avec plus de facilité.	I don't know that. But I begin to find words with greater facility.
Je trouve qu'il est plus facile de parler que de comprendre.	I find it more easy to speak than to understand.
Moi aussi.	So do I.
Les Français parlent trop vite.	The French speak too fast.
Nous nous imaginons cela, parce que nous n'avons pas l'habitude de les entendre.	We imagine so, because we have not the habit of hearing them.
Ils ne parlent pas plus vite que nous.	They do not speak faster than we.
Ne trouvez-vous pas que notre	Don't you find that our friend

ami Jacques parle très-distinctement ?	James speaks very distinctly ?
Oui. J'entends tout ce qu'il dit.	Yes. I understand all that he says.
C'est qu'il a la complaisance de parler doucement.	It is because he has the kindness to speak slowly.
Si vous voulez, nous ferons ensemble le voyage de France.	If you are disposed, we will take our trip to France together.
Avec le plus grand plaisir.	With the greatest pleasure.
Ce sera un voyage très-agréable.	It will be a very agreeable journey.
Et très-instructif en même temps.	And a very instructive one, at the same time.
Nous irons d'abord à Boulogne, où nous passerons quelques jours.	We shall first go to Boulogne, where we shall spend a few days.
Est-ce que vous y avez des connaissances ?	Have you any acquaintances there ?
Oui, j'y ai des amis qui nous feront une bonne réception.	Yes, I have some friends there, who will give us a good reception.
De là nous nous rendrons à Paris en six ou sept heures.	From there we shall reach Paris in six or seven hours.
Ce sera charmant. Quand partirons-nous ?	It will be charming. When shall we start ?
Dans quinze jours, si vous voulez.	In a fortnight, if you will.
Je serai prêt.	I shall be ready.
Eh bien, c'est entendu.	Well, it is agreed on.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

Tu revins is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *revenir*, derived from *venir* (146), and irregular like its radical (273).

Domicile, from the Latin *domicilium*, domicile, is masculine.

---

* See note on page 282.

502. § 1. Substantives ending in **ile** or **yle** are masculine.

§ 2. The following words are feminine by exception, or rather follow the general rule (15): *Argile*, clay; *bile*, bile; *file*, row; *huile*, oil; *île*, island; *pile*, pile; *sébile*, wooden-bowl; *tuile*, tile; *vigile*, vigil.

PATERNEL is one of the derivatives of *père*, seen in the second lesson (217).

TU PRÉTENDIS is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *prétendre*, already seen.

503. The second person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense (499).

The whole of this tense in the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je perd*IS, *tu prétend*IS, *il répond*IT, *nous vend*ÎMES, *vous rend*ÎTES, *ils suspend*IRENT.

ÉTAIS is the second person singular of the imperfect tense of *être*.

The whole of the imperfect tense of this verb has now been seen: *J'étais, tu étais, il était, nous étions, vous étiez, ils étaient.*

MANIER is one of the derivatives of *main*, seen in the second lesson.

OUTIL, tool, is masculine according to analogy (14).

ASSURAS is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *assurer*, derived from *sûr*, which has been seen in the sixteenth lesson.

504. The second person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **as**.

RÉFLÉCHISSAIS is the second person singular of the imperfect tense of *réfléchir*, seen in the twenty-fourth lesson.

505. The second person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ais**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense (477).

The whole of this tense in the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Je nourr*ISSAIS, *tu réfléch*ISSAIS, *il assoup*ISSAIT, *nous pér*ISSIONS, *vous langu*ISSIEZ, *ils réun*ISSAIENT.

MOYEN. The feminine of *moyen* is *moyenne* (184).

TIRER has been mentioned in the seventh lesson as being the radical of *retirer*.

PARTI is one of the derivatives of *part*, mentioned in the tenth lesson.

HAUT is derived from the Latin *altus*, high. It signifies *high*, and *loud* in speaking of sounds.

FACULTÉ is feminine (241).

PRÉTENDAIS is the second person singular of the imperfect tense of *prétendre*, already seen.

506. The second person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **ais**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense (482).

The whole of this tense in the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *J'attend*AIS, *tu prétend*AIS, *il étend*AIT, *nous entend*IONS, *vous poursuiv*IEZ, *ils répond*AIENT.

PROPRE comes from the Latin *proprius*. This adjective has a variety of acceptations in French, the principal of which are, *proper*, *fit*, *own*, *right*, and *clean*.

507. **Personne**, as an indefinite pronoun, is always masculine, singular, and used without an article or any determinate word. With the negative *ne* it signifies *no one*, *none*, *nobody*. Without the negative, it corresponds to *any one* or *anybody*.

MIEUX is one of the derivatives of *meilleur*, seen in the fifth lesson. It is the comparative and the superlative of *bien*, well, and signifies *better* or *best*; while *meilleur*, which is rendered by the same words, is the comparative and the superlative of *bon*, good.

DISPOSÉ is a form (52) of the verb *disposer*, one of the derivatives of *poser*, mentioned in the twelfth lesson.

CROIRE is an irregular verb, seen in the imperative mood in the twentieth lesson, in the present tense in the twenty-second, and in the imperfect tense in the twenty-seventh.

TU FINIS is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *finir*, already seen.

508. The second person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similar: to the first person sin-

gular of the same tense; to the first and second persons singular of the present tense of the indicative mood (325, 454); and to the second person singular of the imperative mood (460).

DEMANDER is the infinitive mood of *demandait*, seen in the eighteenth lesson.

DÉCIDER comes from the Latin *decidere*, to decide.

CHOIX is derived from the verb *choisir*, to choose, and does not change in the plural (492).

ÉTAT is masculine according to analogy (14).

AURAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

ÉTÉ is the past participle of *être*.

Examples have now been seen of the past participle in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*On le voyait, l'œil animé*."—2d lesson.

"*J'avais fini par les lui faire partager*."—26th lesson.

"*Nous jouerons au cheval fondu*."—19th lesson.

"*D'autres auraient été durs*."—28th lesson.

"*Le brave homme avait eu le tort*."—4th lesson.

DUR comes from the Latin *durus*, hard.

SÉVÈRE, from the Latin *severus*, severe, is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

POURTANT is formed of the two words *pour* and *tant*, both of which have been seen. Its most literal translation is *for so much*, or *for all that*. It corresponds to *however*, *nevertheless*, *still*, *yet*, and is a synonym of *cependant*, already seen.

QUELLE is the feminine of *quel* (71).

INDULGENCE is a word alike in French and in English (167).

FUS is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *être*.

ÉCOUTÉ is a form (52) of the verb *écouter*, seen in the subjunctive mood in the twenty-fourth lesson.

EUS is the second person singular of the past tense definite of *avoir*.

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the second person singular of this tense in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Tu m'assur*AS *que tu réfléchissais.*"
"*Tu fin*IS *par me demander.*"
"*Tu prétend*IS *que tu n'étais pas fait.*"
"*Tu* FUS *écouté.*"
"*Tu n'*EUS *pas de peine.*"

PEINE is feminine according to analogy (15).

TENDRESSE is derived from the adjective *tendre*, tender (267, 442).

DÉLAI, from the Latin *dilatio*, delay, is masculine according to analogy (14).

SOUHAITAIS is the second person singular of the imperfect tense of *souhaiter*, derived from *souhait*, wish, a word of uncertain origin.

509. The second person singular of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into **ais**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense (479).

SYNTAX.*

Personne *n'était mieux* **disposé.**
Une **personne** *était mieux* **disposée.**

510. It has been seen (507) that **personne**, as an indefinite pronoun, signifying *no one*, *nobody*, *any one*, *anybody*, is always masculine and singular; and that *personne* (27th lesson), as a substantive, signifying *person*, is always feminine. Accordingly the participle which refers to the pronoun *personne* always remains invariable, and the participle which refers to the substantive *personne* or *personnes* agrees with it in gender and number, in the cases determined by rules 63, 105, 354, and 398.

D'autres auraient **été** *durs.*

511. The participle **été** is always invariable.

---

* See note on page 282.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Tu revins.* See Obs. 273. (See also *tint* in the 20th lesson, page 270, and translate by *venir*, *tenir*, and their derivatives* in the past tense definite.)—Thou camest—Thou didst agree—Thou becamest—Thou attainedst—Thou preventedst—Thou rememberedst [thyself]—Thou heldest—Thou obtainedst—Thou containedst—Thou detainedst—Thou entertainedst—Thou sustainedst—Thou belongedst—Thou maintainedst.

2. Model: *Tu prétendis.* See Obs. 503. Thou waitedst—Thou foughtest—Thou defendedst—Thou didst hear—Thou didst interrupt—Thou didst bite—Thou didst lose—Thou didst answer—Thou didst render—Thou didst follow—Thou didst sell.

3. Model: *Tu assuras.* See Obs. 504.—Thou didst love—Thou didst arrive—Thou didst accept—Thou didst decide—Thou didst dispose—Thou didst listen—Thou didst taste—Thou didst throw—Thou didst leave—Thou didst occupy—Thou didst share.

4. Model: *Tu réfléchissais.* See Obs. 505.—Thou wast finishing—Thou wast languishing—Thou wast obeying—Thou wast filling—Thou wast betraying.

5. Model: *Tu prétendais.* See Obs. 506.—Thou wast waiting—Thou wast defending—Thou was hearing—Thou wast putting—Thou wast losing—Thou wast pursuing—Thou wast answering—Thou wast selling.

6. Model: *Tu finis.* See Obs. 508.—Thou didst accomplish—Thou didst soften—Thou didst sleep—Thou didst furnish—Thou didst enjoy—Thou didst open—Thou didst depart—Thou didst reflect—Thou didst fill.

7. Model: *Tu souhaitais.* See Obs. 509.—Thou wast working—Thou wast finding—Thou wast turning—Thou wast seeming—Thou wast dreaming—Thou wast rewarding—Thou wast looking—Thou wast sharing—Thou wast talking.

---

* On pp. 30 and 191.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Do you like the style of this poet ?—502.
2. What didst thou answer, when he had finished ?—503.
3. *On* that day [there] thou didst lose all thy money—503.
4. Defend me as thou didst defend thy comrade—503.
5. One day thou didst share thy bread with the poor—504.
6. Thou didst occupy an important place—504.
7. Why didst thou not work *on* that day [there] ?—504.
8. Thou didst not obey [to] thy parents, when thou wast young—505.
9. Thou wast finishing thy task when we arrived—505.
10. I knew that thou wast waiting for me—506.
11. He would be sorry if thou shouldst interrupt him—506.
12. I thought that thou wast losing money by this transaction—506.
13. Thou knowest that better than any one—507.
14. We arrived without having met anybody—507.
15. He saw nobody, and nobody saw him—507.
16. There is nobody in the house—507.
17. I am sure that thou didst sleep well the following night—508.
18. Why wast thou weeping this morning ?—509.
19. What wast thou thinking of ?—509, 445.
20. What wast thou looking *at ?*—509.
21. Nobody was invited, but the persons who arrived were well received—510.
22. Nobody has been forgotten—510, 511.
23. Several persons have been forgotten—510, 511.
24. There is one person who has been forgotten—510, 511.

TWENTY-NINTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Vingt-neuvième leçon.

"Quand donc te décideras-tu? Si tu
thyself wilt decide

avais du cœur, tu ne souffrirais pas que
hadst heart (spirit) wouldst suffer

ton père épuisât pour te faire vivre ce
exhausted (subj.) to live

qui lui reste de vigueur et de santé. Tu
to him remains vigor health

t'empresserais au contraire de le soulager
wouldst hasten contrary to relieve

dans tous les détails de ses travaux. Tu
particulars labors

n'attendrais pas qu'il t'en priât. Tu
wouldst wait till of it prayed (subj.)

serais heureux de diminuer ses fatigues
wouldst be happy to diminish fatigues

en en prenant ta part. Enfin, tu
in (by) of them taking share

aurais besoin de t' acquitter de ce que
wouldst have want thyself to acquit

tu lui dois. Allons, aie de la fermeté,
to him owest Let us go (come) have firmness

dégourdis - toi, et sois mon soutien,
remove numbness from be support

au lieu d'être une charge pour moi."
instead burden

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"But when will you have made up your mind? If you were a lad of any spirit, you would not suffer your father to exhaust the remainder of his health and vigor to sustain you. You would on the contrary have at heart to relieve him in the different branches of his business. You would not wait for his asking. You would be happy to lessen his fatigues by taking your share of them. In short, you would feel that you ought to repay the obligations you are under to him. Come, a little resolution, stir yourself, and be my support, instead of being a burden to me."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la vingt-neuvième.
Par quelle question cette leçon commence-t-elle?	Quand donc te décideras-tu?
A qui cette question est-elle faite?	A Alexis.
Par qui est-elle faite?	Par son père.
Si Alexis avait du cœur, qu'est-ce qu'il ne souffrirait pas?	Que son père épuisât pour le faire vivre ce qui lui reste de vigueur et de santé.
En quoi s'empresserait-il de soulager son père?	Dans tous les détails de ses travaux.
Que s'empresserait-il de faire?	Il s'empresserait de soulager son père dans tous les détails de ses travaux.
Que n'attendrait-il pas?	Il n'attendrait pas que son père l'en priât.
Que serait-il heureux de faire?	De diminuer les fatigues de son père.

Comment diminuerait-il les fatigues de son père?	En en prenant sa part.
Quel besoin a-t-on quand on doit quelque chose et qu'on a du cœur?	On a besoin de s'acquitter.
De quoi Alexis aurait-il besoin, s'il avait du cœur?	De s'acquitter de ce qu'il doit à son père.
Pour qui Alexis était-il une charge?	Pour son père.
Un fils doit il être une charge pour son père?	Non. Il doit être son soutien.
Par quelles exhortations le père finit-il?	"Allons, aie de la fermeté, dégourdis-toi, et sois mon soutien, au lieu d'être une charge pour moi."

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Quelle heure est-il?	What o'clock is it?
Il est quatre heures et demie.	It is half past four.
Nos amis arrivent à cinq heures, n'est-ce pas?	Our friends arrive at five o'clock, don't they?
Oui, et vous savez qu'ils sont très-ponctuels.	Yes, and you know they are very punctual.
Que ferons-nous en attendant?	What shall we do in the mean time?
Ce que vous voudrez.	What you please.
Voulez-vous faire une petite promenade?	Will you take a little walk?
Nous n'en aurions pas le temps; il est trop tard.	We should not have time; it is too late.
Jouons à quelque jeu.	Let us play at some game.
A quel jeu voulez-vous jouer?	At what game will you play?
Je n'en sais rien.	I don't know.
Voulez-vous un livre?	Will you have a book?
Il n'y en a pas.	There are none.
En voici un.	Here is one.
Je n'en veux pas.	Thank you, not for me.
Pourquoi bâillez-vous?	Why do you yawn?

C'est que je suis assoupi.	Because I am drowsy.
Mais d'où cela vient-il?	But what makes you so?
C'est ce livre qui me fait bâiller.	It is that book which makes me yawn.
Il s'y trouve une histoire ennuyeuse.	It contains a tedious story.
Quelle histoire?	What story?
Celle d'Alexis Delatour.	That of Alexis Delatour.
Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'Alexis Delatour?	Who is Alexis Delatour?
C'est un paresseux.	He is a lazy fellow.
Que fait-il?	What does he do?
Il ne fait rien.	He does nothing.
Un de ses amis lui fait un sermon.	One of his friends reads him a lecture.
Il le prie de le laisser tranquille.	He begs him to let him alone.
Son père lui fait un autre sermon.	His father reads him another lecture?
Cette histoire est-elle longue?	Is the story a long one?
Elle n'en finit pas.	It is endless.
Il est cinq heures.	It is five o'clock.
Nos amis ne sont pas loin.	Our friends are not far off.
Allons à leur rencontre.	Let us go and meet them.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

DÉCIDERAS is the second person singular of the future tense of *décider*, seen in the twenty-eighth lesson.

512. The second person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood is formed by adding **as** to this termination (463, 466).

Examples have now been seen of the second person singular

---

* See note on page 282.

of the future tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Quand donc te décid*ERAS-*tu?*"—29th lesson.

"*Ne te repent*IRAS-*tu pas alors?*"—25th lesson.

"*Comment te défend*RAS-*tu?*"—25th lesson.

"*Quand tu* SERAS *obligé.*"—25th lesson.

"*Quelles ressources* AURAS-*tu?*"—25th lesson.

TU AVAIS is the second person singular of the imperfect tense of *avoir*.

The whole of this tense of the verb *avoir* has now been seen: *J'avais, tu avais, il avait, nous avions, vous aviez, ils avaient.*

CŒUR means literally *heart;* but it is often used in the figurative sense of *courage* or *spirit.*

SOUFFRIRAIS is the second person singular of the conditional mood of *souffrir*, to bear, to suffer. This verb is irregular in some of its tenses, but not in the conditional mood.

513. The second person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive is formed by adding **ais** to this termination. It is similar to the first person singular of the same mood.

ÉPUISÂT is a form (124) of the verb *épuiser*, derived from *puiser* (363), to draw (from a well, etc.). The radical word is *puits*, well, which comes from the Latin *puteus.*

VIVRE is one of the derivatives of *vie*, seen in the twentieth lesson. It is an irregular verb.

RESTE is a form (22) of the verb *rester*, which has been mentioned in the eighth lesson as being the radical of *arrêter.*

VIGUEUR is of the feminine gender (95).

SANTÉ is derived from *sain*, sound, healthy, wholesome, which comes from the Latin *sanus*, sound. It is feminine (241).

TU T'EMPRESSERAIS is the second person singular of the conditional mood of *s'empresser*, to be ardent, to be eager, to hasten, which is always pronominal (364). It is one of the verbs which govern the infinitive mood with either *à* or *de* (190).

514. The second person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by adding **ais** to this termination. It is similar to the first person singular of the same mood (513).

In *empresser*, the syllable *em* is a prefix used for *en*.

515. § 1. **En**, seen as a preposition (183) and as a pronoun (268), is also used as a prefix or an inseparable particle, almost identical with *in*, when *in* is not negative (234). It serves to form verbs, some of which are nearly the same in both languages, as: *Enchaîner*, to enchain, from *chaîne*, chain; *encourager*, to encourage, from *courage*, etc.

§ 2. **En** becomes **em** before *b*, *m*, and *p*, as: *Emballer*, to embale, to pack up; *embarquer*, to embark; *emmêler*, to entangle, from *mêler*, to mix; *empiler*, to pile up, from *pile*, pile, etc.

§ 3. It is sometimes redundant, or at least used when no corresponding syllable is added in English, as in: *Endommager*, to damage, from *dommage*, damage; *empoisonner*, to poison, from *poison*, poison, etc.

Contraire is one of the derivatives of *contre*, mentioned in the twentieth lesson (252).

Soulager, to relieve, is a verb of the first conjugation (121).

Détail is masculine according to analogy (14).

Travaux is the irregular plural of *travail*, seen in the twenty-seventh lesson.

516. The following substantives, ending in **ail**, form their plural by changing this termination into **aux**: *Bail*, lease; *corail*, coral; *émail*, enamel; *plumail*, feather-broom; *soupirail*, air-hole; *travail*, labor; *vantail*, folding-door; *ventail*, ventail. The other substantives in **ail** form their plural regularly, like *détail*, *détails*.

Attendrais is the second person singular of the conditional mood of *attendre*, already seen.

517. The second person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive is formed by changing the final **e** into **ais**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same mood (513, 514).

Priât is a form (124) of the verb *prier*, to pray.

Tu serais is the second person singular of the conditional mood of *être*.

Heureux is the masculine of *heureuse* (142), seen in the twenty-first lesson.

Diminuer is a verb of the first conjugation (121, 250).

FATIGUE comes from the Latin *fatigare*, to weary. The corresponding verb is *fatiguer* (303).

PRENANT is the present participle of the irregular verb *prendre*, already seen.

PART has been mentioned in the tenth lesson, as being the radical of *plupart*. It is feminine by exception (14).

TU AURAIS is the second person singular of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

Examples have been seen in this lesson of the second person singular of the conditional mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Tu t'empress*ERAIS *de le soulager*."

"*Tu ne souffr*IRAIS *pas que ton père*," etc.

"*Tu n'attendr*AIS *pas qu'il t'en priât*."

"*Tu* SERAIS *heureux*."

"*Tu* AURAIS *besoin de t'acquitter*."

BESOIN comes from the Italian *bisogno*, want. *Avoir besoin* corresponds to the English verb *to want* or *to need*.

ACQUITTER is derived from the adjective *quitte* (148), quit, free, clear, which comes from the Latin *quietus*, quiet.

DOIS is the second person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *devoir*, signifying *to owe*, and corresponding besides to *ought*, *must*, and *should*. This verb is irregular (117).

ALLONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *aller*, already seen.

518. The first person plural of the imperative mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive is formed by changing this termination into **ons**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative mood (28, 290, 293).

The whole of this mood in the verbs in *er* has now been seen: *Parl*E, *all*ONS, *dépêch*EZ (465).

AIE is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *avoir*.

The whole of this mood in the verb *avoir* has now been seen: *Aie*, *ayons*, *ayez*.

FERMETÉ is derived from the adjective *ferme*, firm, which comes from the Latin *firmus*. It is feminine (241).

DÉGOURDIS is the second person singular of the imperative

mood of *dégourdir* (460, 454). *Engourdir* is to benumb (257, 506), and *dégourdir*, to remove numbness.

519. § 1. **Dé** is an inseparable particle, often negative like *dis* (250), but sometimes having the sense of the preposition *de*, from, and denoting extraction or removing, as: *Débourser*, to disburse, from *bourse*, purse; *détourner*, to turn away, to draw aside, from *tourner*, to turn; etc.

§ 2. It becomes **dés** before a vowel, as in *désagréable*, disagreeable; *désobstruer*, to clear from obstruction.

The whole of the imperative mood in the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Dégourd*IS, *divert*ISSONS, *garn*ISSEZ (465).

SOIS is the second person singular of the imperative mood of *être*.

Examples have now been seen of the second person singular of the imperative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*A quoi penses-tu? Parl*E."—25th lesson.

"*Dégourd*IS-*toi*."—29th lesson.

"*Répond*S. *Ne te repentiras-tu pas?*"—25th lesson.

"SOIS *mon soutien*."—29th lesson.

"AIE *de la fermeté*."—29th lesson.

SOUTIEN is one of the derivatives of *tenir*, mentioned in the third lesson.

LIEU, place, stead, comes from the Latin *locus*, place. *Au lieu de* corresponds to *instead of*, and *au lieu que*, to *whereas* or *whilst;* that is to say, the first is a preposition and the latter a conjunction.

CHARGE is one of the derivatives of *char*, mentioned in the sixteenth lesson.

SYNTAX.*

Tu serais **heureux de** *diminuer.*

520. Adjectives, as well as verbs, are often followed by certain prepositions, the use of which cannot always be determined by

---

* See note on page 282.

rules. The following list comprises the most of such adjectives, with the prepositions they govern.

Absent de, absent from (in speaking of places, not of persons).
Accessible à, accessible to.
Accoutumé à, accustomed to.
Adhérent à, adherent to.
Adroit à, dexterous in.
Affable à, envers, affable to.
Agréable à, agreeable to.
Aise de, glad of, at.
Alarmant pour, alarming to.
Ambitieux de, ambitious of.
Amoureux de, enamored of, in love with.
Analogue à, analogous to.
Antérieur à, prior to.
Applicable à, applicable to.
Apre à, eager for.
Ardent à, ardent for.
Assidu à, assiduous in, to—*auprès de*, to.
Attentif à, attentive to, intent on, mindful of.
Aveugle sur, blind to.
Avide de, greedy of, eager for.
Capable de, capable of, to.
Cher à, dear to.
Civil envers, à l'égard de, civil to.
Commun à, avec, common to.
Comparable à, avec, comparable to.
Compatible avec, compatible with.
Complice de, accessory to, instrumental in.
Conforme à, consonant to, with; conformable to.
Connu de, known to.
Consolant pour, consolatory to.
Constant dans, en, constant to.
Content de, pleased with, to; glad of, to.
Contigu à, contiguous to.
Contraire à, contrary to; averse to, from.
Convenable à, suitable to, for.
Coupable de, guilty of.
Cruel à, envers, cruel to.
Curieux de, curious of, after, to—*en*, in.
Dangereux pour (before substantives and pronouns), dangerous to—*à* (before the infinitive mood), to.
Dédaigneux de, disdainful of, to.
Désagréable à, disagreeable to.
Désireux de, desirous of, to; anxious for, to.
Dépourvu de, destitute of.
Différent de, different from.
Difficile à, difficult to.
Digne de, worthy of, to.
Docile à, docile to.
Dur à, hard to.
Egal à, equal to, with.
Enclin à, prone to.
Endurci à, contre, dans, hardened to; inured to; callous to.
Envieux de, envious of, at.
Equivalent à, equivalent to.
Etranger en, dans, à, foreign to, from; alienate from.
Esclave de, slave to.
Exact à, exact in, to.
Exempt de, exempt, free from.
Expert en, expert in, at.
Fâché de, sorry for, to; angry at—*contre*, angry with.
Facile à, easy to.
Faible de, en, deficient in.
Fameux par, famous for—*dans, en*, renowned in.
Familier avec, à, familiár with, to.
Favorable à, favorable to.
Fécond en, pregnant with, fruitful in.
Fertile en, fertile in.
Fidèle à, faithful to; true to.
Fier de, proud of, to.
Formidable à, formidable to.
Fort en, de, strong by—*en, sur, à*, skilled in.
Fou de, mad after, for; doting on.
Funeste à, fatal to.
Furieux de, enraged at.
Glorieux de, proud of, to.
Gros de, big with; full of.
Habile à, en, dans, skilful, clever in, at, to.
Heureux à, en, dans, happy at—*de*, to.
Honteux de, ashamed of, to.
Idolâtre de, doting on.
Ignorant en, sur, de, ignorant in, of.
Impatient de, impatient at, for, of, under, to.
Impénétrable à, impenetrable to.
Importun à, importunate, troublesome to.
Inabordable à, inaccessible to.
Inaccessible à, inaccessible to.
Incapable de, incapable of, unable to.
Incertain de, uncertain of, to.
Incommode à, inconvenient to.
Incompatible avec, incompatible with.
Inconcevable à, pour, inconceivable to.
Inconciliable avec, irreconcilable to, with.
Inconnu à, unknown to.
Inconsolable de, inconsolable for.
Indépendant de, independent of, on.

Indigne de, unworthy of, to.
Indocile à, indocile to.
Indulgent à, pour, envers, indulgent to.
Inébranlable à, contre, dans, immovable, steadfast in.
Inexorable à, inexorable to.
Inexplicable à, unaccountable to.
Infatigable à, indefatigable in.
Inférieur à, en, inferior to, in.
Infidèle à, unfaithful to.
Ingénieux pour, à, ingenious in, to.
Ingrat envers, ungrateful to—*à*, ungrateful for, unprofitable for.
Injurieux à, pour, injurious to, hurtful to, insulting to.
Inquiet de, sur, anxious for, about; uneasy at, about, to.
Insatiable de, insatiable in.
Insensible à, insensible of, to.
Inséparable de, inseparable from.
Insolent avec, insolent to.
Insouciant de, careless of.
Invincible à, invincible, not to be vanquished by.
Invisible à, pour, invisible to.
Invulnérable à, invulnerable to.
Issu de, descended from.
Ivre de, intoxicated with.
Jaloux de, jealous of, to.
Justiciable de, amenable to.
Las de, weary of, to.
Lent dans (before subst.), *à* (before verbs), slow in.
Libre de, free from, at liberty to.
Libéral de, envers, liberal of, to, towards.
Mécontent de, dissatisfied with.
Ménager de, sparing of, careful of.
Miséricordieux envers, merciful to.
Nécessaire à, pour (before subst.), necessary to, for—*pour* (before verbs), necessary to.
Nuisible à, hurtful to.
Obéissant à, obedient to.
Odieux à, odious to.
Officieux envers, officious to.
Orgueilleux de, proud of, to.
Paresseux à, slow in.
Particulier à, peculiar to.
Patient dans, à l'égard de, patient of, with.
Pénible à, painful to.
Plein de, full of.
Précieux à, precious to.
Préférable à, preferable to.
Prêt à, ready for, to.
Prodigue de, en, envers, prodigal of, to.
Profitable à, profitable to.
Prompt à, prompt to, ready to.
Propice à, propitious to.
Propre à, proper for, to; fit for, to; suited to.
Rebelle à, rebellious to.
Reconnaissant de, grateful for—*à, envers*, grateful to.
Redevable de, indebted for—*à*, indebted to.
Redoutable à, redoubtable to.
Respectable par, à, respectable on account of, to.
Responsable de, à, envers, accountable for, to.
Riche en, de, rich in.
Semblable à, similar to.
Sensible à, sensible of, to.
Sévère pour, envers, à l'égard de, severe to.
Soigneux de, careful of, for, to.
Sourd à, deaf to.
Sujet à, subject to; liable to.
Supportable à, supportable to, for.
Sûr de, sure of, to.
Surpris de, surprised at, to.
Tributaire de, tributary to.
Utile à, useful for, to.
Versé dans, conversant in, with, about.
Victorieux de, victorious over.
Vide de, void of, destitute of.
Vif à, quick in, to.
Voisin de, neighboring to; bordering on.

An example will be seen in the next lesson, showing when the preposition that follows an adjective is determined by a rule.

En *en prenant ta part.*

The word *en*, which is repeated in this phrase, has two different meanings. The first time it is a preposition, corresponding

to *by*. The second time, it is a pronoun, signifying *of them*, and already explained (268).

521. The preposition BY, used in English before the present participle, to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by **en**.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Tu décideras.* See Obs. 512.—Thou wilt blame—Thou wilt cease—Thou wilt diminish—Thou wilt ask—Thou wilt throw—Thou wilt occupy.

2. Model: *Tu souffrirais.* See Obs. 513.—Thou wouldst sleep—Thou wouldst finish—Thou wouldst languish—Thou wouldst obey—Thou wouldst open—Thou wouldst serve.

3. Model: *Tu t'empresserais.* See Obs. 514.—Thou wouldst stop [thyself]—Thou wouldst admire thyself—Thou wouldst amuse thyself—Thou wouldst acquit thyself—Thou wouldst blame thyself—Thou wouldst give thyself—Thou wouldst throw thyself.

4. Model: *Tu attendrais.* See Obs. 517.—Thou wouldst learn—Thou wouldst drink—Thou wouldst understand—Thou wouldst know—Thou wouldst believe—Thou wouldst say—Thou wouldst write—Thou wouldst instruct—Thou wouldst take—Thou wouldst please—Thou wouldst live.

5. Model: *Allons.* See Obs. 518.—Let us work—Let us find—Let us remain—Let us reward—Let us look—Let us weep—Let us speak—Let us pass—Let us pronounce—Let us forget.

6. Model: *Heureux de.* Syntax, 520.—Ambitious of glory—Agreeable to the victor—Attentive to the lesson—Dear to his parents—Ashamed of his faults—Happy to see you—Ungrateful to their father—Free from all constraint—At liberty to speak—Necessary to your friends—Necessary to know—Ready to speak.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Thou wilt pass before the shop, but thou wilt not stop [thyself]—512.

2. If thou seest thy comrade, thou wilt call him—512.

3. If thou hadst children, how wouldst thou feed them?—513.

4. Thou wouldst sleep better, if thou exercisedst thy arms—513.

5. Wouldst thou *pay* [acquit thyself], if thou hadst money?—514.

6. How wouldst thou dispose of thy money?—514.

7. Encourage your workmen by your example—515.

8. He pockets his money—515.

9. Why wouldst thou not write to thy mother?—517.

10. Thou wouldst understand, if thou wast attentive—517.

11. Let us eat some bread and meat—518.

12. Let us play at leap-frog—518.

13. The one undoes what the other does—519.

14. Have we said any thing that displeases you?—519.

15. My books are not *in* [at] their place; you have displaced them—519.

16. Is that child able to understand us?—520.

17. Are you ready to answer me?—520.

18. You are at liberty to say what you think—520.

19. By rewarding your children, you will render them attentive—521.

20. It is not by weeping that you will free yourselves from oppression—521.

21. Give *an* [the] example of moderation, by forgetting our *offense* [wrongs]—521.

THIRTIETH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION,

Trentième leçon.
Thirtieth

Mais Alexis restait sourd à ces exhorta-
remained deaf exhorta-
tions. "Mon père," se disait-il, "est en
tions to himself
ceci comme toutes les vieilles gens, qui ne
this like old people
veulent pas qu'on se divertisse, parce
will one's self divert (subj.)
que rien ne les distrait, et qu'il leur est
distracts to them
difficile de comprendre une manière de
difficult to understand
voir différente de | la leur. | Il s'étonne
different theirs wonders
que je sois comme tous les jeunes gens.
be
Il ne se plaindrait pas tant s'il était
would complain so much
moins âgé. Il sentirait lui-même le be-
aged would feel
soin de distractions, et n'exigerait pas
distractions would require
que je fusse plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-
were (subj.) sedate

être été autrefois. Il se peut qu'il ait
formerly It may (be) have (subj.)
raison au fond, quoiqu'il pousse trop loin
bottom though push (subj.)
la rigidité. Mais, bah! qu'il attende.
rigidity pshaw wait (subj.)
J'aurai bien le temps de piocher quand
shall have to dig (to fag)
il le faudra absolument."
must (in the future) absolutely

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

But Alexis turned a deaf ear to these expostulations. "My father," thought he, "is in this respect like all old people, who will not allow one to divert one's self, because nothing pleases them, and who can rarely enter into the views of other people. He wonders at my being like all young men. He would not complain so much if he were younger. He would feel the want of diversion himself, and would not expect me to be more steady than perhaps he was in his youth. He may be right upon the whole, though he carries his austerity too far. But, no matter, let him wait. I shall have plenty of time to fag, when it becomes absolutely necessary."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trentième.
A quoi Alexis restait-il sourd?	A ces exhortations.
Alexis était-il sensible aux exhortations de son père?	Non. Il y restait sourd.
Que disait-il de son père?	"Mon père est comme toutes les vieilles gens."
Qu'est-ce que les vieilles gens ne veulent pas?	Ils ne veulent pas qu'on se divertisse.
Qu'est-ce qui les distrait?	Rien ne les distrait.

Qu'est-ce qu'il leur est difficile de comprendre?	Une manière de voir différente de la leur.
De quoi s'étonne le père d'Alexis?	Il s'étonne que son fils soit comme tous les jeunes gens.
Qu'est-ce qu'il ne ferait pas s'il était moins âgé?	Il ne se plaindrait pas tant.
Que sentirait-il lui-même?	Il sentirait le besoin de distractions.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'exigerait pas?	Il n'exigerait pas que son fils fût plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-être été autrefois.
Aux yeux d'Alexis, le père a-t-il tort?	Non. Il se peut qu'il ait raison au fond.
Que pousse-t-il trop loin?	La rigidité.
Alexis se décide-t-il à obéir à son père?	Non. Il s'écrie: "Bah! qu'il attende."
Quand aura-t-il le temps de piocher?	Quand il le faudra absolument.
Que fera-t-il quand il le faudra absolument?	Il piochera.
Dites-moi la même chose, en vous servant d'une autre expression.	Il travaillera.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Savez-vous votre leçon?	Do you know your lesson?
Je crois la savoir assez bien.	I think I know it pretty well.
Combien y a-t-il de genres en français?	How many genders are there in French?
Il y en a trois.	There are three.
Non, monsieur, il n'y en a que deux.	No, sir, there are but two.
Ah, oui, c'est vrai: le masculin et le féminin.	Oh, yes, that's true: the masculine and the feminine.
De quel genre sont les mots qui ne finissent pas par un *e* muet?	Of what gender are the words that do not end in *e* mute?
Ils sont du genre masculin.	They are of the masculine gender.
De quel genre sont ceux qui finissent par un *e* muet?	Of what gender are those which end in *e* mute?

Ils sont nécessairement féminins.	They are of course feminine.
Pourquoi avez-vous dit nécessairement ?	Why do you say of course ?
Comme il n'y a que deux genres, tout mot qui n'est pas masculin est nécessairement féminin.	As there are but two genders, every word that is not masculine is feminine of course.
C'est juste.	Right.
Est-ce que tous les mots qui finissent par un *e* muet sont féminins ?	Are all the words ending in *e* mute feminine ?
Non. Il y a beaucoup d'exceptions.	No. There are many exceptions.
Quelles sont les principales exceptions ? Vous en souvenez-vous ?	What are the principal exceptions ? Do you remember ?
Non. Je les oublie toujours. Soyez assez bon pour me les redire.	No. I always forget them. Be so kind as to repeat them to me.
Les mots en *ice* sont masculins, comme *vice*, *service*.	Words in *ice* are masculine, as *vice*, *service*.
Ceux en *age*, comme *village*, *courage*.	Those in *age*, as *village*, *courage*.
Ceux en *aire* sont masculins aussi.	Again, those in *aire* are masculine.
Voulez-vous m'en donner des exemples ?	Can you give me some examples ?
Vous ne répondez pas ?	You do not answer ?
Je vous demande pardon, je pensais à autre chose.	I beg your pardon ; I was thinking of something else.
Il me semble que cette étude ne vous amuse pas beaucoup.	I think this study does not amuse you very much.
A vous parler franchement, je la trouve fort ennuyeuse.	To speak the truth, I find it very tedious.
Pourquoi donc prenez-vous des leçons ?	Why then do you take lessons ?
Parce que mes parents le veulent.	Because my parents wish it.
Alors il faut avoir du courage.	Then you must have courage.
J'en aurai.	I will.
Vous en serez récompensé par le succès.	Success will be your reward.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

TRENTIÈME is derived from *trente*, already seen (44, 90).

RESTAIT is a form (47) of the verb *rester*, seen in the twenty-ninth lesson.

SOURD comes from the Latin *surdus*, deaf, which has also given rise to the English words *surd*, deaf, and *surdity*, deafness.

EXHORTATION, derived from the verb *exhorter*, to exhort, is feminine (99).

522. Ceci, formed of *ce* and *ci*, this here, is a demonstrative pronoun, corresponding to *this*. It refers to things only. It has no feminine and no plural. See *cela* (198), and *ci* (351, 352.)

VIEILLES is the plural feminine of *vieux*, *vieil*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

VEULENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *vouloir*, already seen.

DIVERTISSE is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *divertir*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

523. The third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isse**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense and mood.

DISTRAIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *distraire*.

DIFFICILE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

COMPRENDRE has been seen in the imperfect tense in the thirteenth lesson.

DIFFÉRENT is an adjective derived from the verb *différer*, to differ. It governs the preposition *de* (520).

524. Leur, seen as a possessive adjective (152), becomes a

---

* See note on page 282.

possessive pronoun, when preceded by the article. **Le leur** is masculine and singular; **la leur**, feminine and singular; **les leurs**, plural of both genders. These three forms correspond to *theirs.*

ÉTONNE is a form (22) of the verb *étonner*, seen in the imperfect tense in the thirteenth lesson.

JE SOIS is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *être.*

The whole of this tense of the verb *être* has now been seen: *Je sois, tu sois, il soit, nous soyons, vous soyez, ils soient.*

PLAINDRAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *plaindre*, seen in the imperfect tense in the twenty-fourth lesson.

525. The third person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing the final **e** into **ait**.

ÂGÉ is derived from *âge*, seen in the fourteenth lesson.

SENTIRAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *sentir*, already seen.

526. The third person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ait** to this termination (525, 527).

DISTRACTION is derived from the verb *distraire,* mentioned in this lesson. It is used in the sense of *diversion*, and in that of *abstraction* or *absence of mind;* but not in the sense of *confusion* or *madness*, like the English word *distraction.*

EXIGERAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *exiger*, seen in the imperfect tense in the thirteenth lesson.

527. The third person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ait** to this termination (525, 526).

JE FUSSE is the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *être.*

The whole of this tense of the verb *être* has now been seen: *Je fusse, tu fusses, il fût, nous fussions, vous fussiez, ils fussent.*

RANGÉ is the past participle of *ranger*, to range, to arrange, to set in order, derived from *rang*, seen in the twenty-sixth lesson. When *rangé* is used adjectively, it corresponds to *sedate* or *steady.*

AUTREFOIS is an adverb formed of *autre* and *fois*, both of which have been seen.

PEUT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *pouvoir*, already seen.

IL SE PEUT is an idiomatic phrase which corresponds to *it may be, it is possible, it may happen.*

AIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

FOND is of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

528. **Quoique**, formed of *quoi* and *que*, is one of the conjunctions after which the subjunctive mood is required (244). It must not be confounded with **quoi que**, in two separate words, signifying *whatever*. The elision of the *e* in *quoique* is admitted only before *il, elle, on, un, une.*

POUSSE is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *pousser*, to push, to thrust, to drive on, to shoot forth, to grow, which comes from the Latin *pulsare*, to push.

529. The third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **e**. It is similar: to the first person singular of the same tense and mood; to the first and third persons singular of the present tense of the indicative; and to the second person singular of the imperative mood.

RIGIDITÉ is feminine (241).

ATTENDE is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *attendre*, already seen.

530. The third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **e**. It is similar to the first person singular of the same tense and mood.

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Quoiqu'il pousse trop loin la rigidité.*"—30th lesson.

"*Qui ne veulent pas qu'on se divertisse.*"—30th lesson.

"*Qu'il attende.*"—30th lesson.

"*Je ne dis pas qu'il soit nécessaire.*"—23d lesson.

"*Il se peut qu'il ait raison.*"—30th lesson.

PIOCHER is derived from *pioche*, pickaxe, a word of unknown origin. The literal sense of *piocher* is *to dig*. When used for fagging or working hard, it is familiar.

FAUDRA is the future tense of *falloir* (287).

ABSOLUMENT is the adverb corresponding to the adjective *absolu*, absolute (31).

531. **Ab** is an inseparable particle which comes from the Latin and signifies *from*. It denotes extraction or separation, and is common to many words which are nearly the same in French and in English, as: *Absolu*, absolute; *abuser*, to abuse. It becomes **abs** before *t*, as *abstrait*, abstract, etc.

SYNTAX.*

Toutes *les vieilles* **gens.**
Tous *les jeunes* **gens.**

532. § 1. The substantive **gens** is masculine (11th lesson); but, by an arbitrary exception, the adjective which precedes it takes the feminine form when its termination is not *e* mute. And if this adjective is itself preceded by a definitive, as *un*, *tout*, or *certain*, the definitive also takes the feminine form. Thus, we say: "*Une de ces vieilles gens*, *Toutes ces bonnes gens*, *Certaines méchantes gens*."

§ 2. The adjective takes the feminine gender only when it precedes *gens*, and never when it follows it; accordingly we say: "*Les vieilles gens sont* SÉRIEUX," and not SÉRIEUSES.

§ 3. When the adjective placed immediately before *gens* ends in *e* mute, and therefore presents no difference between the masculine and the feminine gender, the definitive which precedes it remains masculine, as in the phrase, "TOUS *les jeunes gens*."

---

* See note on page 282.

Il est difficile **de** *comprendre.*

The adjective *difficile* has been seen in the twenty-ninth lesson (520) as governing the preposition *à*. In this lesson, however, it is followed by *de*.

533. In impersonal phrases, such as: *Il est difficile*, *Il est nécessaire*, *Il semble utile*, *Il devient facile*, etc., the adjective takes **de** before the infinitive that follows.

Plus *rangé qu'il* **ne** *l'a été.*

534. After *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *meilleur*, *autre*, and *autrement*, in comparative phrases, the word *que* must be followed by the negative **ne**, particularly when the principal proposition is affirmative, as: *Il exige que je sois plus rangé qu'il* NE *l'a été.*

535. When the principal proposition is negative, the word **ne** is usually omitted after *que*, if the compared quality is not denied or doubtful, as: *Il a été rangé, et je ne le serai pas moins qu'il l'a été;* because here the quality of being sedate is not doubtful. But when the quality is not taken for granted, the negative **ne** is required in the second clause of the proposition, as in this example: *Il n'exigerait pas que je fusse plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-être été*, which implies a doubt of the father's steadiness.

Plus rangé qu'il ne **l'***a été.*

536. In comparative phrases constructed with *aussi*, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, and other similar adverbs, the verb which follows *que* must be preceded by the pronoun **le** (264).

Qu'il attende.

537. It has been seen (465) that the imperative mood is used only in the second person, singular and plural, and in the first person plural; and that such English forms as: *Let me wait*, *let him wait*, *let them wait*, are rendered by the subjunctive mood. In such phrases, a verb expressing desire or volition is understood, thus: *Je souhaite qu'il attende*, *Je veux qu'il attende.*

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Qu'il divertisse.* See Obs. 523.—That he may warn—That he may finish—That he may enjoy—That he may languish—That he may obey—That he may betray.

2. Model: *La leur.* See Obs. 524.—This money is theirs—This shop is theirs—These copy-books are theirs—That dictionary was theirs—That school was theirs—Those savings were theirs.

3. Model: *Il plaindrait.* See Obs. 525.—He would wait—He would drink—He would believe—He would write—He would instruct—He would put—He would lose—He would live.

4. Model: *Il sentirait.* See Obs. 526.—He would accomplish—He would sleep—He would open—He would depart—He would succeed—He would suffer—He would serve.

5. Model: *Il exigerait.* See Obs. 527.—He would blame—He would reckon—He would diminish—He would astonish—He would taste—He would throw—He would leave—He would eat—He would occupy—He would remain.

6. Model: *Quoiqu'il pousse.* See Obs. 528, 529.—Though he assures—Though she loves—Though one blames—Though he reckons—Though she decides—Though one listens—Whatever he may taste—Whatever one may think.

7. Model: *Qu'il attende.* See Obs. 530, and Syntax, 537.—Let him defend—Let him hear—Let him put—Let him lose—Let him answer—Let him sell.

8. Model: *Toutes les vieilles gens.* Syntax, 532, § 1.—One of these good people—Certain tedious people—All these excellent people—All these wicked people.

9. Model: *Des gens sérieux.* Syntax, 532, § 2.—(Place the adjective after the substantive.)—Some aged people—Some giddy people—Some happy people—Some intelligent people—Some attentive people.

10. Model: *Tous les jeunes gens.* Syntax, 532, § 3.—One of these young people—All these *honest* [brave] people—All those poor people.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. What do you think of this ?—522.
2. Leave that, and eat this—522.
3. Do you believe that your friend betrays you ?—523.
4. I wonder at his blushing *at* [of] his profession—523.
5. We have our books, and you have yours ; but our comrades have not found theirs—524.
6. We have finished our task, but they have not finished theirs—524.
7. Our project is better than theirs—524.
8. He would write if he had paper—525.
9. Would your horse drink, if I gave him some water ?—525.
10. My brother would understand better, if he *were* [was] more attentive—525.
11. Your mother would depart to-morrow, if she had money —526.
12. If that man remained with us, he would divert *the whole* [all the] company—526.
13. Would he remain, if he *were* [was] invited ?—527.
14. Yes, and he would astonish you—527.
15. He would talk from morning till night—527.
16. She does not seem to understand, though she listens very attentively—528, 529.
17. He is not strong, though he eats much—528, 529.
18. He does not advance, though he works with ardor—528, 529.
19. If he wants money, let him sell his house—530, 537.
20. Let him defend himself, if he is assailed—530, 537.
21. Let him follow us, if he will not remain alone—530, 537.
22. Those merchants are good people—532.
23. One of those old people has made us a sermon—532.
24. One of those young people is my friend—532.
25. All those poor people are to be pitied—532.
26. Those good people are deaf to our remonstrances—532.
27. It is not agreeable to speak to a deaf *man*—533.

28. It is necessary to work—533.

29. It is wise to reflect before *one speaks* [to speak]—533.

30. It is sad to think that we oblige ungrateful *people*—533.

31. It is useful to know the French language—533.

32. His manners are more *genteel* [distinguished] than they were—534, 536.

33. Remonstrances are less necessary to-day than they were yesterday—534, 536.

34. He is not less deaf than he was—535, 536.

35. The son is not more giddy than his father was in his youth—535, 536.

36. One cannot be more ungrateful than he is—535, 536.

THIRTY-FIRST LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente et unième leçon.

L'honnête artisan mourut pauvre, ne
honest mechanic died

laissant à son fils que la somme exiguë de
leaving sum scanty

cinq cents francs, pour tout patrimoine.
hundred francs patrimony

Après l'enterrement, et quand les pre-
burial

miers transports de la douleur furent
transports grief were

calmés, Alexis se demanda comment il
calmed to himself asked

pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital.
could to be fruitful feeble capital

"Me voilà livré à moi-même," se dit-il.
delivered up myself said

"Il faut que je gagne de quoi vivre, ou
earn (subj.) wherewith

que je meure de faim. Il est grand temps
die (subj.) hunger

que j'aie de la résolution et que j'agisse.
have (subj.) resolution act (subj.)

Je fus insensible aux bonnes paroles de
was insensible words

mon père, tant qu'il vécut. Je n'eus point
so long as lived had

égard à ses prières, et je m' endurcis dans
regard prayers myself hardened

mon égoïsme. Maintenant, je gémis de
egotism Now groan

n'avoir pas tenu compte de ses avis, dont
kept account advices of which

je sens la sagesse."
feel wisdom

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

The honest mechanic died poor, leaving his son no other patrimony than a small sum of five hundred francs. After the burial, and when the first burst of grief had subsided, Alexis considered how he could make his little capital most productive. "Here I am," thought he, "left to my own resources. I must either earn a livelihood, or starve. It is high time for me to summon up resolution and to act. I was insensible to my father's kind words, so long as he lived. I disregarded his entreaties, and was obdurate in my selfishness. Now, I lament having slighted his advice, for I feel the wisdom of it."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente et unième.
Qui est-ce qui mourut pauvre?	L'honnête artisan.
A qui laissa-t-il la somme de cinq cents francs?	A son fils.
Que laissa-t-il à son fils?	La somme exiguë de cinq cents francs.
Restait-il à Alexis autre chose que cette somme?	Non. C'était tout son patrimoine.

Après quoi Alexis se demanda-t-il comment il pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital?	Après l'enterrement.
Est-ce que ce fut longtemps après l'enterrement?	Ce fut quand les premiers transports de la douleur furent calmés.
Que se demanda-t-il?	Comment il pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital.
Dans quelle position se trouvait-il?	Il se trouvait livré à lui-même.
Que fallait-il qu'il fît, s'il ne voulait pas mourir de faim?	Il fallait qu'il gagnât de quoi vivre.
A quoi était-il exposé, s'il ne gagnait pas de quoi vivre?	A mourir de faim.
Avait-il encore le temps d'être oisif et de flâner?	Non. Il était grand temps qu'il eût de la résolution et qu'il agît.
A quoi fut-il insensible, tant que son père vécut?	Aux bonnes paroles de son père.
Quand fut-il insensible aux bonnes paroles de son père?	Tant que son père vécut.
A quoi n'eut-il point égard?	Aux prières de son père.
Dans quelle disposition s'endurcit-il?	Dans son égoïsme.
De quoi gémit-il après avoir perdu son père?	De n'avoir pas tenu compte de ses avis—*or*, des avis de son père.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
D'où venez-vous, mon cher?	Where do you come from, my dear fellow?
De chez votre créancier.	From your creditor's.
Ah!	Oh!
Avant tout, je m'empresse de vous dire qu'il accepte votre proposition.	First of all, I hasten to tell you that he accepts your proposal.
Cela me fait bien plaisir.	I am happy to hear it.
J'ai eu de la peine à trouver sa maison.	It was difficult for me to find his house.

Bah?	Indeed?
Oui, vous m'aviez bien dit que c'était rue du Temple.	Yes, you told me it was in Temple street.
Eh bien?	Well?
Mais la rue du Temple est longue.	But Temple street is long.
Je vous avais dit près du boulevard.	I told you near the boulevard.
Je l'avais oublié.	That I forgot.
Comment avez-vous fait?	How did you manage?
J'ai demandé à un jeune homme, dans une boutique.	I inquired of a young man, in a shop.
Par un heureux hasard, il connaissait M. Leroux.	Luckily, he happened to know Mr. Leroux.
Il a eu la bonté de me conduire jusqu'à sa maison.	He had the kindness to show me to his house.
M. Leroux est-il jeune ou vieux?	Is Mr. Leroux young or old?
C'est un homme d'un certain âge.	He is an elderly gentleman.
Quel air a-t-il?	What sort of a looking man is he?
Il a l'air d'un fort brave homme.	He looks like a very honest man.
Il était à écrire devant un bon feu.	He was writing before a good fire.
Il vous a bien reçu?	He gave you a good reception?
On ne peut mieux.	He could not give me a better.
On m'avait dit qu'il était dur et austère.	I had been told he was hard-hearted and austere.
Pas le moins du monde.	Not in the least.
Seulement, il est un peu sourd, de sorte que j'ai été obligé de parler très-haut.	Only, he is rather deaf, so that I was obliged to speak very loud.
Nous nous sommes entretenus de votre affaire, et, comme je vous l'ai dit, il n'a fait aucune difficulté.	We talked about your affair, and, as I told you, he made no difficulty.
Vous êtes un excellent garçon, et je vous suis bien obligé.	You are an excellent fellow, and I am much obliged to you.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

HONNÊTE, from the Latin *honestus*, honest, is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6, 266).

ARTISAN is one of the derivatives of *art*, mentioned in the 10th lesson.

MOURUT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *mourir*, seen in the 24th lesson.

SOMME, from the Latin *summa*, sum, signifies *sum*, *amount*, or *burden;* and with these acceptations it is feminine according to analogy (15). *Somme* has, however, a third signification, viz., *a nap*, and it is then masculine; but in this sense its etymon is the Latin word *somnus*, sleep.

EXIGUË is the feminine of *exigu*, small (2).

538. The diœresis (··) is placed over the letters *e*, *i*, *u*, to show that they are to be pronounced distinctly from the vowels by which they may be accompanied. In *exiguë* it indicates that the *u* has to be sounded.

FRANC, a franc, is the unity of French coins. It is a piece of silver, weighing five *grammes* (see 17th lesson), and worth 20 sous, or 18 cents and 6 mills.

PATRIMOINE, from the Latin *patrimonium*, patrimony, is masculine by exception (15).

ENTERREMENT is derived from *terre*, earth, which comes from the Latin *terra* (515, 153).

TRANSPORT is one of the derivatives of *porter*, mentioned in the seventh lesson.

539. § 1. **Trans** is a Latin preposition signifying *beyond*, *across*, or *over*. In French it is an inseparable particle, common to words which are the same, or nearly the same, in English, as:

---

* See note on page 282.

Transporter, to transport; *transcrire*, to transcribe; *transférer*, to transfer, etc.

§ 2. It is sometimes shortened into **tra**, as in: *Tradition*, tradition; *traducteur*, translator; *trajet*, traject, etc.

DOULEUR is of the feminine gender, although it does not end with an *e* mute (95).

FURENT is the third person plural of the past tense definite of *être*.

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the past tense definite, in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Elles donnèrent cinq pour cent.*"—6th lesson.

"*Des revers assaillirent Monsieur Delatour.*"—6th lesson.

"*Elles suspendirent leurs paiements.*"—6th lesson.

"*Les transports furent calmés.*"—31st lesson.

"*Ces circonstances eurent pour résultat.*"—7th lesson.

CALMÉS is a form (52, 354) of the verb *calmer*, derived from the substantive *calme*, calm.

DEMANDER, with the reflective form *se demander*, to inquire of one's self, signifies *to cogitate*, *to consider*, and sometimes *to wonder*.

POURRAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *pouvoir*. In the future tense and in the conditional mood, the irregularity of this verb consists in the suppression of the letters *voi* and the reduplication of the final consonant, thus: *Tu pourras*, *il pourra*, etc., *tu pourrais*, *nous pourrions*, etc.

FRUCTIFIER is derived from *fruit*, seen in the 27th lesson.

540. The termination **fier**, from the Latin *fieri*, to become, or *facere*, to make, corresponds to the English termination *fy*, as in: *Justifier*, to justify; *fortifier*, to fortify; *signifier*, to signify, etc.

FAIBLE, feeble, weak, is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

CAPITAL is a word alike in French and in English (30).

ME VOILÀ (294).

LIVRÉ is a form (52) of the verb *livrer*.

DIT, in this lesson, is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *dire*. It is similar to the same person of the present

tense of the indicative mood, and to the past participle, seen in the first lesson.

GAGNE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *gagner*, to get, to gain, to earn, to win.

541. The first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **e** mute. It is similar: to the third person singular of the same tense and mood (529); to the first and third persons singular of the present tense of the indicative (349, 22); and to the second person singular of the imperative (460).

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *er* has now been seen: *Que je gagne, que tu écoutes, qu'il pousse, que nous amusions, que vous passiez, qu'ils aiment.*

DE QUOI, literally *of what*, is an idiomatic locution corresponding to *wherewith.*

MEURE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *mourir.* It is similar to the third person singular of the same tense and mood.

FAIM, from the Latin *fames*, hunger, is feminine by exception (14).

J'AIE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir.*

RÉSOLUTION is a word alike in French and in English (49). It is feminine (99).

J'AGISSE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *agir*, to act.

542. The first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isse**. It is similar to the third person singular of the same tense and mood (523), and to the first person singular of the past tense of the same mood.

The whole of the present tense of this mood in the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Que j'agisse, que tu obéisses, qu'il divertisse, que nous réussissions, que vous jaunissiez, qu'ils croupissent.*

JE FUS is the first person singular of the past tense definite of *être.*

The whole of this tense of the verb *être* has now been seen: *Je fus, tu fus, il fut, nous fûmes, vous fûtes, ils furent.*

INSENSIBLE is one of the derivatives of *sens*, mentioned in the 11th lesson (170).

543. The termination **ible**, like *able* (97), denotes aptness or fitness. It serves to form adjectives, about half of which are the same in both languages, as: *Sensible, insensible, possible, terrible.*

PAROLE is one of the derivatives of *parler*, seen in the 13th lesson.

TANT QUE, when it refers to time, signifies *so long as, as long as* (344).

VÉCUT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of the irregular verb *vivre.*

J'EUS is the first person singular of the past tense definite of *avoir.*

The whole of this tense of the verb *avoir* has now been seen: *J'eus, tu eus, il eut, nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent.*

ÉGARD is of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

PRIÈRE is derived from the verb *prier*, seen in the 29th lesson.

J'ENDURCIS is the first person singular of the past tense definite of *endurcir*, derived from *dur*, seen in the 28th lesson (257, 515).

544. The first person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **is**. It is similar: to the second person singular of the same tense (508); to the first and second persons singular of the present tense of the indicative (325, 454); and to the second person singular of the imperative mood (460).

The whole of this tense in the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *J'endurcis, tu finis, il affranchit, nous remplîmes, vous finîtes, ils assaillirent.*

ÉGOÏSME comes from the Latin *ego*, I. It is masculine (538).

545. § 1. The termination **isme** serves to form abstract substantives, most of which end in *ism* in English, without any, or with scarcely any, other difference, as: *Egoïsme*, egotism; *magnétisme*, magnetism; *mécanisme*, mechanism, etc.

§ 2. Substantives ending in **isme** are masculine.

MAINTENANT is one of the derivatives of *tenir*, mentioned in the third lesson.

GÉMIS is a form (325) of the verb *gémir*, which comes from the Latin *gemere*, to groan.

TENU is the past participle of the irregular verb *tenir*. See *tint*, in the 20th lesson.

COMPTE, computation, reckoning, account, is derived from the verb *compter*, seen in the 27th lesson. It is masculine by exception (15).

TENIR COMPTE DE is an idiomatic locution signifying *to regard, to appreciate.*

AVIS is a word which does not change in the plural (17).

JE SENS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *sentir*, already seen.

SAGESSE is derived from *sage*, seen in the 23d lesson (442).

SYNTAX.*

Cinq **cents** *francs.*

546. The numeral adjectives **cent** and **vingt** are the only ones that take the mark of the plural, and that only when preceded by another number which multiplies them, as when we say: *Deux cents, trois cents, quatre-vingts.*

547. But when **cent** and **vingt** are followed by another number, they are invariable, thus: *Deux cent trente, quatre-vingt-trois, quatre-vingt-dix.*

Il pourrait **faire fructifier** *son capital.*

The literal translation of this phrase would be: *He could make bear fruit his capital;* which would be scarcely intelligible, the proper place of the words *his capital* being between *make* and *bear fruit.*

It has been seen (89) that the verb *faire* identifies itself with

---

* See note on page 282.

the next verb in the infinitive mood, and that both together seem to make but one verb. This accounts for the following rule.

548. § 1. When **faire** is followed by an infinitive, the regimen must not be placed between the two verbs. If it is a pronoun, it must precede *faire* (43); and if a substantive, it must follow the second verb.

§ 2. The imperative is the only mood in which the regimen, *if a pronoun*, is placed between *faire* and the next verb, thus: *Faites-le fructifier* (297).

De **n'***avoir* **pas** *tenu compte.*
or, *De* **ne pas** *avoir tenu compte.*

549. In negative phrases, **ne** invariably precedes the verb; it likewise precedes the object pronoun if there be one joined to the verb. The place of **pas** and **point** varies. They may precede or follow the verb in the infinitive mood; yet, they are more commonly placed before the infinitive than after it.

Dont *je sens la sagesse.*

550. When *of which* is used in the sense of *whose*, and rendered by **dont**, the construction is the same as that pointed out by rules 485 and 486; and this pronoun must never follow the substantive which it determines, as *of which* does when we say "*The wisdom of which I feel.*"

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Fructifier.* See Obs. 540.—To pacify—To specify—To edify—To modify—To qualify—To personify—To glorify—To terrify—To petrify—To purify—To rectify.

2. Model: *Que je gagne.* See Obs. 541.—That I may blame

—That I may reckon—That I may ask—That I may astonish—That I may taste—That I may throw—That I may occupy—That I may push—That I may remain—That I may relieve—That I may draw.

3. Model: *Que j'agisse.* See Obs. 542.—That I may bless—That I may divert—That I may harden—That I may moan—That I may feed—That I may obey—That I may reflect—That I may betray.

4. Model: *J'endurcis.* See Obs. 544.—I accomplished—I slept—I finished—I enjoyed—I languished—I obeyed—I departed—I filled—I felt.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. He *thinks* [dreams] of modifying his projects—540.
2. They want [will] to terrify you—540.
3. Do you wish me to leave him that sum?—541.
4. I will not be ungrateful, whatever place I may occupy—541.
5. It is necessary I should finish my work—542.
6. Do you doubt that I shall succeed?—542.
7. Will you be insensible to his grief?—543.
8. The place was inaccessible—543.
9. I departed at seven o'clock in the morning—544.
10. I filled my basket *with* [of] provisions—544.
11. What do you think of magnetism?—545.
12. Patriotism is a generous passion—545.
13. Is it with a sophism that he hopes to persuade you?—545.
14. He had seven hundred francs, and he gave me [of them] three hundred *and* fifty—546, 547.
15. My father died at the age of fourscore [years]—546.
16. He found *ninety* [fourscore ten] gudgeons in his net—547.
17. He makes honest people blush—548.

18. He makes his workmen labor from morning till night —548.

19. You have made me lose my time—548.

20. The parents made their children play—548.

21. He pretended not to have understood—549.

22. I desire not to be interrupted—549.

23. He has resolved not to answer—549, 187.

24. You have learned a language the study of which is difficult—550.

25. We saw a bridge the length of which astonished us—550.

26. He had a cake half of which he gave to his brother—550.

THIRTY-SECOND LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-deuxième leçon.

"Si nous écoutions ceux qui ont de l'ex-
listened ex-
périence, que de regrets nous nous
perience how many regrets to ourselves
épargnerions! Mais nous haïssons tout
should spare hate
ce qui contrarie nos penchants ou nos
counteracts
goûts. Les conseils nous obsèdent, et
counsels (advice) tease
nous les entendons avec ennui, sinon avec
hear
mépris. Et puis, quand viennent les ca-
contempt then come ca-
lamités que nous nous sommes attirées
lamities to ourselves attracted
par notre propre faute, nous nous écrions :
own fault exclaim
'C'est bien dommage que nous n'ayons pas
damage (pity)
cru ce qu'on nous disait?' Quoi qu'il en
believed Whatever of it
soit, il ne s'agit pas de se lamenter.
may be acts lament

Soyons homme. Je vaincrai mon
Let us be (Let me be) will conquer

naturel. J'essaierai de m'appliquer à
nature will try myself apply

quelque chose de sérieux; je finirai par
will finish

m' y accoutumer, et mes efforts me
myself to it accustom efforts

mèneront à la fortune."
will lead

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Did we but listen to those who have had experience, what regrets we should spare ourselves! Yet we hate every thing that thwarts our inclinations or our tastes. Advice annoys us, and we receive it with reluctance, if not with contempt. And afterwards, when calamities befall us, that we have drawn upon ourselves by our own fault, we exclaim: 'It is a great pity I did not believe what I was told!' Be this as it may, it is of no use to lament. I must behave like a man. I will vanquish my nature. I will try to apply myself to something serious; I shall get into the habit of it with time, and my exertions will lead me to fortune."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-deuxième.
Que nous épargnerions-nous, si nous écoutions ceux qui ont de l'expérience?	Nous nous épargnerions des regrets—*or*, beaucoup de regrets—*or*, bien des regrets.
Que faudrait-il faire pour nous épargner des regrets?	Il faudrait écouter ceux qui ont de l'expérience.
Que haïssons-nous?	Nous haïssons tout ce qui contrarie nos penchants ou nos goûts.

Qu'est-ce qui nous obsède?	Les conseils.
Comment les entendons-nous?	Nous les entendons avec ennui, sinon avec mépris.
Qu'est-ce que nous nous attirons par notre propre faute?	Nous nous attirons des calamités.
Que disons-nous, quand viennent ces calamités?	Nous nous écrions: "C'est bien dommage que nous n'ayons pas cru ce qu'on nous disait."
Quand nous écrions-nous: "C'est bien dommage?"	Quand viennent les calamités que nous nous sommes attirées par notre propre faute.
De quoi ne s'agit-il pas dans la position d'Alexis?	Il ne s'agit pas de se lamenter
Quelle exhortation Alexis se fait-il à lui-même?	Il se dit: "Soyons homme."
Que vaincra-t-il?	Il vaincra son naturel.
Qu'essaiera-t-il de faire?	Il essaiera de s'appliquer à quelque chose de sérieux.
S'y accoutumera-t-il?	Il dit qu'il finira par s'y accoutumer.
A quoi ses efforts le mèneront-ils?	Ils le mèneront à la fortune.
Qu'est-ce qui le mènera à la fortune?	Ses efforts.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Croiriez-vous que je ne suis pas encore bien accoutumé à la monnaie de France?	Would you believe it? I am not yet well used to French money.
C'est pourtant bien simple; nous n'avons que des francs et des centimes.	It is very simple, however; we have only francs and centimes.
Je sais bien que vous m'avez dit cela.	I know you told me so.
Eh bien?	Well?
Eh bien, j'entends parler tous les jours de louis, de livres, de sous et de liards.	Well, I every day hear of louis, of livres, sous, and farthings.

Ce sont de vieilles dénominations dont on se sert encore quelquefois.	They are old denominations which are still used now and then.
Hier, un jeune homme m'a proposé de jouer vingt-cinq louis.	A young man proposed to me yesterday to stake twenty-five louis.
Que lui avez-vous répondu?	What did you answer him?
Je lui ai répondu que je n'aimais pas le jeu. Mais qu'est-ce que c'est que vingt-cinq louis?	I told him that I was not fond of gaming. But what is twenty-five louis?
Cela veut dire six cents francs, parce qu'autrefois un louis valait vingt-quatre livres, ou vingt-quatre francs.	It means six hundred francs, because formerly a louis was twenty-four livres, or twenty-four francs.
Une autre personne me disait dernièrement qu'elle avait dix mille livres *de rente.*	Another person told me lately that he (*or* she) had ten thousand livres *de rente.*
Cela veut dire un revenu de dix mille francs par an.	It signifies ten thousand francs a year.
Moi, j'avais compris *ten thousand pounds.*	I understood it to be ten thousand pounds.
C'est bien différent.	There is a wide difference.
Comment rendriez-vous en français, *ten thousand a year?*	How would you express in French, "ten thousand a year?"
Nous dirions, dix mille livres sterling de revenu, ou bien deux cent cinquante mille francs de rente.	We should say "an income of ten thousand pounds sterling," or, "two hundred and fifty thousand francs a year."
Pourquoi dit-on quelquefois *un* livre, et quelquefois *une* livre?	Why do people say sometimes UN *livre*, and sometimes UNE *livre?*
Ce sont deux mots tout à fait différents.	They are two very different words.
Ce dictionnaire est *un* livre.	This dictionary is UN *livre*, a book.
Une livre est, comme je vous l'ai dit, un vieux mot pour un franc, ou bien encore pour la moitié d'un kilogramme.	A livre is, as I told you, an old word for a franc; or for a pound (weight), the half of a kilogram.
Maintenant, qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une pièce de cent sous?	Now, what is a piece of a hundred sous?

C'est une pièce de cinq francs, qui équivaut au cinquième d'une livre sterling.	It is a piece of five francs, which is equal to the fifth part of one pound sterling.
Il me reste encore une question à vous faire.	I have one last question to ask you.
Voyons.	Let me hear it.
L'autre jour, j'ai entendu dire: "Ça ne vaut pas deux liards."	The other day, I heard, "It is not worth two farthings."
J'ai compris qu'on parlait avec mépris de quelque chose. Mais qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un liard?	I understood that something was spoken of with contempt. But what is a farthing?
C'était autrefois le quart d'un sou.	It was formerly the fourth part of one sou.
Je vous suis bien obligé.	I am much obliged to you.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

ÉCOUTIONS is the first person plural of the imperfect tense of *écouter*, seen in the 24th lesson.

551. The first person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ions**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the subjunctive mood (370). The consequence of this rule is that, if the termination of the verb is *ier* in the infinitive, as in *étudier*, the *i* is doubled, thus: *Nous étudiions.*

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the imperfect tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Si nous écout*IONS *ceux qui ont de l'expérience.*"—32d lesson.

"*Nous pér*ISSIONS *d'ennui.*"—12th lesson.

"*Mots que nous n'entend*IONS *guère.*"—12th lesson.

---

* See note on page 282.

"*Nous y* ÉTIONS *avant six heures.*"—16th lesson.

"*Nous* AVIONS *un filet.*"—16th lesson.

EXPÉRIENCE is a word alike in French and in English (167). It is used for *experience* and *experiment.*

552. Que is used for *combien* in exclamative phrases, and corresponds to *how*, *how much*, and *how many.* When placed before a substantive, it requires *de* (39), thus: *Que de regrets.*

REGRET is a word masculine according to analogy (14).

ÉPARGNERIONS is the first person plural of the conditional mood of *épargner*, derived from *épargne*, which has been seen in the 6th lesson.

553. The first person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ions** to this termination.

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the conditional mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Que de regrets nous nous épargn*ERIONS!"—32d lesson.

"*Pourquoi ne jou*IRIONS-*nous pas de nos beaux jours?*"—14th lesson.

"*Pourquoi perd*RIONS-*nous des moments?*"—14th lesson.

"*Nous* SERIONS *bien fous.*"—12th lesson.

"*Nous* AURIONS *grand tort.*"—14th lesson.

HAÏSSONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *haïr*, to hate. The only irregularity of this verb consists in suppressing the diœresis (538) in the three persons singular of the present tense and in the second person singular of the imperative mood.

554. The first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **iss-ons**.

CONTRARIE is a form (22) of the verb *contrarier*, one of the derivatives of *contre,* mentioned in the 20th lesson.

CONSEIL has been mentioned in the 23d lesson, as being the radical of *conseiller.*

OBSÈDENT is a form of the verb *obséder*, to beset. It must be observed that the acute accent over the first *e* in *obséder* is changed into a grave accent in *obsèdent.*

555. § 1. Verbs in **er** in which the final syllable of the infinitive mood is preceded by **e** with an acute accent, as *obséder*, *posséder*, *espérer*, change this accent into a grave one before a syllable containing an *e* mute, thus: *Ils obsèdent, je possède.*

§ 2. Verbs in **éger**, as *protéger*, to protect, and in **eer**, as *créer*, to create, are excepted, and retain the acute accent in all their forms.

ENTENDONS is the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *entendre*, already seen.

556. The first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ons** (28, 554).

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Nous pen*SONS *que les proverbes sont vrais.*"—1st lesson.

"*Nous haï*SSONS *tout ce qui contrarie.*"—32d lesson.

"*Nous les entend*ONS *avec ennui.*"—32d lesson.

"*Nous le* SOMMES *enfin.*"—14th lesson.

"*Nous* AVONS *remarqué.*"—11th lesson.

MÉPRIS is of the masculine gender according to analogy.

PUIS has been mentioned in the 25th lesson, as being the radical of *depuis.*

VIENNENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *venir*, already seen.

CALAMITÉ, from the Latin *calamitas*, calamity, is feminine (241).

ATTIRÉES is a form (52, 53) of the verb *attirer*, one of the derivatives of *tirer*, mentioned in the 7th lesson.

FAUTE is feminine according to analogy. See 1st lesson.

ÉCRIONS is a form (28) of the pronominal verb *s'écrier*, seen in the 18th lesson.

DOMMAGE is masculine although ending with an *e* mute (215).

C'EST DOMMAGE is an idiomatic locution signifying *it is a pity.*

CRU is the past participle of the irregular verb *croire*, already seen.

QUOI QU'IL EN SOIT, literally *whatever it may be of it*, is an idiomatic locution corresponding to *be it as it may, however,*

nevertheless. The two words *quoi que* remain separate. See *quoique*, 528.

AGIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *agir*, to act.

557. The third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **it**. It is similar to the same person of the past tense definite (179).

AGIR is *to act;* but *s'agir* is an impersonal pronominal verb signifying *to be in question, to be the matter, to be at stake.*

LAMENTER comes from the Latin *lamentari*, to lament.

SOYONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *être.*

Examples have now been seen of the first person plural of the imperative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*All*ONS, *aie de la fermeté.*"—29th lesson.

"*Divert*ISSONS-*nous.*"—14th lesson.

"*N'attend*ONS *pas que nous soyons trop vieux.*"—14th lesson.

"SOYONS *homme.*"—32d lesson.

"*N'*AYONS *nulle autre pensée.*"—14th lesson.

The whole of the imperative mood has now been seen, and the nine particular observations by which its terminations have been pointed out may be condensed into one general rule, presented in the form of a synoptic table.

558. The **imperative mood** is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive into the following terminations:

	Verbs in ER.	Verbs in IR.	Verbs in RE.
2d pers. sing.	**e**	**is**	**s**
1st pers. plur.	**ons**	**iss-ons**	**ons**
2d. pers. plur.	**ez**	**iss-ez**	**ez**

It must be observed that the literal translation of *soyons* is *let us be;* but in this lesson it signifies *let me be.*

559. The **imperative mood**, in French, having no special form for the first person singular, the deficiency is sometimes supplied by means of the first person plural; and, in addressing

one's self, one says: *Allons, divertissons, attendons, soyons, ayons,* for: *Let me go, let me divert, let me wait, let me be, let me have.*

VAINCRAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *vaincre*, to vanquish, to overcome, which is an irregular verb; but its irregularity does not extend to the future tense.

560. The first person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing the final **e** into **ai**.

The whole of the future tense in the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je vainc*RAI, *tu défend*RAS, *il mord*RA, *nous attend*RONS, *vous prend*REZ, *ils surprend*RONT.

NATUREL is sometimes a substantive and sometimes an adjective. As a substantive it corresponds to *nature* or *temper;* as an adjective it signifies *natural* (217).

ESSAIERAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *essayer*, to try. According to rule 320, this first person of the future tense should be spelled *essayerai.*

561. Verbs ending in **yer**, as *essayer, appuyer,* change the vowel **y** into **i** before an *e* mute, thus: *J'essaie, tu appuies, il essaiera, nous appuierons.*

QUELQUE CHOSE, when taken as a single word signifying *something* or *any thing*, is masculine (166).

FINIRAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *finir*, already seen.

562. The first person singular of the future tense of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive mood, is formed by adding **ai** to this termination (320, 560).

Examples have now been seen of the first person singular of the future tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Je me charg*ERAI *du pain.*"—16th lesson.

"*Je fin*IRAI *par m'y accoutumer.*"—32d lesson.

"*Je vainc*RAI *mon naturel.*"—32d lesson.

"*Quand je ne* SERAI *plus.*"—25th lesson.

"*J'*AURAI *ma ligne.*"—15th lesson.

The whole of the future tense in the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Je fin*IRAI, *tu te repent*IRAS, *il bén*IRA, *nous part*IRONS, *vous fin*IREZ, *ils fourn*IRONT.

ACCOUTUMER is one of the derivatives of *coutume*, seen in the 18th lesson.

EFFORT is one of the derivatives of *fort*, mentioned in the 7th lesson.

MÈNERONT is the third person plural of the future tense of *mener*, mentioned in the 8th lesson.

563. The third person plural of the future tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by adding **ont** to this termination.

There is no accent over the first *e* of *mener* in the infinitive mood. In *mèneront*, there is a grave accent over it.

564. § 1. In verbs in **er**, the unaccented *e* which precedes the termination of the infinitive takes the grave accent before a syllable containing an *e* mute, preceded by a *single* consonant, as in these forms of *mener : Je mène, Je mènerai, Je mènerais.*

§ 2. But when the consonant is doubled, as in *jeter, je jette*, the accent is unnecessary (467).

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the future tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases :

"*Mes efforts me mèn*ERONT *à la fortune.*"—32d lesson.

"*Que leur fourn*IRONT *des marchands.*"—16th lesson.

"*Des histoires qui vous surprend*RONT."—16th lesson.

"*Vos amis* SERONT *des nôtres.*"—15th lesson.

"*Ils* AURONT *du Champagne.*"—16th lesson.

The whole of the future tense in the verbs in *er* has now been seen : *Je charg*ERAI, *tu décid*ERAS, *il corrig*ERA, *nous pêch*ERONS, *vous apport*EREZ, *ils mèn*ERONT.

The whole of this tense in the three regular forms of conjugation has now been seen, and the eighteen different observations by which its terminations have been pointed out may be condensed into one general rule.

565. The **future tense** is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive mood, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re:* **ai**, **as**, **a**, **ons**, **ez**, **ont**.

SYNTAX.*

Quand viennent les calamités.

In this phrase, *les calamités*, which is the subject, follows the verb *viennent.*

No direct regimen could be placed after *viennent.*

566. The subject, when it is a substantive, may follow the verb, if the sense excludes a direct regimen.

Les calamités que nous nous **sommes** *attirées.*

567. The compound tenses of pronominal verbs (180) are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary verb *être.*

Les calamités **que** *nous nous sommes* **attirées.**

568. Of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal verb, the second may be a direct or an indirect regimen. If indirect, as in the present instance in which it means *to ourselves*, the past participle, instead of agreeing with the subject (354), agrees with the direct regimen, provided that regimen precedes it, as it does in this example. And when the direct regimen follows, the participle remains invariable, thus: *Nous nous sommes* ATTIRÉ *les calamités.*

Nous nous sommes **attirés.**

We have attracted each-other.

569. § 1. If the second of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal verb is a direct regimen, the past participle agrees with it. Admitting therefore that the pronoun *nous* in this phrase refers to men or even to persons of both sexes, we write *attirés.* If *nous* should refer to women only, the participle should be spelled *attirées.*

---

* See note on page 282.

§ 2. In the verbs which are accidentally pronominal, the sense shows whether the second pronoun is a direct, or an indirect regimen. In those that are essentially pronominal, of which a list has been given (364), the pronoun is always a direct regimen;* and accordingly the participle always agrees with it.

Soyons homme.

570. When the first person plural of the imperative mood is used in the sense of *let me* (559), the adjective, or the substantive used adjectively, which follows it, must of course be put in the singular.

Quelque chose **de** *sérieux.*

571. When **quelque chose**, in the sense of *something* or *any thing* (166), is followed by an adjective, it requires the preposition **de** before the adjective, which retains the masculine termination.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Nous écoutions.* See Obs. 551.—We accustomed—We decided—We studied—We played—We forgot.

2. Model: *Que de regrets!* See Obs. 552.—How many advantages!—How much money!—How many calamities!—How many efforts!—How much glory!—How many words!

3. Model: *Nous épargnerions.* See Obs. 553.—We should try—We should throw—We should eat—We should occupy—We should seem—We should find.

4. Model: *Nous haïssons.* See Obs. 554.—We act—We finish—We enjoy—We feed—We obey—We reflect.

---

* The only exception is *s'arroger*, to arrogate, where the pronoun is an indirect regimen.

5. Model: *Obsèdent*, from *obséder*. See Obs. 555.—I hope—Thou hopest—He hopes—They hope—I shall possess—Thou wilt possess—He will possess—We shall possess—You will possess—That I may possess.

6. Model: *Nous entendons*. See Obs. 556.—We wait—We defend—We put—We pretend—We lose—We answer.

7. Model: *Il agit*. See Obs. 557.—He warns—He furnishes—He enjoys—He feeds—He obeys—He perishes.

8. See Obs. 558.—Bring (*thou*)—Let us cease—Begin (*you*)—Finish (*thou*)—Let us put—Lose (*you*).

9. Model: *Soyons*, let me be. See Obs. 559.—Let me study—Let me forget—Let me work—Let me try—Let me eat—Let me finish—Let me wait—Let me put—Let me answer.

10. Model: *Je vaincrai*. See Obs. 560.—I shall learn—I shall wait—I shall drink—I shall understand—I shall believe—I shall say—I shall hear—I shall write—I shall put.

11. Model: *J'essaierai*. See Obs. 561.—I try—Thou triest—He tries—They try—Thou wilt try—He will try—We shall try—You will try—Try (*thou*).

12. Model: *Je finirai*. See Obs. 562.—I shall free myself—I shall sleep—I shall hate—I shall feed—I shall open.

13. Model: *Ils mèneront*. See Obs. 563.—They will begin—They will give—They will listen—They will taste—They will play—They will forget—They will think.

14. Model: *Mèneront*, from *mener*. See Obs. 564.—I raise—He raises—They raise—We shall raise—You would raise.

15. See Obs. 565.—I shall love—Thou wilt admire—He will bring—We shall arrive—You will accept—They shall sleep—They will finish—I shall write—He will bite—We shall put.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. We were examining the tools of the workmen—551.
2. We hoped to have the pleasure of seeing you—551.
3. How much trouble you give yourself!—552.

4. How many persons come to your house!—552.
5. Why should we not listen to their observations?—553.
6. We should work if we had tools—553.
7. We are finishing the thirty-second lesson—554.
8. We do not betray our friends—554.
9. I hope you will come *and* [to] see me—555.
10. Those young people will possess a large fortune—555.
11. We expect several friends—556.
12. We lose a large sum of money—556.
13. He finishes his task to-day—557.
14. He blesses his children—557.
15. Let me finish this task—559.
16. Let me see what I have to do—559.
17. I think that I shall understand you easily—560.
18. I shall wait for your comrades—560.
19. I must try *to* [of] write in French—561.
20. Do not lean [thyself] on the parapet—561.
21. I will act with firmness—562.
22. I will not betray my friends—562.
23. They will accustom themselves to fatigue—563.
24. They will forget their grief—563.
25. I always weigh my bread and meat—564.
26. He will rise, because he has ambition—564.
27. Do you know where that child is going?—566.
28. There is the house where your friend dwells—566.
29. The question which I have *put* [made] to myself is *a* serious *one*—567, 568.
30. I am sorry for the trouble which you have *taken* [given yourself]—567, 568.
31. He has stretched himself *out* on a bench—567, 569.
32. She has thrown herself into the river—567, 569.
33. You (masc.) have forgotten yourselves—567, 569.
34. They (fem.) have placed themselves near the house—567, 569.
35. *I must be* [Let me be] kind—570.
36. Let me not be ungrateful—570.
37. Give me something good—571.
38. Do you know any thing new?—571.

THIRTY-THIRD LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-troisième leçon.

" Passons en revue les principales pro-
Let us (me) pass review principal

fessions, et voyons si je n' en trouverai
let us see of them shall find

pas une que je puisse embrasser sans
may (subj.) embrace

m'assujétir à des devoirs trop pénibles.
to subject duties painful

" Le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et
drawing engraving painting

la musique demanderaient des études que
music would demand

je ne me soucie pas d'entreprendre. Si
care to undertake

j'apprenais le droit, je pourrais devenir
learned law might

avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire. Je
attorney bailiff barrister notary

serais peut-être un jour magistrat, juge,
should be magistrate judge

législateur.... Oui, mais il faudrait que
legislator must (conditional)

j' eusse de quoi subsister en attendant;
had (subj.) to subsist in the mean time

et puis que je suivisse des cours, que
followed (subj.) courses (of lectures)
je passasse des examens, que je subisse
passed (subj.) examinations underwent (subj.)
des épreuves rigoureuses. Je sens bien
trials rigorous
que je ne réussirais pas."
should succeed

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Let us examine the principal professions, and see whether I cannot find one that I might follow without subjecting myself to arduous duties.

"Drawing, engraving, painting, and music would require studies which I am nowise inclined to undertake. If I should study the law, I might become an attorney, a bailiff, a barrister, or a notary. Perhaps I should one day be a magistrate, a judge, a legislator .... Yes, but I must have wherewith to subsist in the mean time; and besides, I should be obliged to attend lectures, to pass examinations, and undergo the rudest trials. I feel I should never succeed."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-troisième.
Qu'est-que le jeune Alexis va passer en revue?	Les principales professions.
A quoi ne voudrait-il pas s'assujétir?	A des devoirs trop pénibles.
Pourquoi veut-il passer en revue les principales professions?	Pour voir s'il n'en trouvera pas une qu'il puisse embrasser sans s'assujétir à des devoirs trop pénibles.
Que fera-t-il s'il en trouve une?	Il l'embrassera probablement.

Qu'est-ce qui demanderait des études qu'il ne se soucie pas d'entreprendre?	Le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et la musique.
Que demanderaient le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et la musique?	Des études qu'il ne se soucie pas d'entreprendre.
Que faudrait-il qu'il apprît pour devenir avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire?	Il faudrait qu'il apprît le droit.
Que pourrait-il devenir s'il apprenait le droit?	Il pourrait devenir avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire.
Que serait-il peut-être un jour?	Il serait peut-être magistrat, juge ou législateur.
Que faudrait-il qu'il eût pour cela?	Il faudrait qu'il eût de quoi subsister en attendant.
Que faudrait-il qu'il suivît?	Il faudrait qu'il suivît des cours.
Que faudrait-il qu'il passât?	Des examens.
Que faudrait-il qu'il subît?	Des épreuves rigoureuses.
Pense-t-il qu'il réussirait?	Non; il sent bien qu'il ne réussirait pas.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
J'ai à vous demander un service.	I have a service to beg of you.
De quoi s'agit-il?	What is the matter?
Pouvez-vous me prêter cent cinquante francs?	Can you lend me a hundred and fifty francs?
Mon Dieu, non. Je suis absolument sans argent.	Dear me, no. I have no money at all.
N'importe.	No matter.
Je suis bien fâché de ne pouvoir vous obliger.	I am very sorry not to be able to oblige you.
Bien, bien, n'en parlons plus.	Well, well, say no more about it.
Si vous voulez venir jusque chez mon frère, il pourra sans doute vous donner cette somme.	If you will just come to my brother's, he will probably be able to give you that sum.
Non. Je peux m'en passer.	No. I can do without it.
Venez avec moi, je vous en prie.	Come with me, pray.

Je ne veux pas vous donner cette peine.	I will not give you that trouble.
Je vous assure que ce ne sera pas du tout une peine.	I assure you it will be no trouble at all.
Justement, le voici.	Positively, here he comes.
Bonjour, messieurs.	Good morning, gentlemen.
Bonjour, mon frère.	Good morning, brother.
Dis donc, as-tu cent cinquante francs à prêter à monsieur?	I say, have you a hundred and fifty francs to lend to this gentleman?
Je ne crois pas avoir tant que cela sur moi.	I don't think I have so much as that about me.
En vérité, monsieur, je suis désolé de mon indiscrétion.	Indeed, sir, I deeply regret my indiscretion.
Attendez, voici quatre pièces de vingt francs, une de dix et trois pièces de cinq francs.	Stop, here are four pieces of twenty francs, one of ten francs, and three pieces of five francs.
Cela fait cent cinq francs.	It makes a hundred and five francs.
Ah! j'ai encore vingt-cinq francs dans une autre poche.	Oh! I have twenty-five francs more in another pocket.
Cela ne fait toujours que cent trente francs.	Still it makes only a hundred and thirty francs.
Croyez-vous que vous aurez assez de cela?	Do you think that will be sufficient?
Oui, cela me suffira. Je vous le rendrai dans quinze jours.	Yes, that will do. I will return it to you in a fortnight.
Quand vous voudrez.	When you please.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

PASSONS is a form (518) of the verb *passer*, already seen. Its literal meaning is *let us pass;* but, in this lesson, it is used for *let me pass* (559).

---

* See note on page 282.

REVUE is one of the derivatives of *voir*, mentioned in the 2d lesson.

PRINCIPAL is a word alike in French and in English (30).

VOYONS is the first person plural of the imperative mood of *voir*, already seen. It is used in this lesson for *let me see* (559).

TROUVERAI is a form (320) of the verb *trouver*, already seen.

PUISSE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *pouvoir*.

EMBRASSER is one of the derivatives of *bras*, seen in the 11th lesson (303, 515). Its literal meaning is *to take in one's arms*. It corresponds to the verbs *to embrace*, *to encompass*, *to comprise*, and is also used for *to kiss*.

ASSUJÉTIR, which is also spelled *assujettir*, is derived from *sujet*, subject (148).

DEVOIR, as a substantive, is derived from the verb *devoir*, to owe, to be obliged, ought, must.

PÉNIBLE is derived from *peine*, seen in the 28th lesson (543).

DESSIN, drawing, is a word of the masculine gender according to analogy (14).

GRAVURE, engraving, is derived from the verb *graver*, to engrave.

PEINTURE, painting, is derived from the verb *peindre*, to paint.

MUSIQUE comes from the Latin *musica*, music (200).

DEMANDERAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *demander*, already seen.

572. The third person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **aient** to this termination.

JE ME SOUCIE is a form (349) of the verb *se soucier*, which is one of the derivatives of *souci*, seen in the 19th lesson. This verb is always pronominal (364).

ENTREPRENDRE is one of the derivatives of *prendre*, mentioned in the 7th lesson (249).

J'APPRENAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of *apprendre*, already seen.

DROIT, as a substantive, is derived from the adjective *droit*, straight, right, upright, which comes from the Latin *directus*, straight. The primary sense of the substantive *droit* is right.

It is often used, as in this lesson, for jurisprudence. The literal translation of the English word *law* is *loi*.

JE POURRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *pouvoir*. See *pourrait* in the 31st lesson, page 396.

AVOUÉ is derived from the verb *avouer* (52), to avow, to acknowledge, to own, which comes from the Latin *advocare*, to call in, to call in aid.

AVOCAT comes also from *advocare*. This word corresponds, however, more particularly to *barrister*, *counsel*, or *counsellor*.

HUISSIER signifies *usher*, *tipstaff*, *bailiff*.

NOTAIRE is a word nearly the same in French and in English (252).

JE SERAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *être*.

MAGISTRAT is one of the derivatives of *maître*, mentioned in the 13th lesson (163).

JUGE has been mentioned in the 21st lesson as being the radical of *jugement*.

LÉGISLATEUR is a word much the same in French and in English (403).

FAUDRAIT is the conditional mood of *falloir* (287).

EUSSE is the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

The whole of this tense of *avoir* has now been seen: *J'eusse*, *tu eusses*, *il eût*, *nous eussions*, *vous eussiez*, *ils eussent*.

SUBSISTER comes from the Latin *subsistere*, to subsist, formed of *sub*, under, and *sistere*, to stand.

SUIVISSE is the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *suivre*, already seen.

573. The first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isse**.

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je suiv*ISSE, *tu répond*ISSES, *il suiv*ÎT, *nous répond*ISSIONS, *vous perd*ISSIEZ, *ils interromp*ISSENT.

COURS, in Latin *cursus*, is one of the derivatives of *courir*, mentioned in the 19th lesson. It takes no additional letter in the plural (17).

PASSASSE is the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *passer*, already seen.

574. The first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **asse**.

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *er* has now been seen: *Je pass*ASSE, *tu élev*ASSES, *il posséd*ÂT, *nous trouv*ASSIONS, *vous laiss*ASSIEZ, *ils arriv*ASSENT.

EXAMEN is one of the derivatives of *examiner*, seen in the 5th lesson.

SUBISSE is the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *subir*, which comes from the Latin *subire*, formed of *sub*, under, and *ire*, to go; accordingly, the formation of *subir* and *undergo* is exactly the same.

575. The first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **isse**. It is similar to the first and third persons singular of the present tense of the same mood. This similarity is peculiar to the verbs in *ir*.

Examples have now been seen of the first person singular of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Il faudrait que je pass*ASSE *des examens.*"—33d lesson.

"*Il faudrait que je sub*ISSE *des épreuves.*"—33d lesson.

"*Il faudrait que je suiv*ISSE *des cours.*"—33d lesson.

"*Il n'exigerait pas que je* FUSSE *plus rangé.*"—30th lesson.

"*Il faudrait que j'*EUSSE *de quoi subsister.*"—33d lesson.

ÉPREUVE is derived from the verb *prouver*, to prove, which comes from the Latin *probare*, to approve or to prove. It signifies *trial*, *test*, or *proof*.

RIGOUREUSES is the plural feminine of *rigoureux* (141, 142).

RÉUSSIRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *réussir*, seen in the 17th lesson.

576. The first person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ais** to this termination. It is similar to the second person singular of the same mood.

SYNTAX.*

*Je n'***en** *trouverai pas une.*

The translation of this phrase is: *I shall not find one.*

The pronoun EN, referring here to *professions*, and signifying *of them*, is not rendered, being considered superfluous with the numeral adjective *une*, one.

The same omission would take place with an adverb of quantity, thus: "*J'*EN *trouverai beaucoup*, I shall find many."

577. The pronoun **en**, signifying *of it*, *of that*, *of them*, is employed in French, with adjectives of number or adverbs of quantity, when there is an antecedent in the phrase.

Une profession **que** *je* **puisse** *embrasser.*

Je puisse is the subjunctive mood. The indicative is *je puis* or *je peux.*

The phrase expresses doubt.

578. When the subjoined phrase is connected with the principal one by a relative pronoun, as *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *où*, and denotes something doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive mood is properly employed.

Il y a une profession que je **puis** *embrasser.*

579. But if the subjoined phrase admits of no doubt, the indicative mood must be employed.

La peinture **et** *la musique* **demanderaient.**
La peinture, la musique **demanderaient.**

580. When the verb has several subjects in the singular, either substantives or pronouns of the third person, joined by the conjunction *et*, expressed or understood, it takes the plural form.

---

* See note on page 282.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Ils demanderaient.* See Obs. 572.—They would accustom—They would embrace—They would throw—They would occupy—They would remain—They would subsist.

2. Model: *Que je suivisse.* See Obs. 573.—That I might wait—That I might hear—That I might lose—That I might answer—That I might sell.

3. Model: *Que je passasse.* See Obs. 574.—That I might decide—That I might embrace—That I might oblige—That I might remain—That I might subsist—That I might find.

4. Model: *Que je subisse.* See Obs. 575.—That I might subject—That I might sleep—That I might hate—That I might open—That I might succeed—That I might feel.

5. Model: *Je réussirais.* See Obs. 576.—I should warn—I should finish—I should enjoy—I should languish—I should obey—I should perish—I should suffer—I should undergo.

6. Model: *Je n'*EN *trouverai pas une.* Syntax, 577.—I have one—Thou hast two—He has three—We have four—You have five—They have six—I shall give you many—We shall accept one.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. If he *were* [was] a barrister, the judges would listen to him with pleasure—572.

2. Children would like this study, if it *were* [was] more attractive—572.

3. He was indulgent, though I answered badly—573.

4. I heard them, though I pretended to be deaf—573.

5. My parents wished I should distinguish myself—574.

6. You understood me, though I spoke very fast—574.

7. They required me to betray my friends—575.

8. It was impossible for me to obey them—575.

9. I should sleep, if I had nothing to do—576.

10. I should finish my task, if you did not interrupt me—576.

11. If you have no place, I have one to give you—577.

12. He has learned two lessons, and his brother has learned three—577.

13. How many words do you know?—I have not reckoned them, but I know *a great* many—577.

14. Do you like this fish?—Yes, but you have given me too much—577.

15. Do not give *any* more fruit to this little boy; he has enough—577.

16. Tell me something that I can understand—578.

17. You have pronounced several words that I can understand—579.

18. Ask *for* a book that will amuse you—578.

19. I will give you a book that will amuse you, I am sure [of it]—579.

20. I hope to find a friend that will not be ungrateful—578.

21. I have found a friend that will not be ungrateful—579.

22. I wish *for* a place that is agreeable—578.

23. I wish *for* that place, which is *an* agreeable *one*—579.

24. My father and mother are in the garden—580.

25. James and his brother will depart together—580.

26. He and she will speak to you—580.

27. The attorney, the counsel, the judge, think that that man is innocent—580.

THIRTY-FOURTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-quatrième leçon.

"D'ailleurs, j'ai horreur de la chicane.
Besides horror chicanery

A chaque débat où je prendrais part, je
every debate in which should take

craindrais d'être réduit au silence par les
should fear reduced silence

subtilités de mes adversaires; et jamais je
subtilities adversaries

ne saurais prouver que le noir est blanc.
should know to prove black white

"J'aimerais assez les fonctions de mé-
Should like functions phy-

decin. Celles-là ne doivent pas être bien
sician Those ought

fatigantes. Pour peu que vous ayez de
fatiguing have (subj.)

la réputation, vous achetez une voiture et
reputation buy coach

des chevaux. Dès lors, tout le monde a
horses From then

confiance en vous, et vous tâchez de
endeavor

mériter cette confiance. | Vous vous
to deserve You re-

rendez | chez vos malades en cabriolet ou
pair patients cabriolet

en coupé. On vous reçoit avec autant
chariot receives as much

d'empressement que si vous apportiez
eagerness brought

infailliblement la guérison. On vous
infallibly cure

écoute comme un oracle."
listens oracle

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Besides, I abhor chicanery. In every argument I should be engaged in, I should fear to be nonplused by the subtilities of my adversaries; and I should never be able to prove that black is white.

"The practice of a physician would please me well enough. This cannot be very arduous. If you get into the least reputation, you buy a carriage and horses. From that instant every body has faith in you, and you do your best to deserve it. You repair in a cabriolet or a chariot to visit your patients. You are received with as much welcome as if you were the bearer of an infallible cure. You are listened to like an oracle."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-quatrième.
De quoi Alexis a-t-il horreur?	De la chicane.
Alexis aime-t-il la chicane?	Non; il en a horreur.
Dans quelle circonstance craindrait-il d'être réduit au silence?	A chaque débat où il prendrait part.
Par quoi craindrait-il d'être réduit au silence?	Par les subtilités de ses adversaires.

Que craindrait-il à chaque débat où il prendrait part?	D'être réduit au silence par les subtilités de ses adversaires.
Qu'est-ce qu'il ne saurait jamais prouver?	Que le noir est blanc.
Quelles fonctions aimerait-il assez?	Les fonctions de médecin.
Pourquoi les aimerait-il assez?	Parce qu'il pense qu'elles ne doivent pas être bien fatigantes.
Que fait-on pour peu qu'on ait de la réputation dans cette profession?	On achète une voiture et des chevaux—*or*, Vous achetez une voiture et des chevaux.
Qu'arrive-t-il dès lors?	Que tout le monde a confiance en vous.
Que tâche-t-on de mériter?	Cette confiance.
Comment le médecin se rend-il chez ses malades?	En cabriolet ou en coupé.
Chez qui se rend-il en cabriolet ou en coupé?	Chez ses malades.
Comment le reçoit-on?	Avec autant d'empressement que s'il apportait infailliblement la guérison.
Comment l'écoute-t-on?	Comme un oracle.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
J'ai besoin de toutes sortes de choses. Voulez-vous venir avec moi les acheter?	I want a variety of things. Will you come with me to buy them?
Je le veux bien.	Willingly.
Vous m'obligerez beaucoup.	You will oblige me very much.
Quelles sont les choses dont vous avez besoin?	What things do you want?
D'abord, des livres et du papier.	First, some books and paper.
Quels livres vous faut-il?	What books do you want?
Des livres de droit et de médecine.	Books of law and physic.
Est-ce que vous avez le projet d'exercer deux professions à la fois?	Do you intend to practise two professions at the same time?

Je n'ai pas cette prétention.	I have no such pretension.
Mon père veut que je sois avocat; c'est pourquoi je fais mon droit.	My father wishes me to be a barrister; I am therefore studying the law.
Bon.	Good.
Mais je ne suis pas fâché d'acquérir quelques notions de médecine pour ma propre satisfaction.	But I have a mind also to acquire some notions of physic for my own satisfaction.
J'entends. Que vous faut-il encore?	I understand. What do you want next?
Des outils de menuisier.	Some joiner's tools.
Pourquoi faire?	What for?
Pour en faire usage.	To use them.
Vous-même?	Yourself?
Oui. Pourquoi pas?	Yes. Why not?
Quelle occupation!	What an occupation!
Je vous assure que c'est une occupation très-attrayante.	I assure you it is a very alluring occupation.
Est-ce tout ce qu'il vous faut?	Is that all you want?
Non. Je voudrais acheter aussi des lignes et des hameçons.	No. I want to buy some fishing-lines and hooks also.
Je comprends mieux ce goût-là.	I understand that fancy better.
C'est que vous le partagez, peut-être?	Because you partake it, perhaps?
Il y a sur les quais plusieurs boutiques où nous trouverons tout ce qu'il faut pour la pêche.	There are on the quays several shops in which we shall find all that is requisite for fishing.
Eh bien, commençons par là.	Well, let us go there first.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.

D'AILLEURS is formed of *de* and *ailleurs*, elsewhere. It corresponds to the English adverb *besides*.

---

* See note on page 282.

HORREUR comes from the Latin *horror*. It is feminine (95).

CHICANE is feminine according to analogy (15).

CHAQUE is an indefinite pronominal adjective.

All the indefinite pronominal adjectives have now been seen, in the following phrases:

"*Ils ne rendent* AUCUN *service.*"—11th lesson.

"*A* CHAQUE *débat où je prendrais part.*"—34th lesson.

"*Celle qu'il avait reçue lui*-MÊME."—4th lesson.

"*N'ayons* NUL*le autre pensée.*"—14th lesson.

"PLUSIEURS *des compagnons d'Alexis.*"—12th lesson.

"QUEL *fainéant!*"—3d lesson.

"*D'une manière* QUELCONQUE."—24th lesson.

"*Au bout de* QUELQUES *mois.*"—6th lesson.

"*Vous travaillâtes avec une ardeur* TEL*le.*"—22d lesson.

"*Raisonnable à* TOUT *âge.*"—14th lesson.

DÉBAT is derived from *battre*, mentioned in the 26th lesson as being the radical of *combattre*. The verb corresponding to *débat* is *débattre*, to debate.

PRENDRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *prendre*, already seen.

CRAINDRAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *craindre*, to fear. This verb is one of those in which the letters *nd* are changed into *gn* in some of the tenses (446).

581. The first person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing the final **e** into **ais**. It is similar to the second person singular of the same mood.

The whole of this mood of the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je craind*RAIS, *tu attend*RAIS, *il plaind*RAIT, *nous perd*RIONS, *vous apprend*RIEZ, *ils condui*RAIENT.

RÉDUIT is the past participle of the irregular verb *réduire*, to reduce.

SILENCE comes from the Latin *silentium*, silence. It is masculine by exception (15).

SUBTILITÉ is derived from the adjective *subtil*, subtile, subtle, which comes from the Latin *subtilis*, thin. It is feminine (241).

ADVERSAIRE is a word much the same in French and in English (252).

SAURAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *savoir*.

PROUVER has been mentioned in the 33d lesson as being the radical of *épreuve*.

NOIR has been mentioned in the 12th lesson as being the radical of *noircir*, to blacken.

BLANC comes from the German *blank*, or from the Spanish *blanco*, white. Its feminine is irregularly formed; it is *blanche*. The same irregular formation has been seen in *franche*, feminine of *franc* (14th lesson), and in *sèche*, feminine of *sec* (13th lesson).

AIMERAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *aimer*, already seen.

582. The first person singular of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **ais** to this termination. It is similar to the second person singular of the same mood (576, 581).

The whole of this mood of the verbs in *er* has now been seen: *J'aim*ERAIS, *tu t'empress*ERAIS, *il exig*ERAIT, *nous épargn*ERIONS, *vous trouv*ERIEZ, *ils demand*ERAIENT.

FONCTION comes from the Latin *functio*, performance, practice. It is feminine (99).

MÉDECIN comes from the Latin *medicus*, physician.

CELLES is the plural of *celle*, seen in the 4th lesson (100).

All the demonstrative pronouns have now been seen, in the following phrases:

"C'*est un proverbe*."—1st lesson.

"*Est*-CE *qu'il ne se corrigera jamais?*"—3d lesson.

"*Mon père est en* CECI *comme toutes les vieilles gens*."—30th lesson.

"*Il appelait* CELA *une douce et molle rêverie*."—9th lesson.

"*Ou dans* CELUI *du Luxembourg*."—9th lesson.

"*Supérieure à* CELLE *qu'il avait reçue*."—4th lesson.

"*Quels que fussent* CEUX *qui les faisaient*."—19th lesson.

"CELLES-*là ne doivent pas être fatigantes*."—34th lesson.

For the combination of *celles* and *là*, see 352.

DOIVENT is the third person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *devoir*, seen in the 29th lesson.

FATIGANT is derived from *fatigue*, seen in the 29th lesson.

AYEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *avoir*.

The whole of this tense of *avoir* has now been seen: *J'aie*, *tu aies*, *il ait*, *nous ayons*, *vous ayez*, *ils aient*.

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the present tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Je ne dis pas qu'il soit nécessaire que vous pass*IEZ *des nuits*."—23d lesson.

"*Que vous jaun*ISSIEZ *sur des livres*."—23d lesson.

"*Que vous vous rend*IEZ *malade*."—23d lesson.

"*Nous attendrons que vous* SOYEZ *prêt*."—18th lesson.

"*Pour peu que vous* AYEZ *de la réputation*."—34th lesson.

RÉPUTATION comes from the Latin *reputatio*, reckoning, consideration, derived from the verb *putare*, to estimate. It is feminine (99).

ACHETEZ is a form (414) of the verb *acheter*, to buy.

VOITURE, from the Latin *vectura*, carriage, is feminine according to analogy (15).

CHEVAUX is the plural of *cheval* (379), seen in the 19th lesson.

DÈS is a preposition signifying *from*.

LORS has been mentioned in the 21st lesson as being the radical of *alors*.

TOUT LE MONDE, literally *all the world*, is often used for *every body*.

TÂCHEZ is a form (414) of the verb *tâcher*, which is derived from *tâche*, seen in the 22d lesson.

MÉRITER is derived from *mérite* (303), merit, desert.

RENDEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *rendre*, seen in several lessons in the sense of *to render* or *to make*. With the pronominal form, *se rendre* signifies either *to repair*, *to go*, or *to yield*, *to submit*.

583. The second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **ez**. It is similar to the same person of the imperative mood.

REÇOIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the

indicative mood of the irregular verb *recevoir*, seen in the 4th lesson.

584. **Autant**, derived from *tant*, is an adverb denoting equality, and corresponding to *as much*, *as many*, *so much*, *so many*. The conjunction *as*, following these adverbs, is rendered by **que**.

EMPRESSEMENT is derived from the verb *s'empresser*, seen in the 29th lesson (153).

APPORTIEZ is the second person plural of the imperfect tense of *apporter*, seen in the 16th lesson, and one of the derivatives of *porter*, mentioned in the 7th lesson.

585. The second person plural of the imperfect tense of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **iez**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the subjunctive mood (437).

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *er* has now been seen: *Je désir*AIS, *tu souhait*AIS, *il exerç*AIT, *nous écout*IONS, *vous apport*IEZ, *ils contribu*AIENT.

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the imperfect tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Autant d'empressement que si vous apport*IEZ *la guérison.*"—34th lesson.

"*Vous langu*ISSIEZ *dans l'obscurité.*"—22d lesson.

"*Si vous poursuiv*IEZ *vos études.*"—21st lesson.

"*Vous* ÉTIEZ *le moins avancé.*"—22d lesson.

"*Jamais vous n'*AVIEZ *obtenu.*"—22d lesson.

The whole of the imperfect tense in the three regular forms of conjugation has now been seen, and the eighteen different observations by which its terminations have been pointed out may be condensed into one general rule.

586. § 1. The terminations of the **imperfect tense** are **ais**, **ais**, **ait**, **ions**, **iez**, **aient**, substituted for those of the infinitive in verbs in **er** and in **re**.

§ 2. In verbs in **ir**, the above terminations are added to the invariable syllable **iss**, substituted for *ir*, thus: *issais*, *issais*, *issait*, *issions*, *issiez*, *issaient*.

§ 3. The first and second persons singular of this tense present no difference between them.

§ 4. The first and second persons plural of this tense are similar to the same persons of the present tense of the subjunctive mood.

§ 5. A consequence of this rule is, that in the verbs ending in **ier**, as *étudier*, *oublier*, *prier*, the letter **i** must be doubled in the first and second persons plural; and that, in the verbs ending in **yer**, as *appuyer*, *essayer*, the **y** must be followed by **i** in the same persons.

INFAILLIBLEMENT is one of the derivatives of *faillir*, mentioned in the first lesson (170, 543, 31).

GUÉRISON is derived from the verb *guérir*, to cure. It is feminine by exception (14).

ÉCOUTE is a form (22) of the verb *écouter*, already seen.

ORACLE comes from the Latin *oraculum*, oracle. It is masculine.

587. § 1. Substantives ending in **cle** are masculine. Some of them are the same in both languages, as *Oracle*, *miracle*, *spectacle*, etc.

§ 2. The following are feminine by exception, or rather they follow the general rule (15): *Besicles*, eye-glass, spectacles; *boucle*, buckle; *débâcle*, breaking up (of the ice); *escarboucle*, carbuncle; *macle*, water-caltrop; *manicle*, hand-leather; *sanicle*, sanicle.

SYNTAX.*

Tout le monde a confiance en vous, et vous tâchez de mériter **cette confiance.**

In the first part of this sentence, the substantive *confiance* expresses but one idea with the verb *avoir; avoir confiance* signifying *to trust*, as *avoir horreur* signifies *to loathe*, and as *prendre part* signifies *to share* or *to participate*. It is accordingly employed without an article (227).

---

* See note on page 282.

The repetition of this substantive in the second clause of the sentence is obligatory; it would be improper to substitute a pronoun for it, and to say: *Et vous tâchez de* LA *mériter.*

588. § 1. A pronoun cannot represent a substantive used in an undetermined sense, without an article or any other determinative, such as *ce*, *un*, *mon*, *plusieurs*, etc., especially when this substantive is combined with a verb or a preposition with which it expresses a single idea.

§ 2. To render the use of a pronoun correct in such phrases, the construction must be so disposed as to restrict the sense of the substantive by means of a definitive, as for instance: *Tout le monde a en vous* UNE CONFIANCE QUE *vous tâchez de mériter;* or, *Tout le monde a en vous* UNE *grande* CONFIANCE, *et vous tâchez de* LA *mériter.*

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Je craindrais.* See Obs. 581.—I should learn—I should drink—I should believe—I should write—I should put—I should reduce—I should follow.

2. Model: *J'aimerais.* See Obs. 582.—I should buy—I should embrace—I should gain—I should throw—I should leave—I should deserve—I should occupy—I should prove—I should remain—I should subsist—I should endeavor.

3. Model: *Vous rendez.* See Obs. 583.—You live—You sell—You follow—You answer—You pity—You put—You bite—You interrupt—You melt—You hear—You defend—You fear—You wait.

4. Model: *Vous apportiez.* See Obs. 585.—You called—You loved—You blamed—You reckoned—You gave—You studied—You gained—You played—You ate—You forgot—You prayed—You looked—You found.

5. See Obs. 586.—I stopped—Thou calledst—He loved—We brought—You accepted—They arrived—We finished—You fur-

nished—I interrupted—Thou wast putting—He pretended—We lost—You promised—They answered.

6. Model: *Un oracle.* See Obs. 587.—A spectacle—A miracle—The tabernacle—This obstacle—This receptacle—This article—A muscle.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION.

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. I should live happy in this house—581.
2. I should follow you with pleasure—581.
3. I think [that] I should understand all your questions, but I should not answer [to] them well—581.
4. I should work from morning till night—582.
5. If you had any fish, I should eat some with pleasure—582.
6. I should accept your services, if I wanted them—582.
7. Are you waiting for the coach?—583.
8. Why do you not follow your comrades?—583.
9. If you hear him, why do you not answer him?—583.
10. I have as much patience as you—584.
11. My physician has as many patients as yours—584.
12. Thou hast not so much experience as he—584.
13. You have not so many tools as the joiner—584.
14. Have you as many horses as your friend *has?*—584.
15. You do not eat so much as your brother—584.
16. There is the man of whom you were speaking—585.
17. What were you looking *at* on that bridge?—585.
18. Did you know that I should arrive to-day?—585.
19. We saw a fine spectacle—587.
20. We fear to meet *with* an obstacle—587.
21. *He is accustomed* [He has custom] to take a walk every morning, and I think it good—588.

THIRTY-FIFTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-cinquième leçon.

"A peine êtes-vous entré, que le malade
Scarcely entered when

se sent mieux. Vous lui tâtez le pouls,
feels to him feel pulse

en tirant une montre à secondes de votre
drawing watch seconds

gousset. Vous le priez ensuite de vous
fob pray afterwards

montrer sa langue. Vous lui demandez
to show tongue ask

où il souffre, comment il dort, s'il a de
suffers sleeps

l'appétit. Vous lui faites quelques autres
appetite make

questions; après quoi vous prenez la
which take

plume. Vous prescrivez, selon le cas, la
pen prescribe according to case

diète, la saignée ou les sangsues; ou bien
diet bleeding leeches

un cataplasme, un vésicatoire, un emplâ-
poultice blister plas-

tre; ou bien encore de l'émétique, une
ter emetic

tisane, enfin le remède qui vous paraît le
ptisan in short remedy appears
plus convenable. Et vous guérissez quel-
fit cure
quefois. Malheureusement, pour en ar-
Unfortunately ar-
river là, il faut encore étudier. Il faut
rive
connaitre l'anatomie, la physiologie, la
know anatomy physiology
thérapeutique.... que sais-je ?"
therapeutics what know

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"You are scarcely shown in when the patient finds himself better. Drawing a second-watch from your fob, you feel his pulse, you desire him next to show you his tongue. You ask him where his pain is, how he sleeps, whether he has any appetite. You put a few more questions to him; after which you take up a pen. You prescribe, according as the case may be, strict diet, bleeding, leeches; or a poultice, a blister, a plaster; or perhaps an emetic, a diet-drink, in short the remedy which you judge fittest. And you may happen to cure him. Unfortunately, to arrive at all this, it is still necessary to study. One must know anatomy, physiology, therapeutics, and I know not what."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-cinquième.
Comment le malade se sent-il quand le médecin est à peine entré?	Il se sent mieux.
Quand le malade se sent-il mieux?	Quand le médecin est à peine entré.

Que fait le médecin?	Il lui tâte le pouls—*or*, Il tâte le pouls du malade.
Que fait-il en même temps?	Il tire une montre à secondes de son gousset.
Que fait-il ensuite?	Il prie le malade de lui montrer sa langue.
Que lui demande-t-il après cela?	Il lui demande où il souffre, comment il dort, et s'il a de l'appétit.
Est-ce tout ce qu'il lui demande?	Il lui fait quelques autres questions.
Que fait-il après cela?	Il prend la plume.
Que prescrit-il selon le cas?	La diète, la saignée, ou les sangsues.
Peut-il prescrire autre chose?	Oui: un cataplasme, un vésicatoire ou un emplâtre.
Que peut-il prescrire encore?	De l'émétique ou une tisane.
Lequel de ces remèdes prescrit-il de préférence?	Celui qui lui paraît le plus convenable.
Le médecin guérit-il toujours?	Il guérit quelquefois.
Que faut-il faire, pour en arriver là?	Il faut étudier.
Que faut-il connaître?	Il faut connaître l'anatomie, la physiologie, la thérapeutique, et beaucoup d'autres choses.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Comment vous trouvez-vous aujourd'hui?	How do you feel to-day?
Mal, docteur; je n'ai pas dormi de la nuit.	But poorly, doctor; I had not a wink of sleep all night.
Avez-vous pris votre potion?	Did you take your draught?
Oui, mais cela ne m'a pas calmé.	Yes, but it did not compose me.
Où souffrez-vous?	Where do you suffer?
J'ai des douleurs dans tous les membres.	All my limbs ache.
Voyons votre langue.	Let me see your tongue.

Vous la trouvez bien blanche, n'est-ce pas ?	You find it very white, don't you ?
Non, pas trop.	No, not very.
Je me sens bien faible.	I feel very weak.
C'est le résultat de la saignée d'hier.	It is owing to the bleeding of yesterday.
Il me semble que si je mangeais, cela me ferait du bien.	It seems to me that if I ate, it would do me good.
Cela vous ferait beaucoup de mal, au contraire.	It would, on the contrary, do you a great deal of harm.
La diète la plus sévère est indispensable.	The strictest diet is indispensable.
Vous me trouvez donc bien malade, docteur ?	Do you then think I am very ill, doctor ?
Je ne vous dis pas cela. Je dis seulement qu'il ne faut pas faire d'imprudence.	I do not say so. I only say you must not act imprudently.
Je trouve ma tisane bien amère.	I find my ptisan very bitter.
Dans deux ou trois jours, je vous en donnerai une autre.	In two or three days, I will give you another.
Faudra-t-il prendre encore une potion ce soir ?	Must I take another draught to-night ?
Oui. Et cette fois, je pense que vous dormirez bien.	Yes. And this time, I think you will sleep well.
Croyez-vous que cette maladie sera longue ?	Do you believe this illness will last long ?
Non. Je vous réponds que vous serez bientôt guéri.	No. I warrant you will soon be cured.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

À PEINE, formed of two words already seen, is an adverbial locution, corresponding to *scarcely* or *hardly*. It has been omitted by oversight in the enumeration of the adverbs after which the subject pronoun may follow the verb (228).

---

* See note on page 282.

ENTRÉ is a form (52) of the verb *entrer*, to enter.

SENT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *sentir*, already seen.

TÂTEZ is a form (414) of the verb *tâter*.

Tâter and *sentir* are both translated by *to feel;* but the sense of *tâter* is much more restricted: it is to feel by touching or handling gently.

POULS comes from the Latin *pulsus*, beating, derived from the verb *pulsare*, to beat, as can be seen by the derivative *pulsation*, a beat.

TIRANT is a form (115) of the verb *tirer*, seen in the 28th lesson.

MONTRE is derived from the verb *montrer*, to show, which has been mentioned in the 23d lesson as being the radical of *remontrance*. It has the following acceptations: *show*, *sample*, *show-glass* or *show-window*, and *watch* or *time-piece*. It is feminine, though ending in *tre* (342).

SECONDE is a substantive. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

GOUSSET is masculine according to analogy (14).

PRIEZ is a form (414) of the verb *prier*, already seen.

ENSUITE, formed of the two words *en*, in, and *suite*, sequel, is one of the derivatives of *suivre*, mentioned in the 3d lesson.

DEMANDEZ is a form (414) of the verb *demander*, already seen.

SOUFFRE is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *souffrir*, seen in the 29th lesson.

DORT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *dormir*, seen in the 20th lesson.

APPÉTIT comes from the Latin *appetitus*, longing, desire, derived from *petere*, to seek. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

FAITES is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *faire*. Remark that, in French, they say: "To make a question, *faire une question*."

PRENEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of *prendre*.

PLUME comes from the Latin *pluma*, down or feather. It corresponds to the English words, *feather*, *quill*, and *pen*.

PRESCRIVEZ is the second person singular of the present tense, indicative mood, of *prescrire*, one of the derivatives of *écrire*, seen in the 23d lesson. It is irregular like the radical.

SELON is a preposition which corresponds to *according to*.

CAS is a word which does not change in the plural (17).

DIÈTE comes from the Latin *diæta*, diet. Its primary sense is the same as that of the English word *diet;* but it is more commonly used for strict diet, or fasting.

SAIGNÉE is allied to the verb *saigner*, to bleed, derived from *sang*, blood, which comes from the Latin *sanguis*, blood.

SANGSUE is also derived from *sang*. The second syllable, *sue*, is the contraction of *suce*, sucks, a form of the verb *sucer*, to suck.

CATAPLASME, from the Greek κατάπλασμα, poultice, is masculine.

589. Substantives ending in **asme** are masculine.

VÉSICATOIRE, derived from *vessie*, bladder, blister, is masculine.

590. § 1. Substantives ending in **toire** are masculine.

§ 2. The following are feminine by exception, or rather follow the general rule (15): *Décrottoire*, hard brush; *échappatoire*, subterfuge; *écritoire*, inkstand; *eupatoire*, eupatory; *histoire*, history (16th lesson); *impératoire*, master-wort; *victoire*, victory.

EMPLÂTRE comes from the Greek ἔμπλαστρον, plaster. It must not be confounded with *plâtre*, which signifies plaster only in the sense of gypsum. It is masculine (341).

ÉMÉTIQUE, from the Greek ἐμετικὸς, vomitory, is masculine by exception (15).

TISANE, from the Greek πτισσάνη, barley-broth, is feminine according to analogy (15).

REMÈDE, from the Latin *remedium*, remedy, is masculine by exception (15).

PARAÎT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *paraître*, to appear.

CONVENABLE is one of the derivatives of *venir*, mentioned in the 15th lesson.

GUÉRISSEZ is the second person plural of the present tense of

the indicative mood of *guérir*, mentioned in the 34th lesson as being the radical of *guérison*.

591. The second person plural of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **issez**. It is similar to the same person of the imperative mood (382).

The whole of this tense of verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *J'avert*IS, *tu réfléch*IS, *il ag*IT, *nous haï*SSONS, *vous guér*ISSEZ, *ils fin*ISSENT.

Examples have now been seen of the second person plural of the present tense, indicative mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Vous ne manqu*EZ *pas de mémoire.*"—21st lesson.

"*Vous guér*ISSEZ *quelquefois.*"—35th lesson.

"*Vous vous rend*EZ *chez vos malades.*"—34th lesson.

"*Ce dont vous* ÊTES *capable.*"—23d lesson.

"*Si vous n'*AVEZ *pas d'argent.*"—19th lesson.

ARRIVER has been seen in the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the 19th lesson.

CONNAÎTRE is an irregular verb, mentioned in the 5th lesson as being the radical of *connaissance*. It has been seen also in the present tense of the indicative mood, in the 16th lesson.

ANATOMIE, from the Greek ἀνατομία, dissection, anatomy, is a word nearly the same in French and in English (199).

PHYSIOLOGIE, from the Greek φυσιολογία, physiology, is a word nearly the same in French and in English (199).

THÉRAPEUTIQUE comes from the Greek θεραπευτικὸς, disposed to heal.

592. The names of sciences which have in English the plural termination **ics**, as *therapeutics*, *optics*, *mechanics*, etc., end in French in **ique**, and are employed in the singular. There is one exception, viz. *les mathématiques*, mathematics.

SYNTAX.*

Vous **lui** *tâtez* **le** *pouls.*

593. § 1. It has been seen (62) that the article *le*, *la*, *les* may be substituted for a possessive adjective before a regimen. This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty; but, in order to avoid ambiguity, care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is.

§ 2. This pronoun is an indirect regimen when the substantive is a direct one, as in the phrase, "*Vous* LUI *tâtez* LE *pouls;*" and a direct regimen when the substantive is an indirect one, thus: "*Vous* LE *prenez par* LA *main*, you take him by the hand,"—just as in English.

§ 3. The necessity of employing a pronoun denoting who the possessor is often gives the verb the form of a reflective verb, thus: "*Je* ME *tâte* LE *pouls*, I feel my pulse; *Je* ME *suis mordu* (567) LA *langue*, I have bit my tongue."

§ 4. The pronoun showing who the possessor is may sometimes be the subject, thus: "J'*ai mal* AU *bras*, I have a pain in my arm."

Montre **à** *secondes.*

594. In English, a substantive which qualifies another substantive is generally placed first, as, *second-watch*, *steamboat*, etc. In French, the qualifying substantive follows the name of the qualified object, and the two nouns are connected by means of a preposition, generally *à* or *de*, or of a compound article, thus: *Montre* À *secondes*, second-watch; *bateau* À *vapeur*, steamboat; *pot* AU *lait*, milk-pot; *chemin* DE *fer*, railway; *poisson* DE *rivière*, river-fish; *vent* DU *nord*, north wind.

Pour **en** *arriver là.*

595. The pronoun **en** is sometimes employed without refer-

---

* See note on page 282.

ence to any thing clearly defined, and is in fact a mere expletive. The English expressions, *To make a night* OF IT, *To have the worst* OF IT, may serve to explain this redundancy.

---

*Que sais-***je?**

596. § 1. It is often improper, in interrogative phrases, to place the pronoun **je** after the verb, particularly when this verb has but one syllable, or when its termination combined with *je* would offend a delicate ear. For instance, a correct speaker would not say: *Dors-je*, *mords-je*, *perds-je*, *agis-je*, *réfléchis-je*. This is avoided by changing the construction, thus: *Est-ce que je dors*, *est-ce que je mords*, etc.

§ 2. The following combinations however are authorized: *Suis-je*, am I; *ai-je*, have I; *fais-je*, do I; *dis-je*, say I; *dois-je*, must I; *sais-je*, do I know; *vais-je*, do I go.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Vous prenez.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate by verbs derived from *prendre:* see 7th lesson, page 83, from line 13.)—You learn—You understand—You undertake—You take back—You surprise.

2. Model: *Vous prescrivez.* See Obs. 273.—(Translate by verbs derived from *écrire:* see 23d lesson, page 305, from line 14.)—You describe—You inscribe—You proscribe—You subscribe—You transcribe.

3. Model: *Un cataplasme.* See Obs. 589.—This enthusiasm—A miasm—A pleonasm—A sarcasm—A spasm.

4. Model: *Un vésicatoire.* See Obs. 590 and 322.—An interrogatory—A laboratory—An observatory—A conservatory—A refectory—A territory—A promontory—A repertory.

5. Model: *Vous guérissez.* See Obs. 591. You finish—You hate—You enjoy—You languish—You feed—You obey—You succeed—You reflect—You undergo—You betray.

6. Model: *La thérapeutique.* See Obs. 592.—Physics—Optics—Acoustics—Statistics—Tactics—Mechanics—Hydraulics—Hydrostatics.

7. Model: *Montre à secondes.* Syntax, 594.—(Use the preposition *à.*)—Fruit-basket—A one-horse carriage—*Repeating* [Repetition] watch—Drawing-paper—Letter-paper. (Use the preposition *de.*) — Class-books — Cab-horse — School-master — Garden-bench—Silver watch.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Do you learn easily?—273.
2. You surprise me—273.
3. You do not write enough—273.
4. Those miasms are dangerous—589.
5. A sarcasm is not an argument—589.
6. The spasm is *over* [passed]—589.
7. Your laboratory is very large—590.
8. I have a little observatory at the end of my garden—590.
9. Do you see the promontory?—590.
10. You never finish what you begin—591.
11. You do not enjoy the fruit of your labors—591.
12. Why do you not reflect before [of] acting?—591.
13. Catoptrics and dioptrics are subdivisions of physics—592.
14. You take his hand—593.
15. You take him by the hand—593.
16. You have opened their eyes—593.
17. Thou wilt take his arm and [thou wilt] stop him—593.
18. I have blackened my hands—593.

19. He feels his pulse [for] to know whether he is sick —593.

20. What sort of paper will you *have?*—Some letter-paper —594.

21. His father has given him a fine *repeater* [repeating-watch] —594.

22. Our old school-master was an excellent man—594.

23. Do I lose my time?—596.

24. Do I not render you justice?—596.

25. What do I fear?—596.

THIRTY-SIXTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-sixième leçon.

"Je me souviens qu'un jour j'assistai
remember assisted

à une leçon du docteur Auzoux. Il dé-
doctor Auzoux dis-

monta pièce à pièce un homme artificiel,
jointed piece artificial

et nous fit voir successivement chacun des
us madé successively each

viscères : le cerveau, les poumons, le
viscera brain lungs

cœur, l'estomac, le foie, la rate, les in-
stomach liver spleen in-

testins. Il nous dit le nom des os, des
testines told name bones

muscles, des veines, des artères et des
muscles veins arteries

nerfs. Je n'ai jamais rien vu d'aussi com-
nerves seen com-

pliqué que l'intérieur du corps humain.
plicated inside body human

"Ne faut-il pas en outre qu'un médecin
moreover

connaisse la chimie ? qu'il sache se
know (subj.) chemistry know (subj.) himself

servir à propos de l'oxygène, de l'azote et
to serve opportunely oxygen azote
des autres gaz? qu'il emploie avec dis-
gases employ (subj.) dis-
cernement un acide, un alcali, un sel, un
cernment acid alkali salt
sulfite, un chlorure ou un carbonate?
sulphite chloride carbonate
Comment se rappeler tant de choses?"
to one's self to recall so many

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"I recollect that one day I attended a lecture of Doctor Auzoux. He took to pieces the mechanical figure of a man, and showed us in succession each of the viscera: the brain, the lungs, the heart, the stomach, the liver, the spleen, the intestines. He told us the names of the bones, the muscles, the veins, the arteries, and the nerves. I never saw any thing so complicated as the interior of the human body.

"Besides, must not a physician be versed in chemistry? Must he not know the proper use of oxygen, azote, and the other gases? and be thoroughly acquainted with the properties of an acid, an alkali, a salt, a sulphite, a chloride, or a carbonate? How is it possible to remember so many things?"

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-sixième.
A quoi Alexis assista-t-il un jour?	A une leçon du docteur Auzoux.
De quoi Alexis se souvient-il?	D'avoir assisté un jour à une leçon du docteur Auzoux.
Qu'est-ce que le docteur démonta pièce à pièce?	Un homme artificiel.
Comment le démonta-t-il?	Pièce à pièce.

Que fit-il voir successivement?	Chacun des viscères.
Quels sont les principaux viscères?	Le cerveau, les poumons, le cœur, l'estomac, le foie, la rate, les intestins.
De quelles choses dit-il le nom?	Des os, des muscles, des veines, des artères et des nerfs.
Que dit Alexis de l'intérieur du corps humain?	Il dit qu'il n'a jamais rien vu d'aussi compliqué.
Qu'est-ce qui lui semble compliqué?	L'intérieur du corps humain.
Quelle science faut-il qu'un médecin connaisse en outre?	La chimie.
De quoi faut-il qu'il sache se servir à propos?	De l'oxygène, de l'azote et des autres gaz.
Que faut-il qu'il emploie avec discernement?	Un acide, un alcali, un sel, un sulfite, un chlorure ou un carbonate.
Que dit Alexis de toutes les choses qu'un médecin doit savoir?	Il dit: "Comment se rappeler tant de choses?"

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Avez-vous étudié la chimie?	Have you studied chemistry?
J'en ai quelques notions superficielles.	I have some superficial notions of it.
Pourquoi me faites-vous cette question?	Why do you ask me this question?
Parce qu'il y a dans la leçon d'aujourd'hui plusieurs mots que je ne comprends pas.	Because, in the lesson of this day, there are several words which I do not understand.
Quels sont ces mots?	Which are those words?
D'abord, l'oxygène. Qu'est ce que c'est?	First, oxygen. What is it?
C'est un gaz.	It is a gas.
Qu'est-ce qu'un gaz?	What is a gas?
C'est un corps qui n'est ni solide, ni liquide.	It is a body which is neither solid nor liquid.
L'air est donc un gaz?	Air is a gas then?

C'est la réunion de deux gaz : l'oxygène et l'azote.

It is the combination of two gases : oxygen and azote.

Maintenant, qu'est-ce qu'un alcali ?

Now, what is an alkali ?

Vous ne savez pas encore les mots qui me seraient nécessaires pour vous en donner la définition.

You have not yet learned the words which would be requisite for me to give you a definition of it.

Eh bien, alors, un sulfite ?

Well, then, a sulphite ?

C'est un sel composé d'acide sulfureux et d'une autre substance qu'on appelle généralement une base.

It is a salt composed of sulphurous acid and another substance which is generally called a base.

Et un carbonate ?

And a carbonate ?

C'est un sel composé d'acide carbonique et d'une base.

It is a salt composed of carbonic acid and a base.

Vous dites qu'un sulfite est un sel, et qu'un carbonate est un sel : les noms de sels finissent donc en *ite* et en *ate ?*

You say that a sulphite is a salt, and that a carbonate is a salt : do the names of salts end in *ite* and in *ate ?*

Oui, selon le nom de l'acide qui entre dans leur composition.

Yes, according to the name of the acid which enters into their composition.

Je ne comprends pas bien.

I do not understand very well.

Par exemple, le nom d'un sel où il entre de l'acide sulfureux finit en *ite.*

For instance, the name of a salt containing sulphurous acid ends in *ite.*

Et celui d'un sel où il entre de l'acide sulfurique finit en *ate.*

And that of a salt containing sulphuric acid ends in *ate.*

Et quelle différence y a-t-il entre l'acide sulfureux et l'acide sulfurique ?

And what difference is there between sulphurous and sulphuric acid ?

Le premier contient moins d'oxygène que le second.

The first contains less oxygen than the second.

Ainsi, les noms d'acides finissent en *ique* ou en *eux*, selon qu'ils contiennent plus ou moins d'oxygène ?

So, the names of acids end in *ic* or in *ous*, according as they contain more or less oxygen ?

Oui, ordinairement.

Yes, generally.

J'allais oublier le mot *chlorure*, que je n'ai pas compris.

I was going to forget the word *chlorure*, which I have not understood.

C'est la réunion du chlore, qui est un gaz, avec un autre corps.	It is the combination of chlorine, which is a gas, with another substance.
Dans quel cas se sert-on de la désinence *ure?*	In what case is the termination *ure* employed?
On s'en sert pour désigner la combinaison des corps non métalliques entre eux, ou avec les métaux.	It is employed to designate the combination of non-metallic substances between themselves, or with metals.
Pouvez-vous m'en donner un exemple?	Can you give me an example?
Le chlore, en se combinant avec un métal appelé sodium, forme le chlorure de sodium, qui n'est autre chose que le sel que vous mangez avec votre viande.	Chlorine, combined with a metal called sodium, forms chloride of sodium, which is nothing else than the salt which you eat with your meat.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

JE ME SOUVIENS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the pronominal verb *se souvenir* (364), seen in the 21st lesson.

ASSISTAI is the first person singular of the past tense definite of *assister*, to assist.

597. The first person singular of the past tense definite of verbs ending in **er** in the infinitive mood, is formed by changing this termination into **ai**.

The whole of this tense of verbs in *er* has now been seen: J'*assist*AI, *tu assur*AS, *il cess*A, *nous pass*ÂMES, *vous travaill*ÂTES, *ils donn*ÈRENT.

Examples have now been seen of the first person singular of the

---

* See note on page 282.

past tense definite, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*J'assist*AI *à une leçon.*"—36th lesson.

"*Je m'endur*CIS *dans mon égoïsme.*"—31st lesson.

"*Je perd*IS *le fruit de trente ans de travail.*"—27th lesson.

"*Je* FUS *insensible aux bonnes paroles.*"—31st lesson.

"*Je n'*EUS *point égard à ses prières.*"—31st lesson.

The whole of the past tense definite has now been seen in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the eighteen particular observations by which its terminations have been pointed out, may be condensed into one general rule.

598. The **past tense definite** is formed by changing the terminations of the infinitive as follows: **er** into **ai**, **as**, **a**, **âmes**, **âtes**, **èrent**; and **ir** and **re** into **is**, **is**, **it**, **îmes**, **îtes**, **irent**.

DOCTEUR is a word nearly the same in French and in English (403).

DÉMONTA is a form (178) of the verb *démonter*.

PIÈCE is feminine according to analogy (15).

ARTIFICIEL is one of the derivatives of *art*, mentioned in the 10th lesson (217). Its feminine is *artificielle* (184).

FIT is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *faire*.

FAIRE VOIR is employed in the sense of *montrer*, to show (89, 548).

599. **Chacun**, formed of *chaque*, every, and *un*, one, is an indefinite pronoun, signifying *each*, *every one*, *everybody*. Its feminine is *chacune*. It has no plural. When used in a general sense, it refers only to persons, and is always masculine. When it relates to some determined object, it takes either of the genders, and is used in speaking of things as well as of persons. Before a substantive or a pronoun, it is followed by *de*.

The pronoun *chacun* must not be confounded with the adjective *chaque*, seen in the 34th lesson. *Chaque* cannot be employed without a substantive in the singular, which it precedes.

VISCÈRE is masculine by exception (15).

CERVEAU and POUMON are masculine according to analogy (14).

ESTOMAC comes from the Latin *stomachus* stomach.

600. § 1. In many words, coming for the greater part from the Latin, and originally beginning with **s** and another consonant, the vowel **e** has been prefixed to **s** for the sake of euphony, as: *Espace*, space; *espèce*, species; *esprit*, spirit.

§ 2. Some of these words have now lost the **s** which was preserved in old French, as: *Etable*, stable; *état*, state; *étrangler*, to strangle; *étude*, study; *éponge*, spunge.

§ 3. It often happens, however, that in the derivatives of such words, the euphonic **e** is suppressed and the **s** is restored, as: *Stomachique*, *stomacal*, from *estomac*; *spacieux*, *spacieusement*, from *espace*; *spirituel*, *spiritueux*, from *esprit*; *strangulation*, from *étrangler*; *studieux*, from *étude*; *spongieux*, from *éponge*, etc.

Foie is masculine by exception (15).

Rate is feminine according to analogy (15).

Dit, in the text of this lesson, is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *dire*. The three persons singular of the past tense of this irregular verb are similar to the same persons of the present tense of the indicative mood.

Nom and Os are masculine according to analogy (14).

Muscle, from the Latin *musculus*, muscle, is masculine (587).

Veine, from the Latin *vena*, vein, is feminine according to analogy (15).

Artère, from the Greek ἀρτηρία, artery, is feminine (247).

Nerf comes from the Latin *nervus*, sinew or nerve. The *f*, which is silent in the plural, is generally pronounced in the singular.

Vu is the past participle of *voir*.

Compliqué is a form (52) of the verb *compliquer*.

Intérieur is a word nearly the same in French and in English (403).

Corps, from the Latin *corpus*, body, is masculine according to analogy (14).

Humain is one of the derivatives of *homme*, seen in the 2d lesson.

601. The termination **ain** belongs to a small class of adjectives differing slightly from the English, as: *Humain*, human or humane; *Americain*, American; *mondain*, mundane; *contemporain*, contemporaneous.

En outre is an adverbial locution signifying *moreover*. It is derived from *outre*, seen in the 17th lesson (339).

Connaisse is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of the irregular verb *connaître*, already seen. It is similar to the first person of the same tense and mood.

Chimie, from the Greek χημεία, chemistry or alchemy, is feminine according to analogy (15).

Sache is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *savoir*. It is similar to the first person of the same tense and mood.

Savoir and Connaître are both rendered by *to know;* but *connaître* is more particularly employed in the sense of to be acquainted with, or to have a knowledge of. *Connaître* may have the name of a person as well as of a thing for its regimen, whereas *savoir* cannot be followed by the name of a person. Again, *savoir* may govern another verb in the infinitive mood (187), as in this lesson, *savoir se servir;* and *connaître* is never used in such a case. Thus, *to know* has its two equivalents in French, as it has *scire* and *cognoscere* in Latin, and *wissen* and *kennen* in German.

Servir is an irregular verb which has been seen in the present tense of the indicative mood, in the 25th lesson.

Propos, and the adverbial locution *à propos*, are derivatives of *poser*, mentioned in the 12th lesson.

Oxygène is formed of two Greek words: ὀξὺς, acid, and γεννάω, to generate, in consequence of the belief, now found to be erroneous, that this element entered into the composition of every acid. It is masculine.

602. § 1. All the names of simple bodies or chemical elements are masculine.

§ 2. Some end in *e* mute, and accordingly form exceptions to the general rule (15). The principal are: *Oxygène,* oxygen; *hydrogène*, hydrogen; *azote* or *nitrogène*, nitrogen; *sulphite* or *soufre*, sulphur; *chlore*, chlorine; *iode*, iodine; *phosphore*, phosphorus; *chrôme*, chromium; *cuivre*, copper; *mercure*, mercury or quicksilver; *antimoine*, antimony; *platine,* platinum, etc., etc.

Gaz is a word of unknown origin. It takes no additional termination in the plural (237).

EMPLOIE is the third person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *employer* (561).

DISCERNEMENT is derived from *discerner*, to discern (153).

ACIDE comes from the Latin *acidus*, acid. Being an adjective used substantively, it is masculine, notwithstanding its termination (181).

603. The termination **ide** is common to adjectives, about fifty of which end in *id* in English, as: *Acide*, acid; *candide*, candid; *insipide*, insipid; *solide*, solid; *stupide*, stupid.

ALCALI, from the Arabic *alkali*, glass-wort, and SEL, from the Latin *sal*, are masculine according to analogy (14).

SULFITE, from the Latin *sulphur*, is also masculine.

604. The names of salts ending in **ite** are masculine.

CHLORURE is derived from *chlore*, chlorine, which comes from the Greek χλωρὸς, green, sallow, and is so called on account of its color. *Chlorure* is masculine.

605. The names of chemical compounds ending in **ure** are masculine.

CARBONATE is derived from *carbone*, carbon, which comes from the Latin *carbo*, coal. It is masculine.

606. The names of salts ending in **ate** are masculine.

RAPPELER is one of the derivatives of *appeler* (146), seen in the 9th lesson. *Rappeler* signifies to recall or to call back, and *se rappeler*, to remember or to recollect. *Se rappeler* requires a direct regimen, and *se souvenir* requires an indirect one, with the preposition *de*. We say *se rappeler une chose*, and *se souvenir* D'*une chose*.

SYNTAX.*

Le *docteur Auzoux.*

607. The article, which is generally omitted in English before a title adjoined to a proper name, must not be suppressed in French.

---

* See note on page 282.

Je n'ai **jamais** *vu.*

608. When a verb is in a compound tense, the adverb is generally placed between the auxiliary and the participle. But this rule is not absolute.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *J'assistai.* See Obs. 597.—I arrived—I reckoned—I asked—I employed—I forced—I gained—I threw—I showed—I occupied—I proved—I drew.

2. See Obs. 598.—I brought—Thou broughtest—He blamed—We ceased—You decided—They embraced—I finished—Thou didst cure—He groaned—We languished—You enjoyed—They fed—I pretended—Thou answeredst—He followed—We waited—You sold—They fought.

3. Model: *Chacun.* See Obs. 599.—Every one is attentive—Every one is happy—Each of us (masc.)—Each of us (fem.)—Each of these gentlemen—Each of those houses.

4. Model: *Humain.* See Obs. 601.—African—American—Inhuman—Mexican—Republican—Roman.

5. See Obs. 602.—(Translate the following words with the definite article before them.)—Nitrogen—Sulphur—Phosphorus—Carbon—Copper—Mercury—Antimony.

6. Model: *Acide.* See Obs. 603.—Morbid—Placid—Lucid—Splendid—Rigid—Solid—Timid—Intrepid—Limpid—Liquid.

7.* Model: *Un sulfite.* See Obs. 604.—An azotite—A phosphite—An arsenite—A selenite—A chromite.

8.* Model: *Un chlorure.* See Obs. 605.—A sulphuret—A phosphuret—A carburet.

9.* Model: *Un carbonate.* See Obs. 606.—An azotate,

---

* The exercises No. 7, 8, and 9 could be omitted, the words contained in them being mere technical terms. They are, however, the same in both languages, with the exception of *sulphuret*, *phosphuret*, and *carburet*, which become *sulphure*, *phosphure*, and *carbure* in French.

or a nitrate—A sulphate—A chlorate—A phosphate—A silicate.

10. Model: *Je n'ai jamais vu.* Syntax, 608.—I have not spoken—Thou hast not reflected enough—He has studied much —We shall soon have finished—You have understood easily—They have answered better.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Yesterday, I *took to pieces* [disjointed] a machine *in order* to understand its mechanism—597.

2. I employed for that *purpose* the tools which you [have] lent me—597.

3. I studied that machine with [a] great attention—597.

4. I showed it to several friends—597.

5. Your mother is so good that everybody loves her —599.

6. Every one has indulgence for his own faults—599.

7. Every one imagines *he has* [to have] genius—599.

8. The baskets were weighed; each weighed fifteen kilograms—599.

9. You will examine each of these sheets of paper—599.

10. Here are three students. Each of them will answer *in* [at] his turn—599.

11. This action is inhuman—601.

12. You are studying the Roman history—601.

13. Copper is a metal—601.

14. Oxygen is called an element, because it cannot be decomposed—602.

15. Mercury is a liquid—602, 603, 181.

16. Our comrades are intrepid—603.

17. This house is not solid—603.

18. This hyposulphite is not good for photography—604.

19. Chloride of iodine was employed with success by Claudet —605.

20. Nitrate of silver is a violent caustic—606, 181.

21. General William has been killed—607.

22. Professor Auzoux is a man of [a] great talent—607.

23. You have scarcely eaten—608.

24. I *did not hear* [have not heard] well—608.

25. They have not studied much—608.

26. You will however have enjoyed your fortune—608.

THIRTY-SEVENTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-septième leçon.

"Ensuite, comment reconnaître toutes
Then to recognize

les maladies, depuis le simple mal de tête
maladies simple ache head

ou la migraine jusqu'à l'apoplexie fou-
megrim apoplexy ful-

droyante? Si j'allais prendre la coque-
minant went to take hooping-

luche pour une fluxion de poitrine, un
cough inflammation breast

rhume pour un asthme ou pour un ca-
cold asthma ca-

tarrhe, la rougeole pour la petite vérole,
tarrh measles small pox

une engelure pour un ulcère, une fièvre
chilblain ulcer fever

maligne pour une fièvre tierce, ou la
malignant tertian

jaunisse pour la peste, il en pourrait
jaundice plague from it

résulter de fatals accidents.
to result fatal accidents

"A supposer que tous les obstacles
to suppose obstacles

s'aplanissent et que je fusse certain de ne
levelled (subj. past) certain

pas me tromper, aurais-je au moins
deceive (mistake) should have at least

atteint mon but? Me voilà médecin...
reached aim

bon. Je rentre chez moi, après avoir fait
re-enter

mes visites. Un bon dîner m'attend
visits dinner awaits

auprès d'un bon feu. Je me mets à table,
near put table

mourant de faim."
dying

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Besides, how can one distinguish the different diseases from one another, from a mere headache or a megrim to fulminant apoplexy? If I should mistake the hooping-cough for an inflammation on the chest, a cold for an asthma or a catarrh, the measles for the small-pox, a chilblain for an ulcer, a malignant fever for a tertian fever, or the jaundice for the plague, fatal accidents might result from it.

"Even supposing that all obstacles were removed, and I were certain not to mistake, should I at least have attained my end? Let us say that I am a doctor:—Well and good. I return home after visiting my patients. A nice dinner is ready for me, before a comfortable fire. I sit down to it, with a ravenous appetite."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-septième.
Que faut-il qu'un médecin reconnaisse?	Toutes les maladies.
Quel mal Alexis semble-t-il regarder comme peu de chose?	Le simple mal de tête, ou la migraine.

Quelle maladie semble-t-il regarder comme la plus terrible?	L'apoplexie foudroyante.
Quelle maladie craindrait-il de prendre pour une fluxion de poitrine?	La coqueluche.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour un asthme ou pour un catarrhe?	Un rhume.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour la petite vérole?	La rougeole.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour un ulcère?	Une engelure.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour une fièvre tierce?	Une fièvre maligne.
Que craindrait-il de prendre pour la peste?	La jaunisse.
Pour quelle maladie pourrait-il prendre la coqueluche?	Pour une fluxion de poitrine.
Pour quoi prendrait-il un rhume?	Pour un asthme ou pour un catarrhe.
Pour quoi prendrait-il la rougeole?	Pour la petite vérole.
Pour quoi prendrait-il une engelure?	Pour un ulcère.
Pour quoi prendrait-il une fièvre maligne?	Pour une fièvre tierce.
Pour quoi prendrait-il la jaunisse?	Pour la peste.
Que pourrait-il résulter de pareilles erreurs?	Il en pourrait résulter de fatals accidents.
Que suppose-t-il pour un moment?	Que tous les obstacles s'aplanissent.
De quoi serait-il certain alors?	De ne pas se tromper.
Quelle question se fait-il, en supposant les obstacles aplanis?	Aurais-je au moins atteint mon but?
Que s'imagine-t-il être?	Il s'imagine être médecin.
Où rentre-t-il?	Il rentre chez lui.
Après quoi rentre-t-il chez lui?	Après avoir fait ses visites.
Qu'est-ce qui l'attend?	Un bon dîner.
Auprès de quoi est le bon dîner?	Auprès d'un bon feu.
Que fait-il?	Il se met à table.
Dans quelle disposition se met-il à table?	Mourant de faim.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Il y a bien longtemps que je ne vous ai vu, mon cher ami.	It is very long since I saw you, my dear friend.
C'est vrai, mon cher. Comment va la santé?	True, my dear fellow. How is your health?
Pas trop mal, comme vous voyez. Et vous, comment allez-vous?	Pretty good, as you see. And how are you?
Tout doucement. J'ai été bien malade.	So, so. I have been very ill.
Bah! Qu'avez-vous eu?	You don't say so! What was the matter with you?
J'ai eu une fluxion de poitrine.	I had an inflammation on the chest.
Comment cela vous est-il venu?	How did it come?
Cela a commencé par un rhume.	It began with a cold.
Ensuite j'ai eu une grande oppression et une fièvre violente.	Then I had a strong oppression and a violent fever.
Avez-vous un bon médecin?	Have you a good physician?
Oui, je le pense. Il a de la réputation.	Yes, I think so. He has some reputation.
Que vous a-t-il prescrit?	What did he prescribe?
D'abord des sangsues; puis un vésicatoire.	Leeches at first; and then a blister.
Etes-vous complétement guéri?	Are you completely cured?
Je ne sais pas. Je suis encore faible et j'ai quelquefois des maux d'estomac.	I do not know. I am weak still, and have sometimes a pain in my stomach.
En avez-vous parlé au docteur?	Have you spoken to the doctor about it?
Oui; il prétend que cela tient à une maladie de foie.	Yes: he says it proceeds from a liver complaint.
Mangez-vous avec appétit?	Do you eat with appetite?
Oui, j'ai toujours faim.	Yes, I am always hungry.
Alors, vous serez bientôt guéri.	Then, you will soon be cured.
Je l'espère.	I hope so.
J'allais oublier de vous demander des nouvelles de monsieur votre père.	I was going to forget to inquire about your father's health.

Il a un catarrhe.	He has a catarrh.
Et vos trois petits garçons?	And your three little boys?
Le plus âgé a la rougeole; le second a la coqueluche, et le plus jeune, la petite vérole.	The eldest has the measles, the second has the hooping-cough, and the youngest the small-pox.
Mon Dieu! que de maux à la fois!	Dear me! how many evils at once!
Oui. Nous avons du malheur.	Yes. We are unlucky.
Allons, prenez courage.	Well, you must have courage.
Quand viendrez-vous nous voir?	When will you come and see us?
Plus tard. Quand vos enfants jouiront d'une meilleure santé.	Later. When your children are in better health.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

RECONNAÎTRE has been seen in the future tense, in the 20th lesson.

MALADIE is a word nearly the same in French and in English (199).

SIMPLE is an adjective which does not change in the feminine (6).

TÊTE, MIGRAINE, and APOPLEXIE, are feminine according to analogy (15).

FOUDROYANTE is a verbal adjective corresponding to *foudroyer*, to thunderstrike, which is derived from *foudre*, thunderbolt.

J'ALLAIS is the first person singular of the imperfect tense of the irregular verb *aller*.

This verb is sometimes used as an expletive before another verb in the infinitive mood, as: "*N'allez pas croire cela*, do not believe that; *N'allez pas vous tromper*, do not mistake;" or as in this lesson: "*Si j'allais prendre*, if I should take."

---

* See note on page 282.

PRENDRE is the infinitive of *prendrez*, *prîmes*, *prenant*, *prendrais*, and *prenez*, already seen.

COQUELUCHE is feminine according to analogy (15).

FLUXION is a word alike in French and in English (49). It is feminine (50).

POITRINE, from the Latin *pectus*, *pectoris*, breast, is feminine according to analogy (15).

RHUME, ASTHME, and CATARRHE, are masculine by exception (15).

ROUGEOLE, PETITE VÉROLE, and ENGELURE, are feminine according to analogy (15). ROUGEOLE comes from *rouge*, red.

ULCÈRE, from the Latin *ulcus*, *ulceris*, ulcer, is masculine by exception (15).

FIÈVRE, from the Latin *febris*, fever, is feminine according to analogy (15).

MALIGNE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *malin* (2).

TIERCE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *tiers*, third.

JAUNISSE, one of the derivatives of *jaune*, yellow, mentioned in the 23d lesson, and PESTE, from the Latin *pestis*, plague, are feminine according to analogy (15).

RÉSULTER is a verb of the 1st conjugation, and in the infinitive mood (121).

FATAL comes from the Latin *fatalis*, fatal. It has been seen (469) that the plural of adjectives ending in *al* is generally formed by changing this termination into *aux;* but there are some exceptions, and *fatal* is one. This word, however, and a few more among the exceptions, being seldom heard with the plural form, there is something unpleasant to the ear in *fatals accidents*, which might be avoided by saying *funestes accidents*, the word *funeste* having the same meaning as *fatal.*

SUPPOSER, for *sub poser*, is one of the derivatives of *poser*, mentioned in the 12th lesson.

609. § 1. **Sub** is a Latin preposition signifying *under*, *below.* It is in French an inseparable particle implying a subordinate degree. It begins words many of which are nearly the same in English, as: *Subalterne*, subaltern; *subdiviser*, to subdivide; *subjuguer*, to subjugate.

§ 2. In French, as well as in English, the **b** of **sub** is often

changed into **c**, **f**, **g**, or **p**, when the next syllable begins with one of these consonants, as: *Succomber*, to succumb; *suffixe*, suffix; *suggérer*, to suggest; *supposer*, to suppose.

§ 3. In some words the **b** is suppressed, as *sujet*, subject.

OBSTACLE is a word alike in French and in English (68). It is masculine (587).

APLANISSENT is the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of *aplanir*, derived from *plan*, level, flat, which comes from the Latin *planus*, having the same meaning (148, 257).

610. The third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by changing this termination into **issent**. It is similar to the same person of the present tense of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods. This similarity is peculiar to verbs in *ir*.

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*En quelque moment qu'elles arriv*ASSENT."—19th lesson.

"*Que tous les obstacles s'aplan*ISSENT."—37th lesson.

"*Quelques occupations qu'elles interromp*ISSENT."—19th lesson.

"*Quelque inopportunes qu'elles* FUSSENT."—19th lesson.

"*Quelques inconvénients qu'elles* EUSSENT."—19th lesson.

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Je sub*ISSE, *tu rempl*ISSES, *il réun*ÎT, *nous sent*ISSIONS, *vous sent*ISSIEZ, *ils aplan*ISSENT.

Examples have now been seen of the past tense of the subjunctive mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the eighteen different observations by which its terminations have been pointed out, may be condensed into one general rule.

611. The **past tense** of the **subjunctive mood** is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: **er** into **asse**, **asses**, **ât**, **assions**, **assiez**, **assent**; **ir** and **re** into **isse**, **isses**, **ît**, **issions**, **issiez**, **issent**.

TROMPER is a verb in the infinitive mood (121).

AURAIS is the first person singular of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

Examples have now been seen of the first person singular of

the conditional mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*J'aim*ERAIS *les fonctions de médecin.*"—34th lesson.

"*Je sens que je ne réuss*IRAIS *pas.*"—33d lesson.

"*Je craind*RAIS *d'être réduit au silence.*"—34th lesson.

"*Je* SERAIS *peut-être un jour.*"—33d lesson.

"AURAIS-*je atteint mon but?*"—37th lesson.

ATTEINT is the past participle of *atteindre*, to reach, to attain.

612. All the verbs in **indre**, already mentioned (446), form their past participle by changing **dre** into **t**.

BUT is masculine according to analogy (14).

RENTRE is a form (349) of the verb *rentrer*, which is derived from *entrer*, seen in the 35th lesson (146).

VISITE is feminine according to analogy (15).

DÎNER, sometimes spelled DÎNÉ, is derived from the verb *dîner*, to dine. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

ATTEND is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *attendre*, already seen.

613. The third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of verbs ending in **re**, is formed by merely suppressing this termination.

Examples have now been seen of the third person singular of this tense, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Ce vice donn*E *naissance.*"—1st lesson.

"*Il ne s'ag*IT *pas de se lamenter.*"—32d lesson.

"*Un bon dîner m'attend.*"—37th lesson.

"*C'*EST *un proverbe.*"—1st lesson.

"*N'*A-*t-on pas dit.*"—1st lesson.

The whole of this tense of the verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je répond*S, *tu perd*S, *il attend*, *nous entend*ONS, *vous rend*EZ, *ils prétend*ENT.

Examples have now been seen of the whole of the present tense of the indicative mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the eighteen particular observations by which its terminations have been pointed out, may be condensed into one general rule.

614. The **present tense** of the **indicative mood** is

formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: **er** into **e**, **es**, **e**, **ons**, **ez**, **ent**; **ir** into **is**, **is**, **it**, **issons**, **issez**, **issent**: **re** into **s**, **s**, (blank), **ons**, **ez**, **ent**.

615. **Auprès**, one of the derivatives of PRÈS, mentioned in the second lesson, is an adverb and a preposition. *Près* and *auprès* are both translated by the word *near*. When used as prepositions, they are followed by DE. The difference between these two words is slight. *Auprès* denotes well-known and determined proximity; *près* has something more vague. Thus we say *Plus près*, *moins près*, and not *Plus auprès*, *moins auprès*.

METS is the first person singular of the present tense, indicative mood of *mettre*, already seen. It is similar to the second person singular of the same tense and mood.

TABLE is feminine according to analogy (15).

MOURANT is the present participle of the irregular verb *mourir*, already seen.

SYNTAX.*

Il **en** *pourrait résulter.*
Il pourrait **en** *résulter.*

616. The pronoun, when a regimen, is placed before its verb (43); but when an infinitive is governed by another verb, the pronoun referring to this infinitive may be placed before either verb. However, it is more conformable to general custom to place the pronoun regimen before the verb that governs it.

Après avoir fait.
After making

617. It has been said (129) that the French prepositions govern the infinitive mood: accordingly, "*after* HAVING *made*" must be rendered by "*après* AVOIR *fait*." But, in English, the aux-

---

* See note on page 282.

iliary *having* is sometimes suppressed, and the principal verb is governed directly by the preposition, thus: *After making.* This abbreviation would not be correct in French.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Supposer.* See Obs. 609.—To submerge—Subsequent—To subsist—Substantive—Suffocation—Suggestion—To supplant—To support.

2. Model: *Qu'ils aplanissent.* See Obs. 610.—That they might act—That they might sleep—That they might finish—That they might languish—That they might feed—That they might obey—That they might depart—That they might succeed.

3. See Obs. 611.—That I might go—That thou mightest arrive—That he might bring—That we might buy—That you might love—That they might apply—That I might divert—That thou mightest sleep—That he might finish—That we might furnish—That you might cure—That they might moan—That I might interrupt—That thou mightest bite—That he might pretend—That we might lose—That you might pursue—That they might follow.

4. Model: *Atteint.* See Obs. 612.—Feared—Extinguished—Feigned—Joined—Painted—Pitied—Dyed.

5. Model: *Il attend.* See Obs. 613.—He learns—He understands—He defends—He hears—He undertakes—He pretends—He loses—He takes—He answers—He renders—He suspends—He surprises—He sells.

6. See Obs. 614.—I stop—Thou callest—He admires—We love—You amuse—They bring—I soften—Thou warnest—He accomplishes—We act—You subject—They level—I wait—Thou understandest—He defends—We hear—You melt—They interrupt.

7. Model: *Après avoir fait.* Syntax, 617—After playing—After eating—After speaking—After losing—After taking—After answering—After looking.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. I wished them to finish their task to-day—610.
2. They were blamed, though they acted honestly—610.
3. They obeyed their master, though they hated him—610.
4. He has pitied me, but he has not relieved me—612.
5. He is feared, but he is not loved—612.
6. Have you painted your boat?—612.
7. He hears, but he does not answer—613.
8. I am sure that he understands you—613.
9. My son is learning French and Latin—613.
10. Come near me—615.
11. Come nearer—615.
12. You are too near now—615.
13. I know something, but I will not tell it—616.
14. Do not propose any rewards to them; they ought not to accept any—616.
15. He knew his lessons well, but he could learn but one *every* [by] day—616.
16. After finishing his task, he slept two hours—617.
17. After hearing his remonstrances, she wept bitterly—617.
18. After eating his fish, he asked *for* some meat—617.

THIRTY-EIGHTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-huitième leçon.

"A la première cuillerée de soupe que
spoonful soup
j'avale, on sonne. Monsieur le comte
swallow rings count
| un tel |, saisi d'un accès de goutte ou
such a one seized fit gout
d'une toux violente, me fait supplier de
cough violent to entreat
tout quitter pour apaiser ses souffrances.
leave to appease sufferings
Une autre fois, c'est madame la baronne
Mylady (Mrs.) baroness
une telle qui a une attaque de nerfs, ou
attack (fit)
mademoiselle sa sœur qui s' est donné
miss sister to herself given
une entorse, et dont la famille inquiète
sprain uneasy
demande que je | me rende | auprès
asks repair (subj.)
d'elle à la minute même.
her minute even
"Ou bien encore, au milieu de la nuit,
midst

qui sait si l'on ne viendrait pas m'éveiller
knows would come to wake

(moi qui dors d'un sommeil si profond!)
sleep sleep profound

soit pour une opération, soit pour le
either operation or

pansement d'une blessure? Tous mes
dressing wound

instants seraient pris, et les soins que je
instants would be taken cares

prodiguerais à la santé d'autrui finiraient
should lavish other people would finish

par m' ôter la mienne. Décidément,
to take away mine Decidedly

je ne me ferai pas médecin."
will make

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"I have but just swallowed a spoonful of soup when the bell rings. Count such a one, seized with a fit of the gout, or a violent cough, sends to beseech me to leave every thing else, and come and relieve his sufferings. Another time, Baroness such a one is in a fit of hysterics, or her sister has sprained her ankle, and her anxious family beg I will come to her on that very minute.

"Or else, who knows but I may be waked up in the middle of the night (I who am such a sound sleeper!) either for an operation or to dress a wound? Every moment of my time would be taken up, and the care I should bestow on the health of other people, would in the end ruin my own. Decidedly, I will not be a physician."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-huitième.
A quel moment Alexis suppose-t-il qu'on sonne?	A la première cuillerée de soupe qu'il avale.
Qu'arrive-t-il à la première cuillerée de soupe qu'il avale?	On sonne.
Qui est-ce qui est saisi d'un accès de goutte ou d'une toux violente?	Monsieur le comte un tel.
De quoi monsieur le comte un tel est-il saisi?	D'un accès de goutte ou d'une toux violente.
Pourquoi fait-il supplier le docteur de tout quitter?	Pour apaiser ses souffrances.
Qu'est-ce que le comte fait demander au docteur?	De tout quitter pour apaiser ses souffrances.
Qu'arrive-t-il une autre fois à madame la baronne une telle?	Elle a une attaque de nerfs.
Qui a une attaque de nerfs?	Madame la baronne une telle.
Qui est-ce qui s'est donné une entorse?	Mademoiselle sa sœur.
Qu'est-il arrivé à mademoiselle sa sœur?	Elle s'est donné une entorse.
Qui demande que le docteur se rende auprès d'elle?	Sa famille inquiète.
Que demande sa famille inquiète?	Que le docteur se rende auprès d'elle, à la minute même.
Quand viendrait-on peut-être éveiller le docteur?	Au milieu de la nuit.
Que pourrait-il arriver au milieu de la nuit?	Qu'on viendrait l'éveiller.
Pourquoi viendrait-on l'éveiller?	Pour une opération ou pour le pansement d'une blessure.
Comment Alexis dort-il?	Il dort d'un sommeil profond—*or*, Il dort profondément.
Croit-il qu'il pourrait disposer de quelques instants, s'il était docteur?	Non; il dit que tous ses instants seraient pris.
Qu'est-ce qui finirait par lui ôter la santé?	Les soins qu'il prodiguerait à celle d'autrui.

Quel serait le résultat des soins qu'il prodiguerait à la santé d'autrui?	Ces soins finiraient par lui ôter la sienne.
Quelle décision prend-il?	Il prend la décision de ne pas se faire médecin—*or*, Il dit: "Décidément, je ne me ferai pas médecin."

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Monsieur le comte est-il chez lui?	Is the count at home?
Oui, monsieur; mais il dort encore.	Yes, sir; but he is still asleep.
Je croyais qu'il s'éveillait toujours de bonne heure.	I thought he used to awake early.
Oui, monsieur; mais il est rentré fort tard hier au soir.	Yes, sir; but he returned home very late last night.
Et puis il a travaillé jusqu'à deux heures du matin.	And then he wrote till two o'clock in the morning.
Savez-vous s'il a reçu la visite de son avocat?	Do you know whether he has seen his counsel?
Je ne sais pas, monsieur. Mais son avoué est venu hier.	I don't know, sir. But his attorney called yesterday.
Madame la comtesse est-elle visible?	Is the countess visible?
Non, monsieur. Elle a sa migraine.	No, sir. She has a sick headache.
Et madame la baronne, sa sœur?	And the baroness, her sister?
Elle est partie ce matin avec ses enfants.	She started this morning with her children.
Il n'y a donc personne de la famille à qui je puisse parler?	So, there is no one of the family that I can speak to?
Le père de monsieur le comte est chez lui; mais il est très-souffrant.	The count's father is at home; but he is very poorly.
Qu'a-t-il donc?	What is the matter with him?
Il a la goutte.	He has the gout.
Allez lui demander s'il peut me recevoir.	Go and ask him whether he can receive me.

A l'instant, monsieur.	Directly, sir.
Eh bien, que vous a-t-il dit ?	Well, what does he say?
Il dit qu'il aura le plaisir de recevoir monsieur.	He says he shall be happy to see you.
Bien.	Well.
Si monsieur veut bien me suivre, je lui montrerai le chemin.	If you will be pleased to follow me, I will show you the way.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

CUILLERÉE is derived from *cuiller* or *cuillère*, spoon (329).

SOUPE comes from the German *suppe*, soup. It is feminine according to analogy (15).

AVALE is a form (349) of the verb *avaler*, to swallow.

SONNE is a form (22) of the verb *sonner*, to sound, to ring, to ring the bell, to toll, derived from the substantive *son*, sound, which comes from the Latin *sonus*, having the same meaning.

COMTE comes from the Latin *comes*, *comitis*, companion, or upper officer. The feminine is *comtesse*.

TEL has been seen in its feminine form in the 22d lesson. *Un tel, une telle*, is used in the place of a proper name, as *such a one*, or *so and so*, in English.

SAISI is a form (481) of the verb *saisir*, to seize.

ACCÈS is masculine according to analogy (14).

GOUTTE, from the Latin *gutta*, is feminine according to analogy (15). It signifies *drop* and *gout*.

TOUX, from the Latin *tussis*, cough, is feminine by exception (14).

SUPPLIER is a verb of the first conjugation and in the infinitive mood (121).

QUITTER is derived from the adjective *quitte*, mentioned in the 29th lesson as being the radical of *acquitter*.

---

* See note on page 282.

APAISER is derived from *paix*, peace (148), which comes from the Latin *pax*, peace.

SOUFFRANCE is derived from the verb *souffrir*, seen in the 29th lesson (23).

618. **Madame** is formed of *ma*, the possessive adjective, and *dame*, lady. It corresponds to *Mrs.* and to *Lady*, before a proper name; and to *Madame* or *Mylady*, in addressing a woman. The plural is **mesdames**.

619. Though the possessive adjective is inseparable in *monsieur* and *messieurs* (149), it is not so in *madame* and *mesdames*; accordingly, *a lady*, *some ladies*, should be rendered by *une dame*, *des dames*, and not by *une madame*, *des mesdames;* though we say, *un monsieur*, *des messieurs.*

BARONNE is the feminine of *baron*, a baron.

620. Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their feminine, as: *Baron*, *baronne* (184); *marquis*, *marquise* (2); *musicien*, *musicienne* (184); *glaneur*, *glaneuse*, gleaner (401); *acteur*, *actrice* (402); *juif*, jew, *juive*, jewess (251).

621. **Mademoiselle** is formed of the possessive adjective *ma*, and *demoiselle*, young lady. It corresponds to *Miss,* before a proper name; and to *Miss* or *Madam*, in addressing a girl or an unmarried woman. The plural is **mesdemoiselles**.

622. Without the possessive adjective, **demoiselle** signifies *girl*, *young lady* (unmarried), *single woman*, *spinster* (149, 619).

SŒUR, from the Latin *soror*, sister, is feminine (8).

DONNÉ is the past participle of the verb *donner*, already seen. In the phrase, *Qui s'est donné une entorse*, the participle does not agree with the subject, because the verb is pronominal (354), nor with the pronoun *se*, because it is an indirect regimen (568).

ENTORSE is feminine according to analogy (15).

INQUIÈTE is the feminine of the adjective *inquiet* (185).

DEMANDE is a form (22) of the verb *demander*, already seen.

RENDE is the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *rendre*, already seen.

623. The first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs ending in **re** in the infinitive, is formed

by changing this termination into **e** mute. It is similar to the third person singular of the same tense and mood (530).

Examples have now been seen of the first person singular of the present tense of the subjunctive mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Il faut que je gagne de quoi vivre.*"—31st lesson.

"*Il est grand temps que j'agisse.*"—31st lesson.

"*La famille demande que je me rende.*"—38th lesson.

"*Il s'étonne que je* sois *comme tous les jeunes gens.*"—30th lesson.

"*Il est grand temps que j'*aie *de la résolution.*"—31st lesson.

The whole of the present tense of the subjunctive mood of verbs in *re* has now been seen: *Je rende*, *tu rendes*, *il attende*, *nous rendions*, *vous rendiez*, *ils rendent*.

The whole of this tense has been seen in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the eighteen different observations by which its terminations have been pointed out, may be condensed into one general rule.

624. § 1. The **present tense** of the **subjunctive mood** is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: **er** and **re** into **e**, **es**, **e**, **ions**, **iez**, **ent**; and **ir** into **isse**, **isses**, **isse**, **issions**, **issiez**, **issent**.

§ 2. The peculiarity of verbs in **ir** consists in the addition of the syllable **iss** to every person, but the letters following this syllable are the same as in the two other forms of conjugation.

§ 3. In verbs in **er** the three persons of the singular and the third person of the plural number are similar to the same persons of the present tense, indicative mood; while in verbs in **ir** and **re** the similarity exists but in the third person plural.

§ 4. In verbs in **ir** the first and second persons singular, and the three persons plural, are similar to the same persons of the past tense, subjunctive mood.

§ 5. In the three forms of conjugation, the first and second persons plural are similar to the same persons of the imperfect tense.

Elle has been seen in its plural form in the 6th lesson (156).

Milieu, mentioned in the 17th lesson as one of the derivatives of *mi*, is formed of this word and of *lieu*, seen in the 29th lesson.

SAIT is the third person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of *savoir*, to know.

VIENDRAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *venir*.

ÉVEILLER is derived from *veille*, watch, watching, vigil, which comes from the Latin *vigilia*, watching.

DORS is the first person singular of the present tense, indicative mood, of the irregular verb *dormir*, already seen.

SOMMEIL is masculine according to analogy (14).

PROFOND is derived from *fond* (182), seen in the 30th lesson.

SOIT, as a conjunction, is derived from *soit*, the third person singular of the present tense, subjunctive mood, of *être*. It corresponds to *either* and *or*. With *que* after it, it signifies *whether*.

OPÉRATION is a word alike in French and in English (49).

PANSEMENT is derived from the verb *panser*, to dress (a wound), or to groom (horses), a word of unknown origin.

BLESSURE is derived from the verb *blesser*, to wound, to hurt.

INSTANT is masculine according to analogy (14).

SERAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *être*.

The whole of this mood of the verb *être* has now been seen: *Je serais, tu serais, il serait, nous serions, vous seriez, ils seraient.*

PRIS is the past participle of *prendre*. In the text of this lesson, it agrees with *instants*, which is masculine and plural (354); but its final letter being *s*, it does not differ from the singular (53).

PRODIGUERAIS is a form (582) of the verb *prodiguer*, derived from *prodigue*, prodigal, which comes from the Latin *prodigus*.

AUTRUI, derived from *autre*, is an indefinite pronoun, signifying *another*, *others*, or *other people*, but always employed in the singular.

FINIRAIENT is the third person plural of the conditional mood of *finir*, already seen.

625. The third person plural of the conditional mood of verbs ending in **ir** in the infinitive, is formed by adding **aient** to this termination.

Examples have now been seen of the third person plural of the

conditional mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*La peinture et la musique demand*ERAIENT *des études.*"—33d lesson.

"*Les soins fin*IRAIENT *par m'ôter*, etc."—38th lesson.

"*Elles vous condui*RAIENT *loin.*"—21st lesson.

"*Tous mes instants* SERAIENT *pris.*"—38th lesson.

"*D'autres* AURAIENT *été durs.*"—28th lesson.

The whole of the conditional mood of verbs in *ir* has now been seen: *Je réuss*IRAIS, *tu souffr*IRAIS, *il sent*IRAIT, *nous jou*IRIONS, *vous adouc*IRIEZ, *ils fin*IRAIENT.

OTER is supposed to come from the Latin *obstare*, to oppose, to hinder. It signifies *to remove* or *to take away.*

LA MIENNE is the feminine of LE MIEN, seen in the 26th lesson.

Examples have now been seen of all the possessive pronouns in the following phrases:

"*Un rang plus brillant que* LE MIEN."—26th lesson

"*Finiraient par m'ôter* LA MIENNE."—38th lesson.

"*Pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des* TIENS?"—25th lesson.

"*Cette langue étant* LA SIENNE."—5th lesson.

"*Aujourd'hui c'est* LE NÔTRE."—14th lesson.

"*Vous prendrez* LA VÔTRE."—15th lesson.

"*Une manière de voir différente de* LA LEUR."—30th lesson.

DÉCIDÉMENT is derived from *décider*, seen in the 28th lesson.

FERAI is the first person singular of the future tense of *faire.* This verb is often employed with the reflective or pronominal form, as in the text of this lesson, for *to turn* or *to become.*

SYNTAX.*

Monsieur le comte.
Madame la baronne.
Mademoiselle sa sœur.

626. Titles are preceded by *Monsieur*, *Madame*, or *Made-*

---

* See note on page 282.

moiselle, with the article, in emphatic or ceremonious language. The possessive adjective before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithets.

Il me fait supplier.

627. Various examples have been seen already of *faire* followed by an infinitive. One of the most frequent meanings of such combinations is, *To cause something to be done*, *To order it to be done*, *To have*, or, *To get it done*, as in the above example, *Il me fait supplier*, that is, He causes me to be entreated.

Il me fait supplier de **tout** *quitter.*

628. When the indefinite pronoun **tout**, all, every thing, any thing, is a direct regimen, it generally precedes the verb in the infinitive mood; and in the compound tenses it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle, as: *J'ai* TOUT *quitté*, I have left all. But it follows the verb in the simple tenses, as: *Je quitte tout*, I leave all. The same observations are applicable to **rien.**

La famille **demande.**

This might be translated by *The family asks*, or by *The family ask*, according to this rule of English grammar, that a noun of multitude may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it either of the singular or plural number, according to its sense of unity or plurality; but in French it would not be correct to say *La famille demandent.*

629. A **noun of multitude** in the singular number requires that the verb or pronoun should agree with it in the singular number, unless it be employed as a partitive collective noun. (See for this restriction 205, 206, 220.)

A la minute **même.**

At the VERY minute.

630. The word VERY, when it precedes an adjective or an ad-

verb, is rendered by *très*, *bien*, or *fort*, as has been seen in the following examples: *très-agréable, bien fous, fort peu;* but when it precedes a substantive, it is generally rendered by MÊME, placed after the substantive.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. Model: *Madame.* See Obs. 618 and 619.—Yes, madam—No, madam—Mrs. Delatour—Lady Delatour—Good day, ladies—A lady—Those ladies.

2. Model: *Baronne.* See Obs. 620.—(Translate the following by feminine substantives.)—Apprentice—Comrade—Fellow-student—Student—Merchant, or tradeswoman—Workwoman—Rival.

3. Model: *Mademoiselle.* See Obs. 621 and 622.—Miss, or Madam—Miss Delatour—*The* Misses Delatour—A young lady—She is single—Two young ladies (unmarried).

4. Model: *Que je rende.* See Obs. 623.—That I may wait—That I may fight—That I may defend—That I may hear—That I may interrupt—That I may put—That I may lose—That I may answer—That I may follow—That I may live.

5. See Obs. 624.—That I may admire—That thou mayest bring—That he may accept—That we may arrive—That you may advance—That they may assure—That I may free—That thou mayest warn—That he may accomplish—That we may act—That you may bless—That they may divert—That I may defend—That thou mayest hear—That he may melt—That we may interrupt—That you may bite—That they may put.

6. Model: *Ils finiraient.* See Obs. 625.—They would soften—They would sleep—They would enjoy—They would open—They would perish—They would reflect—They would suffer.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Madam, are you Mrs. Delatour?—618.
2. No, madam, I am her sister—618.
3. Ladies, we are happy to receive you—618.
4. What does that lady *want* [ask]?—619.
5. She *inquires after* [asks] some ladies who *live* [dwell] in the house—619.
6. Here is another lady who inquires after them also—619.
7. Ladies, if you will follow me, I will show you the way —618.
8. His sister is an honest workwoman—620.
9. My mother is your creditor—620.
10. My sister and yours are friends—620.
11. Is your father at home, Miss?—621.
12. Where is Miss Charlotte?—621.
13. She is in the garden with another young lady—622.
14. Why *did you say* [have you said] Madam in *addressing* [speaking to] the sister of our friend?—618.
15. *Is she not a married lady* [Is it not a lady]?—619.
16. No, you know [well] she is single [spinster]—622.
17. I must sell my house—623.
18. Must I lose so much as that?—623.
19. *Would* [will] you have me wait?—623.
20. What *would* [will] you have me answer?—623.
21. Must I follow them?—623.
22. They would sleep till to-morrow morning—625.
23. The doctor says that some leeches would cure you—625.
24. He thinks that his comrades would betray him—625.
25. Can I see your father?—626.
26. Is your mother in good health?—626.
27. Shall I have the pleasure of seeing your sister?—626.
28. He orders soup to be given to the poor—627.
29. I shall have some provisions brought—627.

30. If you cannot act yourself, get a friend to act *for you* —627.

31. You have caused him to be blamed by his father—627.

32. He knows every thing—628.

33. They have eaten all—628.

34. We have seen every thing—628.

35. You may say all—628.

36. They have learned nothing—628.

37. He knows nothing—628.

38. The family are *assembled* [reunited]—629.

39. The multitude were uneasy—629.

40. It is the very thing which we want—630.

41. There is the very person that we were speaking of—630.

42. It is the very name that I had forgotten—630.

43. You shall be served *on* [at] the very instant—630.

THIRTY-NINTH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Trente-neuvième leçon.

"Si je m' engageais? On vit bien dans
engaged (enlisted) lives

une bonne garnison; et l'on n'a pas be-
garrison

soin d'être savant pour se faire soldat.
learned soldier

Toutefois, sachant déjà lire, écrire et
Nevertheless knowing already to read

compter, j'aurais plus de chances d'avan-
calculate chances pro-

cement que bien d'autres. Je pourrais
motion many

parvenir au grade de général. Cela se
attain grade general

voit en France, où quiconque sert la
sees France whoever serves

patrie porte dans sa giberne le bâton
country bears cartridge-box stick (truncheon)

de maréchal et la croix d'honneur. C'est
field-marshal cross

dommage qu'il faille se battre. Cette
must (subj.) to fight

obligation ne me plairait pas; car je
obligation would please

suis d'humeur bénigne et pacifique.
humor benign pacific

"Je n'aimerais pas non plus les
neither

corvées, ni les marches forcées, ni
drudgeries (extra-duty) marches forced

tous les désagréments qui les accompa-
unpleasantness accom-

gnent. Tantôt vous grelottez par un froid
pany Sometimes shiver cold

de dix degrés au-dessous de zéro; tantôt,
ten degrees below zero

écrasé sous le poids de votre équipement,
crushed accoutrement

vous vous traînez, le sac sur le dos et le
drag knapsack back

fusil sur l'épaule, par une chaleur étouf-
musket shoulder heat suffo-

fante; ou bien vous enfoncez jusqu'à
cating sink

mi-jambe dans des marais fangeux."
mid-leg marshes miry

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"Supposing I was to enlist? A garrison life is very agreeable, and it is not necessary to be learned to become a soldier. However, as I know how to read and write and cast accounts, I should have more chances of promotion than many others. I might rise to the rank of a general. Such things are seen in France, where every man who serves his country has the truncheon of a field-marshal and the cross of the legion of honor within his grasp. Only it is a pity one is obliged to fight. I should not like this obligation, for I am of a mild and peaceful disposition.

"Neither should I like extra-duty, nor forced marches, nor all the disagreeable accompaniments which attend them. Some-

times shivering in the cold ten degrees below the freezing-point; sometimes, crushed with the weight of your accoutrements, you drag yourself along, with your knapsack on your back and your musket on your shoulder, in a suffocating heat, or else sunk up to the middle of your legs in miry marshes."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la trente-neuvième.
Que dit Alexis au commencement de cette leçon?	"Si je m'engageais?"
Selon lui, comment vit-on dans une bonne garnison	On vit bien.
Où vit-on bien?	Dans une bonne garnison.
Pour quoi n'a-t-on pas besoin d'être savant?	Pour se faire soldat.
De quoi n'a-t-on pas besoin pour se faire soldat?	On n'a pas besoin d'être savant.
Que sait-il déjà, toutefois?	Il sait lire, écrire et compter.
Quelles chances aurait-il?	Il aurait plus de chances d'avancement que bien d'autres.
Pourquoi aurait-il plus de chances d'avancement que bien d'autres?	Parce qu'il sait lire, écrire et compter.
A quel grade pourrait-il parvenir?	Au grade de général.
Où cela se voit-il?	En France.
Que porte dans sa giberne quiconque sert la patrie?	Le bâton de maréchal et la croix d'honneur.
Quelle est l'obligation qui ne plairait pas à Alexis?	L'obligation de se battre.
Pourquoi cette obligation ne lui plairait-elle pas?	Parce qu'il est d'humeur bénigne et pacifique.
Qu'est-ce qu'il n'aimerait pas non plus?	Les corvées, ni les marches forcées, ni tous les désagréments qui les accompagnent.
Que fait un soldat par un froid de dix degrés?	Il grelotte.

Par quel froid grelotte-t-il quelquefois ?	Par un froid de dix degrés au-dessous de zéro.
Sous quel poids se trouve-t-il quelquefois écrasé ?	Sous le poids de son équipement.
Qu'a-t-il sur le dos ?	Le sac—*or*, Son sac.
Qu'a-t-il sur l'épaule ?	Le fusil—*or*, Son fusil.
Comment porte-t-il le sac ?	Sur le dos.
Comment porte-t-il le fusil ?	Sur l'épaule.
Que fait-il quelquefois par une chaleur étouffante ?	Il se traîne, le sac sur le dos et le fusil sur l'épaule.
Par quelle température se traîne-t-il ainsi ?	Par une chaleur étouffante.
Jusqu'où enfonce-t-il dans des marais fangeux ?	Jusqu'à mi-jambe.
Dans quoi enfonce-t-il jusqu'à mi-jambe ?	Dans des marais fangeux.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION.

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Il fait bien beau aujourd'hui.	It is very fine weather to-day.
Vous trouvez ? Pour moi, la chaleur me semble étouffante.	Do you think so ? I find the heat sultry.
Il n'y a pourtant que vingt-deux degrés.	We have however but twenty-two degrees.
Je ne comprends rien à votre thermomètre. Je ne connais que celui de Fahrenheit.	I do not understand your thermometer. I know but Fahrenheit's.
Le nôtre me paraît plus simple.	Ours seems to me to be more simple.
C'est peut-être parce que vous y êtes accoutumé.	It is perhaps because you are used to it.
C'est bien possible.	May be.
Nous autres, par vingt-deux degrés, nous entendrions une température très-froide.	For us, twenty-two degrees would be a very cold temperature.
Et nous aussi, si nous disions vingt-deux degrés au-dessous de zéro.	And for us too, if we said twenty-two degrees below zero.

Quelle température entendez-vous donc par zéro?

Celle de la congélation de l'eau.

Bien.

L'espace entre ce point et celui de l'ébullition de l'eau est gradué en cent divisions ou parties égales.

Je comprends maintenant pourquoi vous appelez votre thermomètre *centigrade.* Mais n'en avez-vous pas encore un autre?

Oui; celui de Réaumur, dans lequel le même espace est gradué en quatre-vingts divisions, au lieu de cent.

Duquel se sert-on le plus?

Du thermomètre centigrade. On n'emploie guère l'autre aujourd'hui.

Quelle est la plus haute température que vous ayez à Paris?

Dans les grandes chaleurs, nous avons quelquefois plus de trente degrés.

A combien de degrés de Fahrenheit cela équivaut-il?

A environ quatre-vingt-dix.

Ce doit être insupportable.

Je vois que vous n'aimez pas la chaleur.

Non, j'y suis plus sensible qu'au froid.

What temperature, then, do you mean by zero?

Freezing-point.

I understand.

The space between that and the degree at which water boils is graduated into a hundred divisions or equal parts.

Now I understand why you give the name of *centigrade* to your thermometer. But have you not another?

Yes; Reaumur's, in which the same space is graduated into eighty divisions, instead of a hundred.

Which is most commonly used?

The centigrade thermometer. The other is scarcely employed now.

What is the highest temperature that you have in Paris?

In the hottest days, we have sometimes more than thirty degrees.

How many degrees of Fahrenheit would that make?

About ninety.

It must be intolerable.

I see you do not like the heat.

No, I don't; it affects me more than cold.

SECOND DIVISION.——THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

ENGAGEAIS is a form (479, 274) of the verb *engager*, to engage.

VIT is the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood, of the irregular verb *vivre*, seen in the 29th lesson.

GARNISON is one of the derivatives of *garnir*, mentioned in the 19th lesson. It is feminine by exception (14).

SAVANT is an adjective, often used substantively. It is derived from *savoir*, to know, but should not be confounded with *sachant*, explained below.

SOLDAT is derived from the verb *solder*, to pay, which comes from the Latin *solvere*, to pay.

TOUTEFOIS is one of the derivatives of *fois*, mentioned in the first lesson.

SACHANT is the present participle of the irregular verb *savoir*.

DÉJÀ comes from the Latin *jam*, now, already.

LIRE is an irregular verb.

CHANCE is feminine according to analogy (15).

AVANCEMENT is derived from the verb *avancer*, seen in the 22d lesson (153).

PARVENIR is one of the derivatives of *venir*, mentioned in the 15th lesson.

GRADE, from the Latin *gradus*, step, degree, is masculine by exception (15).

GÉNÉRAL is a word alike in French and in English (30).

VOIT is the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood, of *voir*.

631. Quiconque, formed of *qui* and the old word *onque*, ever, from the Latin *unquam*, is an indefinite pronoun, signifying

---

* See note on page 282.

whoever. It is generally masculine and always singular. It refers to persons only.

SERT is the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood, of the irregular verb *servir*, already seen.

PATRIE is feminine according to analogy (15).

PORTE is a form (22) of the verb *porter*, which has been mentioned in the 7th lesson as being the radical of *rapporter*.

GIBERNE is feminine according to analogy (15).

BÂTON is masculine according to analogy (14).

MARÉCHAL comes, probably through the Spanish *mariscal*, from the Celtic *marc*, horse, and *scal*, servant. Both the French and the Spanish words signify *marshal* and *farrier*.

CROIX has been mentioned in the 11th lesson as being the radical of *croiser*. It is feminine by exception (14).

FAILLE is the present tense of the subjunctive mood of *falloir* (287).

BATTRE has been mentioned in the 26th lesson as being the radical of *combattre*. It is an irregular verb. *Battre* signifies to beat, and, with the pronominal form, *se battre* signifies to fight.

OBLIGATION is a word alike in French and in English (49). It is feminine (50, 99).

PLAIRAIT is a form (525) of the irregular verb *plaire*, seen in the subjunctive mood in the 10th lesson. The irregularity of this verb does not extend to the conditional mood.

HUMEUR comes from the Latin *humor*, moisture. It is feminine (95).

BÉNIGNE is the irregular feminine of the adjective *bénin*, which comes from the Latin *benignus*, kind.

PACIFIQUE is derived from *paix*, mentioned in the 38th lesson as being the radical of *apaiser* (200).

632. Non plus is opposed to *aussi*, also, likewise. It is used in the negative, when *aussi* is employed in the corresponding affirmative sentences, as: *Cette obligation me plairait ; j'aimerais* AUSSI *les corvées*, etc.

CORVÉE is feminine according to analogy (15).

MARCHE is derived from the verb *marcher*, to walk, to tread, and to march.

FORCÉES is a form (52, 53) of the verb *forcer*, seen in the 7th lesson.

DÉSAGRÉMENT is one of the derivatives of *gré*, mentioned in the 16th lesson. See page 210, line 3.

ACCOMPAGNENT is a form (231) of the verb *accompagner*, one of the derivatives of *compagnon*, seen in the 12th lesson.

TANTÔT is formed of *tant* (344) and *tôt*, mentioned in the 8th lesson as being the radical of *bientôt*. This adverb generally denotes an indefinite time, either past or future, and corresponds to *in the course of the day*, *by and by*, *soon*, *sometimes*, and *now*.

633. § 1. When **tôt** is joined to the adverbs *aussi*, *bien*, *si*, it forms a single word with them, thus: *Aussitôt*, as soon, immediately; *bientôt*, soon; *sitôt*, so soon.

§ 2. It forms a similar combination with *tant* and *plus*, in suppressing the final consonant of these adverbs, thus: *Tantôt*, *plutôt*. But *plutôt* is only employed in the sense of *rather*, denoting preference, and must not be confounded with *plus tôt*, sooner, earlier.

GRELOTTEZ is a form (414) of the verb *grelotter*, derived from *grelot*, small bell or rattle.

DEGRÉ is derived from *grade*, seen in this lesson.

634. **Dessous**, already seen in the 11th lesson, is either an adverb signifying *under* or *below*, or a substantive signifying *under part*. It is seldom used as a preposition. *Au-dessous*, under, beneath, below, is always an adverb, unless it be followed by *de*, in which case it becomes a preposition and requires a regimen. The same observations are applicable to **dessus**, *au-dessus*, and *au-dessus de*, seen in the 26th lesson.

ZÉRO comes from the Arabic. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

ÉCRASÉ is a form (52) of the verb *écraser*, to crush.

ÉQUIPEMENT is derived from the verb *équiper* (153), to equip, to fit out.

TRAÎNEZ is a form (414) of the verb *traîner*, to drag, to draw along, which comes from the Latin *trahere*, to draw. With the pronominal form, *se traîner* signifies to crawl, to trudge, to proceed with difficulty.

SAC, from the Latin *saccus*, sack or bag, is masculine according to analogy (14).

DOS comes from the Latin *dorsum*, back. It undergoes no change of termination in the plural (17).

FUSIL comes from the Italian *fucile*, steel (to strike a flint), and musket. It has the two significations of the Italian word. The final *l* is mute by exception.

ÉPAULE is feminine according to analogy (15).

CHALEUR is derived from *chaud*, hot or warm, which comes from the Latin *calidus*, hot. It is feminine (95).

ÉTOUFFANT is derived from the verb *étouffer*, to stifle, to smother, to suffocate.

ENFONCEZ is a form (414) of the verb *enfoncer*, derived from *fond*, seen in the 30th lesson.

635. Mi, mentioned in the 17th lesson as being the radical of *demi*, is an inseparable syllable denoting the division of a thing into two equal parts. It is joined to the principal word by a hyphen, except in *midi*, noon or mid-day, and *minuit*, midnight.

MARAIS is derived from *mare*, pool, which comes from the Latin *mare*, sea. It takes no additional termination in the plural (17).

FANGEUX is derived from *fange*, mire, dirt, which is supposed to come from the Latin *fimus*, dung. This adjective takes no additional termination in the plural (158).

SYNTAX.*

Cela **se** *voit.*
That is seen

636. The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English, and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form in French, as in the above example. This idiomatic construction will not surprise an English student, if he considers that in his own language

---

* See note on page 282.

an equivalent impropriety exists, when we say: *The door opens*, for, *The door is opened; The books never sold*, for, *The books were never sold.* These phrases would be rendered by, *La porte s'ouvre; Les livres ne se vendirent jamais.*

Il porte dans sa giberne le bâton de maréchal.

637. When a verb has two substantives for regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, it is usually followed by both, and if they are of the same length, the direct one is placed first; if not, the shorter precedes the longer.

Le sac sur le dos.—Le fusil sur l'épaule.

638. The preposition AVEC, with, is here understood, and its ellipsis is common to all similar phrases.

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. See Obs. 631.—Whoever is—Whoever has—Whoever had—Whoever was—Whoever spoke—Whoever shall sell—Whoever would finish.

2. Model: *Cela se voit.* Syntax, 636.—That is said—That is eaten—That is drunk—That is understood—That is sold—That is carried—That is lost—That was said—That was eaten—That was drunk—That was understood—That was sold—That was carried—That was lost—That will be said—That could be said.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Whoever flatters his friends betrays them—631.
2. Whoever has no courage is not a man—631.
3. Whoever is envious and wicked is naturally sad—631.
4. We have no bread, and we have no money either —632.
5. His father will not come, nor will his mother—632.
6. I do not like the cold, nor the heat neither—632.
7. I hope you will soon come—633.
8. I will come as soon as I am free—633.
9. I did not expect you so soon—633.
10. You will answer him by and by—633.
11. He is the friend of his workmen, rather than their master —633.
12. They [are] arrived sooner than we *did*—633.
13. The bread was not on the table; we [have] found it under *it*—634.
14. Did you know that it was under the table?—300.
15. No, for its place is upon and not under *it*—634.
16. We were placed below them in the amphitheatre—634, 267.
17. There is a *half-way* house [at mid-way]—635.
18. You will wake me at midnight—635.
19. His grief cannot be appeased—636.
20. The obstacles will be *removed* [levelled]—636.
21. You will read a very extraordinary story in that book —637.
22. I have put all the provisions necessary for dinner upon the table—637.
23. You prescribe unpleasant and useless remedies to your patients—637.
24. We have proved the sincerity of our assertions to everybody [all the world]—637.

25. The notary is waiting for us, with *a* [the] pen *in* [at] his hand—638.

26. He always sleeps with his mouth open—638.

27. He is waiting for his dinner, with his elbows on the table —638.

FORTIETH LESSON.

FIRST DIVISION.—PRACTICAL PART.

TEXT.

LITERAL TRANSLATION.

Quarantième leçon.
Fortieth

"Ma foi, je l'avoue, sans être poltron,
faith own coward

je n'ai pas l'esprit belliqueux de mon
spirit warlike

cousin Jean-Pierre, qui servit dans la
cousin John Peter served

guerre d'Afrique, et qui fut tué dans une
war Africa killed

bataille livrée à une tribu d'Arabes.
battle tribe Arabs

Pauvre Jean-Pierre! Il y a deux ans

qu'il est mort. Quand il aurait pu
dead would have been able

mener une existence si paisible au
to lead existence peaceable

milieu des siens, il aima mieux cher-
his liked to

cher fortune ailleurs.
seek elsewhere

"Il quitta le pays il y a six ans, pour
left country

courir les aventures. Il s'enrôla à Cons-
to run adventures enlisted Con-

tantine, et il y avait dix-huit mois qu'il
stantine

était dans l'armée, chéri de ses camarades
army beloved

et estimé de ses chefs, quand il eut la
esteemed chiefs

cuisse traversée par une balle et le crâne
thigh traversed ball (bullet) skull

fendu d'un coup de sabre. Je tiens ces
cleft stroke sabre hold

détails de quelqu'un de véridique et de
somebody veracious

bien informé."
informed

THE SAME IN GOOD ENGLISH.

"In faith, I confess that, without being a coward, I have not the warlike spirit of my cousin John Peter, who served in the war of Africa, and was killed in a battle fought against a tribe of Arabs. Poor John Peter! He has been dead these two years. Although he could have led such a peaceable life among his friends and relations, he preferred trying his luck elsewhere.

"He left the country six years ago to seek for adventures. He enlisted at Constantine, and had been eighteen months in the army, beloved by his comrades and esteemed by his chiefs, when he had his thigh shot through with a bullet and his skull laid open with the cut of a sabre. I received these particulars from a credible person well acquainted with the facts."

QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS FOR CONVERSATION.

Quelle est cette leçon?	C'est la quarantième.
Comment s'appelait le cousin d'Alexis?	Il s'appelait Jean-Pierre.
Quí s'appelait Jean-Pierre?	Le cousin d'Alexis.
Quel esprit avait-il?	Un esprit belliqueux.
Qu'est-ce qu'Alexis avoue?	Il avoue que, sans être poltron, il n'a pas l'esprit belliqueux de son cousin Jean-Pierre.
Où son cousin Jean-Pierre servit-il?	Il servit dans la guerre d'Afrique.
Où fut-il tué?	Dans une bataille.
A qui cette bataille fut-elle livrée?	A une tribu d'Arabes.
Au moment où Alexis parle, combien y a-t-il que son cousin est mort?	Il y a deux ans.
Où aurait-il pu mener une existence paisible?	Au milieu des siens.
Qu'aurait-il pu mener au milieu des siens?	Une existence paisible.
Qu'aima-t-il mieux faire?	Il aima mieux chercher fortune ailleurs.
Au moment où Alexis parle, combien y a-t-il que son cousin quitta le pays?	Il y a six ans.
Que fit-il il y a six ans?	Il quitta le pays.
Pourquoi quitta-t-il le pays?	Pour courir les aventures.
Où s'enrôla-t-il?	A Constantine.
Que fit-il à Constantine?	Il s'enrôla.
Combien y avait-il qu'il était dans l'armée, quand il fut tué?	Il y avait dix-huit mois.
De qui était-il chéri?	De ses camarades.
De qui était-il estimé?	De ses chefs.
De quelle manière périt-il?	Il eut la cuisse traversée par une balle et le crâne fendu d'un coup de sabre.
De qui Alexis tient-il ces détails?	De quelqu'un de véridique et de bien informé.

SENTENCES FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

TO BE TURNED INTO ENGLISH.	TO BE TURNED INTO FRENCH.
Est-il vrai que votre cousin se soit engagé ?	Is it true that your cousin has enlisted ?
Oui, il s'est fait soldat.	Yes, he has turned soldier.
Y a-t-il longtemps ?	Is it a long time since ?
Il y a trois ans.	Three years.
Où est-il maintenant ?	Where is he now ?
Il est en Afrique.	He is in Africa.
Comment ses parents ont-ils pu le laisser partir ?	How could his parents let him depart ?
Il a quitté la maison paternelle sans rien dire à personne.	He left his paternal roof without saying a word to anybody.
Que ces jeunes gens sont étourdis !	How thoughtless those young people are !
Il n'est pas si jeune que vous le croyez.	He is not so young as you believe.
Quel âge a-t-il donc ?	How old is he, then ?
Il a vingt-huit ans.	He is twenty-eight years old.
Je croyais qu'il n'avait pas vingt ans.	I thought he was not twenty.
Vous vous trompiez.	You were mistaken.
A-t-il du goût pour l'état militaire ?	Has he any taste for a military life ?
Oui, beaucoup. Il est d'un caractère très-belliqueux.	Yes, indeed. He is of a very warlike disposition.
S'est-il déjà battu depuis qu'il est en Afrique ?	Has he fought yet, since he has been in Africa ?
Oh ! bien des fois.	Oh ! many times.
Vraiment ?	Indeed ?
Il a commencé par se battre avec plusieurs de ses camarades.	First of all, he fought with several of his comrades.
Bah !	You don't say so !
Ensuite il a tué beaucoup d'Arabes.	Then, he has killed many Arabs.
Quelle belle chose que la guerre !	What a fine thing war is !
Vous trouvez ?	Do you think so ?
Ma foi, oui. J'aime la gloire.	Faith, I do. I am fond of glory.

C'est donc bien glorieux de tuer beaucoup d'hommes ?	Is it so very glorious to slay a great many men ?
Il faut bien le croire, car c'est l'opinion de tout le monde.	We must believe so ; for it is the opinion of every-body.
Si vous étiez dans une maison de fous, vous vous croiriez donc obligé de devenir fou vous-même ?	If you were in a mad-house, then you would think yourself obliged to go mad also ?
Allez, vous êtes un original.	Well, upon my word, you are an eccentric fellow.

SECOND DIVISION.—THEORETICAL PART.

ANALYTICAL STUDY

OF THE GRAMMATICAL PECULIARITIES IN THE TEXT.*

Foi, from the Latin *fides*, trust, faith, is feminine by exception (14). *Ma foi* is a familiar expression for *by my faith*, *upon my faith*, *in faith.*

Avoue is a form (349) of the verb *avouer*, mentioned in the 33d lesson.

Poltron, from the Italian *poltrone*, coward, is used as an adjective and as a substantive.

Esprit comes from the Latin *spiritus*, breath or spirit (600).

Belliqueux is an adjective which does not change in the plural (158).

Cousin is masculine (8). Its feminine is *cousine.*

Servit is the third person singular of the past tense definite of *servir*, already seen. This example shows that the irregularity of the verb *servir* does not extend to the past tense definite.

Guerre, like the English word *war*, comes from the Celtic *wer*, or the Saxon *wœr*.

639. The letter **g** in French is sometimes substituted for **w** in words which have the same meaning and the same origin in

---

* See note on page 282.

both languages, as: *Guerre*, war; *garde*, ward; *gager*, to wager; *gages*, wages; *garenne*, warren.

TUÉ is a form (52) of the verb *tuer*, to slay, to kill.

BATAILLE is derived from *battre*, seen in the 39th lesson.

TRIBU has been mentioned in the 12th lesson as being the radical of *contribuer*. It is feminine by exception (14).

MORT is the past participle of the irregular verb *mourir*, already seen. This verb, in its compound tenses, always takes *être* as an auxiliary.

AURAIT is the third person singular of the conditional mood of *avoir*.

Examples have now been seen of this person of the conditional mood, in the three regular forms of conjugation and the two auxiliaries, in the following phrases:

"*Il n'exig*ERAIT *pas que je fusse plus rangé*."—30th lesson.

"*Il sent*IRAIT *le besoin de distractions*."—30th lesson.

"*Il ne se plaind*RAIT *pas tant*."—30th lesson.

"*S'il ne* SERAIT *pas plus utile*."—5th lesson.

"*Quand il* AURAIT *pu mener*."—40th lesson.

The whole of the conditional mood of *avoir* has now been seen: *J'aurais, tu aurais, il aurait, nous aurions, vous auriez, ils auraient.*

Examples have now been seen of the whole of the conditional mood in the three regular forms of conjugation, and the eighteen different observations by which its terminations have been pointed out, may be condensed into one general rule.

640. § 1. The **conditional mood** is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive, the final **e** being suppressed in the verbs in **re**: **ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient.**

§ 2. It is to be observed that these terminations are the same which serve to form the imperfect tense of the indicative, by being substituted for that of the infinitive mood (586).

The whole conjugation of French verbs has now been seen in its three regular forms, and, moreover, examples have been given of all the forms of the two auxiliaries *être* and *avoir*.

PU is the past participle of the irregular verb *pouvoir*, already seen.

MENER has been seen in the future tense in the 32d lesson.

EXISTENCE is a word alike in French and in English (167).

PAISIBLE is derived from *paix*, mentioned in the 38th lesson as being the radical of *apaiser*.

SIENS is the plural of *sien* (126). It has been used in this lesson for *his family*, *his relations*, or *his friends*.

641. The possessive pronouns are sometimes used as substantives, to denote our relations, friends, or dependents, but only in the masculine gender and in the plural number: *Les miens*, *les tiens*, *les siens*, *les nôtres*, *les vôtres*, *les leurs*.

AIMA is a form (178) of the verb *aimer*, already seen.

CHERCHER is a verb of the first conjugation and in the infinitive mood (121).

AILLEURS has been mentioned in the 34th lesson as being the radical of *d'ailleurs*.

QUITTA is a form (178) of the verb *quitter*, seen in the 38th lesson.

PAYS comes from the Latin *pagus*, village, district, or community. It is masculine according to analogy (14).

COURIR has been seen in the future tense in the 19th lesson.

AVENTURE is one of the derivatives of *venir*, mentioned in the 15th lesson (340).

ENRÔLA is a form (178) of the verb *enrôler*, to enlist.

ARMÉE is feminine according to analogy (15).

CHÉRI is a form (481) of the verb *chérir*, one of the derivatives of *cher*, mentioned in the 16th lesson.

ESTIMÉ is a form (52) of the verb *estimer*, which comes from the Latin *æstimare*, to rate, to estimate, and to esteem, and has the same acceptations.

TRAVERSÉE is a form (52, 53) of the verb *traverser*, to cross, to go through, to traverse.

BALLE, from the German *ball*, is feminine according to analogy (15).

CRÂNE, from the Greek κρανίον, head, skull, is masculine by exception (15).

FENDU is a form (381) of the verb *fendre*, to cleave, to split.

COUP, from the Italian *colpo*, blow, is masculine according to analogy (14).

SABRE, from the German *säbel*, sabre, is masculine by exception (15).

TIENS is the first person singular of the present tense of the indicative mood of the irregular verb *tenir*, already seen.

642. § 1. **Quelqu'un**, formed of *quelque* and *un*, both of which have been seen, is an indefinite pronoun. When used in an absolute sense, that is, without any reference to a substantive, it corresponds to *some one*, *somebody*, *any one*, *anybody*. In this sense, it is used only in speaking of persons, and is always masculine. It may take the plural form, QUELQUES-UNS, but only when it is a subject.

§ 2. When it is not absolute and refers to a substantive, it corresponds to *some* and *any*, and may relate to things as well as to persons. In this sense it takes the feminine and plural forms, *quelqu'une*, *quelques-uns*, *quelques-unes*.

Examples have now been seen of all the indefinite pronouns in the following phrases:

"*Ce vice donne naissance à tous les* AUTRES."—1st lesson.

"*La santé d'*AUTRUI."—38th lesson.

"*Il nous fit voir* CHACUN *des viscères.*"—36th lesson.

"L'UN *d'eux, par exemple.*"—15th lesson.

"*Combien de fois n'a-t-*ON *pas dit?*"—1st lesson.

"PERSONNE *n'était mieux disposé.*"—28th lesson.

"QUELQU'UN *de véridique.*"—40th lesson.

"QUICONQUE *sert la patrie.*"—39th lesson.

QUELQU'UN being followed by an adjective requires *de* before this adjective (411).

VÉRIDIQUE is one of the derivatives of *vrai*, seen in the first lesson.

INFORMÉ is the past participle of *informer*, to inform.

SYNTAX.*

Il y a *deux ans* **qu'***il est mort.*
Il y avait *dix-huit mois* **qu'***il était dans l'armée.*

643. § 1. The verb **y avoir**, there to be, is frequently used before words denoting the time elapsed since an event took place, or the time during which a state or an action has been continued. The **que** which follows signifies *since;* thus, the literal translation of the above examples is: *There are two years since he is dead; There were eighteen months since he was in the army.*

§ 2. The preposition DEPUIS, since, may often be employed instead of Y AVOIR in similar phrases, thus: *Il est mort* DEPUIS *deux ans; Il était dans l'armée* DEPUIS *dix-huit mois.*

Il **est** *mort.—He* **has been** *dead.*

644. The compound tense *to have been*, or *to have been doing*, when it denotes that a state or an action continues, must be rendered by the present tense in French. We should accordingly translate, *We* HAVE BEEN *here this hour*, by, *Il y a une heure que nous* SOMMES *ici*, and, *We* HAVE BEEN WAITING *for you these two hours*, by, *Il y a deux heures que nous vous* ATTENDONS.

In the phrase *Il est mort*, we consider the verb as in the present tense, because *mort* is used as an adjective.

The literal translation of *He* HAS BEEN *dead*, by, *Il a* ÉTÉ *mort*, would seem absurd in French, as meaning, *He* WAS *dead, and is alive again* (291).

Il **était** *dans l'armée.—He* **had been** *in the army.*

645. As a consequence of the preceding observation, when the pluperfect tense denotes that a state or an action was continuing, it is rendered by the imperfect tense in French (134).

---

* See note on page 282.

Il quitta le pays **il y a** *six ans.*

646. When **il y a**, denoting time elapsed, precedes the principal verb, the word **que**, signifying *since*, is required; but when the principal verb is placed first, QUE is of course unnecessary.

Il aurait **pu** *mourir.*

647. Among the irregular verbs already seen, there are three, the English equivalents of which are defective and have no past participle, viz. *devoir*, *pouvoir*, and *vouloir*. The past participles of these verbs are, *dû*, *pu*, and *voulu*. The absence of equivalent forms in English gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: the above verbs forming a compound tense with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, as the following examples will show.

He could have led.	*Il* AURAIT PU *mener.*
He ought to have lived; *or*, should have lived.	*Il* AURAIT DÛ *vivre.*
He would have gone.	*Il* AURAIT VOULU *aller.*
You may have heard.	*Vous* AVEZ PU *entendre.*
He must have seen.	*Il* A DÛ *voir.*
I wish I had been there; *or*, I should have liked to have been there.	*J'*AURAIS VOULU *être là.*
We have been able to speak to him.	*Nous* AVONS PU *lui parler.*
You should not have done that.	*Vous n'*AURIEZ *pas* DÛ *faire cela.*

Estimé **de** *ses chefs.*

It would not sound so well, but still it would be correct, to say: *Chéri* PAR *ses camarades et estimé* PAR *ses chefs.* The choice between DE and PAR after a passive verb is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French.

648. In general, **de** is preferable between a passive verb and the name of the agent, when the verb expresses a feeling, as *chéri*, *estimé;* and **par** is more properly employed, when the verb expresses an action, as: "*Il était battu* PAR *ses camarades et puni* PAR *ses chefs*, he was beaten by his comrades, and punished by his chiefs."

EXERCISES

UPON THE GRAMMATICAL OBSERVATIONS AND UPON THE RULES OF SYNTAX.

1. See Obs. 640.—I should avow—Thou wouldst accompany—He would appease—We should swallow—You would assist—They would arrive—I should level—Thou wouldst cherish—He would sleep—We should finish—You would cure—They would moan—I should cleave—Thou wouldst write—He would instruct—We should read—You would put—They would please.

2. Model: *Il aurait pu mener.* Syntax, 647.—I could have thought—Thou couldst have pronounced—He could have spoken—We could have promised—You could have pretended—They could have proved.

3. Models: *Estimé* DE *ses chefs—Battu* PAR *ses camarades.* Syntax, 648.—Admired by his friends—Loved by his father—Brought by a workman—Defended by his companions—Hated by poets—Bitten by a horse.

PHRASES FOR COMPOSITION

TO BE TRANSLATED INTO FRENCH.

1. Somebody *wants* [wills] to speak to you—642.
2. Have you seen any one?—642.
3. If anybody comes, you will tell [it] me—642.
4. Do you expect anybody?—Yes, I expect somebody—642.

5. Some blame him; but his friends admire him—642.

6. My pens are very good; will you *have* some of them?—642, 268.

7. I have seen some of your comrades—642.

8. I have been waiting for you this hour—643, 644.

9. We have been *in* [at] Paris these ten days—643, 644.

10. He came to see us for the first time a month ago—643, 646.

11. I *spoke* [have spoken] to him *a* few days ago—643, 646.

12. Is it long [time] since you *saw* [have seen] him?—643.

13. We *saw* [have seen] him six months ago—646.

14. He has been sleeping these two hours—643, 644.

15. He has been *a* soldier these three months—643, 644.

16. He had been *a* physician two years—645.

17. The barrister had been speaking three hours—645.

18. You could have gone to the village with your child—647.

19. I would have spoken, but I did not know what to say—647.

20. Could you have believed [a] such *a* thing?—647.

21. You ought not to have answered thus—647.

22. You cannot have believed that—647.

23. Your sister is loved by all those who know her—648.

24. The poor animal was crushed by a carriage—648.

25. The general is feared by all the soldiers—648.

26. He is hated by many of [between] them—648.

27. They *affirm* [pretend] that they have been betrayed by him—648.

TEXT

OF THE FIRST FORTY LESSONS;

BROUGHT INTO ONE VIEW, FOR THE CONVENIENCE OF REFERENCE.

---

1. Le jeune Alexis Delatour était un assez bon garçon, qui n'avait qu'un seul défaut, la paresse. Mais combien de fois n'a-t-on pas dit que ce vice donne naissance à tous les autres? C'est un proverbe, vous le savez. Or, nous pensons que les proverbes sont généralement vrais.

1. Young Alexis Delatour was a good sort of fellow, who had but one fault, laziness. But how often has it not been said that this vice gives birth to all others? It is a proverb, you know. Now, we think that proverbs are generally true.

2. Le père d'Alexis, homme intelligent et actif, exerçait la profession de menuisier. On le voyait presque toujours à son établi, l'œil animé, les manches retroussées jusqu'au coude, et la scie ou le rabot à la main.

2. The father of Alexis, an intelligent and active man, was a joiner. He was almost always to be seen at his bench, with his eye bright, his sleeves tucked up to his elbows, and with a saw or a plane in his hand.

3. Il se désolait, parce qu'il ne pouvait obtenir de son fils qu'il suivît son exemple. "Quel fainéant!" disait-il, "Où va-t-il? Que fait-il? A quoi cet idiot passe-t-il son temps? Est-ce qu'il ne se corrigera jamais? Comment donc lui faire entendre raison?"

3. He was grieved, because he could not get his son to follow his example. "What a drone!" said he. "Where does he go? What does he do? How does the idiot spend his time? Will he never mend? How shall I make him listen to reason?"

4. Le brave homme, guidé par de fausses idées de grandeur, avait eu le tort, pardonnable sans doute, de vouloir que son

4. The honest man, guided by false notions of grandeur, had committed the fault, a pardonable one undoubtedly, to determine

enfant fût plus que lui, et qu'il eût une éducation supérieure à celle qu'il avait reçue lui-même de son père et de sa mère.

that his child should be greater than he, and that he should have an education superior to that which he himself had received of his father and mother.

5. C'est pourquoi il l'avait mis d'abord dans une des meilleures institutions de Paris, désirant qu'il réunît toutes sortes de connaissances. Il voulait surtout qu'il sût le grec et le latin, sans examiner s'il ne serait pas plus utile qu'il possédât bien la langue française, cette langue étant la sienne.

5. He had therefore placed him at first in one of the best academies in Paris, wishing him to be versed in every branch of knowledge. He desired above all that he should know Greek and Latin, without considering whether it would not be more useful for him to be master of the French language, which was his own.

6. Le succès ne répondit pas aux ambitieuses espérances du pauvre ouvrier. Au bout de quelques mois, des revers de fortune assaillirent Monsieur Delatour. Deux maisons de commerce, où il avait placé ses épargnes, suspendirent leurs paiements; peu après, elles firent banqueroute, et donnèrent cinq pour cent à leurs nombreux créanciers.

6. The ambitious hopes of the poor workman were not crowned with success. After a few months, misfortunes befell Mr. Delatour. Two commercial houses, in which he had placed his savings, stopped payment; a short time afterwards they failed, and paid a shilling in the pound to their numerous creditors.

7. Ces tristes circonstances eurent pour résultat de forcer M. Delatour à retirer notre petit paresseux de sa pension, dans laquelle il avait appris fort peu de chose, et d'où il ne rapportait qu'un penchant un peu plus prononcé pour l'indolence, avec une aversion complète pour le métier de son père, qu'il regardait comme une chose basse et indigne de lui.

7. The consequence of these untoward occurrences was, that Mr. Delatour was compelled to remove our little lazy fellow from school, where he had learned very little, and whence he returned with a still stronger propensity to indolence, and a decided aversion to his father's business, which he looked upon as low and unworthy of him.

8. Alexis, quand il fut chez son père, cessa totalement d'étudier, et s'affranchit de toute contrainte. Il eut bientôt oublié le peu qu'il savait. Tous les jours il flânait dans les rues, ou sur les boulevards, qui étaient ses promenades favorites. Il s'arrêtait souvent en contemplation muette devant les plus belles boutiques.

8. When Alexis was at home again at his father's, he gave up studying altogether, and freed himself from all restraint. He soon forgot the little he knew. Every day he used to loiter about the streets, or on the boulevards, which was his favorite walk. He often stopped in mute contemplation before the finest shops.

9. Il s'étendait quelquefois sur un banc, dans le jardin des Tuileries, ou dans celui du Luxembourg, et il s'y assoupissait. Il fréquentait aussi les quais et les ponts, et demeurait de longues heures appuyé sur un parapet, à regarder l'eau couler. Il appelait cela une douce et molle rêverie, une nonchalance poétique.

9. He would sometimes stretch himself on a bench, in the garden of the Tuileries, or the Luxembourg, and there slumber. He used also to frequent the quays and bridges, and would remain for hours together, leaning on a parapet, looking at the course of the water. He called that a gentle and soft revery, a poetical heedlessness.

10. La plupart des paresseux prétendent être poëtes ou artistes; beaucoup d'entre eux finissent même par se persuader qu'ils le sont. Nous ne voulons pas dire que tous les poëtes soient des paresseux. A Dieu ne plaise que nous ayons une pareille pensée! La justice veut que nous rendions hommage au génie-réel. Aussi admirons-nous ce qu'il y a de sublime et de touchant dans les productions de l'art et de la poésie.

10. Most idlers pretend that they are either poets or artists; and many of them persuade themselves in the end that they are so. We do not mean to say that all poets are idlers. God forbid that we should entertain such a thought! It is but just to pay homage to real genius; and we admire all that is sublime and affecting in the productions of art and poetry.

11. Seulement, nous avons remarqué que bien des gens s'imaginent avoir le feu sacré, et sentir "du ciel l'influence secrète," pour peu qu'ils aient barbouillé quel-

11. But we have observed that many people imagine they possess the sacred fire, and fancy they feel the secret influence of heaven, because they have scrib-

ques feuilles de papier, et qu'ils aiment à se promener les bras croisés et le nez tourné vers les cieux. Ces insignifiants personnages, bien qu'ils croupissent dans l'inaction et qu'ils ne rendent aucun service à la société, regardent les travailleurs comme infiniment au-dessous d'eux.

bled over a few sheets of paper, and are fond of walking about, with their arms folded and with their noses turned up towards the skies. These insignificant people, though they give way to idleness and do no service to society, look upon pains-taking men as far below them.

12. Plusieurs des compagnons d'Alexis, ayant le même caractère que lui, contribuaient à l'entretenir dans ces dispositions oisives. "Nous serions bien fous," disaient-ils, "de bâiller sur des grammaires et des dictionnaires, comme nous le faisions à l'école, où nous périssions d'ennui; noircissant nos cahiers de mots que nous n'entendions guère, et attendant impatiemment l'heure de la récréation."

12. Several of the companions of Alexis, having the same character as himself, contributed to maintain him in this idle disposition. "We should be very foolish," said they, "to be yawning over grammars and dictionaries, as we used to do at school, where we were ready to die with ennui; blotting our copy-books with words that we scarcely understood, and waiting impatiently for the hour of play."

13. "Nos maîtres voulaient que nous eussions du goût pour l'étude; ils voulaient que nous en sentissions les avantages et que nous y trouvassions du plaisir; mais ils ne savaient pas la rendre attrayante. Ils s'étonnaient que nous répondissions mal à de sèches questions auxquelles nous ne comprenions rien du tout. Ils exigeaient que nous fussions attentifs, et ils ne nous parlaient que de choses ennuyeuses."

13. "Our masters wished us to have a taste for study; they wanted us to feel its advantages and to find pleasure in it; but they did not know how to render it attractive. They wondered at our making wrong answers to dry questions that we did not understand at all. They insisted on our being attentive, though they spoke to us only on tedious subjects."

14. "Nous voilà libres! Oui, nous le sommes enfin! Pourquoi ne jouirions-nous pas de nos beaux jours? Pourquoi perdrions-

14. "Now we are free! Yes, we are so at length! Why should we not enjoy our happy days? Why should we waste our pre-

nous des moments précieux? Nous aurions grand tort. Faut-il être grave et raisonnable à tout âge? Non, non! Divertissons-nous. Nos parents ont eu leur temps; aujourd'hui c'est le nôtre. N'attendons pas que nous soyons trop vieux pour goûter une franche gaieté. N'ayons nulle autre pensée que celle de nous amuser."

cious moments? We should be very wrong to do so. Is it necessary to be grave and steady at every age? No, no! Let us divert ourselves. Our parents have had their day; it is ours now. Let us not wait till we are too old to indulge in unfeigned mirth. Let us have no other thought than that of enjoying ourselves."

15. Ces étourdis avaient toujours quelque nouvelle partie à lui proposer. L'un d'eux, par exemple, lui disait un jour: "Venez avec moi demain. Nous irons en bateau sous l'ombre fraîche des grands saules qui bordent la rivière, et là nous pêcherons. J'aurai ma ligne; vous prendrez la vôtre, ainsi que vos hameçons. Nous aurons de bonnes amorces, et je vous réponds que le poisson mordra. Votre ami, le gros Guillaume, et son frère, Jacques le roux, seront des nôtres."

15. These madcaps had always some new party to propose to him. One of them, for instance, said to him one day: "Come with me to-morrow. We will go in a boat in the cool shade of the large willows that skirt the river, and there we will fish. I shall have my line; you will take yours, together with your hooks. We will have some good bait, and I warrant you the fish will bite. Your friend, fat William, and his brother, James the red-haired, will join us."

16. "Ils auront du Champagne, des gâteaux et d'autres friandises que leur fourniront à crédit des marchands qui les connaissent. Moi, je me chargerai du pain et de la viande. Quant à vous, mon cher, vous apporterez ce que vous voudrez. Ces messieurs savent des histoires qui vous surprendront et qui vous feront rire. Je suis sûr que vous ne serez pas fâché d'être venu. Je vous avertis que nous serons

16. "They will have some Champagne, some cakes and other nice things which some tradesmen of their acquaintance will supply them with, on credit. I shall provide the bread and meat. As for you, my dear fellow, bring whatever you please. Those young men know some stories that will surprise you and make you laugh. I am sure you will not be sorry to have come. I warn you that we shall be early

de bonne heure au rendez-vous. Hier, nous y étions avant six heures du matin. Nous avions un filet qu'on nous avait prêté. Nous passâmes une journée très-agréable."

at the place of rendezvous. Yesterday we were there before six o'clock in the morning. We had a net which was lent us. We spent a very pleasant day."

17. "Il est vrai que, pendant plusieurs heures, nous ne vîmes rien venir. Mais nous eûmes de la patience, et nous en fûmes récompensés outre mesure; car nous prîmes quatre grosses carpes dorées, une anguille qui avait un mètre, c'est-à-dire environ trois pieds, de longueur, et tant de goujons, d'ablettes et de menu fretin que nous en remplîmes un panier. Nous voulûmes savoir le poids de notre pêche. Le tout pesait quinze kilogrammes et demi, ce qui équivaut à trente et une livres. Nous en vendîmes la moitié. Je ne doute pas que nous ne réussissions encore cette fois-ci."

17. "For some hours, it is true, we had no result. But we took patience, and were amply rewarded for it; for we caught four large golden carps, an eel that was a meter, that is, about three feet long, and so many gudgeons, bleaks, and small fry, that we filled a basket with them. We wanted to know the weight of our fish. The whole weighed fifteen kilograms and a half, which is equivalent to thirty-one pounds. We sold the half of it. I do not doubt but we shall succeed this time also."

18. Un autre jour, des apprentis du voisinage se réunissaient pour aller se promener dans les champs. "Dites donc, camarade," s'écriaient-ils en apercevant Alexis, "Vous viendrez tout à l'heure faire un tour avec nous, n'est-ce pas? Nous attendrons que vous soyez prêt. Nous partirons tous ensemble; mais dépêchez-vous; soyez un peu plus alerte que de coutume."—"Où allez-vous?" demandait celui-ci. —"Nous n'en savons rien," répondaient-ils. "Qu'importe,

18. Another day, some apprentices of the neighborhood met together for the purpose of going to take a walk in the fields. "Halloo! comrade," exclaimed they, on perceiving Alexis, "you will come presently and take a turn with us, will you not? We will wait till you are ready. We will all start together; but make haste; be somewhat quicker than usual."—"Where are you going?" inquired the latter.—"We do not know," answered they. "What matters, provided we en-

pourvu que nous nous amusions ? "

19. "Nous courrons, nous sauterons, nous jouerons aux barres, au cheval fondu et à d'autres jeux. Garnissez vos poches, si vous le pouvez. Si vous n'avez pas d'argent, n'importe ; suivez-nous toujours et n'ayez aucun souci du reste."

Toutes les invitations du même genre étaient joyeusement acceptées, en quelque moment qu'elles arrivassent ; quelque inopportunes qu'elles fussent ; quelques pressantes occupations qu'elles interrompissent ; quelques inconvénients qu'elles eussent, et quels que fussent ceux qui les faisaient, pourvu qu'ils eussent l'air de bons enfants.

20. Il y avait, parmi les anciennes connaissances d'Alexis, un étudiant austère et froid, qui le sermonnait de temps en temps, et qui, la dernière fois qu'ils se rencontrèrent, lui tint à peu près ce langage : " Croyez-moi, cher condisciple ; fuyez les flatteuses séductions de cette compagnie frivole et corruptrice. Quand même vous auriez de la fortune, vous seriez à blâmer de ne songer qu'à boire, à manger, à dormir et à tuer le temps, sans rien faire de profitable. Vous finirez par vous lasser de cette vie dissipée, et vous en reconnaîtrez le vide ; mais ne sera-t-il pas trop tard ? "

joy ourselves ? "

19. "We shall run and jump and play at prisoners' base, at leap-frog and other games. Line your pockets if you can. If you have no money, it matters not ; come with us and never mind the rest."

All invitations of the same kind were joyfully accepted, at whatever moment they might arrive ; however untimely they might be ; whatever pressing occupations they might interrupt ; whatever inconveniences might attend them, and whoever they might be who made them, provided they looked like good fellows.

20. There was, among the old acquaintances of Alexis, an austere and frigid student, who lectured him now and then, and who, the last time they met, spoke to him nearly as follows : " Take my advice, dear fellow-student ; shun the enticements of that frivolous and corrupting society. Even though you were wealthy, still you would be to blame to think of nothing but eating and drinking, and sleeping and killing time, without doing any thing profitable. You will at last get tired of this life of dissipation, and you will acknowledge the futility of it ; but will it not be too late ? "

21. "Si vous poursuiviez vos études, elles vous conduiraient loin ; car vous ne manquez ni de mémoire ni de jugement. Vous apprendriez facilement et vous trouveriez bien vite l'occasion d'utiliser votre savoir et vos talents. Alors vous adouciriez la position de votre père, qui n'est pas heureuse. Vous souvenez-vous qu'un jour, à notre pension, le maître promit une semaine de congé à celui qui ferait le meilleur thème et la meilleure version ? "

21. "If you pursued your studies, they would advance you in the world ; for you want neither memory nor judgment. You would learn easily, and would soon find an opportunity of profiting by your learning and talents. You might then alleviate your father's position, which is not a happy one. Do you remember that one day, at our school, the master promised a week's holidays to him who should make the best exercise and translation ? "

22. "Vous étiez, je crois, le moins avancé de la classe. Vous languissiez dans l'obscurité. Jamais vous n'aviez obtenu le moindre prix. Cependant, stimulé par une si charmante perspective, vous fîtes des prodiges. Vous travaillâtes avec une ardeur telle que vous vous rendîtes malade. Vous finîtes votre tâche avant tous vos rivaux, et vous fûtes vainqueur. Voilà ce que vous eûtes le courage d'accomplir ; et ce courage vous l'aurez toutes les fois que vous le voudrez."

22. "You were, I think, the most backward in the class. You were lost in obscurity. You had never gained the least prize. However, stimulated by such a charming prospect, you did wonders. You worked with such ardor that you made yourself ill. You completed your task before all your rivals, and were victorious. This you had the courage to perform ; and that courage you will have whenever you please."

23. "Je ne dis pas qu'il soit nécessaire que vous vous rendiez malade, que vous passiez des nuits à écrire, ou que vous jaunissiez sur des livres. Je voudrais seulement que vous perdissiez moins de temps, que vous sentissiez ce dont vous êtes capable, et que vous eussiez de l'ambition."

Alexis reconnut peut-être la

23. "I do not say that it is necessary you should make yourself ill, sit up for whole nights writing, or pore over books till you turn yellow. I only wish you would lose less time, and that you could feel what you are capable of, and that you had some ambition."

Alexis probably felt the just-

justesse de ces observations; mais il n'aimait pas les remontrances, et il répondit brusquement à ce sage conseiller: "Je voudrais, moi, que vous fussiez moins sérieux, ou sinon, que vous me laissassiez tranquille."

ness of these observations, but he disliked remonstrances, and abruptly replied to his sage adviser: "*I* wish you would be less serious, or else, that you would let me alone."

24. Delatour commençait à devenir vieux. Il se plaignait de plus en plus amèrement de l'apathie de son fils. "Méchant enfant," disait-il, "il semble que tu aies résolu de me faire mourir de chagrin. Je veux que tu m'écoutes à la fin, et que tu m'obéisses. Après tout ce que j'ai fait pour toi, je veux que tu te rendes utile, d'une manière quelconque; et tu le feras, à moins que tu ne sois un ingrat. Tu ne réfléchis donc jamais? Tu n'as donc point de souci de l'avenir?"

24. Delatour began to grow old. He complained more and more bitterly of his son's apathy. "You wicked boy," said he, "you seem to have resolved to make me die with sorrow. But you shall listen to me at last, and obey me. After all I have done for you, you shall make yourself useful in one way or another; and you will, if you are not an ungrateful boy. Do you never reflect? Have you no care of the future?"

25. "A quoi penses-tu? Parle. Comment peux-tu espérer de faire ton chemin, si tu perds ton temps comme cela? Comment te défendras-tu de la misère, quand je ne serai plus? Quelles ressources auras-tu, quand tu seras obligé de te suffire à toi-même? Réponds. Ne te repentiras-tu pas alors? Jette les yeux sur les enfants de mes confrères. Ils sont tes égaux, songes-y bien. Ne les vois-tu pas à l'ouvrage depuis le matin jusqu'au soir? N'es-tu pas aussi fort qu'eux? Ils se servent de leurs bras; pourquoi ne te sers-tu pas des tiens?"

25. "What are you thinking of? Speak. How can you hope to thrive, if you waste your time thus? How will you save yourself from beggary, when I am dead? What resources will you have, when you are obliged to shift for yourself? Tell me, don't you think you will repent then? Just look at the children of my fellow-workmen. They are in the same position as yourself, remember; and yet do you not see them at work from morning till night? Are you not as strong as they? They put their hands to work; why don't you put yours?"

26. "Lorsque j'étais à mon aise, je nourrissais l'espoir de te voir occuper dans le monde un rang plus brillant que le mien. Je désirais que tu t'élevasses au-dessus de ta famille, et que tu en fusses l'orgueil et l'appui. Il fallait pour cela que tu eusses de l'instruction; aucun sacrifice ne m'a coûté pour te mettre à même d'en acquérir. Ton excellente mère, dont je ne cesse de pleurer la perte, avait combattu mes projets; mais j'avais fini par les lui faire partager. J'attendais de ton élévation le bonheur de ma vieillesse."

26. "When I was in easy circumstances, I entertained a hope of seeing you hold in the world a more brilliant station than mine. I wished you might rise above your family, to be our pride and support. For this it was necessary you should have learning; I grudged no sacrifice to enable you to acquire it. Your excellent mother, whose loss I incessantly lament, opposed my projects; but I had at last prevailed on her to adopt them. I relied on your advancement for the happiness of my old age."

27. "Quelque place que tu remplisses, je ne doutais pas que tu ne répondisses à mon attente. Mon fils, me disais-je, aura les professeurs les plus distingués; il s'instruira, deviendra célèbre, et me bénira de lui avoir ouvert la carrière de la vraie gloire; de celle que l'on tient de soi-même et non de ses aïeux. Mais, tu le sais, des personnes sur l'honneur desquelles je croyais pouvoir compter, trahirent ma confiance, de la manière la plus honteuse et la plus infâme. Je perdis subitement le fruit de trente ans de travail."

27. "Whatever place you might occupy, I did not doubt but you would realize my expectations. My son, thought I, will have the most eminent professors; he will acquire learning, will become a celebrated man, and bless me for having pointed out to him the path of true glory; that glory for which we are indebted to ourselves and not to our ancestors. But, you know, some persons, on whose honor I thought I might rely, betrayed my trust in the most shameful and infamous manner. I suddenly lost the fruit of thirty years' labor."

28. "Quand tu revins au domicile paternel, tu prétendis que tu n'étais pas fait pour manier des outils. Tu m'assuras que tu réfléchissais aux moyens de tirer parti de tes hautes facultés; car

28. "When you were again under the paternal roof, you said that you were not made to handle tools. You assured me that you were musing on the best way of employing your eminent faculties;

tu prétendais être propre à tout, et personne n'était mieux disposé que moi à te croire. Tu finis par me demander du temps pour te décider sur le choix d'un état. D'autres, à ma place, auraient été durs et sévères. Tu sais pourtant avec quelle indulgence tu fus écouté. Tu n'eus pas de peine à obtenir de ma tendresse les délais que tu souhaitais."

for you boasted on being fit for any thing, and no one was better disposed than I to believe you. At last you begged I would grant you time to make up your mind as to the choice of a profession. Others, in my place, would have been harsh and severe. You know, however, with what indulgence you were listened to. You had no difficulty to obtain from my fondness the delay you wished for."

29. "Quand donc te décideras-tu? Si tu avais du cœur, tu ne souffrirais pas que ton père épuisât pour te faire vivre ce qui lui reste de vigueur et de santé. Tu t'empresserais au contraire de le soulager dans tous les détails de ses travaux. Tu n'attendrais pas qu'il t'en priât. Tu serais heureux de diminuer ses fatigues en en prenant ta part. Enfin, tu aurais besoin de t'acquitter de ce que tu lui dois. Allons, aie de la fermeté, dégourdis-toi, et sois mon soutien, au lieu d'être une charge pour moi."

29. "But when will you have made up your mind? If you were a lad of any spirit, you would not suffer your father to exhaust the remainder of his health and vigor to sustain you. You would, on the contrary, have at heart to relieve him in the different branches of his business. You would not wait for his asking. You would be happy to lessen his fatigues by taking your share of them. In short, you would feel that you ought to repay the obligations you are under to him. Come, a little resolution, stir yourself, and be my support, instead of being a burden to me."

30. Mais Alexis restait sourd à ces exhortations. "Mon père," se disait-il, "est en ceci comme toutes les vieilles gens, qui ne veulent pas qu'on se divertisse, parce que rien ne les distrait, et qu'il leur est difficile de comprendre une manière de voir différente de la leur. Il s'étonne que je sois

30. But Alexis turned a deaf ear to these expostulations. "My father," thought he, "is in this respect like all old people, who will not allow one to divert one's self, because nothing pleases them, and who can rarely enter into the views of other people. He wonders at my being like all young

comme tous les jeunes gens. Il ne se plaindrait pas tant s'il était moins âgé. Il sentirait lui-même le besoin de distractions, et n'exigerait pas que je fusse plus rangé qu'il ne l'a peut-être été autrefois. Il se peut qu'il ait raison au fond, quoiqu'il pousse trop loin la rigidité. Mais, bah! qu'il attende. J'aurai bien le temps de piocher, quand il le faudra absolument."

men. He would not complain so much if he were younger. He would feel the want of diversion himself, and would not expect me to be more steady than perhaps he was in his youth. He may be right, upon the whole, though he carries his austerity too far. But, no matter, let him wait. I shall have plenty of time to fag, when it becomes absolutely necessary."

31. L'honnête artisan mourut pauvre, ne laissant à son fils que la somme exiguë de cinq cents francs, pour tout patrimoine. Après l'enterrement, et quand les premiers transports de la douleur furent calmés, Alexis se demanda comment il pourrait faire fructifier son faible capital. "Me voilà livré à moi-même," se dit-il. "Il faut que je gagne de quoi vivre, ou que je meure de faim. Il est grand temps que j'aie de la résolution et que j'agisse. Je fus insensible aux bonnes paroles de mon père tant qu'il vécut. Je n'eus point égard à ses prières, et je m'endurcis dans mon égoïsme. Maintenant, je gémis de n'avoir pas tenu compte de ses avis, dont je sens la sagesse."

31. The honest mechanic died poor, leaving his son no other patrimony than a small sum of five hundred francs. After the burial, and when the first burst of grief had subsided, Alexis considered how he could make his little capital most productive. "Here I am," thought he, "left to my own resources. I must either earn a livelihood, or starve. It is high time for me to summon up resolution and to act. I was insensible to my father's kind words, so long as he lived. I disregarded his entreaties, and was obdurate in my selfishness. Now I lament having slighted his advice, for I feel the wisdom of it."

32. "Si nous écoutions ceux qui ont de l'expérience, que de regrets nous nous épargnerions! Mais nous haïssons tout ce qui contrarie nos penchants ou nos goûts. Les conseils nous obsèdent, et nous les entendons avec ennui, sinon avec mépris. Et

32. "Did we but listen to those who have had experience, what regrets we should spare ourselves! Yet, we hate every thing that thwarts our inclinations or our tastes. Advice annoys us, and we receive it with reluctance, if not with contempt.

puis, quand viennent les calamités que nous nous sommes attirées par notre propre faute, nous nous écrions : C'est bien dommage que nous n'ayons pas cru ce qu'on nous disait ! Quoi qu'il en soit, il ne s'agit pas de se lamenter. Soyons homme. Je vaincrai mon naturel. J'essaierai de m'appliquer à quelque chose de sérieux ; je finirai par m'y accoutumer, et mes efforts me mèneront à la fortune."

And afterwards, when calamities befall us, that we have drawn upon ourselves by our own fault, we exclaim: It is a great pity I did not believe what I was told! Be this as it may, it is of no use to lament. I must behave like a man. I will vanquish my nature. I will try to apply myself to something serious; I shall get into the habit of it with time, and my exertions will lead me to fortune."

33. "Passons en revue les principales professions, et voyons si je n'en trouverai pas une que je puisse embrasser sans m'assujétir à des devoirs trop pénibles.

"Le dessin, la gravure, la peinture et la musique demanderaient des études que je ne me soucie pas d'entreprendre. Si j'apprenais le droit, je pourrais devenir avoué, huissier, avocat ou notaire. Je serais peut-être un jour magistrat, juge, ou législateur.... Oui, mais il faudrait que j'eusse de quoi subsister en attendant ; et puis que je suivisse des cours, que je passasse des examens, que je subisse des épreuves rigoureuses. Je sens bien que je ne réussirais pas."

33. "Let us examine the principal professions, and see whether I cannot find one that I might follow without subjecting myself to arduous duties.

"Drawing, engraving, painting, and music would require studies which I am nowise inclined to undertake. If I should study the law, I might become an attorney, a bailiff, a barrister, or a notary. Perhaps I should one day be a magistrate, a judge, a legislator: —Yes, but I must have wherewith to subsist in the mean time; and besides, I should be obliged to attend lectures, to pass examinations, and undergo the rudest trials. I feel I should never succeed."

34. "D'ailleurs, j'ai horreur de la chicane. A chaque débat où je prendrais part, je craindrais d'être réduit au silence par les subtilités de mes adversaires ; et jamais je ne saurais prouver que le noir est blanc.

34. "Besides, I abhor chicanery. In every argument I should be engaged in, I should fear to be nonplused by the subtilties of my adversaries; and I should never be able to prove that black is white.

"J'aimerais assez les fonctions de médecin. Celles-là ne doivent pas être bien fatigantes. Pour peu que vous ayez de la réputation, vous achetez une voiture et des chevaux. Dès lors, tout le monde a confiance en vous, et vous tâchez de mériter cette confiance. Vous vous rendez chez vos malades en cabriolet ou en coupé. On vous reçoit avec autant d'empressement que si vous apportiez infailliblement la guérison. On vous écoute comme un oracle."

"The practice of a physician would please me well enough. This cannot be very arduous. If you get into the least reputation, you buy a carriage and horses. From that instant, every body has faith in you, and you do your best to deserve it. You repair in a cabriolet or a chariot to visit your patients. You are received with as much welcome as if you were the bearer of an infallible cure. You are listened to like an oracle."

35. "A peine êtes-vous entré, que le malade se sent mieux. Vous lui tâtez le pouls, en tirant une montre à secondes de votre gousset. Vous le priez ensuite de vous montrer sa langue. Vous lui demandez où il souffre, comment il dort, s'il a de l'appétit. Vous lui faites quelques autres questions; après quoi vous prenez la plume. Vous prescrivez, selon le cas, la diète, la saignée ou les sangsues; ou bien un cataplasme, un vésicatoire, un emplâtre; ou bien encore de l'émétique, une tisane, enfin le remède qui vous paraît le plus convenable. Et vous guérissez quelquefois. Malheureusement, pour en arriver là, il faut encore étudier. Il faut connaître l'anatomie, la physiologie, la thérapeutique. Que sais-je?"

35. "You are scarcely shown in, when the patient finds himself better. Drawing a second-watch from your fob, you feel his pulse. You desire him next to show you his tongue. You ask him where his pain is, how he sleeps, whether he has any appetite. You put a few more questions to him; after which you take up a pen. You prescribe, according as the case may be, strict diet, bleeding, leeches; or a poultice, a blister, a plaster; or perhaps an emetic, a diet-drink,—in short, the remedy which you judge fittest. And you may happen to cure him. Unfortunately, to arrive at all this, it is still necessary to study. One must know anatomy, physiology, therapeutics, and, I know not what."

36. "Je me souviens qu'un jour j'assistai à une leçon du doc-

36. "I recollect that one day I attended a lecture of Doctor

teur Auzoux. Il démonta pièce à pièce un homme artificiel, et nous fit voir successivement chacun des viscères : le cerveau, les poumons, le cœur, l'estomac, le foie, la rate, les intestins. Il nous dit le nom des os, des muscles, des veines, des artères et des nerfs. Je n'ai jamais rien vu d'aussi compliqué que l'intérieur du corps humain.

"Ne faut-il pas en outre qu'un médecin connaisse la chimie? qu'il sache se servir à propos de l'oxygène, de l'azote et des autres gaz? qu'il emploie avec discernement un acide, un alcali, un sel, un sulfite, un chlorure ou un carbonate? Comment se rappeler tant de choses?"

37. "Ensuite, comment reconnaître toutes les maladies, depuis le simple mal de tête ou la migraine jusqu'à l'apoplexie foudroyante? Si j'allais prendre la coqueluche pour une fluxion de poitrine, un rhume pour un asthme ou pour un catarrhe, la rougeole pour la petite vérole, une engelure pour un ulcère, une fièvre maligne pour une fièvre tierce, ou la jaunisse pour la peste, il en pourrait résulter de fatals accidents.

"A supposer que tous les obstacles s'aplanissent et que je fusse certain de ne pas me tromper, aurais-je au moins atteint mon but? Me voilà médecin,

Auzoux. He took to pieces the mechanical figure of a man, and showed us in succession each of the viscera: the brain, the lungs, the heart, the stomach, the liver, the spleen, the intestines. He told us the names of the bones, the muscles, the veins, the arteries, and the nerves. I never saw any thing so complicated as the interior of the human body.

"Besides, must not a physician be versed in chemistry? Must he not know the proper use of oxygen, azote, and the other gases? and be thoroughly acquainted with the properties of an acid, an alkali, a salt, a sulphite, a chloride, or a carbonate? How is it possible to remember so many things?"

37. "Besides, how can one distinguish the different diseases from one another, from a mere headache or a megrim to fulminant apoplexy? If I should mistake the hooping-cough for an inflammation on the chest, a cold for an asthma or a catarrh, the measles for the small-pox, a chilblain for an ulcer, a malignant fever for a tertian fever, or the jaundice for the plague, fatal accidents might result from it.

"Even supposing that all obstacles were removed, and I were certain not to mistake, should I at least have attained my end? Let us say that I am a doctor:—

bon. Je rentre chez moi, après avoir fait mes visites. Un bon dîner m'attend auprès d'un bon feu. Je me mets à table, mourant de faim."

Well and good. I return home after visiting my patients. A nice dinner is ready for me before a comfortable fire. I sit down to it, with a ravenous appetite."

38. "A la première cuillerée de soupe que j'avale, on sonne. Monsieur le comte un tel, saisi d'un accès de goutte, ou d'une toux violente, me fait supplier de tout quitter pour apaiser ses souffrances. Une autre fois, c'est madame la baronne une telle qui a une attaque de nerfs, ou mademoiselle sa sœur, qui s'est donné une entorse, et dont la famille inquiète demande que je me rende auprès d'elle à la minute même.

"Ou bien encore, au milieu de la nuit, qui sait si l'on ne viendrait pas m'éveiller (moi qui dors d'un sommeil si profond!) soit pour une opération, soit pour le pansement d'une blessure? Tous mes instants seraient pris, et les soins que je prodiguerais à la santé d'autrui finiraient par m'ôter la mienne. Décidément, je ne me ferai pas médecin."

38. "I have but just swallowed a spoonful of soup when the bell rings. Count such a one, seized with a fit of the gout, or a violent cough, sends to beseech me to leave every thing else, and come and relieve his sufferings. Another time, Baroness such a one is in a fit of hysterics, or her sister has sprained her ankle, and her anxious family beg I will come to her on that very minute.

"Or else, who knows but I may be waked up in the middle of the night (I who am such a sound sleeper!) either for an operation, or to dress a wound? Every moment of my time would be taken up, and the care I should bestow on the health of other people would in the end ruin my own. Decidedly, I will not be a physician."

39. "Si je m'engageais? On vit bien dans une bonne garnison; et l'on n'a pas besoin d'être savant pour se faire soldat. Toutefois, sachant déjà lire, écrire et compter, j'aurais plus de chances d'avancement que bien d'autres. Je pourrais parvenir au grade de général. Cela se voit en

39. "Supposing I was to enlist? A garrison life is very agreeable, and it is not necessary to be learned to become a soldier. However, as I know how to read and write and cast accounts, I should have more chances of promotion than many others. I might rise to the rank of a gen-

France, où quiconque sert la patrie porte dans sa giberne le bâton de maréchal et la croix d'honneur. C'est dommage qu'il faille se battre. Cette obligation ne me plairait pas; car je suis d'humeur bénigne et pacifique.

"Je n'aimerais pas non plus les corvées, ni les marches forcées, ni tous les désagréments qui les accompagnent. Tantôt vous grelottez par un froid de dix degrés au-dessous de zéro; tantôt, écrasé sous le poids de votre équipement, vous vous traînez, le sac sur le dos et le fusil sur l'épaule, par une chaleur étouffante; ou bien vous enfoncez jusqu'à mi-jambe dans des marais fangeux."

40. "Ma foi, je l'avoue, sans être poltron, je n'ai pas l'esprit belliqueux de mon cousin Jean-Pierre, qui servit dans la guerre d'Afrique, et qui fut tué dans une bataille livrée à une tribu d'Arabes. Pauvre Jean-Pierre! Il y a deux ans qu'il est mort. Quand il aurait pu mener une existence si paisible au milieu des siens, il aima mieux chercher fortune ailleurs.

"Il quitta le pays il y a six ans, pour courir les aventures. Il s'enrôla à Constantine, et il y avait dix-huit mois qu'il était dans l'armée, chéri de ses camarades

eral. Such things are seen in France, where every man who serves his country has the truncheon of a field-marshal and the cross of the legion of honor within his grasp. Only it is a pity one is obliged to fight. I should not like this obligation; for I am of a mild and peaceful disposition.

"Neither should I like extra duty, nor forced marches, nor all the disagreeable accompaniments which attend them. Sometimes shivering in the cold ten degrees below the freezing-point; sometimes, crushed with the weight of your accoutrements, you drag yourself along, with your knapsack on your back and your musket on your shoulder, in a suffocating heat; or else sunk up to the middle of your legs in miry marshes."

40. "In faith, I confess that, without being a coward, I have not the warlike spirit of my cousin John Peter, who served in the war of Africa, and was killed in a battle fought against a tribe of Arabs. Poor John Peter! He has been dead these two years. Although he could have led such a peaceable life among his friends and relations, he preferred trying his luck elsewhere.

"He left the country six years ago, to seek for adventures. He enlisted at Constantine, and had been eighteen months in the army, beloved by his comrades and

et estimé de ses chefs, quand il eut la cuisse traversée par une balle, et le crâne fendu d'un coup de sabre. Je tiens ces détails de quelqu'un de véridique et de bien informé."

esteemed by his chiefs, when he had his thigh shot through with a bullet, and his skull laid open with the cut of a sabre. I received these particulars from a credible person well acquainted with the facts."

CONCLUDING LESSONS,

TO BE TRANSLATED ALTERNATELY FROM FRENCH INTO ENGLISH, AND FROM ENGLISH INTO FRENCH.

Explanation of the abbreviations used in the notes below.

adj.	stands for	Adjective.		pa. part.	stands for	Past participle.
adv.	"	"	Adverb.	pl.	"	"	Plural.
art.	"	"	Article.	pres. part.	"	"	Present participle.
conj.	"	"	Conjunction.	prep.	"	"	Preposition.
ex.	"	"	Example.	pron.	"	"	Pronoun.
exc.	"	"	Exception.	r.	"	"	Root, radical.
fem.	"	"	Feminine.	sing.	"	"	Singular.
fr.	"	"	From, derived from.	subst.	"	"	Substantive.
lit.	"	"	Literally, in a strict sense.	v.	"	"	Verb.
masc.	"	"	Masculine.	v. irr.	"	"	Irregular verb.

The small figures refer to the rules already seen, but the large ones indicate that something new is under consideration.

---

41. La vie d'un matelot a aussi ses fatigues et ses dangers. Combien de vaisseaux, battus par la tempête, portés par des vagues enflées, avec leurs voiles déchirées par le vent, se sont brisés sur des rochers, ou ont fait naufrage sur des rivages éloignés et inconnus, ou ont été surpris entre les montagnes de glace de la mer polaire, et y sont restés attachés pour toujours! Non, je le jure, ce ne sera jamais mon sort d'être marin, si je puis l'éviter. Que ceux qui aiment la gloire se pré-

41. A sailor's life also has its fatigues and dangers. How many a storm-beaten vessel, borne on swelling waves, with her sails shred by the wind, has split on rocks, or has been wrecked on distant and unknown shores, or has been caught among the icy mountains of the polar sea; and stuck there forever! No, I swear it shall never be my lot to be a seaman, if I can help it. Let such as love glory rush into peril, and exhaust their strength with fatigues. As for me, I prefer a

---

Battu, pa. part. of the v. irr. *battre*. See Index.—*Fait*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Naufrage* is masc. (215).—*Rivage* is masc. (215).—*Surpris*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *surprendre*.—*Puis*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index.—

cipitent dans le péril, et qu'ils épuisent leur force par les fatigues. Quant à moi, je préfère une vie tranquille. Après tout, je crois que le commerce est la chose qui me convient le mieux.

Il avait à peine pris son parti qu'il s'élança de sa chaise, brossa son humble et unique redingote, la boutonna, mit son chapeau et sortit précipitamment, à la recherche d'une petite boutique qui pût convenir à son dessein. Enfin il en trouva une très-petite, qui excita son attention. Elle était presque carrée, ayant douze pieds de long sur onze de large, avec une petite arrière-boutique. "C'est exactement ce qu'il me faut," se dit-il à lui-même. Il entra dans la boutique contiguë, qui était occupée par un coiffeur, homme grand, maigre, à la tête

quiet life. Upon the whole, I think that trade is the thing that suits me best.

He had scarcely made up his mind, when he sprang from his chair, brushed his humble and only frock-coat, buttoned it, put his hat on, and sallied forth in search of a little shop that might suit his purpose. At length he found a very small one, that hit his fancy. It was almost square, being twelve feet long by eleven wide, with a little back shop. "This is the very thing I want," said he to himself. He entered the adjoining shop, which was occupied by a hair-dresser, a tall, lean, bald-headed man, with a shrewd countenance and a prying

---

Quant must not be confounded with *quand*, when, or though. *Quant* is always followed by *à*, with which it signifies, as for, in regard to, with respect to.—*Commerce* is masc. by exc. (15). **649.** *La chose qui me convient* LE *mieux.* Before *plus, moins, mieux*, used in the superlative of comparison, the article *le, la, les* agrees in gender and number with the substantive which is the object of comparison. In the superlative absolute, however, that is to say, when no comparison is expressed, the article *le* remains invariable, thus: *La chose qui me convient le mieux*, the thing that suits me best. —*Convient*, form of the v. irr. *convenir*, fr. *venir*. See Index.

Pris, pa. part. of the v. irr. *prendre*. See Index. **650.** *Son humble et unique redingote.* § 1. When two or more adjectives qualify the same subst., the definitive is not repeated before each adj. § 2. By definitives are meant such words as *le, la, les, un, une, mon, ton, son*, etc. It would, however, be wrong to say *Une grande et petite redingote*, for in this example the adj. *grande* and *petite* evidently refer to different coats. That *redingote* does not take the plural form in such a case, is because the subst. gives the law to the adj., but never receives it from it.—*Sortit*, form of the v. irr. *sortir*. See Index.—*Pût*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index. **651.** *Arrière-boutique* is a compound of *arrière*, preposition, and *boutique*, substantive. Its plural is *arrière-boutiques*. In compound words those component parts which are neither subst. nor adj. are always invariable. This rule is subject to the following exception: If one of the component parts is a word that has ceased to be used alone, as *boutant* in *arc-boutant*, which is formed of *arc*, arch, bow, and the pres. part. of the old v. *bouter*, to put, to push, it is considered as an adj., and takes the plural when the sense requires it.—*Faut*, form of the v. irr. *falloir*. See Index.—*Dit*, form of the v. irr. *dire*. See Index.—*Coiffeur*, r. *coiffer*, to dress hair.

chauve, à la physionomie rusée, et au regard curieux ; et demanda l'adresse du propriétaire de la maison.

Le coiffeur ne la lui donna pas avant de lui avoir fait beaucoup de questions, et de lui avoir raconté quelques détails touchant le dernier locataire de la boutique. Enfin il lui donna l'adresse du propriétaire, M. Mathieu : Rue Bellechasse, numéro deux cent, près de la place Louis XV. ; et, pour conclure, il demanda la permission d'assurer à son jeune voisin futur que son peigne et son rasoir étaient toujours à son service.

42. Aussitôt qu'Alexis put se débarrasser de ce bavard, il se rendit en hâte à la maison du propriétaire. Il frappa à la porte, qui fut ouverte par une jolie servante. "M. Mathieu est-il chez lui ?" lui demanda-t-il. "Oui, monsieur ; veuillez entrer." Et, passant la première dans un étroit corridor, elle gagna la porte d'une salle basse, qu'elle entr'ouvrit ; et, avançant la tête dans l'intérieur, elle dit : "Il y a un monsieur

look, and begged to be directed to the owner of the house.

This the hair-dresser did not do before he had asked him a great many questions, and related to him a few particulars about the last tenant of the shop. At length he gave him the landlord's address : Mr. Mathiew, Bellechasse-street, No. two hundred, near the Place Lewis XV. ; and, in conclusion, begged leave to assure his future young neighbor that his comb and razor were always at his service.

42. As soon as Alexis could get rid of this talkative fellow, he repaired in haste to the house of the landlord. He knocked at the door, which was opened by a pretty maid-servant. "Is Mr. Mathiew at home ?" he inquired of her. "Yes, sir. Please to walk in." And, leading the way through a narrow passage, she came to a parlor-door, which she half opened ; and, peeping in, she said : "There is a gentleman without, who

---

Fait, pa. part. of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index. **652.** *Au numéro deux* CENT. The adjectives *cent* and *vingt* are invariable, when they stand for the ordinal adjectives *centième* and *vingtième* (546, 547). **653.** § 1. *Louis* quinze. The cardinal numbers stand for the ordinal ones, for the sake of brevity,—1st, after the names of sovereigns ;—2dly, after certain words denoting the divisions or subdivisions of a work, as *chapitre*, *page*, etc. ;—3dly, before the names of the months, without the prep. *de*, as, *Le deux septembre*, the second of September. § 2. *Premier*, however, cannot be replaced by *un*. We say, *Charles premier*, *chapitre premier*, *le premier septembre*, and not, *Charles un*, etc.—*Peigne* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Service* is masc. by exc. (15).

Put, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index.—*Ouverte*, fem. of *ouvert*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *ouvrir*. See Index.—*Veuillez*, form of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.

dehors, qui veut vous parler, monsieur." "Qu'il entre," dit une voix enrouée et dure; et Alexis fut introduit dans la chambre, où un vieillard à mine refrognée était assis au coin du feu, en bonnet de nuit et en pantoufles.

Le vieux monsieur dirigea un regard irrité sur Alexis, et dit en fronçant le sourcil: "Eh bien, monsieur, que voulez-vous?" Ce dernier, un peu intimidé par cette réception peu aimable, dit en balbutiant: "Monsieur, vous avez une boutique à louer?" "Oui, vraiment," dit le propriétaire, d'un air radouci. "Je viens de la voir, elle me convient, et je voudrais savoir quelles sont vos conditions." "Oh! asseyez-vous, jeune homme, je vous en prie, asseyez-vous près du feu, il fait froid aujourd'hui. Nous disons donc que ma boutique vous a convenu, et que vous desirez la prendre?" "Oui, monsieur, si le loyer n'en est pas trop cher." "Elle ne coûte que cinq cents francs par an. Ce n'est pas un prix trop élevé, n'est-ce pas?" "Mais je ne trouve pas que ce soit très-bon marché," dit Alexis;

wants to speak to you, sir." "Let him come in," said a hoarse, rough voice; and Alexis was ushered into the room, where a gruff-looking old man sat by the fireside, in his nightcap and slippers.

The old gentleman bent an angry look on Alexis, and said with a frown: "Well, sir, what do you want?" The latter, somewhat startled at this ungentle reception, stammered out: "Sir, you have a shop to let?" "I have indeed," said the landlord, smoothing his brow. "I have just seen it, it suits me, and I should like to know what your terms are." "Oh! sit down, young man, pray sit down by the fire; it is cold to-day. And so you say that my shop suits you, that you wish to take it?" "Yes, sir, if the rent is not too high." "It is only five hundred francs a year. That's not too high a price, is it?" "Why I don't think 'tis very cheap," said Alexis; "however I'll take it." "But then, the first quarter must be paid beforehand, as I have not the pleasure of knowing you."

Veut, form of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.—*Introduit*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *introduire*. See Index.—*Vieillard*, from *vieux*, vieil.—*Refrogné* is also spelled *renfrogné*.—*Assis*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *asseoir*. See Index.

Dit, form of the v. irr. *dire*. See Index.—*Voulez*, form of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.—*Viens*, form of the v. irr. *venir*. See Index.—*Convient*, form of the v. irr. *convenir*, fr. *venir*. See Index.—*Condition* is fem. (99). *Asseyez*, form of the v. irr. *asseoir*. See Index. **654.** *Il fait froid. Faire* is employed impersonally, or rather in the third person singular, as *to be* is used in English in speaking of the weather or of the temperature, thus: *Il fait beau temps*, It is fine weather; *Il fait chaud*, It is warm weather; *Il fait froid*, It is cold, etc. **655.** *Ma boutique vous* A CONVENU. The v. *convenir*, when it signifies to suit, to be becoming, takes

"cependant je la prendrai." "Alors, il faut que le premier quartier soit payé d'avance, car je n'ai pas le plaisir de vous connaître." "C'est trop juste," dit Alexis, en l'interrompant et en tirant de son carnet son billet de cinq cents francs qu'il posa sur la table. "Veuillez vous payer et me donner ma monnaie."

"It is perfectly right," said Alexis, interrupting him and drawing from his note-book his five hundred franc note, which he laid on the table. "Please to pay yourself and to return me my change."

43. M. Mathieu, voyant qu'il se rendait si facilement à sa demande, aurait voulu en avoir exigé davantage. Il dit qu'il avait à louer, dans la même maison, deux chambres bien meublées, dont il pourrait disposer à des conditions modérées, et qu'il serait bien aise si Alexis voulait louer l'une ou l'autre, ou toutes les deux. "Ni l'une ni l'autre, à présent ne m'est nécessaire," dit Alexis, "mais plus tard je compte pouvoir les prendre. En attendant, ne puis-je pas me mettre en pension chez vous?" "Assurément, vous le pouvez," répondit M. Mathieu. "Cela vous coûtera mille francs par an, cela fait quatre-vingt-trois francs trente-trois centimes et un tiers par mois. Vous me direz qu'il n'y a pas de tiers de centime; il est déplorable

43. Mr. Mathiew, seeing him comply so readily with his demand, wished he had exacted more. He said that he had two nicely-furnished rooms to let, in the same house, that he could dispose of on moderate terms, and he should be glad if he would hire either or both. "Neither, at present," said Alexis, "but later, I trust, I shall be able to take them. In the mean time, can't I board in your house?" "To be sure you can," answered Mr. Mathiew. "It will cost you a thousand francs a year, that makes eighty-three francs, thirty-three centimes and a third a month. You will tell me there are no thirds of a centime; indeed it is to be lamented that copper-coin is not divided into more fractions. Even centimes

---

avoir in its compound tenses. It takes *être*, when used in the sense of to agree, or to acknowledge.—*Prendrai*, form of the v. irr. *prendre*. See Index.—*Faut*, form of the v. irr. *falloir*. See Index.—*Veuillez*, form of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.

Voyant, form of the v. irr. *voir*. See Index.—*Voulu*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.—*Pourrait*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index. 656. *Ni l'une ni l'autre ne m'*EST *nécessaire;* or, *Ni l'une ni l'autre ne me* SONT *nécessaires.* When two or more subjects in the singular number are joined by the conjunction *ni*, the verb may be made to agree with the last subject only, or may be put in the plural. The best writers have given numerous examples of both forms.—*Centime* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Direz*, form of the v. irr. *dire*. See Index.—

en effet qu'on ne fractionne pas davantage la monnaie de billon. Les centimes même sont rares; nous dirions donc quatre-vingt-trois francs et sept sous, payables de mois en mois et d'avance." "C'est une affaire conclue," dit Alexis. "Nous allons, s'il vous plaît, régler ce compte à l'instant."

Le propriétaire après avoir bien palpé le billet, rendit la monnaie, et dit: "Commencerez-vous aujourd'hui?" "Oui. A quelle heure dînez-vous?" "A cinq heures, mon cher monsieur; et nous sommes si ponctuels, qu'au moment où l'heure sonne, le dîner est servi." "Très-bien, je reviendrai à quatre heures et demie." "Faites," dit le vieillard, "j'informerai madame Mathieu de votre venue. Nous devons avoir du bœuf rôti, un pâté de veau et de jambon, les restes d'un gigot de mouton, avec des pommes de terre et des épinards, et une tête de mouton bouillie. Aimez-vous la tête de mouton?" "Pas beaucoup," répondit Alexis, "ni les épinards non plus; mais n'importe; j'aime le bœuf et les pommes de terre, ainsi cela fera com-

are scarce; we should therefore say eighty-three francs and seven sous, payable monthly and in advance." "It is a bargain," said Alexis. "We will, if you please, settle this account immediately."

The landlord, after having felt and examined scrupulously the bill, returned the change and said: "Will you begin to-day?" "I will. At what o'clock do you dine?" "At five o'clock, my dear sir; and we are so punctual, that the moment the clock strikes, the dinner is served up." "Very well, I shall come back at half-past four." "Do," said the old man; "I shall apprise Mrs. Mathiew of your coming. We are to have roast-beef, a veal and ham-pie, the remains of a leg of mutton, with potatoes and spinage, and a sodden sheep's head. Do you like sheep's head?" "Not very much," returned Alexis, "nor spinage neither; but no matter; I like beef and potatoes, so it will make amends. I rejoice to see that I am not

---

Fractionner, from *fraction*, fraction.—*Conclu*, fem. *conclue*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *conclure*. See Index.—*Compte* is masc. by exc. (15).

Servi, pa. part. of the v. irr. *servir*. See Index.—*Reviendrai*, form of the v. irr. *revenir*, from *venir*. See Index.—*L'heure sonne*, lit. the hour rings, for, the clock strikes. **657**, § 1. *A quatre heures et demie*. In speaking of time, as measured by the clock, the number of hours is mentioned first, and followed by the fraction denoting the portion of time which precedes or follows the full number, thus: *Quatre heures cinq minutes*, five minutes past four; *quatre heures et un quart*, or more commonly, *quatre heures un quart*, a quarter past four; *cinq heures moins un quart*, a quarter to five; *cinq heures moins dix minutes*, ten minutes to five. § 2. The last examples show that the portion of time wanting to make up the full number is preceded by *moins*, less.—*Fera*,

pensation. Je me réjouis de voir que je ne mourrai vraisemblablement pas de faim chez vous, si vous me faites faire la même bonne chère tous les jours. Au revoir, monsieur."

likely to starve in your house, if you give me the same good fare every day. Good-by, sir."

44. Il restait alors à Alexis deux cent quatre-vingt-onze francs soixante cinq centimes, pour garnir sa boutique. C'est pourquoi sa première démarche, en quittant M. Mathieu fut de dépenser cet argent en verres, en bouteilles, en théyères, en pots au lait, en sucriers, en tasses, en soucoupes, et en autre poterie fine. Il empila ces choses dans un large panier ouvert, mettant la poterie par-dessous et les verres par-dessus. Puis il plaça le panier à ses pieds, s'assit sur un tabouret, enfonça ses mains dans ses poches, et s'appuya le dos contre le mur, en attendant les chalands. Comme il était assis dans cette posture, les yeux sur le panier, il tomba dans une de ces rêveries qui lui étaient familières, et pendant lesquelles il lui arrivait souvent de se livrer à des soliloques prolongés; car l'esprit des paresseux ne participe pas toujours de l'engourdissement de leurs membres.

Or, la cloison qui séparait

44. Alexis had now two hundred and ninety-one francs, sixty-five centimes left, to fit up his shop with. His next step, therefore, on leaving Mr. Mathiew, was to lay it out in glasses, bottles, tea-pots, milk-pots, sugar-basins, cups, saucers, and other fine earthenware. These he piled up in a wide, open basket, putting the crockery undermost and the glasses uppermost. He then placed the basket at his feet, sat down on a stool, thrust his hands into his pockets, and leaned his back against the wall, in expectation of customers. As he sat in this posture, with his eyes on the basket, he fell into one of those reveries which were familiar to him, and during which he was wont to abandon himself to long soliloquies; for the mind of the idle does not always partake of the drowsiness of their limbs.

Now, the partition which sep-

---

form of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Mourrai*, form of the v. irr. *mourir*. See Index.—*Faim* is fem. by exc. (14).

Verre is masc. by exc. (15).—*Ouvert*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *ouvrir*. See Index.—*Mettant*, form of the v. irr. *mettre*. See Index.—*Assit*, form of the v. irr. *asseoir*. See Index.—*Main* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Rêverie*, fr. *rêve*, dream.—*Soliloque* is masc. by exc (15).—*Prolongé*, fr. *long*, long.—*Membre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Cloison* is fem. by

Alexis de son voisin était peu épaisse. A l'aide d'une vrille, l'indiscret barbier y avait pratiqué plusieurs ouvertures. Se glissant tout contre la paroi, il se tint coi, prêta l'oreille, et recueillit ce qui suit.

"Voilà un assortiment qui me coûte deux cent quatre-vingt-onze francs, y compris deux pourboires. Je n'ai plus le sou. Mais qu'est-ce que cela me fait? Ne suis-je pas sûr d'être hébergé pendant un mois? Avant que la quinzaine soit expirée, j'aurai fait six cents francs de cette marchandise en la vendant en détail. C'est tout simple: un objet qui est coté à trois francs sur le tarif de la fabrique finit souvent par en coûter trente et plus en passant par les mains des débitants. Tout le sortilége du commerce consiste à acheter à bas prix, à profiter des bonnes aubaines, et à vendre aussi cher que possible."

45. "Mes six cents francs s'élèveront aisément à douze cents, qui, avec le temps, en produiront douze mille. Une fois possesseur de douze mille francs, je mettrai

arated Alexis from his neighbor was not thick. By means of a gimlet, the prying barber had made several holes in it. Creeping close to the wall, he stood still, lent an ear, and heard what follows:

"Here is an assortment that costs me two hundred and ninety-one francs, including two gratuities. I have not a penny left. But what is that to me? Am I not sure to be boarded and lodged for a month? Before a fortnight has elapsed, I shall have made six hundred francs of these wares, by selling them in retail. It is very simple: an article which is quoted three francs in the list of prices of the manufactory, often costs thirty and upwards, after passing through the hands of retailers. The whole secret of commerce consists in buying cheap, profiting by good occasions, and selling as dear as possible."

45. "My six hundred francs will easily rise to twelve hundred, which, in time, will produce twelve thousand. When I am master of twelve thousand francs,

---

exc. (14).—*Epaisse*, irr. fem. of *épais*.—*Ouverture*, fr. *ouvrir*, to open.—*Paroi* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Coi*, irr. fem. *coite*, scarcely ever used. The masc. is only used in the phrase, *se tenir coi*, or *demeurer coi*.—*Recueillit*, form of the v. irr. *recueillir*, to gather, to collect, fr. *cueillir*. See Index.

Assortiment, subst. fr. *sorte*, sort.—*Pourboire*, drink-money, formed of *pour* and *boire*, for drinking, was first spelled *pourboire*, and was invariable. It has now become a single subst. and follows the general rule.—*Héberger*. The *h* is mute. **658.** *Avant que la quinzaine* sort *expirée*. The v. *expirer* takes the auxil. v. *avoir* in speaking of persons and animals; and the v. *être* in speaking of things.—*Débitant*, fr. *débit*, sale, or utterance; *débiter*, to sell, to retail, or to utter.—*Sortilége*, sorcery, is masc. by exc. (15).

Aisément, adv. fr. *aisé*, easy.—*Produiront*, form of the v. irr. *produire*. See Index.—*Fois* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Possesseur*, fr. *posséder*, to possess.—*Mettrai*, form of the v. irr.

de côté mon métier de marchand de verres, et je me ferai mercier. Je prendrai naturellement une plus grande boutique, et je m'éloignerai de ce vilain barbier, qui me semble être le plus grand babillard que j'aie jamais connu, et qu'on pourrait surnommer le Figaro de Paris. Je n'entendrai plus alors ni cet ennuyeux personnage, ni l'avare et bourru M. Mathieu; double plaisir que de s'éloigner à la fois d'un voisinage et d'un propriétaire, qui sont également désagréables; car je hais les faiseurs de commérages et les avares autant que je les méprise. Je vendrai alors des aiguilles, des épingles, du fil, du coton, du ruban de fil, des dés, des ciseaux, des gants, et cætera, jusqu'à ce que j'aie gagné assez d'argent pour devenir joaillier et faire le commerce de diamants, de perles, de bijoux d'or et d'argent, et de pierres précieuses de toute espèce.

"Ceci me fera faire connaissance avec des personnes du plus haut rang et de la plus haute condition dans le monde, que j'attirerai en n'ayant que des articles précieux et à la mode. Quand je serai parvenu à ce degré de prospérité, je commencerai à mener

I shall lay aside my trade of a glassman, and turn haberdasher. I shall of course take a larger shop, and remove from that ugly barber, who seems to me to be the greatest babbler that I ever knew, and who might be surnamed the Figaro of Paris. I shall then no longer hear either that tedious fellow, or the peevish and covetous Mr. Mathiew: a double pleasure, to get away at once from a neighborhood and a landlord that are alike disagreeable; for I hate as much as I despise gossips and misers. I shall now sell needles, pins, thread, cotton, tape, thimbles, scissors, gloves, and so forth, until I have got cash enough to become a jeweller, and deal in diamonds, pearls, gold and silver trinkets, and precious stones of every species.

"This will make me acquainted with people of the highest rank and standing in the world, to attract whom I shall have no other articles than valuable and fashionable ones. When I have thriven thus far, I shall begin to lead a happy life, and

---

mettre. See Index.—*Ferai*, form of the v. irr. *faire.* See Index.—*Prendrai*, form of the v. irr. *prendre.* See Index.—*Naturellement*, adv. fr. *naturel.*—*Pourrait*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir.* See Index.—*Faiseur*, fr. *faire*, to make—*Voisinage* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Hais*, form of the v. irr. *haïr.* See Index.—*Commérage* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Bijoux*, plur. of *bijou.* **659.** The following substantives ending in *ou*, form their plural with *x* instead of *s*, by exception: *Bijou*, jewel; *caillou*, pebble, flint; *chou*, cabbage; *genou*, knee; *hibou*, owl; *joujou*, plaything; *pou*, louse.—*Précieuses*, fem. pl. of *précieux.* *Monde* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Parvenu*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *parvenir*, fr. *venir.*

une heureuse vie et à faire du bruit dans le royaume. La France, l'Espagne et le Portugal me fourniront leurs vins; la Russie ses fourrures. Bien plus, des navires, chargés des trésors des Indes, m'apporteront leurs tributs.

"Dussé-je passer pour fat, je donnerai tous mes soins à ma toilette, et je serai difficile sur le choix de mon tailleur, de mon bottier, de mon chapelier et de mon bonnetier; car il y a dans le faste un prestige qui tient lieu du vrai mérite. Celui qui est bien mis, fût-il un automate, un paltoquet ou un crétin, impose au vulgaire et souvent même à des gens qui valent mieux que lui. Le moyen d'être bien reçu partout, c'est d'avoir un costume recherché.

"Le nombre de mes amis, de l'un et de l'autre sexe, augmentera avec ma fortune, car les riches, quelques vicieux qu'ils soient, sont absous, entourés de prosélytes, révérés et flagornés, s'ils mènent grand train, s'ils ont de beaux attelages,

make a noise in the kingdom. France, Spain, and Portugal will furnish me with their wines; Russia with her furs. Nay, ships, laden with the treasures of the Indies, will bring me their tributes.

"At the risk of passing for a coxcomb, I shall be very careful about my dress, and be particular in the choice of my tailor, bootmaker, hatter, and hosier; for there is a fascination in display, which makes up for real merit. He who is well dressed, though he were an automaton, a lout, or an idiot, overawes the common herd, and sometimes even people more worthy than himself. The way to be well received everywhere, is to be elegantly dressed.

"The number of my friends, both male and female, will increase with my fortune, for the rich, how vicious soever they may be, are excused, surrounded with proselytes, revered and cajoled, if they live at a fine rate, if they have handsome teams of

---

See Index.—*Royaume* is masc. by exc. (15). **660.** L'*Angleterre*, L'*Espagne*, etc. Proper names of countries, kingdoms, etc., take the article.—*Navire* is masc. by exc. (15).

Dusse, past tense, subjunctive mood of *devoir*. See Index. This tense of *devoir* is sometimes used for though or though even, as, *Dussé-je passer*, though even I were to pass. **661.** *Dussé-je.* In interrogative phrases and others, in which the pron. *je* follows a verb ending in *e* mute, this *e* takes the acute accent before *je*.—*Fat*, foppish. This adj. has no fem.—*Tailleur*, fr. *tailler*, to cut.—*Bottier*, fr. *botte*, boot.—*Chapelier*, fr. *chapeau*, hat.—*Bonnetier*, fr. *bonnet*, cap.—*Faste*, pomp, ostentation, display, is masc. by exc. (15).—*Prestige* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Tient*, form of the v. irr. *tenir*. See Index.—*Mérite* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Celui qui est bien mis* (425). *Mis*, pa. part. of *mettre*, is used for dressed; and *mise*, subst., for dress, toilet.—*Automate* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Imposer*, when used absolutely, signifies to awe, to overawe; and *en imposer*, to impose upon, to deceive.—*Vulgaire*, when used substantively, is masc. (405).—*Valent*, form of the v. irr. *valoir*. See Index.—*Costume* is masc. by exc. (15).

662. *De l'un et de l'autre sexe.* The subst. which follows *l'un et l'autre* is used in the sing.—*Absous*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *absoudre*. See Index.—*Attelage* is masc. (215), fr. *atteler*, to yoke, to put the horses to.

et surtout s'ils tiennent table ouverte."

46. "Je continuerai cependant à faire le commerce sans aucun relâche, jusqu'à ce que je sois devenu archimillionnaire. Alors je réaliserai le rêve de toute ma vie. Je ferai l'acquisition de la plus belle maison que je pourrai trouver; avec des terres et des fermes, un parc et un verger. Enfin, je me mettrai sur le pied d'un seigneur. Et qui sait si je n'en deviendrai pas un? Je veux que, dans un espace de dix lieues à la ronde, il n'y ait pas un hectare, pas une acre, pas un pouce de terrain qui ne fasse partie de mon domaine.

"Je veux qu'un étranger ne puisse demander: 'A qui sont ces prés verdoyants?' sans qu'on lui réponde: 'Au marquis Delatour.'

"'A qui ces champs si bien cultivés?' 'Au marquis Delatour.'

horses, and, above all, if they keep open house."

46. "I shall go on, however, with my trade, without any intermission, until I am worth many millions. Then will I realize the dream of my whole life. I shall make a purchase of the finest house I shall be able to find; with lands and farms, a park, and an orchard. In short, I shall set myself on the footing of a lord. And who knows but I may become one? I am determined that, within a space of ten leagues round, there shall not be an hectare, not an acre, not an inch of ground but what belongs to my estate.

"I am determined that when a stranger asks, 'Whose verdant meadows are these?' no other answer shall be made but, 'Marquis Delatour's.'

"'Who possesses those fields so well tilled?' 'Marquis Delatour.'

Relâche, intermission, relaxation, is masc. by exc. (15); *relâche*, putting into a port, calling, touching at a port, is fem.—*Devenu*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *devenir*, fr. *venir*. See Index.—*Archimillionnaire. Archi*, when arbitrarily employed, as in this instance, is a familiar way of expressing the highest degree that can be attained. It is a sort of superlative form, as arch-fiend, arch-enemy, in English.—*Millionnaire*, fr. *million*.—*Réaliser*, fr. *réel*, real.—*Rêve* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Ferai*, form of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Pourrai*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index.—*Mettrai*, form of the v. irr. *mettre*. See Index.—*Sait*, form of the v. irr. *savoir*. See Index. —*Deviendrai*, form of the v. irr. *devenir*, fr. *venir*. See Index.—*Veux*, form of the v. irr. *vouloir*. See Index.—*Espace* is masc. by exc. (15); however, in typographical language, it is fem.—*Hectare*, a measure corresponding to about two acres and a half, is masc. (347).—*Pouce*, inch, and thumb, is masc. by exc. (15).—*Fusse*, form of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Domaine* is masc. by exc. (15).

Verdoyant, fr. *vert*, green.—**663.** *On lui* RÉPONDE. The pron. *on* is generally masculine and singular. However, when the sense clearly shows that it refers to a woman, or to certain persons, it is followed by adjectives, participles, or substantives, either feminine or plural, according to the sense. Ex. *Quand* ON *est* JEUNE *et* JOLIE *comme vous, madame*, When one is young and beautiful as you are, madam.

"'A qui ces vignobles chargés de pampres verts?' 'Au marquis Delatour.'

"'A qui ces belles génisses et tout le bétail épars dans ces gras pâturages?' 'Au marquis Delatour.' Toujours 'au marquis Delatour,' à l'instar de ce que j'ai lu dans l'histoire du Chat botté.

"Peu de maisons seront mieux meublées que la mienne. Je ferai décorer mes appartements avec la splendeur des sérails de l'Orient ou des palais enchantés si bien décrits dans les contes de fées. Les parquets, les vantaux des portes, les jalousies, les persiennes et les volets seront faits de bois précieux, tels que l'acajou, le palissandre, le citronnier et l'ébène. Les gonds et les verrous seront faits d'acier cémenté, incrusté d'or. L'ivoire et le

"'Whose vineyards are these, that are loaded with green vine-branches?' 'Marquis Delatour's.'

"'Whose beautiful heifers are those, and all the cattle dispersed over those fat pastures?' 'Marquis Delatour's.' Always 'Marquis Delatour's,' like what I have read in the story of Puss in Boots.

"Few houses shall be better furnished than mine. I shall have my apartments fitted up with the splendor of eastern seraglios, or of the enchanted palaces so well described in fairy tales. The floors, the leaves of the folding-doors, the Venetian blinds and shutters, will be made of precious wood, such as mahogany, rose-wood, citron-wood, and ebony. The hinges and bolts will be made of cemented steel, inlaid with gold.

Vignoble is masc. by exc. (15).—*Pampre* is masc. by exc. (15).

Bétail, pl. *bestiaux*.—*Gras*, irr. fem. *grasse*.—*Pâturage* is masc. (215).—*Botté*, booted, fr. *botte*, boot.

664. *Peu de maisons seront mieux meublées.* § 1. When adverbs of quantity, such as *peu*, *beaucoup*, *assez*, are employed as collective nouns (205), the v. agrees with the subst. that follows them. § 2. When the subst. is understood, the v. agrees with it nevertheless. Ex. *Beaucoup le seront moins bien*, Many shall be less so.—*Splendeur* is fem. (95).—*Sérails*, pl. of *sérail* (516).—*Palais*, pl. of *palais* (17).—*Décrit*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *décrire*, fr. *écrire*. See Index.—*Vantaux*, pl. of *vantail* (516).—*Jalousies* and *persiennes* are both called Venetian blinds in English, but the former are drawn up by means of cords and pulleys, while the latter open and shut like shutters. **665.** *Les* PERSIENNES *et les* VOLETS *seront* FAITS. § 1. When a participle (105, 354) or an adjective refers to two or more substantives or pronouns, either singular or plural and of different genders, it takes the plural form and the masculine gender. § 2. If the substantives are of different genders, for the sake of euphony, the masculine one ought to be placed last, if possible. § 3. This rule should, however, not be construed so as to interfere with the following: **666.** When an adjective or a verb is preceded by two or more substantives which are synonymous and not connected by *et*, it agrees with the last only. Ex. *Un flot, une lame* MONSTRUEUSE, A billow, a monstrous surge; *La constance, la persévérance lui* A *suffi*, Steadiness and perseverance have been sufficient for him.—*Faits*, pl. of *fait*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Palissandre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Citronnier*, fr. *citron*, citron, lemon.—*Ebène* is masc. by exc. (15). —*Incruster*, fr. *croûte*, crust.—*Ivoire* is masc. by exc. (15).—

marbre seront prodigués de tous côtés; et le lampas, la mousseline, le satin et le velours, artistement entremêlés, éblouiront l'œil par les teintes les plus brillantes. Je m'entendrai à ce sujet avec mon tapissier.

"Je me figure le moment où j'irai faire l'inspection de ma nouvelle demeure, quand elle sera mise en état de me recevoir. J'arrive en calèche. Le suisse, fort comme un colosse et droit comme un cierge, a ouvert la grille d'entrée, et d'un coup de cloche il a donné le branle à tout le personnel de ma maison."

Ivory and marble will be lavished on all sides; and lampas, muslin, satin, and velvet, skilfully interwoven, will dazzle the eye with the most brilliant hues. I shall confer on this subject with my upholsterer.

"I figure to myself the moment when I shall go and take a survey of my new residence, as soon as it is ready to receive me. I arrive in an open carriage. The porter, strong as a colossus and straight as a wax-taper, has opened the iron-gate, and, with a ring of the bell, has put all my domestics in motion."

47. "Mes chevaux ont traversé la cour au galop; mon cocher vient d'arrêter devant le perron abrité par une marquise. Le valet de pied ouvre la portière et baisse le marchepied. Je descends de voiture, je traverse un beau portique et j'entre dans un vestibule pavé de marbre blanc et orné de piliers, de cariatides et de bas-reliefs. Je monte lentement l'escalier, en m'appuyant sur une rampe supérieurement ciselée. A droite et à gauche du palier, des vitraux demi-transparents et

47. "My horses have galloped across the court-yard; my coachman has just pulled up before the flight of steps sheltered by an awning. The footman opens the coach-door and lets down the steps. I alight from my carriage, cross a beautiful portico, and enter a hall paved with white marble and adorned with pillars, caryatides, and basso-relievos. I slowly ascend the staircase, leaning on a baluster superbly carved. On the right and left of the landing-place, half-transparent and

---

—*Marbre* is masc. by exc. (15) —*Lampas*, a silk stuff. Pronounce the final *s*.—*Tapissier*, fr. *tapisserie*, tapestry, hanging. R. *tapis*, carpet.

Inspection is fem. (99) —*Suisse*, lit. Swiss.—*Colosse* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Cierge* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Cloche*, a large bell.—*Branle* is masc. by exc. (15).

Cour is fem. by exc. (14).—*Marquise*, marchioness, and awning, or a sort of tent.—*Portique* is masc by exc. (15).—*Vestibule* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Bas-reliefs*, pl. of *bas-relief*.—*Lentement*, adv., fr. *lent*, slow (261).—*Supérieurement*, fr. the adj. *supérieur*. The fem. of this adj. is *supérieure*. **.667.** Adjectives ending in *érieur*, form their fem. according to the general rule (2).—*Ciseler*, fr. *ciseau*, chisel.—*Vitraux*, pl. of *vitrail*, omitted in the list of exceptions (516), because it is obsolete in the sing. **668.** *Demi-transparentes*. In compound adj. beginning with *mi*, *demi*, and *semi*, these three

diversement colorés reposent doucement la vue et montrent le paysage extérieur avec tous les effets du prisme.

"Je trouve dans l'antichambre une foule de laquais et d'estafiers formant la haie et s'inclinant respectueusement devant moi. Je pourrais leur faire fléchir le genou, comme le faisaient les vassaux devant leur suzerain, sous le régime féodal; mais on dirait que je suis arrogant et altier. Je ne veux pas m'attirer ce blâme, ni fournir un prétexte aux pamphlets, aux diatribes et aux méchants libelles des envieux, toujours prêts à gloser.

"A propos! De quelle couleur sera ma livrée? L'écarlate me plairait assez, ou le pourpre. C'est une chose à résoudre. Mais nous verrons cela plus tard.

"J'arrive à la salle à manger, où m'attend un ambigu magnifique. La décoration de ce vaste réfectoire est dans le style indien. Les siéges sont en bambou. Le buffet est chargé de tout ce qui peut flatter la vue et l'odorat. La table, couverte de

variously colored glass-windows gently relieve the eyes and show the landscape on the outside with the play of colors of the prism.

"I find in the antechamber a crowd of lackeys and footmen ranged in a line and bowing respectfully before me. I might make them bend the knee as vassals did before their liege lord, in the times of feudalism; but people would say that I am arrogant and haughty. I will not draw this blame upon myself, or afford a pretext for the pamphlets, invectives, and malicious lampoons of the envious, always ready to carp.

"Now I think of it! Of what color shall my livery be? Scarlet would please me well enough, or purple. I must positively make up my mind as to that, but it will be time to think about it later.

"I come to the dining-room, in which a magnificent collation is prepared for me. The decoration of this vast refectory is in the Indian style. The seats are of bamboo-cane. The sideboard is loaded with every thing that can gratify the visual and olfactory senses.

---

words, signifying *half*, remain invariable.—*Paysage*, fr. *pays*, country, is masc. (215). —*Prisme* is masc. (545).

Laquais does not vary in the pl. (17).—*Haie*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Respectueusement*, adv., fr. *respectueux*, respectful (31, 32).—*Genou*, pl. *genoux* (785).—*Vassaux*, pl. of *vassal* (379).—*Régime* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Blâme* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Prétexte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Libelle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Envieux*, pl. of *envieux* (158).

Pourpre, a color, and a disease (purples), is masc. by exc. (15); but *pourpre*, dye, or regal robes, is fem.

Ambigu, subst., an entertainment consisting of a medley of dishes.—*Réfectoire* is masc. (590).—*Style* is masc. (502).—*Odorat*, smell, fr *odeur*, odor In *odeur*, the *o* has

mets exquis et de boissons délicieuses, provoque la faim et la soif.

"Quel contraste pour moi qui me suis si longtemps nourri de pain bis, de lait caillé, et de gousses d'ail.

"Je me mets à table; mais les bienséances veulent que j'use de ces excellentes choses avec sobriété. Je ne suis pas un despote, mais je tiens à ce que mes gens aient pour moi de la vénération. Et puis, je suis esclave du qu'en dira-t-on; pour rien au monde je ne voudrais que cette troupe de valets me regardât comme un ivrogne ou un gourmand. Ce serait me couvrir d'opprobre."

48. "Je bois donc si peu que mon échanson en a l'air tout mortifié, et je me garde bien de manger jusqu'à satiété; sauf à me dédommager de mon jeûne plus tard, sans témoins ni importuns.

The table, covered with exquisite viands and delicious beverages, provokes hunger and thirst.

"What a contrast for me, who have so long fed upon brown bread, clotted milk, and cloves of garlic!

"I sit down to table; but decorum requires that I should partake of these excellent things with sobriety. I am not a despot, but I expect that my attendants should have veneration for me. Besides, I am a slave to gentility; I would not for worlds be looked upon as a drunkard or a glutton by that troop of valets. It would be covering myself with shame."

48. "I therefore drink so little that my cup-bearer looks quite mortified at it, and I forbear eating to satiety; reserving to indemnify myself for my fast later, without any witnesses or intruders.

---

its long grave sound; but in *odorat*, it is short and acute.—*Mets* does not vary in the pl. (17).—*Exquis* does not vary in the plur.—*Boisson* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Soif* is fem. by exc. (14).

Contraste is masc. by exc. (15). **669.** *Pour moi* QUI *me* SUIS *si longtemps nourri.* In French as well as in English, the relative pronoun takes the gender, number, and person of its antecedent.—*Ail*, pl. *aulx*, nearly obsolete, and *ails*.

Mets, form of the v. irr. *mettre*. See Index.—*Sobriété*, fr. *sobre*, sober, frugal, is fem. (241).—*Vénération* is fem. (99).—*Esclave* is of both genders.—*Le qu'en dira-t-on*, lit. the what will one say of it, an idiomatic locution for, the opinion of others. —*Que cette* TROUPE *de valets me* REGARDÂT. **670.** When a general collective noun is followed by *de* and a substantive, the verb, adjective, pronoun, and participle agree with the collective noun.—*Monde* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Ivrogne*, fr. *ivre*, drunk. **671.** It would be covering myself with shame, *Ce serait me* COUVRIR *d'opprobre.* When the present participle, in English, is either the subject or the regimen of a verb, it is rendered by the infinitive in French.—*Opprobre* is masc. by exc. (15).

Je bois, form of the v. irr. *boire*. See Index.—*Satiété* is fem. (241).—*Dédommager*, fr. *dommage*, damage.—*Jeûne* is masc. by exc. (15).

"Mon repas fini, je me remets en marche, et j'entre dans le salon, où se déploie une splendeur qui frappe et éblouit les yeux, et qui ne peut être égalée que par l'ouvrage surnaturel des génies, dont on peut lire la description dans les contes de fées. J'arrive ensuite à la chambre à coucher, dont l'ameublement est moins somptueux, mais non moins riche. Le lit est de bois étranger; les matelas sont de la laine la plus douce; le traversin et l'oreiller forment un riche monceau de duvet; les draps sont en batiste, et les couvertures sont aussi blanches que les agneaux qui portèrent la toison dont elles sont faites. Le parquet est couvert d'un tapis si épais que le pas le plus lourd ne pourrait être entendu.

"Mon cabinet de travail renferme une grande bibliothèque, les volumes sont reliés en basane, en veau, ou en maroquin, selon leur importance. Les plus précieux sont dorés sur tranche. Les in-folio occupent le bas de la bibliothèque, ensuite viennent les in-quarto, puis les in-octavo, et ainsi de suite. Mais je lirai rarement excepté les ouvrages de Béranger et de Dumas.

"My meal being over, I resume my walk, and enter the drawing-room, which displays a splendor that smites and dazzles the eye, and can only be matched by the supernatural performance of the genii, to be read of in fairy tales. I come next to the sleeping-chamber, the furniture of which is less showy, but not less rich. The bedstead is of foreign wood; the mattresses are of the softest wool; the bolster and pillow richly heaped with down; the sheets of cambric, and the blankets as white as the lambs which bore the fleece that made them. The floor is covered with so thick a carpet that the heaviest tread cannot be heard.

"My study contains an extensive library of books, the volumes are bound in sheep, calf, or morocco leather, according to their importance. The most valuable are gilt-edged. The folios occupy the lower shelves of the book-cases, next come the quartos, then the octavos, and so forth. But I shall seldom read, save Beranger's and Dumas's works.

Remets, form of the v. irr. *remettre*, fr. *mettre*. See Index.—*Splendeur* is fem. (95).—*Yeux* is the pl. irr. of *œil*.—*Peut*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir*. See Index.—*Ouvrage* is masc. (215).—*Description* is fem. (99).—*Conte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Douce* is the fem. irr. of the adj. *doux*.—*Toison* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Faites*, fem. pl. of *fait*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *faire*. See Index.—*Couvert*, pa. part. of the v. irr. *couvrir*. See Index.

Volume is masc. by exc. (15). **672.** § 1. *Les in-folio.* Substantives borrowed from foreign languages, and consisting of two or more words joined by a hyphen, are invariable. § 2. By analogy, *in-douze*, *in-seize*, etc., are invariable also.—*Lirai*, form of the v. irr. *lire*. See Index. **673.** Excepté *les ouvrages.* The past participles *attendu*, *excepté*, *passé*, *supposé*, and *vu*, are sometimes employed as prepositions, and, as such,

"Sur mon bureau est une élégante écritoire, avec des plumes, de l'encre, un poinçon, un grattoir, un cachet, de la cire, des pains à cacheter, des enveloppes et plusieurs rames de papier. Tout cela ne me servira pas souvent, à moi, qui pour la moindre épître, suis obligé de faire deux ou trois brouillons, de biffer et de recopier. Je crois que j'aimerais mieux aller bêcher la terre, ou scier du bois que d'étudier ou de me livrer, comme on dit, au culte des muses. Je n'ai jamais pu me rappeler le grimoire qu'on nous enseignait au collége. Les maîtres ne faisaient que me gronder et me tancer."

"On my desk is an elegant inkstand, with pens, ink, a pricker, a scratching-knife, a seal, some wax, some wafers, envelopes, and several reams of paper. All these I shall seldom use, as, for the most trifling epistle, I am obliged to make two or three rough copies, to blot out, and copy over again. I believe I should like better to go and dig the ground, or saw wood, than study or devote myself, as some people say, to the worship of the muses. I never could remember the learned trash which we were taught at college. The masters did nothing but chide and rebuke me."

49. "Toutes les autres parties de ma demeure, depuis les fondations jusqu'à la girouette qui dominera le faîte, seront sur le même pied d'élégance. Cette girouette, pendant que j'y pense, représentera un faisceau de javelots ou de flèches empennées. J'en ferai oindre la tige et la douille tous les huit jours, pour qu'elle pivote librement et qu'elle ne s'encrasse pas.

49. "All the other parts of my mansion, from the foundations to the weathercock that will crown the summit, will be on the same footing of elegance. This weathercock, while I think of it, shall represent a sheaf of javelins, or of feathered arrows. I shall have its rod and socket greased every week, that it may freely turn on its pivot without ever getting dirty.

---

their meaning is as follows: *attendu*, in consideration of; *excepté*, except, save; *passé*, after; *supposé*, in the supposition of; *vu*, seeing. With this signification, they precede the substantive which they govern and are invariable.

Ecritoire is fem. (590).—*Grattoir*, fr. *gratter*, to scratch.—*Epître* is fem. (342). *Recopier*, fr. *copier*, to copy.—*Bêcher*, fr. *bêche*, spade. **674.** *J'aimerais mieux bêcher la terre que d'étudier.* When *mieux* is followed by two infinitives, *de* is placed before the second, even though the first be not preceded by this prep.—*Culte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Grimoire*, lit. conjuring book, is masc. by exc. (15).—*Collége* is masc. by exc. (15).

Fondation is fem. (99).—*Faîte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Empenné*, fr. *penne*, feather.—*Oindre*, v. irr. See Index. Seldom used.—*Pivoter*, fr. *pivot*, pivot, hinge.—*Encrasser*, fr. *crasse*, filth, rust, squalidness.

"L'écurie ainsi que le haras obtiendra à juste titre les suffrages des connaisseurs. Il y aura de superbes étalons des races les plus estimées; des chevaux hongres, des juments, des poulains et des pouliches.

"Il y aura des chevaux noirs, gris, alezans, bais, rouans et pommelés. J'aurai aussi un zèbre, pour la rareté du fait. Il y aura de jolis bidets, et des mulets pour les fourgons de voyage.

"Les loges seront garnies de paille fraîche; les râteliers, les mangeoires et les auges seront amplement pourvus de toute sorte de fourrage, particulièrement de foin sec, ainsi que d'avoine soigneusement passée au crible et vannée, et d'orge mondé.

"La remise sera assez spacieuse pour contenir une berline, un landau, un coupé, un cabriolet et tous les autres véhicules légers, qui ont remplacé les lourds coches et les pataches de nos pères.

"Les cuisines charmeront l'œil par la propreté de leurs fourneaux et l'éclat de leurs batteries. Tous

"The stables and the stud will deservedly obtain the encomium of connoisseurs. There will be beautiful stallions of the most esteemed breeds; geldings, mares, colts, and fillies.

"There will be black, gray, chestnut, bay, roan, and dapple horses. I shall also have a zebra, for the sake of its rarity. There will be handsome nags, and mules for the travelling carriages.

"The stalls will be supplied with fresh straw; the racks and mangers and the troughs will be amply provided with every sort of fodder, particularly with dry hay, and also with oats carefully sifted and winnowed, and hulled barley.

"The coach-house will be roomy enough to contain a berlin, a landau, a chariot, a cabriolet, and all the other light vehicles which have superseded the heavy coaches and conveyances without springs of our fathers.

"The kitchens will delight the eye with the neatness of their stoves and the brilliancy of their

---

L'écurie AINSI QUE *le haras obtiendra.* **675.** When two substantives are connected by *de même que*, in the same manner as, *aussi bien que*, as well as; *comme*, as; *non plus que*, nor; *plutôt que*, rather than; *avec*, with; *ainsi que*, as, along with; the verb agrees with the first substantive only.—*Titre*, title, is masc. (341).—*A juste titre*, lit. at just title.—*Suffrage* is masc. (215).—*Hongre.* The *h* is aspirate.—*Jument* is fem. (8).

Zèbre is masc. by exc. (15).—*Rareté* is fem. (241).—*Mulet* is masc. The fem. is *mule.*

Mangeoire, fr. *manger*, to eat.—*Pourvu*, form of the v. irr. *pourvoir.* See Index.—*Fourrage* is masc. (215).—*Crible* is masc. by exc. (15.)—*Vanner*, fr. *van*, fan.—*Orge* is masc. by exc. (15), only in *orge mondé* and *orge perlé*, pearl-barley.

Véhicule is masc. by exc. (15).—*Coche*, coach, and tow-barge, is masc. by exc. (15); but *coche*, notch, is fem., and *coche*, sow, is also fem. (8).

Fourneaux, pl. of *fourneau* (232).—*Batterie*, battery. *Batterie de cuisine*, kitchen

les ustensiles, tels que casseroles, poêlons, rôtissoires, fours de campagne, bouilloires, réchauds, écumoires et chaudrons, y seront étagés en rangs luisants et polis. Les tables et les billots seront en hêtre ou en orme. Les pièces de viande crue, les quartiers de venaison, les poulardes dodues et truffées seront suspendus à des crocs, en attendant le moment de leur transformation."

utensils, all of which, such as saucepans, pipkins, roasting-screens, Dutch ovens, kettles, chafing-dishes, skimmers, and boilers, will be disposed in shining and polished rows. The tables and chopping-blocks will be made of beech or elm. The joints of raw meat, haunches of venison, and plump pullets stuffed with truffles will be hung on hooks, until the time of their transformation."

50. "Les marmitons seront constamment en activité : râpant du sucre, saupoudrant les crèmes, le flan ou la pâtisserie, pelant ou ratissant les légumes, écurant les bassines, rinçant, pilant, égrugeant, pendant que le chef, avec sa grosse bedaine ornée d'un coutelas dans sa gaîne, présidera et donnera ses ordres.

"L'office regorgera de comestibles frais et de conserves en tous genres. De plus, elle sera garnie de petites friandises, comme des croquignoles, des gimblettes, des oublies et des ramequins.

50. "The cook-lads will be in continual activity : rasping sugar, sugaring the tops of creams, custards, or pastry, peeling or scraping vegetables, scouring the pans, rinsing, pounding, while the head-cook, with his big paunch adorned with a large knife in its sheath, will preside and give his orders.

"The pantry will be replete with fresh eatables and preserves of all kinds. It will moreover be stored with little dainties, like cracknels, spice-nuts, wafers, and ramekins.

---

utensils.—*Rôtissoire*, fr. *rôtir*, to roast. The *o* has its short sound, notwithstanding the accent.—*Bouilloire*, fr. *bouillir*, to boil.—*Ecumoire*, fr. *écumer*, to skim or scum, R. *écume*, scum, foam, froth.—*Etager*, to dispose in successive rows, fr. *étage*, floor, story. —*Luisant*, verbal adj., fr. the v. irr. *luire*, to shine. See Index.—*Hêtre* is masc. (301). The *h* is aspirate.—*Orme* is masc. (301).—*Venaison* is fem. (79).—*Truffé*, fr. *truffe*, truffle.—*Croc*. The final *c* is not sounded.—*Transformation* is fem. (99).

Marmiton, lit. scullion, is a contemptuous epithet bestowed on under-cooks.—*Râper*, fr. *râpe*, rasp.—*Saupoudrer*, fr. *poudre*, powder.—*Pâtisserie*, fr. *pâte*, paste.—*Piler* and *égruger* are both translated by to pound. *Piler* is the general expression ; *égruger* is to pound in a wooden mortar only. It is particularly said in speaking of salt.—*Bedaine* is familiar.

Office, in the sense of pantry, is fem. ; otherwise it is masc. (20) —*Regorger*, fr. *gorge*, throat.—*Comestible*, being an adj. used substantively, is masc. (405).—*Frais*, fem. *fraîche*.

"Les celliers seront parfaitement secs et bien aérés. Le sol en sera salpétré, car on dit que le nitre mêlé à la terre la rend imperméable à l'humidité. On n'y verra ni un cloporte ni une araignée. Plus de cinquante tonneaux et autant de casiers, garnis de bouteilles de tous les vins fins, rouges, blancs, mousseux, liquoreux ou secs, seront placés sous la surveillance de mon sommelier, que je punirai sévèrement si jamais il arrive sur ma table un seul flacon qui sente le fût, le bouchon ou la lie.

"J'aurai quelques feuillettes d'excellent cidre de Normandie, et de la bière importée d'Angleterre, si toutefois cela peut se faire sans entraves, car je ne connais pas les règlements de la douane, ni ceux de l'octroi. On dit que la bonne qualité de la bière anglaise tient au mode de préparation de la drèche; je n'en sais rien.

"Il y aura des compartiments

"The cellars will be perfectly dry and well ventilated. The ground will be impregnated with saltpetre, for it is said that nitre mingled with earth makes it impervious to dampness. There will be seen neither a wood-louse nor a spider. More than fifty casks and as many bins, stocked with bottles of all sorts of fine wines, red, white, sparkling, sweet, or natural, will be placed under the superintendence of my butler, whom I shall severely punish if ever a single flagon tasting of the cask, or of cork or dregs, is brought upon my table.

"I shall have some casks of excellent cider of Normandy, and some beer imported from England, if however it can be done without impediment, for I do not know the regulations of the customs, nor those of the excise. It is said that the excellence of English beer is owing to the mode of preparation of the malt; I don't know.

"There will be divisions for

Aérer, fr. *air*, air.—*Nitre* is masc. (341).—*Humidité*, fr. *humide*, damp, wet, is fem. (241). The *h* is mute.—*Cloporte* is masc. by exc. (15). **676.** *Plus* DE *cinquante tonneaux*. The word *than* is rendered by *de* instead of *que* after *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, when these adverbs are followed by a numeral adjective or a substantive.—*Tonneaux*, pl. of *tonneau* (232).—*Casier*, fr. *case*, compartment, division.—*Mousseux*, fr. *mousse*, foam, froth, does not vary in the pl. (158).—*Liquoreux*, fr. *liqueur*, liquor, does not vary in the pl. (158).—*Surveillance*, fr. *surveiller*, to superintend, to overlook, R. *veille*, watching. **677.** UN SEUL *flacon qui* SENTE. The subjunctive mood is generally employed after a relative pronoun, preceded by *le seul*, *un seul*, *le plus*, *le moins*, *le mieux*, *le meilleur*, *le pire*, *le moindre*, and *peu*.—*Bouchon*, cork, or stopper, fr. *boucher*, to stop.

Feuillette, a cask holding about 35 gallons.—*Cidre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Règlement*, fr. *régler*, to regulate, to settle.—*Douane*, customs, custom-duty, custom-house.—*Octroi*, lit. town-due.—*Mode*, mode, mood, is masc. by exc. (15); but *mode*, fashion, is fem.

pour l'eau-de-vie, le genièvre, le rhum, le kirsch, l'absinthe et toutes les variétés de liquide fermenté qu'on appelle vulgairement rogomme. Il y en aura d'autres pour les liqueurs, comme l'anisette, le curaçao, le noyau, le sirop de punch et le marasquin."

brandy, gin, rum, kirsch-wasser, bitters, and all the varieties of fermented liquors that are commonly called spirits. There will be others for cordials, like aniseed, curaçao, noyau, syrup of punch, and maraschino."

51. "Mon verger réunira tous les arbres fruitiers qui peuvent croître en pleine terre, sous notre zone tempérée. La greffe y multipliera les fruits les plus exquis.

"J'aurai soin que le potager fournisse en abondance des laitues, des chicorées, des choux-fleurs, des concombres, des carottes, des navets, des champignons, du cerfeuil et du persil. Des bâches bien entretenues permettront d'avoir de tout cela en toute saison. Il est certaines plantes dont je ne tolérerai pas la présence, comme les poireaux et

51. "My orchard will contain all the fruit-trees that can grow in the open ground, under our temperate zone. Grafting will multiply the most exquisite fruits there.

"I shall take care that the kitchen-garden produce a plentiful store of lettuces, succories, cauliflowers, cucumbers, carrots, turnips, mushrooms, chervil, and parsley. Hot-bed frames in good condition will render it possible to have some of all these in any season. There are certain plants which I will not suffer to grow there, such as leeks and fennel,

---

Genièvre is masc. by exc. (15).—*Rhum.* Pronounce *rom.*—*Absinthe*, wormwood.—*Variété* is fem. (241).—*Liquide*, when used substantively, is masc. (405).—*Rogomme* is low.—*Liqueur* is fem. (95).—*Punch* is pronounced as if spelled (in French) *ponche.*

Arbre is masc. by exc. (15).—*Peuvent*, form of the v. irr. *pouvoir.* See Index.—*Greffe*, grafting, is fem. and regular; but *greffe*, record-office, is masc. by exc. (15).

Potager, fr. *potage*, soup, R. *pot*, pot.—*Choux-fleurs*, pl. of the compound word *chou-fleur*, lit. cabbage-flower. **678.** When a compound is formed of two substantives joined by a hyphen, each of the component parts takes the mark of the plural when the sense requires it. This is but a natural consequence of rule 651, which gives rise besides to several others, as: **679.** If a compound word is formed of a substantive and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural. Ex. *Une basse-cour*, a poultry-yard, lit. a low-yard; pl. *des basses-cours*, poultry-yards. **680.** When a compound is formed of two adjectives, both agree in gender and number with the word to which they refer, be it expressed or understood. Ex. *Un sourd-muet*, a deaf-mute; *des sourds-muets*, deaf-mutes; etc. For the exceptions to these rules see 668, 672, 691, 692, 698, and *Feu* in Index.—*Concombre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Persil.* The final *l* is quiescent. **681.** *Il est certaines plantes*, or *il y a certaines plantes. Il est* is sometimes used with the impersonal signification of *Il y a* (218), but denotes a more general statement, and besides it is less familiar.—*Poireaux*, pl. of *poireau* (232).—

le fenouil, qui me répugnent, et la morelle et la ciguë, qui sont vénéneuses.

"Il y aura des serres où les arbustes délicats fleuriront à l'abri du givre et de la gelée. Des serins, des chardonnerets, des tarins, et quantité d'autres chantres ailés, s'y trouveront bien mieux que dans une volière. J'irai quelquefois leur distribuer le millet, le chènevis et la navette; et ils me remercieront par leur gazouillement mélodieux. Les espèces qui vivent d'insectes n'y manqueront pas de vermisseaux. Quand on ouvrira les châssis, de légers réseaux de soie verte empêcheront mes captifs de s'envoler.

"Par une belle matinée du mois de mai, je viendrai m'y soustraire au tumulte du monde, et m'égarer dans le labyrinthe des allées sinueuses, bordées de muguet, de mauve, de marjolaine, de pervenche et de valériane. Je me reposerai et me rafraîchirai

which I can't abide, and night-shade and hemlock, which are venomous.

"There will be green-houses in which delicate shrubs will bloom sheltered from the rime and frost. Canary-birds, goldfinches, tarins, and many more winged songsters, will find themselves far better there than in an aviary. I shall sometimes go and distribute to them millet, hemp-seed, and rape-seed; for which they will thank me with their melodious warbling. Those species that live on insects will not lack small worms there. When the sashes are opened, a light network of green silk will prevent my captives from flying away.

"On a fine May morning, I shall go thither to shun the tumult of the world, and wander through the maze of the winding-walks, bordered with lilies of the valley, mallows, sweet marjoram, periwinkle, and valerian. I shall rest and refresh myself sometimes

---

Ciguë. Pronounce the *u* (538).—*Vénéneuse*, fem. of *vénéneux* (142), venomous, in speaking of plants; but venomous, in speaking of animals, is rendered by *venimeux*.

Arbuste is masc. (301).—*Fleurir*, fr. *fleur*, flower, bloom.—*Givre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Gelée*, fr. *geler*, to freeze.—*Chardonneret*, fr. *chardon*, thistle, because it frequents places in which thistles grow.—*Chantre*, fr. *chanter*, to sing, is masc. (341).—*Ailé*, fr. *aile*, wing.—*Volière*, fr. *voler*, to fly.—*Navette*, fr. *navet*, turnip.—*Remercier*, fr. *merci*, thanks.—*Gazouillement*, subst., fr. *gazouiller*, to warble, to twitter.—*Vermisseaux*, pl. of *vermisseau* (232), diminutive of *ver*, worm.—*Châssis*, frame or sash, does not vary in the pl. (17).—*Réseaux*, pl. of *réseau* (232).—*S'envoler*, fr. *voler*, to fly.

Matinée, fr. *matin*, morning (329).—*Soustraire*, v. irr., conjugated like *traire*. See Index.—*Tumulte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Labyrinthe* is masc. by exc. (15). The *th* is sounded like *t*.—*Sinueuse*, fem. of *sinueux* (142). **682**. *Je* ME *reposerai et* ME *rafraîchirai*. The personal pronoun, when a regimen, must be repeated before each verb in its simple tenses; and even in its compound tenses unless the auxiliary be suppressed.

tantôt dans un kiosque, au fond d'un bosquet, tantôt dans une grotte taillée dans un rocher dur comme le basalte, tantôt sur un tertre à l'ombre d'un berceau dont le treillage disparaîtra sous les lianes, le lierre et la clématite. Là je humerai le souffle du zéphire qui, doucement tamisé par le feuillage, m'apportera les parfums de l'œillet, de l'iris, de la giroflée, du jasmin, du réséda, de la verveine odorante et de l'héliotrope violet.

"Je m'y laisserai bercer par la mélodie du rossignol, de la fauvette, du rouge-gorge, du merle et de toute la gent emplumée; car ce qui me plait le plus, c'est le chant des oiseaux."

52. "D'autres fois, couvert d'un feutre à larges bords, pour me garantir du hâle, vêtu d'une

in a kiosk, at the end of a grove, sometimes in a grotto hewn out of a rock as hard as basalt, sometimes on a knoll, in the shade of a bower the lattice of which will be concealed under the bindweed, the ivy, and the clematis. There I shall inhale the breath of the zephyr, gently intercepted by the leaves, and wafting the perfumes of the pink, the iris, the gillyflower, the jessamine, the mignonette, the fragrant vervain, and the violet heliotropium.

"There I shall be lulled by the notes of the nightingale, the warbler, the redbreast, the blackbird, and all the feathered tribe; for what pleases me above all, is the song of the birds."

52. "At other times, wearing a broad-brimmed beaver, to screen me from the scorching sun, clad

---

—*Kiosque*, a Turkish summer-house, is masc. by exc. (15).—*Basalte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Tertre* is masc. (341).—*Berceau*, bower, and also cradle, fr. *bercer*, to rock.—*Treillage* is masc. (215).—*Lierre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Humer*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Souffle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Zéphire*, the western breeze, is masc. by exc. (15). With a different spelling, *zéphyr* signifies more generally any mild wind or zephyr.—*Feuillage* is masc. (215).—*Iris*. The final *s* is pronounced.—*Héliotrope* is masc. by exc. (15). The *h* is mute.

Bercer, to rock, and to lull.—*Rouge-gorge* is masc. by exc. (15). The pl. is *rouges-gorges* (679).—*Merle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Gent*, race, tribe, nation, is fem. by exc. (14). It is seldom used, except in jest or in familiar poetry. For the plural *gens*, see 532. *Emplumé*, fr. *plume*.—*Plait*, form of the v. irr. *plaire*. See Index. **683.** *Ce qui me plait le plus, c'est le chant.* When CE before a relative pronoun, as *qui*, *que*, *dont*, etc., begins a phrase, and is followed by the v. *être* with another verb, it must be repeated before *être*. This pronoun offers in addition the following peculiarities: **684.** The pron. *ce* must always be placed before the v. *être*, when this v. is preceded and followed by an infinitive. Ex. *Me* DEMANDER *un service, c'est me* FAIRE *plaisir*, to ask a service of me, is to do me a pleasure. **685.** When two or more infinitives are the subjects of the verb *être*, followed by a substantive, they are generally summed up by the pronoun *ce*, with which the verb *être* agrees. Ex. DONNER *des renseignements et* RENDRE *service, c'est mon plus grand plaisir*, to communicate information or to render a service, is my greatest pleasure.

Couvert, pa. part. of the v. irr. *couvrir*. See Index.—*Feutre*, felt, is masc. (311).—*Hâle*

casaque de basin et armé d'un gourdin, j'irai voir les travaux de mes fermiers. J'aurai l'air d'un colon en tournée.

"J'encouragerai par ma présence la laitière, trayant ses vaches dans l'étable, ou faisant ses fromages dans la laiterie.

"De là j'irai voir le berger, faisant paître son troupeau ou tondant ses brebis. Nous causerons ensemble de sa houlette neuve, de son bélier favori et des bergeronnettes familières qui suivent les pas vagabonds du bouc, de la bique et du cabri. Ce sera tout à fait pastoral. Le faucheur viendra prendre part à notre conversation, tout en aiguisant sa faux.

"Je les quitterai pour aller suivre les opérations du laboureur, tenant le manche de la charrue, traînée par des bœufs gras et vigoureux; ou semant le seigle, l'épeautre, le froment, le sarrasin et le maïs, ou récoltant la jaune

in a dimity jacket and armed with a cudgel, I shall go and see the labors of my farmers. I shall look like a planter making his rounds.

"I shall cheer by my presence the dairy-maid, milking her cows in the cowhouse, or making her cheeses in the dairy.

"From thence I shall go and see the shepherd, feeding his flock or shearing his ewes. We shall talk together about his new crook, his favorite ram, and the tame wagtails that follow the wandering steps of the he-goat, the she-goat, and the kid. It will be quite pastoral. The mower will come and join in our conversation, while he sharpens his scythe.

"I shall leave them to go and observe the operations of the husbandman, holding the stilts of the plough, drawn by fat and lusty oxen; or sowing rye, spelt, wheat, buckwheat, and maize, or reaping the yellow harvest, collecting the

---

is masc. by exc. (15). The *h* is aspirate.—*Fermier*, fr. *ferme*, farm (159).—*Colon*, radical of *colonie*, colony.

686. *J'encouragerai par ma présence la laitière, trayant ses vaches dans l'étable.* The indirect regimen must be placed first, when the direct reg. is a subst., followed by some words that cannot be separated from it; and, in general, when the sense requires it, to avoid ambiguity or obscurity. See also 637.—*Fromage* is masc. (215).—*Laiterie*, fr. *lait*, milk.

Paître, to graze, v. irr. See Index.—*Troupeau*, fr. *troupe*, troop.—*Brebis* is fem. (8). It does not vary in the pl. (17).—*Houlette*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Neuve*, fem. of *neuf* (251).—*Bergeronnette*, fr. *berger*, shepherd. So named from its being fond of haunting the places where shepherds tend their flocks.—*Faucheur*, fr. *faucher*, to mow, R. *faux*, scythe.—*Conversation* is fem. (99).—*Aiguiser*, to whet, to sharpen, fr. *aigu*, acute. The vowels *ui* form a diphthong in this word.—*Faux*, formerly spelled *faulx*, is fem. by exc. (14).

Laboureur, fr. *labourer*, to till, to plough.—*Manche*, handle, is masc. by exc. (15); but *manche*, sleeve, is fem.—*Bœuf*, ox and beef. The *f* is quiescent in the pl. In the sing. it is quiescent only in *Le bœuf gras*, the fat ox.—*Seigle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Epeautre* is masc. (341).—*Maïs*. The final *s* is pronounced. The diæresis shows that the word forms two syllables.—*Récolter*, fr. *récolte*, crop, harvest.—

moisson, ramassant les javelles et liant les gerbes.

"J'irai aussi voir les robustes garçons de ferme, au moment où, réunis dans l'aire de la grange, ils feront tomber en cadence leurs fléaux sur le blé; et je veux que tous les meuniers des alentours me fassent compliment sur la beauté de mes céréales.

"Je ne me bornerai pas à présider aux travaux de ces braves gens: j'assisterai sans morgue à leurs délassements. Je les exciterai à jouer à colin-maillard et à la main chaude; je leur apprendrai à danser une gigue ou un rigodon, et je paierai les ménétriers.

"Quelquefois aussi, je monterai mon coursier favori, un cheval pur sang, fringant, hennissant et rongeant son frein, mais docile et parfaitement dressé. Ses fers, son mors et sa gourmette seront d'argent massif, ainsi que les étriers. La selle, la bride et le bridon sortiront des magasins du premier sellier de la capitale. Mes éperons seront dorés, et la tête de ma cravache sera garnie de pierreries."

53. "Ainsi monté, je parcourrai mon parc, quelquefois au trot,

swath, and binding the sheaves.

"I shall also go and see the stout farm-laborers, at the time when, assembled on the barn-floor, they make their flails fall on the corn in keeping time; and I expect that all the millers in the neighborhood will pay me compliments on the beauty of my crops.

"I will not confine myself to presiding over the labors of these good people: I shall assist at their recreations without haughtiness. I shall excite them to play at blindman's buff and hot cockles; I shall instruct them how to dance a jig or a rigadoon, and I shall pay the fiddlers.

"Sometimes also, I shall mount my favorite steed, a thorough-bred horse, frisky, neighing, and champing his bit, but docile and perfectly well-trained. His shoes, bit, and curb-chain will be of massive silver, as well as the stirrups. The saddle, bridle, and snaffle will come from the workshops of the first saddler in the metropolis. My spurs will be gilt, and the head of my horse-whip will be adorned with precious stones."

53. "Thus mounted, I shall ride across my park, sometimes

Moisson is fem. by exc. (14).—*Javelle*, the quantity of corn cut at one stroke of the sickle.

Fléaux, pl. of *fléau* (232), flail, scourge, and beam (of a balance).——*Céréales*, corn-crops, fr. *Ceres*.

Délassement, fr. *délasser* (153), to unweary, to refresh, R. *las*, weary, tired.

Coursier, fr. *course*, race, R. *courir*, to run.—*Pur sang*, lit. pure blood.—*Hennir*, to neigh. The *h* is aspirate.—*Fer*, iron and horse-shoe.—*Mors*, fr. *mordre*, to bite. The *s* is quiescent.—*Sellier*, fr. *selle*, saddle.

Parcourrai, form of the v. irr. *parcourir*, fr. *courir*. See Index.—Pronounce *rr*

mais plus souvent à l'amble, qui est plus doux. Au sein de cette retraite vivront dans une paix profonde le chevreuil, le daim, la biche, le faon, toutes les bêtes fauves, agiles et timides qui peuplent les bois.

"Un ravin impraticable et de hautes murailles me préserveront des larcins des braconniers et des maraudeurs. De plus, j'aurai des gardes-chasse qui happeront les délinquants, s'il s'en trouve; car je ne veux pas être lésé.

"Quand la chaleur sera passée, après avoir graduellement augmenté, puis diminué, dans une longue journée du mois de juin, j'irai respirer l'air du soir dans les prairies nouvellement fauchées et jonchées de trèfle, de sainfoin et de luzerne. Jamais on n'y trouvera un seul brin de colchique, car c'est un toxique dangereux qu'on n'y laissera pas germer.

"Puis encore, quand il fera

trotting, but more frequently ambling, which is easier. In the midst of this retreat will live in undisturbed peace the roebuck, the deer, the hind, the fawn, all the nimble and timid fallow animals that people the woods.

"An impassable ravine and lofty walls will defend me from the pilfering of poachers and marauders. Besides, I shall have some game-keepers who will catch the offenders, if there be any; for I will not be wronged.

"When the heat is over, after having gradually increased and then decreased, on a long day of the month of June, I shall go and breathe the evening air in the new-mown meadows, strewn with clover, sainfoin, and lucern grass. Never will a single blade of colchicum be found there, for it is a dangerous poison which shall not be allowed to spring up.

"Again, when the weather is

---

as double.—*Amble* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Paix* is fem. by exc. (14).—*Chevreuil* rhymes with *œil*.—*Daim* is pronounced as if spelled (in French) *din*.—*Faon* is pronounced as if spelled (in French) *fan*.—*Peupler*, to people fr. *peuple*, people (303).

Impraticable, fr. *praticable*, practicable, passable, R. *pratique*, practice.—*Gardes-chasse*, pl. of the compound subst. *garde-chasse*. Grammarians are not unanimous as to the plural form of this word: some give it as invariable; others add an *s* to each of the component parts. We adhere to the opinion of *Laveaux*, who considers *garde* not as a verb (*garder*, to keep), but as a substantive (guard or keeper); and *chasse* as a general expression, which ought to remain invariable, as *game* in English. The *Académie* gives no example of the pl.—*Happer*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Délinquant*, fr. *délit*, offence.

687. *Quand la chaleur* SERA *passée, après* AVOIR *graduellement* AUGMENTÉ, *puis* DIMINUÉ. Some neuter verbs take *être* as an auxiliary in their compound tenses, when they express a state, and *avoir* when they express an action.—*Nouvellement*, adv., fr. *nouveau*, fem. *nouvelle* (31, 32).—*Faucher*, to mow, fr. *faux*, scythe.—*Trèfle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Colchique* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Toxique* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Dangereux*, adj., fr. *danger*, danger.—*Germer*, v., fr. *germe*, germ, which is masc. by exc. (15).

chaud, je nagerai et je plongerai comme un vrai phoque, ou comme un hippopotame. On dit qu'on peut apprendre la natation sans aucun risque, avec du liége adapté à une sangle qui passe sous les aisselles.

"Le bain froid est salutaire; il est tonique et il raffermit les pores. C'était un des préceptes, un des axiomes de notre bon docteur, qui voulait surtout qu'on se mouillât bien la tête. Aussi mon père n'a jamais passé un été sans aller se plonger dans le fleuve une fois par semaine.

"J'aurai donc soin que mon château soit situé près d'une belle rivière, où j'aurai un embarcadère, avec une grande barque pavoisée, dont je serai le nocher les jours où j'aurai nombreuse compagnie à promener sur l'eau; mais pour mon usage particulier, je me servirai d'une nacelle légère, avec des pagaies au lieu d'avirons."

54. "Si, par hasard, je ne trouvais pas le site que je désire, je ferais venir des pionniers et des terrassiers, qui creuseraient dans mon parc un canal ou un petit

warm, I shall swim and dive like a seal or a river-horse. It is said that swimming may be learned without any risk, with some cork fastened to a strap which passes under the arm-pits.

"Bathing in cold water is a wholesome practice; it is tonic and braces the pores. It was one of the precepts and axioms of our good doctor, who especially recommended that the head should be completely wetted. And so my father never passed a summer without going to take a plunge in the river once a week.

"I shall therefore take care to have my mansion situated near a fine river, where I shall have a wharf, with a great barge adorned with flags, and I shall be the pilot on the days when I have a numerous company to take on the water; but for my own private use, I shall employ a light wherry, with paddles instead of oars."

54. "If I should not happen to find the site I desire, I should send for pioneers and diggers, who would dig a canal or a small lake through my park, fordable in

---

Phoque is masc. by exc. (15).—*Hippopotame* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Natation* is fem. (99).—*Liége* is masc. by exc. (15).

Raffermir, fr. *ferme*, firm.—*Pore* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Précepte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Axiome* is masc. by exc. (15). The *o* has its long grave sound. **688.** *Il n'a jamais passé un été.* When a verb usually neuter is employed with the active form, it takes *avoir* as an auxiliary in its compound tenses.

Embarcadère, landing, or terminus of a railway, is masc. by exc. (15)—*Nocher* is chiefly used in poetry.—*Nombreuse*, fem. of *nombreux* (141), fr. *nombre*, number.

Terrassier, fr. *terrasse*, terrace or earth-work, R. *terre*, earth. **689.** *Un canal ou*

lac, guéable en certains endroits, embelli par des îles, des présqu'îles, des ponts chinois, des pirogues et d'autres esquifs. Ce lac serait alimenté, soit par un puits artésien, soit par des étangs dont on lèverait la bonde de temps en temps, soit par des sources dont on détournerait le cours au moyen de batardeaux et d'écluses.

"De toute manière, je m'arrangerai pour avoir une belle nappe d'eau, où je puisse patiner quand il gèlera. Je me ferai donner les premiers principes de l'art par un Hollandais, qui me fournira en outre de bons patins avec des lanières ou des courroies bien solides. On dit que les Hollandais sont d'excellents patineurs. J'aurai aussi mon traîneau, auquel sera attelé un renne.

"Je ne veux me priver d'aucun des plaisirs de la campagne. Je me vois allant à la chasse, avec un joli fusil à deux coups, de petit calibre, bien juste et bien léger. Les canons en sont rubanés, la crosse est vernie, la batterie étincelante et la détente très-douce.

"Dans les poches de ma veste

certain places, embellished with islands, peninsulas, Chinese bridges, pirogues, and other skiffs. This lake would be supplied, either by an artesian-well, or by some ponds the sluices of which would be opened now and then, or by some springs diverted from their course by means of coffer-dams and locks.

"One way or another, I shall manage to have a fine sheet of water, to skate upon when it freezes. I shall be taught the first principles of the art by a Dutchman, who will supply me besides with good skates with solid thongs or straps. It is said that the Dutch are excellent skaters. I shall also have my sledge, drawn by a reindeer.

"I don't mean to deprive myself of any of the sports of the field. Behold me when I am going a shooting, with a handsome double-barrelled fowling-piece, of a small calibre, very accurate and very light. The barrels are twisted. The stock is varnished, the lock bright, and the trigger very soft.

"In the pockets of my shoot-

---

un petit lac GUÉABLE. An adjective which follows two or more substantives, connected by *ou*, agrees with the last only.—*Guéable*, fr. *gué*, ford.—*Presqu'île* is fem.—*Artésien*, fr. *Artois*, the province where this mode of boring for water was first practised.—*Détourner*, to turn away, fr. *tour*, turn.—*Batardeaux*, pl. of *batardeau* (232).

S'arranger, to manage, to make arrangements, fr. *arranger*, to arrange, *ranger*, to range, R. *rang*, rank, row.—*Principe* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Hollandais*, fr. *Hollande*, Holland. The *h* is aspirate in the radical and derivative.—*Traîneau*, fr. *traîner*, to drag.—*Atteler*, to yoke, put to (a carriage).—*Renne* is masc. by exc. (15).

Calibre is masc. by exc. (15).—*Etincelant*, fr. *étincelle*, spark.—*Détente*, fr. *tendre*, to stretch.

de chasse, j'ai ma poire à poudre bien pleine, mon petit plomb et une boîte de capsules. Je porte ma carnassière en bandoulière et je suis accompagné de mes chiens d'arrêt. Je passe ainsi ma journée et je rentre le soir, après avoir fait un massacre de perdrix, de cailles, d'alouettes et de bécasses.

"Ou bien encore, je prendrai avec moi une laisse de lévriers, que je lancerai à la poursuite du lièvre et du lapin. Ou, suivi de quelques piqueurs, j'irai courre le cerf et voir donner la curée. Mais je m'abstiendrai de poursuivre le sanglier, le marcassin, et en général toutes les bêtes farouches et velues, qui rugissent, qui hurlent, et assouvissent quelquefois leur fureur sur le chasseur malencontreux. Je trouve que c'est un passe-temps bien scabreux que d'aller chercher les animaux féroces jusque dans leur repaire ou leur tanière."

ing-jacket, I have my powder-flask well filled, my shot, and a box of caps. I carry my game-bag slung over my shoulder, and I am accompanied by my pointers. I spend the day thus, and return home in the evening, after making a slaughter of partridges, quails, larks, and woodcocks.

"Or again, I shall take a leash of greyhounds, that I shall start in pursuit of the hare and the rabbit. Or, followed by a few huntsmen, I shall hunt the stag and see the quarry given to the hounds. But I shall abstain from pursuing the wild-boar, old or young, and in general all the shaggy wild beasts, that roar, and howl, and sometimes glut their rage on the luckless hunter. I think it a very precarious pastime to go and seek fierce animals in their very lairs or their dens."

55. "Faisant trêve aux plaisirs bruyants de la chasse, dont on revient haletant et moulu de fa-

55. "Leaving the noisy pleasures of the chase, from which one returns panting and tired to

---

Carnassière, fr. *chair*, flesh.—*Arrêt*, fr. *arrêter*, to stop.—*Massacre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Perdrix* is fem. by exc. (15).

Lévrier, fr. *lièvre*, hare.—*Poursuite*, fr. *poursuivre*, R. *suivre*, to follow.—*Lièvre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Courre* is conjugated like *courir*. It is used only in the language of hunters.—*Je m'abstiendrai*, form of the v. irr. *s'abstenir*, fr. *tenir*. See Index. This verb is always pronominal (364).—*Sanglier*, wild-boar.—*Marcassin*, young wild-boar.—*Hurler*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Malencontreux*, fr. *mal* and *encontre*, or *rencontre*, rencounter.—*Passe-temps*. This compound subst. is invariable. **690.** *Je trouve que c'est un passe-temps bien scabreux* QUE. In inversive phrases in which *ce*, the v. *être*, and the regimen, precede the subject, *que* is employed as a connective.—*Repaire* is masc. (253)

Faisant trêve, lit. making truce.—*Bruyant*, adj., fr. *bruit*, noise.—*Haleter*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Moulu*, lit. ground, pa. part. of the v. irr. *moudre*, to grind. See Index.—

tigue, j'irai plus fréquemment tendre le tramail ou disposer la nasse dans un vaste vivier entouré d'aunes et bordé de roseaux. J'y prendrai à coup sûr des truites, des saumons et quantité d'autres poissons que j'y aurai fait placer d'avance; mais je me garderai d'y laisser mettre des brochets; car ces voraces requins d'eau douce sont les fléaux de tout ce qui porte des nageoires.

death, I shall more frequently go and spread the drag-net or dispose the bow-net in a vast nurse-pond surrounded with alders and bordered with reeds. There I shall be sure to catch trout, salmon, and a great deal of other fish that I shall have ordered to be placed there beforehand; but I shall certainly not permit any pike to be put among them; for those greedy fresh-water sharks are the scourges of the finny tribe.

"Il sera bon que je règle l'emploi de mon temps. Je me lèverai à neuf heures et demie du matin, c'est-à-dire une demi-heure après le moment où j'ai l'habitude de m'éveiller. J'ai toujours eu horreur des réveille-matin, dont l'affreux carillon vous arrache en sursaut aux douceurs du sommeil. Je m'habillerai à loisir, et vers onze heures moins un quart, je déjeunerai avec un homard, ou des écrevisses, des crevettes, des œufs frais, des rognons sautés, si j'ai grand'faim. Mais si je n'ai pas beaucoup d'appétit, je me contenterai d'une tasse de thé ou de chocolat. Je ferai mon second déjeuner à une heure, et je dînerai

"It will be proper for me to regulate the employment of my time. I shall rise at half-past nine o'clock in the morning, that is half an hour after the time when I usually awake. I have always detested alarm-clocks, the dreadful din of which snatches you with a start from the enjoyment of sleep. I shall dress myself leisurely, and, at about a quarter to eleven, I shall breakfast on a lobster, or craw-fishes, shrimps, new-laid eggs, stewed kidneys, if I am very hungry. But if my appetite is moderate, I shall content myself with a cup of tea or chocolate. I shall lunch at one o'clock and dine at five.

Fréquemment, adv., fr. *fréquent* (260).—*Aune*, formerly spelled *aulne*, alder, is masc. (301); but *aune*, ell, is fem.—*Roseaux*, pl. of *roseau* (232).—*Fléaux*, pl. of *fléau* (232).—*Nageoire*, fin, fr. *nager*, to swim.

Neuf heures et demie, *Une demi-heure*. **691.** The adjectives *demi*, and *nu*, naked, are invariable when placed before the subst. When they follow it they agree with it. Ex. Nu-*pieds*, *pieds*-nus, barefooted.—*Réveille-matin*. This compound subst. is invariable.—*Douceur*, fr. *doux*, *douce*, sweet, is fem. (95).—*Habiller*, fr. *habit*, dress. The *h* is mute.—*Onze heures moins un quart* (657).—*Homard*. The *h* is aspirate.——*Œufs*. The *f* is pronounced in the sing. and quiescent in the pl.—*Grand'faim*, lit. great hunger (295).

à cinq. A dix heures, je souperai de beignets ou de crêpes bien chaudes; car la friture figée est indigeste; et puis j'irai me coucher à onze heures.

"Ce mode de distribution du temps vaut mieux, à mon avis, que celui qui consiste à faire du jour la nuit et de la nuit le jour. Cependant, je ne me bannirai pas à tout jamais de la société. Je ne resterai pas constamment enfoui dans mes terres comme en exil. Il me siérait mal de bouder le monde. J'irai donc quelquefois en soirée ou au bal, pourvu que ce ne soit pas en août, car je n'aimerais guère à danser pendant la canicule, comme c'est, dit-on, la mode à Londres.

"Il me semble que je ne figurerai pas trop mal dans un quadrille, surtout avec un beau costume de fantaisie, comme par exemple une toge avec une fraise bien empesée et des bottes à l'écuyère. Que de jolis démons, que de ravissants lutins en domino, viendront m'intriguer avec la verve spirituelle et pleine d'abandon que donne le masque aux personnes les plus réservées!"

56. "Il faudra aussi que j'aie une stalle à l'Opéra et une aux

At ten o'clock, I shall sup on fritters, or pancakes, very warm, for coagulated grease is indigestible; and then I shall go to bed at eleven.

"This mode of dividing time is better, in my opinion, than that which consists in turning day into night, and night into day. However, I will not banish myself forever from society. I will not remain perpetually buried in my estates as in exile. It would ill become me to take the world in grudge. I shall therefore go to an evening party or a ball sometimes, provided it be not in August, for I should not like to dance in the dog-days, as people say it is the fashion in London.

"Methinks I shall cut a pretty figure enough in a quadrille, especially in a fine fancy-dress, as, for instance, a toga with a stiff-starched ruff and Hessian boots. How many pretty tormentors, how many bewitching elves in dominoes, will try to tease me with the witty, unconstrained animation which a mask imparts to the most reserved persons!"

56. "I must also have a stall at the Opera and one at the Italian

---

Crêpe, pancake, is fem. (15); but *crêpe*, crape, is masc. by exc.—*Friture*, frying, thing fried, butter, oil, or grease for frying, fr. *frire*, to fry.—*Indigeste*, fr. *digérer*, to digest.

Distribution is fem. (99).—*Enfouir*, fr. *fouir*, to dig the earth.—*Siérait*, form of the v. irr. *seoir*. See Index.—*Bouder*, lit. to pout, to be sulky.—*Soirée*, fr. *soir*, evening (329).—*Août*. The *a* is mute.

Quadrille is masc. by exc. (15).—*Empeser*, fr. *empois*, starch.—*Spirituelle*, fem. of *spirituel* (184), fr. *esprit*, wit (600, § 3).

Opéra, formerly invariable, now takes the regular form of the plural (692).—

Italiens. Je tiens à être cité parmi les dilettanti. De plus, j'aurai une loge à l'année, soit au Théâtre-Français, soit au Cirque ou au Vaudeville. Comme on doit se carrer à l'avant-scène des premières ou au balcon, surtout quand on n'a jamais été qu'au parterre!

"Au reste, je ne crois pas que j'aille très-souvent au spectacle, si ce n'est aux jours de premières représentations, pour entendre siffler, crier, demander bis, et pour m'amuser des efforts de la cabale. Le socque et le cothurne ont peu d'attraits pour moi. Un intermède ou un ballet me plait assez, quand il est court; mais un lugubre drame, un tissu de forfaits, avec prologue et épilogue, ne manque jamais de m'endormir.

"Je m'amuserai davantage en restant chez moi le soir, à jouer avec mes connaissances à différents jeux, tels que les cartes, les

theatre. I am anxious to be cited among the dilettanti. Besides, I shall have my box all the year round, either at the French theatre, or at the Circus or the Vaudeville. How dashing one must look in the stage-box on the first tier, or in the dress-circle, especially when one never was but in the pit before!

"However, I don't think I shall very often go to the play, except on nights of first performances, to hear people hiss, shout, cry encore, and to be amused with the struggles of a cabal. The sock and buskin have but few allurements for me. I like an interlude or a ballet well enough, when it is short; but a mournful drama, a complication of crimes, with a prologue and an epilogue, never fails to send me to sleep.

"I shall find greater amusement in remaining at home of an evening, and playing with my acquaintances at various games,

---

Dilettanti is the Italian plural of *dilettante*, connoisseur or admirer of the fine arts. This word, being considered as foreign, is not yet submitted to the general rule. **692.** Substantives, borrowed from foreign languages, generally begin by being invariable; but when, by gradual assimilation, they are in common use, they follow the general rule. —*Cirque* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Vaudeville* is masc. by exc. (15); *ll* not liquid.—*Avant-scène.* Some lexicographers make this compound subst. invariable, others write *avant-scènes.* The *Académie* gives no example of the plural.—*Balcon*, lit. balcony.—*Parterre* is masc. by exc. (15).

J'aille, form of the v. irr. *aller*. See Index.—*Spectacle* is masc. (587).—*Représentation* is fem. (99).—*Bis.* The final *s* is pronounced in this word, when it signifies twice or encore; it is mute in *bis*, signifying brown.—*Socque* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Cothurne* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Intermède* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Ballet*, diminutive of *bal*, ball. **693.** *Un intermède ou un ballet me* PLAIT *assez.* When two subject subst. are joined by *ou*, the verb agrees with the last only. This rule is sometimes violated, even by good writers.—*Drame* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Prologue* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Epilogue* is masc. by exc. (15).

dés, les dominos, les échecs et les dames.

"Je n'ai jamais joué qu'au nain jaune, où les cartes importantes sont: le sept de carreau, le roi de cœur, la dame de pique et le valet de trèfle; mais qu'est-ce que ça fait? Les jeux s'apprennent bien vite. Ah! je sais aussi le nom des pièces d'un échiquier; il y a le roi, la dame, les tours, les fous, les cavaliers et les pions. C'est déjà quelque chose.

"Le dimanche et les jours fériés que la religion consacre au repos, j'inviterai tous les membres de ma famille.

"Il est probable que je passerai la saison des brouillards à la ville, et que j'habiterai la campagne depuis le printemps jusqu'à l'automne. De temps à autre, j'irai faire une excursion en Angleterre, en Allemagne, ou en Belgique. On voyage si vite dans notre siècle, et sans aucun encombre, grâce à la vapeur! J'irai voir aussi les montagnes chenues de la Suisse, mais je ne les gravirai pas jusqu'à la cime."

such as cards, dice, dominoes, chess, and draughts.

"I never played at any other game than Pope Joan, where the important cards are: the seven of diamonds, the king of hearts, the queen of spades, and the knave of clubs; but what of that? Games are very quickly learned. Oh! but I also know the names of the pieces of a chess-board: the king, the queen, the castles, the bishops, the knights, and the pawns. That is something.

"On Sundays and holidays, which religion consecrates to rest, I shall invite all the members of my family.

"I shall probably spend the foggy season in town, and reside in the country from spring till autumn. Occasionally, I shall take a trip to England, Germany, or Belgium. Journeys are so speedily made in the present age, and without any impediment, thanks to steam! I shall go and see the hoary mountains of Switzerland also, but I shall not climb up to their tops."

Echecs, in the sense of chess, is always plural, and the *c* in the termination is quiescent. But in *échec*, check, repulse, foil, the final *c* is pronounced.

Nain jaune, lit. yellow dwarf.—*La dame de pique.* At cards, the queen is called *la dame;* but the French for queen is *reine.*—*Tour*, as a chessman, is fem. **694.** *C'est déjà quelque chose.* § 1. The pron. *ce*, before the v. *être*, requires this v. to be in the sing. unless it be followed by a third person of the pl. number. Thus we say, *c'est nous, c'était vous*, It is we, It was you, just as in English. § 2. Before a third person pl ral. most writers employ the v. *être* in the plural, thus: *Ce sont eux*, It is they.

Religion is fem. by exc. (14).—*Membre* is masc. by exc. (15).

Brouillard, fog.—*Automne* is of both genders; but many writers make it masc. The *m* is quiescent.—*Siècle* is masc. (587).—*Encombre* is masc. by exc. (15).

57. "De cette manière, je passerai des jours sereins, des jours dont la trame sera ourdie d'or et de soie, comme disait un de nos professeurs, et je jouirai de la vie de garçon pendant quelques années, avant de songer au lien conjugal. D'ailleurs il est imprudent de se marier de bonne heure, depuis que le divorce est aboli.

"Lorsque enfin je serai las du célibat, je briguerai l'alliance de quelque noble famille, comme celle des Noircastels, par exemple, ces antiques soutiens du trône et de l'autel: c'est une famille dont la généalogie remonte à l'époque de la fondation du royaume.

"La jeune personne que je demanderai en mariage sera naturellement le type de la grâce et de la beauté. Elle et moi nous ferons un couple bien assorti. Voici comme je me la représente:

57. "In this manner, I shall pass days woven with gold and silk, as one of our teachers used to say, and I shall enjoy a bachelor's life for some years, before I think of the matrimonial bond. Besides, it is imprudent to marry early, since divorce has been abolished.

"When at last I am tired of the single state, I shall court an alliance in some noble family, such as that of the Noircastels for instance, those ancient supporters of the throne and altar: they are a family whose genealogy is traced up to the epoch of the foundation of the kingdom.

"The young lady whom I shall ask in marriage will of course be the type of grace and beauty. She and I shall be a well-matched couple. I fancy I see her.

Trame, weft, woof.—*Ourdir*, to warp.—*Lien*, fr. *lier*, to bind, to tie.—*Divorce* is masc. by exc. (15).

Las. The fem. is *lasse* by exc. (2). **695.** *Comme celle des Noircastels.* § 1. Most grammarians are of opinion that proper names should always be invariable, unless employed as common substantives: they would accordingly write, *Les Noircastel;* the judicious Lemare, however, shows by numerous examples that the best writers give the plural form to proper names belonging to several individuals. § 2. A proper name is invariable when it designates a single person and is nevertheless preceded by *les* or another definitive in the plural, in such idiomatic phrases as the following: "LES *Corneille et* LES *Racine ont illustré la scène française*, Corneille and Racine have illustrated the French stage."—*Trône* is masc. by exc. (15). **696.** *C'est une famille.* The pron. *ce* is often employed for *he*, *she*, or *they*, as the subject of a proposition, the predicate of which is a subst. or a pron. (694).—*Royaume* is masc. by exc. (15).

Type is masc. by exc. (15) as well as its derivatives, *prototype*, *daguerréotype*, etc. **697.** *Elle et moi, nous* FERONS. § 1. When a verb refers to several subjects of different persons, the subjects are summed up by the pron. *nous* or *vous*, with which the verb agrees. § 2. *Nous* is employed if one of the subjects is of the first person; otherwise *vous* is the proper pronoun.—*Couple* is masc. by exc. (15) when it signifies two animated beings acting in concert, or two persons or animals of different sexes; but when *coup'e* signifies only two things of the same kind, it is fem.

"Elle est de moyenne stature. Sa taille est svelte et cambrée. Elle a des yeux noirs, un nez grec, des lèvres vermeilles, des dents comme deux rangées de perles et une petite fossette au milieu du menton. Ses joues sont animées du plus doux incarnat, et les belles boucles de ses cheveux châtain clair flottent sur ses épaules. Elle a une petite main, des doigts effilés et des ongles roses. Son pied eût fait honte à Cendrillon.

"Les perfections de son âme ne le cèdent en rien à celles de sa personne. Ses connaissances la font admirer comme un prodige. Elle chante et danse à ravir. Elle sait dessiner, peindre et broder; elle parle anglais, italien, espagnol et allemand. Elle est versée dans l'histoire et la géographie. Elle sait coudre et tricoter et se sert de la quenouille, du fuseau et du rouet aussi bien qu'une fermière. Loin d'avoir l'orgueil de certaines personnes de sa caste, elle rend de fréquentes visites aux pauvres, dont elle allége les souffrances et dont elle est adorée. Son panégyrique est dans toutes les bouches. Enfin

"She is middle-sized. Her shape is slender and flexible. She has black eyes, a Grecian nose, ruddy lips, teeth like two rows of pearls, and a small dimple in the middle of her chin. Her cheeks glow with the softest blush, and the beautiful locks of her light nut-brown hair flow on her shoulders. She has a small hand, slender fingers, and rosy nails. Her foot would have shamed Cinderella.

"The perfections of her mind are nowise inferior to those of her person. Her knowledge makes her admired as a prodigy. She sings and dances delightfully. She can draw, paint, and embroider; she speaks English, Italian, Spanish, and German. She is versed in history and geography. She can sew and knit, and she employs the distaff, the spindle, and spinning-wheel as well as a farmer's wife. Far from having the haughtiness of certain persons of her caste, she pays frequent visits to the poor, whose sufferings she alleviates, and by whom she is adored. Everybody sings her praises. In

---

Moyenne, fem. of *moyen* (184), mean, middle, middling.—*Svelte.* The *s* is pronounced like *z*.—*Fossette*, diminutive of *fosse*, pit, hole (345).—*Incarnat*, carnation color, fr. *chair*, flesh.—*Boucle* is fem. (537, § 2). **698.** *Ses cheveux châtain clair.* § 1. When two adjectives form a compound in which the second qualifies the first, they are both invariable. § 2. But if the first is used adverbially and qualifies the second, the first adj. is invariable, and the second agrees with the subst. Ex. *Ses cheveux clair-semés*, his thinly-scattered hair.—*Effilé*, fr. *fil*, thread.—*Honte.* The *h* is aspirate.

Perfection is fem. (99).—*Ame*, lit. soul.—*Ses connaissances la font admirer* (548, 627).—*Prodige* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Dessiner*, v., fr. *dessin*, drawing (303).—*Coudre*, v. irr. See Index.—*Rouet*, fr. *roue*, wheel.—*Fermière*, fem. of *fermier* (620).—*Panégyrique* is masc. by exc. (15).—

c'est le modèle des vertus."

58. "Pour amadouer le duc son père, et pour qu'il ne croie pas déchoir en donnant sa fille à un parvenu, je lui écrirai que je ne demande pas de dot. Une offre aussi désintéressée est une chose trop rare pour n'être pas acceptée sur-le-champ. Aussi mon gentilhomme, tout fier qu'il est de ses titres et de son rang, ajournera toute autre affaire pour conclure ce pacte, et me donnera un rendez-vous. Il me recevra de la manière la plus affable, avec tout le protocole des compliments d'usage. Ma harangue sera courte, car je ne suis pas fort disert; je n'ai pas la faconde d'un avocat, et je finis par bredouiller quand je pérore trop longtemps.

"Après avoir entamé l'affaire par un petit préambule, je lui proposerai de régler les clauses du contrat, qui seront tellement avantageuses pour sa fille, qu'il n'élèvera aucune objection et

a word, she is the model of virtues."

58. "In order to coax over the duke her father, and to prevent him from considering it a disparagement to give his daughter to an upstart, I shall write to him that I do not ask for a portion. Such a disinterested offer is too rare a thing not to be accepted directly. So my nobleman, proud as he is of his titles and rank, will postpone every other business to conclude this compact, and will make me an appointment. He will receive me with the greatest affability, and with the usual pack of compliments. My harangue will be short, for I am not very voluble; I have not the loquacity of a barrister, and I always finish by stuttering, when I speechify too much.

"After breaking the ice with a short preamble, I shall propose to him to settle the clauses of the contract, which will be so advantageous to his daughter that he will make no objection, and

---

Vertu is fem. by exc. (14).

Amadouer, to coax, to wheedle, is familiar.—*Croie*, form of the v. irr. *croire*. See Index.—*Déchoir*, fr. *choir*, to fall, v. irr. See Index.—*Parvenu*, verbal subst., fr. *parvenir*, to attain, to reach.—*Désintéressé*, fr. *intérêt*, interest.—*Gentilhomme*. The *h* is mute and the *l* takes the sound of *y*, as if the latter part of the word were spelled *yom*. The plural is *gentilshommes*, in which the *l* is quiescent and the first *s* pronounced like *z*, as if the word were spelled (in French) *jantizomm*.—*Fier*. The final *r* is pronounced.—*Titre* is masc. (341).—*Ajourner*, v., fr. *jour*, day.—*Pacte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Rendez-vous*. This compound word is masc. and invariable in the pl. **699.** Compound words are masculine when the first component part is a verb.—*Affable*. The second *a* has the long grave sound.—*Protocole* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Harangue*. The *h* is aspirate.—*Bredouiller* is familiar.

Entamer, to cut open, to make an incision.—*Préambule* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Avantageuse*, fem. of *avantageux* (142).—*Objection* is fem. (99).—

qu'il sera enchanté de son tête-à-tête avec son futur gendre.

"Il peut se faire que d'abord ma belle fiancée n'ait point d'amour pour moi, mais elle est si soumise à la volonté de son père que mon triomphe est assuré.

"A la nouvelle de ce brillant hyménée, mes amis viendront me féliciter.

"Dans l'intervalle qui précèdera le jour des noces, je m'occuperai de la corbeille de la mariée. Je ferai venir une couturière et une modiste et je commanderai une quantité de robes à falbalas, d'écharpes, de corsages, de guimpes, de pèlerines, de manchons de martre et de mouchoirs, suffisante pour parer une armée de dames.

"J'achèterai aussi des manchettes et des collerettes du plus beau tulle, plusieurs châles bien moelleux, des boucles d'oreilles et un magnifique voile de dentelle. Pour ce qui est du trousseau, comme linge, chaussure, etc., cela

will be delighted with this tête-à-tête with his future son-in-law.

"It may happen that my fair betrothed will feel no love for me at first, but she is so submissive to the will of her father that my triumph is certain.

"On hearing the news of this brilliant marriage, my friends will come and congratulate me.

"In the interval that will precede the wedding-day, I shall be occupied with the wedding present to my bride. I shall send for a dressmaker and a milliner, and bespeak a number of gowns with furbelows, scarfs, bodices, habit-shirts, tippets, sable muffs, and handkerchiefs, sufficient to deck an army of ladies.

"I shall also buy some ruffles and collars of the finest lace, several shawls of the softest tissue, ear-rings, and a magnificent lace-veil. As for the rest of the bride's wardrobe, such as linen, shoes, etc., it will be no concern

---

Tête-à-tête. This compound subst. is invariable.

Fiancé, fem. *fiancée*, person betrothed, fr. *foi*, faith.—*Amour* is masc. in the sing.; but in the pl., when it signifies the passion of one sex for the other, it is often fem.—*Soumis*, verbal adj., fr. *soumettre*, to submit, R. *mettre*.—*Volonté* is fem. (241).—*Triomphe* is masc. by exc. (15) in its usual acceptation; but, as the name of a game at cards, it is fem.

Hyménée is masc. by exc. (15). The *h* is mute.

Intervalle is masc. by exc. (15).—*Corbeille*, lit. basket.—*Mariée*, verbal subst., fr. *marier*, to marry.—*Coutourière*, lit. sempstress, fr. *couture*, sewing, seam, R. *coudre*, to sew.—*Modiste*, fr. *mode*, fashion.—*Corsage*, fr. *corps*, body, is masc. (215).—*Pèlerine*, fr. *pèlerin*, pilgrim.—*Martre* is fem. (342).—*Mouchoir*, fr. *moucher*, to blow the nose.

Manchette, diminutive of *manche*, sleeve (345).—*Collerette*, fr. *col*, neck, collar.—*Tulle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Châle* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Voile*, veil, is masc. by exc. (15); but *voile*, sail, is fem. **700**. *Linge, chaussure, etc. cela ne me* REGARDERA *pas.* When several subject subst. are summed up in one word, as, *tout, rien, personne, chacun, cela*, etc., the verb agrees with this last subject only.—*Linge* is masc. by exc.

ne me regardera pas; ce sera l'affaire de ma belle-mère."

59. "Après l'envoi de mes présents, j'irai faire une visite à ma future, en carrosse à quatre chevaux, et avec un cortége nombreux.

"Enfin, je vois arriver le jour qui doit mettre le comble à mon bonheur. Je vais rejoindre la famille assemblée chez le duc, et nous partons pour la municipalité. Le maire nous unit; puis nous allons à l'église où nous recevons la bénédiction nuptiale, et me voilà l'heureux époux de la charmante Anna.

"Comme il est de mauvais ton de manifester ses impressions, je m'efforcerai de cacher mes transports sous une froideur affectée.

"A notre retour, nous trouverons une collation toute splendide préparée par les ordres exprès de mon beau-père. Au dessert, je ferai apporter un grand coffre rempli de cadeaux pour tous mes nouveaux parents, comme gages de ma sincère amitié. Il y aura de riches tabatières pour le grand

of mine; it will be my mother-in-law's business."

59. "After sending my presents, I shall pay a visit to my intended bride, in a carriage and four, and with a numerous retinue.

"At length I see the day arrive which is to crown my happiness. I meet the family assembled at the duke's, and we start for the mayoralty-house. The mayor unites us; we then repair to the church where we receive the nuptial blessing, and I am made the happy husband of the charming Anna.

"As it is ungenteel to manifest one's impressions, I shall strive to hide my raptures under affected coolness.

"On our return home, we shall find quite a splendid collation prepared by the express orders of my father-in-law. At the dessert, I shall order a large box to be brought in, filled with gifts for all my new relations, as pledges of my sincere friendship. There will be rich snuff-boxes for the

---

(15).—*Belle-mère.* The adj. *beau*, fem. *belle*, placed before certain names of kindred, corresponds to the words *in-law*, placed after them in English.

Carrosse is masc. by exc. (15); the *a* has its long grave sound.—*Cortége* is masc. by exc. (15).

Rejoindre, v. irr., fr. *joindre.* See Index.—*Municipalité* is fem. (241).—*Bénédiction* is fem. (99).—*Epoux*, spouse, fem. *épouse.*

Impression is fem. (50).—*Froideur*, fr. *froid*, cold, is fem. (95).

Collation is fem. (99). **701.** *Une collation* TOUTE *splendide.* When *tout* signifies all, quite, or entirely, it is an adverb, and accordingly remains invariable, except when it precedes an adjective of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant or an aspirate *h*, in which position it takes the gender and number of this adjective for the sake of euphony (675).—*Ordre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Exprès.* The irregular fem. is *expresse.*—*Coffre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Gage* is masc. (215).—

papa, les oncles et les cousins, des parures pour les tantes et les cousines, des cerceaux, des cordes à sauter, des toupies, des sabots, des cerfs-volants et une multitude d'autres joujoux pour les neveux et les nièces. Les domestiques ne seront pas oubliés; ils auront leur ample part de mes largesses.

"Dans l'après-midi, il y aura une ascension en ballon. L'aérostat sera muni d'une soupape et garni de lest. Un parachute s'en détachera et ramènera l'aéronaute sain et sauf.

"Le soir, on tirera un superbe feu d'artifice, avec pétards, fusées, boîtes et chandelles romaines. Et pour qu'un incendie ne soit pas à redouter, des pompiers se tiendront tout prêts avec une pompe et des seaux.

"Quand j'aurai installé ma jeune épouse chez moi, je commencerai par lui inspirer une sorte de crainte respectueuse qui me donnera un grand empire sur elle, afin qu'elle ne m'en aime que mieux plus tard. A cette fin, je la conduirai cérémonieusement à son appartement, et là je lui ferai

grandfather, the uncles, and male cousins; sets of ornaments for the aunts and female cousins; hoops, skipping-ropes, tops, whip-tops, kites, and a multitude of other playthings for the nephews and nieces. The servants will not be forgotten; they will have their ample share of my bounty.

"In the afternoon, there will be an ascent in a balloon. The aerostat will be provided with a valve and stocked with ballast. A parachute will be detached from it, and bring down the aeronaut safe and sound.

"At night, splendid fire-works will be let off, with crackers, rockets, fire-boxes, and Roman candles. And in order that a conflagration may not be dreaded, some firemen will stand in readiness with a fire-engine and buckets.

"When I have installed my young bride in my house, I shall begin by inspiring her with a sort of awe which will give me a great empire over her, that she may love me the better for it afterwards. To this end, I shall lead her ceremoniously to her apartments, and there make her a low,

---

Cerceaux, pl. of *cerceau* (232).—*Cerfs-volants*, pl. of *cerf-volant*. In this compound subst. the *f* in the sing. and *fs* in the pl. are quiescent.—*Joujoux*, pl. of *joujou* (559).—*Neveux*, pl. of *neveu* (232).—*Largesse*, fr. *large*, wide, broad, large (442).

Après-midi is fem. according to the *Académie*, though several writers make it masc. This compound subst. is invariable.—*Ascension* is fem. (50).—*Lest*. The *t* is pronounced.—*Parachute* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Sain*, sound, healthy, wholesome.

Incendie is masc. by exc. (15).—*Pompier*, fr. *pompe*, pump.—*Seaux*, pl. of *seau* (232).

Empire is masc. by exc. (15).—

un salut profond et glacial en me retirant."

60. "Cela occasionnera un grand scandale. Ses femmes viendront me représenter qu'elle a le cœur navré ; qu'elle se tord les mains, et qu'à la suite d'une crise nerveuse elle est tombée dans l'abattement. Elles me supplieront avec larmes de ne pas affliger ainsi leur maîtresse par ma froideur et ma dureté ; mais je les ferai taire et je resterai inflexible.

"Le lendemain, la duchesse m'amènera sa fille, pendant que je serai nonchalamment couché sur un sofa. La pauvre enfant, pleurant, sanglotant et poussant de profonds soupirs, se jettera à mes pieds.

"'O ! monsieur,' me dira-t-elle, 'qu'ai-je donc fait pour que vous me traitiez ainsi ? Dites-le-moi, je vous en conjure.'

"Alors, comme énergique et dernière épreuve, je la repousserai soudain sans aucune pitié."

frigid bow as I retire."

60. "This will occasion great scandal. Her women will come and represent to me that she is broken-hearted ; that she wrings her hands, and that, after a nervous fit, she has fallen into a state of dejection. They will beseech me with tears not to grieve their mistress in that way, by my coolness and unkindness ; but I shall silence them and remain inflexible.

"The next day, the duchess will bring her daughter to me, while I am carelessly lying on a sofa. The poor girl, weeping, sobbing, and heaving deep sighs, will fling herself at my feet.

"'O ! sir,' will she say, 'what have I done that you should use me thus ? Tell me, I entreat you.'

"Then will I, to put her to the last and strongest test, spurn her from me without any pity."

Glacial, fr. *glace*, ice. According to the *Académie*, this adj. has no pl. masc. However, the astronomer Bailly has written *Des vents glacials* (469).

Scandale is masc. by exc. (15).—*Nerveuse*, fem. of *nerveux* (142), fr. *nerf*, nerve.—*Elle est tombée*. The v. *tomber* almost invariably takes *être* as an auxiliary, in its compound tenses.—*Abattement*, fr. *abattre*, to beat down, R. *battre*.—*Dureté*, fr. *dur*, hard, is fem. (241).

Amener, fr. *mener*, to lead.—*Nonchalamment*, fr. *nonchalant* (260), mentioned in the 9th lesson.—*Enfant*, in the sing. is of either gender, according to the sex of the child referred to (8) ; but in the pl. it is always masc.—*Sangloter*, fr. *sanglot*, sob.

702. *Dites*-LE-MOI. When a verb in the imperative mood is followed by two object pronouns, the one direct and the other indirect, the direct regimen is placed before the indirect. For the sake of euphony, however, the pron. *moi*, *toi*, *le*, *la*, when direct regimens, are placed after *y*. Ex. *Envoyez-y-moi*, send me thither. But this construction is forced, and it is better to avoid it.

703. *Soudain*, sudden, for *soudainement*, suddenly. Adjectives are sometimes employed as adverbs ; in this case they are invariable.—*Pitié* is fem. by exc. (14).

Alexis était si complètement absorbé dans ce songe qu'il faisait tout éveillé, que, saisi d'un vertige irrésistible, il ne put s'empêcher d'exécuter avec son pied l'acte brutal qu'il avait dans la pensée; de sorte qu'il repoussa brusquement son panier de fragile marchandise, base de toutes ses grandeurs imaginaires, et que ses verres allèrent tomber dans la rue, où ils se brisèrent en mille morceaux.

"Holà!" s'écria le coiffeur, qui accourut en riant à gorge déployée. "Il paraît qu'il y a du grabuge et de la brouille dans le ménage. Voilà bien du tintamarre. A qui cette vaisselle cassée?—Au marquis Delatour! Ah! quel esclandre, et quel déboire! Oh! l'arrogant imbécile! le niais! la buse! qui ne connaît pas de meilleur moyen de se faire aimer de sa femme que de la recevoir à coups de pied! Une petite femme jolie comme un ange et douce comme un mouton! Fi donc! Ah! vous n'aimez pas les pourquoi, et les comment, vous haïssez les bavards, dites-vous? Eh bien, moi, je hais les sots bouffis de vanité. Vous n'avez que ce que vous méritez,

Alexis was so completely swallowed up in this waking dream, that, seized with an irresistible vertigo, he could not forbear performing with his foot the brutal act which he had in his thoughts; so that he abruptly kicked his basket of brittle ware, the basis of all his imaginary grandeur, and his glasses fell down into the street, where they were broken into a thousand pieces.

"Halloa!" cried the hair-dresser, running in and laughing immoderately. "It seems that there is a jarring and wrangling between the husband and wife. Here is a pother! Whose broken crockery is this?—Marquis Delatour's—Oh! what a subject for scandal, and what a mortification! Oh! the supercilious blockhead! the dunce! the idiot! who knows no better way of gaining the love of his wife than receiving her with kicks! Such a little wife, as pretty as an angel and as mild as a lamb! Fie upon you! Ah! you do not like the whys and hows; and you hate gossips, you say? Well, *I* hate fools puffed up with vanity. You are rightly served, my fine fellow,

---

Songe is masc. by exc. (15).—*Vertige* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Acte* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Grandeur*, fr. *grand*, is fem. (95).

Déployer, lit. to unfold, to display.—*Grabuge* is masc. by exc. (15). It is familiar.—*Tintamarre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Esclandre* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Déboire* is masc. by exc. (15).—*Ange* is masc. even when applied as an epithet to a woman. **704.** *Les* POURQUOI, *et les* COMMENT. Uninflected parts of speech, when accidentally used as substantives, remain invariable.—*Vanité* is fem. (241). **705.** *Vous n'avez que ce que* vous *méritez*, MON CHER. § 1. When the pron. *nous* stands for *je* or *moi*, the adjective, sub-

mon cher, et vous apprenez à vos dépens à quoi mène la manie de faire des châteaux en Espagne."	and you now see to your cost the folly of building castles in the air."

---

stantive, or participle corresponding to it, must be employed in the singular number.
§ 2. This observation applies also to vous used for *tu* or *toi*.

SYNOPTICAL TABLES.

Recapitulation of the Relative Pronouns, the study of which was completed with the 23d Lesson. *See page* 306.

QUI, who, whom, which, that, what.
QUE, whom, which, that, what.
QUOI, what, which.
DONT, whose, of whom, from whom, of which, from which.
LEQUEL, LAQUELLE, LESQUELS, LESQUELLES, who, whom, which, that.
OU, in which, to which, at which.
D'OU, PAR OU, from which, through which.

Recapitulation of the Possessive Adjectives, the study of which was completed with the 26th Lesson. *See page* 338.

MON, my—MA, my—MES, my.
TON, thy—TA, thy—TES, thy.
SON, his, her, its, one's—SA, his, her, its, one's—SES, his, her, its, one's.
NOTRE, our—NOS, our.
VOTRE, your—VOS, your.
LEUR, their—LEURS, their.

Recapitulation of the Personal Pronouns, the study of which was completed with the 27th Lesson. *See page* 350.

JE, I—ME, me, to me, myself, to myself—MOI, me, to me, I.

TU, thou—TE, thee, to thee, thyself, to thyself—TOI, thee, to thee, thou.

IL, he, it—LE, him, it—LUI, him, to him, he.

ELLE, she, her, it—LA, her, it—LUI, to her.

SOI, one's self; himself, herself, itself—SE, himself, herself, itself, one's self; to himself, to herself, to itself, to one's self; themselves, to themselves.

NOUS, we, us, ourself, ourselves, to us, to ourselves.

VOUS, you, yourself, yourselves, to you, to yourselves.

ILS, they—ELLES, they, them—LES, them—EUX, them, they—LEUR, to them.

EN, of him, of her, of it, of them; his, her, its, their.

Y, to him, to her, to it, to them.

Recapitulation of the Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives, the study of which was completed with the 34th Lesson. *See page* 431.

AUCUN, any—no, none, not one.
CHAQUE, each, every.
MÊME, same, self.
NUL, no, not any, none, nobody.
PLUSIEURS, several, some.
QUEL, what, which.
QUELCONQUE, whatever.
QUELQUE, some, any, a few, whatever.
TEL, such.
TOUT, all, whole, every, each, any.

Recapitulation of the Demonstrative Pronouns, the study of which was completed with the 34th Lesson. *See page* 432.

CE, it—this, that, those—he, she, they.
CECI, this.
CELA, that.
CELUI, this, that—he, him.
CELLE, this, that—she, her.
CEUX, these, those—they.
CELLES, these, those—they.

Recapitulation of the Possessive Pronouns, the study of which was completed with the 38th Lesson. *See page* 480.

LE MIEN, LA MIENNE, LES MIENS, LES MIENNES, *Mine.*
LE TIEN, LA TIENNE, LES TIENS, LES TIENNES, *Thine.*
LE SIEN, LA SIENNE, LES SIENS, LES SIENNES, *His, hers, its, one's.*
LE NÔTRE, LA NÔTRE, LES NÔTRES, *Ours.*
LE VÔTRE, LA VÔTRE, LES VÔTRES, *Yours.*
LE LEUR, LA LEUR, LES LEURS, *Theirs.*

Recapitulation of the Indefinite Pronouns, the study of which was completed with the 40th Lesson. *See page* 504.

AUTRE, *other.*
AUTRUI, *another, others.*
CHACUN, *each, every one, everybody.*
L'UN, *the one.*
L'UN ET L'AUTRE, *both.*
L'UN OU L'AUTRE, *either.*
ON, *one, people, they.*
PERSONNE, *no one, nobody, any one, anybody.*
QUELQU'UN, *some one, somebody, any one, anybody.*
QUICONQUE, *whoever.*

*Recapitulation of the two auxiliaries, and models of the three regular forms of conjugation.**

1st Auxiliary.	2d Auxiliary.	Verbs in **er**.	Verbs in **ir**.	Verbs in **re**.
		INFINITIVE MOOD.		
Avoir.	Être.	Parl*er*.	Fin*ir*.	Vend*re*.
		PRESENT PARTICIPLE.		
Ayant.	Étant.	Parl*ant*.	Fini*ssant*.	Vend*ant*.
		PAST PARTICIPLE.		
Eu.	Été.	Parl*é*.	Fin*i*.	Vend*u*.
		INDICATIVE MOOD.		
		PRESENT TENSE.		
J'ai.	Je suis.	Je parl*e*.	Je fin*is*.	Je vend*s*.
Tu as.	Tu es.	Tu parl*es*.	Tu fin*is*.	Tu vend*s*.
Il a.	Il est.	Il parl*e*.	Il fin*it*.	Il vend.
N. avons.	N. sommes.	N. parl*ons*.	N. fini*ssons*.	N. vend*ons*.
V. avez.	V. êtes.	V. parl*ez*.	V. fini*ssez*.	V. vend*ez*.
Ils ont.	Ils sont.	Ils parl*ent*.	Ils fini*ssent*.	Ils vend*ent*.
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		
J'avais.	J'étais.	Je parl*ais*.	Je fini*ssais*.	Je vend*ais*.
Tu avais.	Tu étais.	Tu parl*ais*.	Tu fini*ssais*.	Tu vend*ais*.
Il avait.	Il était.	Il parl*ait*.	Il fini*ssait*.	Il vend*ait*.
N. avions.	N. étions.	N. parl*ions*.	N. fini*ssions*.	N. vend*ions*.
V. aviez.	V. étiez.	V. parl*iez*.	V. fini*ssiez*.	V. vend*iez*.
Ils avaient.	Ils étaient.	Ils parl*aient*.	Ils fini*ssaient*.	Ils vend*aient*.
		PAST TENSE DEFINITE.		
J'eus.	Je fus.	Je parl*ai*.	Je fin*is*.	Je vend*is*.
Tu eus.	Tu fus.	Tu parl*as*.	Tu fin*is*.	Tu vend*is*.
Il eut.	Il fut.	Il parl*a*.	Il fin*it*.	Il vend*it*.
N. eûmes.	N. fûmes.	N. parl*âmes*.	N. fin*îmes*.	N. vend*îmes*.
V. eûtes.	V. fûtes.	V. parl*âtes*.	V. fin*îtes*.	V. vend*îtes*.
Ils eurent.	Ils furent.	Ils parl*èrent*.	Ils fin*irent*.	Ils vend*irent*.
		FUTURE TENSE.		
J'aurai.	Je serai.	Je parl*erai*.	Je fin*irai*.	Je vend*rai*.
Tu auras.	Tu seras.	Tu parl*eras*.	Tu fin*iras*.	Tu vend*ras*.
Il aura.	Il sera.	Il parl*era*.	Il fin*ira*.	Il vend*ra*.
N. aurons.	N. serons.	N. parl*erons*.	N. fin*irons*.	N. vend*rons*.
V. aurez.	V. serez.	V. parl*erez*.	V. fin*irez*.	V. vend*rez*.
Ils auront.	Ils seront.	Ils parl*eront*.	Ils fin*iront*.	Ils vend*ront*.
		CONDITIONAL MOOD.		
J'aurais.	Je serais.	Je parl*erais*.	Je fin*irais*.	Je vend*rais*.
Tu aurais.	Tu serais.	Tu parl*erais*.	Tu fin*irais*.	Tu vend*rais*.
Il aurait.	Il serait.	Il parl*erait*.	Il fin*irait*.	Il vend*rait*.
N. aurions.	N. serions.	N. parl*erions*.	N. fin*irions*.	N. vend*rions*.
V. auriez.	V. seriez.	V. parl*eriez*.	V. fin*iriez*.	V. vend*riez*.
Ils auraient.	Ils seraient.	Ils parl*eraient*.	Ils fin*iraient*.	Ils vend*raient*.
		IMPERATIVE MOOD.		
Aie.	Sois.	Parl*e*.	Fin*is*.	Vend*s*.
Ayons.	Soyons.	Parl*ons*.	Fini*ssons*.	Vend*ons*.
Ayez.	Soyez.	Parl*ez*.	Fini*ssez*.	Vend*ez*.
		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.		
		PRESENT TENSE.		
Que j'aie.	Que je sois.	Que je parl*e*.	Que je fini*sse*.	Que je vend*e*.
Que tu aies.	Que tu sois.	Que tu parl*es*.	Que tu fini*sses*.	Que tu vend*es*.
Qu'il ait.	Qu'il soit.	Qu'il parl*e*.	Qu'il fini*sse*.	Qu'il vend*e*.
Que n. ayons.	Que n. soyons.	Que n. parl*ions*.	Que n. fini*ssions*.	Que n. vend*ions*.
Que v. ayez.	Que v. soyez.	Que v. parl*iez*.	Que v. fini*ssiez*.	Que v. vend*iez*.
Qu'ils aient.	Qu'ils soient.	Qu'ils parl*ent*.	Qu'ils fini*ssent*.	Qu'ils vend*ent*.
		PAST TENSE.		
Que j'eusse.	Que je fusse.	Que je parl*asse*.	Que je fini*sse*.	Que je vend*isse*.
Que tu eusses.	Que tu fusses.	Que tu parl*asses*.	Que tu fini*sses*.	Que tu vend*isses*.
Qu'il eût.	Qu'il fût.	Qu'il parl*ât*.	Qu'il fini*t*.	Qu'il vend*it*.
Que n. eussions.	Que n. fussions.	Que n. parl*assions*.	Que n. fini*ssions*.	Que n. vend*issions*
Que v. eussiez.	Que v. fussiez.	Que v. parl*assiez*.	Que v. fini*ssiez*.	Que v. vend*issiez*.
Qu'ils eussent.	Qu'ils fussent.	Qu'ils parl*assent*.	Qu'ils fini*ssent*.	Qu'ils vend*issent*.

* Many grammarians make a particular class of the verbs in *oir*, but their model of conjugation being applicable to seven verbs only, it has been omitted throughout this work. See Index. For the compound teuses see TENSES in Index.

GENERAL INDEX

AND

ALPHABETICAL GRAMMAR,

COMPRISING ALL THE RULES, OBSERVATIONS, AND EXCEPTIONS CONTAINED IN THIS WORK, AND GIVING A COMPLETE LIST OF THE RADICAL IRREGULAR VERBS.

The abbreviations are the same which have been explained page 527. The figures refer, not to the pages, but to the observations or rules, when no indication is prefixed to them; and to the lessons, when preceded by the letter **L.**

A, prep.—Corresponds generally to the English prep. *to* and *at*; and moreover is often rendered by *in, on, by, with, for*, and by the sign of the possessive case ('*s*). As a prep. *à* is distinguished from *a*, the v. *has*, by a grave accent, but without any difference in the sound of the vowel, 24.—It must be repeated before each subst. adj. or v. which it governs, 109.—It must not be suppressed before the indirect regimen of a v. when that regimen is a subst. 160.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *à*, 188.—List of verbs which govern the infin. with either *à* or *de*, 190.—The infinitive mood, preceded by this prep. sometimes corresponds to the English pres. part. indicating the action as taking place, 203.

A, An, English article.—This article is not expressed before a subst. which is used adjectively, that is, which qualifies either the subject or the regimen of a verb, 60.—It must not be rendered after *what* in exclamations, 84.

AB, prefix.—Inseparable particle, which comes from the Latin and signifies *from*. It denotes extraction or separation, and is common to many words which are nearly the same in French and in English. It becomes *abs* before *t*, 531.

ABLE.—This termination denotes aptness, fitness. It is joined to verbs of which it makes adjectives. It signifies the liability to undergo the action expressed by the verb. About two hundred adj. in *able* are the same in both languages, 97.

ABS, prefix.—See *ab*.

Absoudre, to absolve.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Absolvant*.—Pa. part. *Absous*, fem. *Absoute*.—Pres. tense, indic. mood: *J'absous, tu absous, il absout, nous absolvons, vous absolvez, ils absolvent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'absolvais, tu absolvais, il absolvait, nous absolvions, vous absolviez, ils absolvaient*.—No past tense definite.—Future tense and conditional mood, regular. See 565 and 640.—Imperative mood, like the pres. tense, indicative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'absolve, que tu absolves, qu'il absolve, que nous absolvions, que vous absolviez, qu'ils absolvent*.—No past tense.

Accent.—In the sense of the particular stress or force laid upon a syllable, there is scarcely any accent in French; at least it is far from having the importance of the English accent. In general, the stress is laid on the last syllable, or the last but one if the word ends with *e* mute. As orthographic signs, there are three accents: the acute (´), the grave (`) and the circumflex (^). They serve either to modify the sound of certain vowels (3), or to denote the suppression of some consonants (266), or to contradistinguish a few paronymous words, such as *à* (the prep. *to*) and *a* (the v. *has*); *où* (where) and *ou* (or).

Acquerir, to acquire.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Acquérant*.—Pa. part. *Acquis*.—Pres. tense, indicative mood: *J'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquièrent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'acquérais, tu acquérais, il acquérait, nous acquérions, vous acquériez, ils acquéraient*.—Past tense definite: *J'acquis, tu acquis, il acquit, nous acquîmes, vous acquîtes, ils acquirent*.—Future tense: *J'acquerrai, tu acquerras, il acquerra, nous acquerrons, vous acquerrez, ils acquerront*. The *r* is pronounced as double.—Conditional mood: *J'acquerrais, tu acquerrais, il acquerrait, nous acquerrions, vous acquerriez, ils acquerraient*. The *r* is pronounced as double.—Imperative mood, like the pres. tense, indic. mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière, que nous acquérions, que vous acquériez, qu'ils acquièrent*.—Past tense: *Que j'acquisse, que tu acquisses, qu'il acquît, que nous acquissions, que vous acquissiez, qu'ils acquissent*.

AD, prefix.—Inseparable particle, which comes from the Latin, and signifies *at, to, towards*. In French, as well as in English, it denotes tendency, drawing near, bringing together. Most of the words in which it is combined are nearly the same in both languages. The *d* of *ad* is often changed into the same letter as that which begins the radical. But sometimes the *d* is cut off, 148.

ADE, termination.—Found in about 150 substantives, a third of which have become

English, some without any alteration, and some presenting a slight difference, 362.

Adjectives.—The adj. always agrees in gender and number with the subst. to which it relates, 33, 1, 25.

Adjectives generally form their fem. by the addition of *e* mute, 2.—In forming the fem. of adj. ending in *er*, by the addition of *e*, the preceding *e* takes the grave accent (`), 3.—Adj. ending in *e* mute are of both genders, 6.—Adj. ending in *x* form their fem. by changing *x* into *se*, 142.—Adj. ending in *el*, *eil*, *et*, *ien*, and *on*, form their fem. by doubling the final consonant and adding *e* mute, 184.—Adj. ending in *f* form their fem. by changing this termination into *ve*, 251.—Adj. ending in *eur* have their fem. in *euse*, when they can be derived from a pres. part. by changing the termination *ant* into *eur*, 401.—Adj. ending in *teur* form their fem. by changing this termination into *trice*, when they cannot be derived from a pres. part. 402.—Adj. ending in *érieur* form their fem. according to the general rule (2), 667.—The principal exceptions are :

Complet, complète.	*Jumeau, jumelle.*
Discret, discrète.	*Beau, belle.*
Inquiet, inquiète.	*Nouveau, nouvelle.*
Nul, nulle.	*Fou, folle.*
Gentil, gentille.	*Mou, molle.*
Sot, sotte.	*Blanc, blanche.*
Bas, basse.	*Franc, franche.*
Gras, grasse.	*Sec, sèche.*
Las, lasse.	*Frais, fraîche.*
Épais, épaisse.	*Public, publique.*
Gros, grosse.	*Caduc, caduque.*
Tiers, tierce.	*Turc, turque.*
Doux, douce.	*Grec, grecque.*
Faux, fausse.	*Long, longue.*
Roux, rousse.	*Malin, maligne.*
Vieux, vieille.	*Favori, favorite.*

The plural of adj. like that of subst. is regularly formed by adding *s* to the sing. 25.—Adj. ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the pl. 158.—Adj. ending in *au* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 285.—Adj. ending in *al* generally form their pl. by changing *al* into *aux*. There are some exceptions, 469.

The degrees of comparison are not usually formed in French by means of a termination ; but by placing before the adj. one of the following adverbs : *aussi*, as ; *plus*, more, most ; *moins*, less, least ; *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, 114, 197, 377.

When an adj. refers to two or more subst. or pron. either sing. or pl. and of different genders, it takes the pl. form and the masc. gender, 665.—When two or more subst. of different genders are qualified by the same adj., for the sake of euphony, the subst. of the masc. gender should be placed last if possible, 665.—An adj. which follows two or more subst. not connected by *et*, agrees with the last only, when the subst. are synonymous, 666.—An adj. which follows two or more subst. connected by *ou*, agrees with the last only, 689.—The subst. gives the law to the adj. but never receives it from it, 650.—When two adj. form a compound, in which the first is used adverbially and qualifies the second, the first adj. is invariable, and the second agrees with the subst. 698, § 2.—When two adj. form a compound, in which the second qualifies the first, they are both invariable, 698.—When a compound word is formed of two adj. they are both variable, except in sundry exceptional cases, 680.—See also the adj. *demi* (358), *feu*, and *nu* in their alphabetic place.

The place of the adj. in French can hardly be subjected to rules. It sometimes precedes and sometimes follows the subst. without any precise reason, and often according to the taste or caprice of the speaker, 58.—Some adj. vary in their meaning, according as they are placed before or after the subst. 91.

French adj. are often used as subst. in the sing. as well as in the pl. 171.

When the first person pl. of the imperative mood is used in the sense of *let me* (559) the adj. or the subst. used adjectively, which follows it, must of course be put in the sing. 570.

Adjectives are sometimes employed as adverbs ; in this case, they are invariable, 703.

Adjectives are often followed by certain prepositions, the use of which cannot always be determined by rules, 520.—In impersonal phrases, such as, *Il est difficile*, *Il est nécessaire*, *Il semble utile*, *Il devient facile*, etc., the adj. takes *de* before the infinitive that follows, 533.

The Possessive Adjectives are : *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, my, 306 ;—*ton*, *ta*, *tes*, thy, 461 ;—*son*, *sa*, *ses*, his, her, its, one's, 51 ;—*notre*, *nos*, our, 164 ;—*votre*, *vos*, your, 308 ;—*leur*, *leurs*, their, 152.—The possessive adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 107.—Must be repeated before each subst. 108.—The article *le*, *la*, *les*, is used instead of a possessive adj. before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is, 62.—This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty ; but care must be taken to make use of a pronoun showing who the possessor is, 593, §§ 1, 2, 3, 4.

The Demonstrative Adjectives are : *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, this, that, these, those, 19.

The Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives are : *aucun*, any, etc. 240 ; *chaque*, each ; *même*, same, self, 101 ; *nul*, no, none, etc. ; *plusieurs*, several, 245 ; *quel*, what, 71 ; *quelconque*, whatever ; *quelque*, some, any, etc. 144 ; *tel*, such ; *tout*, all, every, etc.

Adverbs.—A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives, by the addition of the termination *ment*, which corresponds to the English termination *ly*, 31.—This termination is added to the feminine form, unless the adj. ends with a vowel, in which case *ment* is added to the masc. termination, 32.—When the adj. ends in *ent*. the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *emment*, and when the adj. ends in *ant*, the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *amment*. In *emment* the first *e* has the sound of *a*, so that both these terminations *emment* and *amment* are pronounced exactly alike, 260.—The exceptions to the foregoing rule are : *lentement*, slowly ; *présentement*, at present ; and *véhémentement*, vehemently, 261.

Adverbs of quantity require the prep. *de*, when placed before a subst. 39.

The place of the adv. is variable in French as in English. The adv. often follows the v. and sometimes precedes it. It must not be placed between the subject and the v. 193.—Contrary to the rule observed in English construction, the adv. is often placed between the v. and its regimen, 501.—When a v. is in a compound tense, the adv. is generally placed between the auxiliary and the participle ; but this rule is not absolute, 608.—The adverbial form *C'est pourquoi*, therefore, must be placed at the beginning of a sentence or of a clause of a sentence, 127.—The adv. *y*, there, precedes the v. in all the moods, except the imperative, 201.

Model of construction for adverbial phrases marking augmentation or diminution, by the repetition of the comparative, 455.

The following adv. offer also some peculiarities : *Après*, 155 ;—*assez*, 36 ;—*aussi*, 197 ;—*bien*, 230 ;—*comme*, 169 ;—*devant*, 186 ;—*jamais*, 76 ;—*même*, 101 ;—*outre*, 339 ;—*peu*, 154 ;—*quand*, 176 ;—*tant*, 344 ;—*y*, 195.

Affirmation.—There is no such word in French as *do* or *did*, joined to a verb in order to give greater strength to an affirmation, 85.

Afin que, in order that.—Conj. which requires the subjunctive mood, 244.

AGE.—This termination enters into the formation of numerous substantives, many of which are the same, or nearly the same in both languages. Subst. in *age* are masc. 215.—Except *ambages*, *cage*, *hypallage*, *image*, *nage*, *page*, *plage*, *rage*, which are fem. 216.

Aïeul, ancestor.—Has two forms in the pl.: *aïeuls* and *aïeux*. The first is used only for grandfathers. *Aïeux* signifies ancestors or forefathers, 493.

Aigle, eagle.—Masc. by exc. 15; but in heraldic language, or in the sense of ensign, it is fem.

AIN.—Termination belonging to a small class of adjectives differing slightly from the English, 601.

Ainsi que, as well as.—One of the connectives after which the v. agrees with the first of its subjects only, 675.

AIRE.—Termination common to substantives and adjectives, many of which end in English in *ary* or in *ar*, 252.—Substantives ending in *aire* are masculine, 253.—The following are fem. by exc. *affaire*, *aire*, *chaire*, *circulaire*, *glaire*, *grammaire*, *haire*, *judiciaire*, *jugulaire*, *paire*, *urticaire*, *vimaire*, and the names of plants in *aire*, 254.

AISON.—Termination. Substantives ending in *aison* are fem. 79.

AL.—Termination. There are 250 adjectives ending in *al*, which are the same, or very nearly the same, in both languages, 30—There are besides about 90 adjectives ending in *el* in French and in *al* in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*, 217.

Adjectives ending in *al* generally form their plural by changing *al* into *aux*. There are some exceptions, 469.

Besides the adjectives in *al*, there are about 60 substantives having this termination, 40 of which are nearly the same in both languages, 378.

Substantives ending in *al* form their pl. by changing this termination into *aux*, 379.—The exceptions are: *bals*, *carnavals*, *régals*, *cals*, *avals*, *cantals*, *nopals*, *pals*, *chacals*, *serrals*, 380.

Aller, to go.—V. irr. Pres. part. regular. Pa. part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vais, tu vas, il va, nous allons, vous allez, ils vont.*—Imperfect tense, regular.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense: *J'irai, tu iras, il ira, nous irons, vous irez, ils iront.*—Conditional mood: *J'irais, tu irais, il irait, nous irions, vous iriez, ils iraient.*—Imperative mood: *Va, allons, allez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'aille, que tu ailles, qu'il aille, que nous allions, que vous alliez, qu'ils aillent.*—Past tense, regular.

This v. is always conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses, 335.—Governs the infinitive without a prep. 187.

Aller (s'en), to go away.—Is conjugated like *aller*, the particle *en* being placed immediately before the v. in its simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in its compound tenses, thus: *Je m'en vais, Je m'en suis allé.* Except the imperative mood: *Va-t'en, allons-nous-en, allez-vous-en.*

A moins que, unless.—Conj. followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.—Always followed by the negative *ne*, 458.

Amour, love.—Masc. in the sing. and pl. in plain language. Fem. by exc. (14) in the pl. in poetical language.

ANCE.—Termination which generally makes a subst. of a v. About 80 words ending in *ance* are the same in both languages, 23.

ANT.—Termination of the pres. part. 115.—Serves to form a great number of adjectives, called verbal adjectives, 219.

Any.—Is often rendered by the partitive art. *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, 93.—When the direct regimen of a v. it is rendered by *en*, placed before the v. except in the imperative mood, 484.

A peine, scarcely.—One of the adv. after which the subject pronoun may follow the v. 228.

Apercevoir, to perceive.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Apercevant.*—Pa. part. *Aperçu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'aperçois, tu aperçois, il aperçoit, nous apercevons, vous apercevez, ils aperçoivent.*—Imperfect tense: *J'apercevais, tu apercevais, il apercevait, nous apercevions, vous apercevez, ils apercevaient.*—Past tense definite: *J'aperçus, tu aperçus, il aperçut, nous aperçûmes, vous aperçûtes, ils aperçurent.*—Future tense: *J'apercevrai, tu apercevras, il apercevra, nous apercevrons, vous apercevrez, ils apercevront.*—Conditional mood: *J'apercevrais, tu apercevrais, il apercevrait, nous apercevrions, vous apercevriez, ils apercevraient.*—Imperative mood: *Aperçois, apercevons, apercevez.*—Subjunctive mood, present tense: *Que j'aperçoive, que tu aperçoives, qu'il aperçoive, que nous apercevions, que vous apercevez, qu'ils aperçoivent.*—Past tense: *Que j'aperçusse, que tu aperçusses, qu'il aperçût, que nous aperçussions, que vous aperçussiez, qu'ils aperçussent.*

The verbs *concevoir*, *décevoir*, *percevoir*, *recevoir*, *devoir*, and *redevoir*, are conjugated like *apercevoir*.

Après, after.—Prep. and adv. corresponding to *after*, *next*, *next to*, and *afterwards*, 155.—May be governed by *de*, 223.

Articles.—The French art. varies in gender and number, 4.—*Le* is masc. and sing. *La* is fem. and sing. *Les* is pl. and of both genders, 5.—The art. agrees in gender and number with the subst. 24.

The subst. whether used in a definite or an indefinite sense, is generally preceded by the art. unless there be some other determinative word annexed to it, such as *un* or *ce*, 35.—The art. must be repeated before each subst. 202.—The art. which is often omitted in English before an adj. or a title preceding a proper name, must not be suppressed in French, 314, 607.—When an adj. in the superlative degree, precedes the subst. one art. serves for both; but when the adj. follows, the art. must be repeated before it, 495.—When there are several adj. the art. is repeated each time before the words *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, 496.—Before *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, used in the superlative of comparison, the art. *le*, *la*, *les*, agrees in gender and number with the subst. which is the object of comparison, 649, § 1.—In the superlative absolute, that is, when no comparison is expressed, the art. *le* remains invariable, 649, § 2.—Proper names of countries, kingdoms, etc., take the art. 660.

When one subst. determines the sense of another, it is used without the art. provided it be not in its turn qualified by some other words, 161.—The art. is not used when subst. are combined with certain v. as: *avoir*, *faire*, *rendre*, *entendre*, and a few more, with which they express a single idea, 227.—The art. is generally suppressed before a subst. following a v. in a negative phrase; unless this subst. be modified by some words annexed to it, 390.—When the sense of the subs. which follows a v. in a negative phrase, is modified or restricted by some additional words, it takes the art. 391.

When *un* is used as a pron. it often takes the art. If *un* is joined or opposed to *autre*, the art. is indispensable before each of these pron. If *un* is not followed by *autre*, but is determined by *de* or *des*, the art. may be used or omitted before it, according as the sense of this pron. is more or less restricted by the construction of the phrase, 312.

The art. *le*, *la*, *les*, is used instead of a possessive adj. before a regimen, when the sense clearly shows who the possessor is, 62.—This substitution is particularly proper before the name of a part of the body, or of a mental faculty; but, in order to avoid ambiguity, care must be taken to make use of a pron. showing who the possessor is, 593.

The prep. *à* and *de* combine with *le* and *les*, with which they form the compounds *au*, 55 ; *aux*, 140 ; *du*, 143 ; and *des*, 113.

De is often a definitive, either alone or combined with the art. *le*, *la*, *les*, and is then called a partitive article, corresponding to the English words *some* and *any*. The two words *de le* are contracted into one word, *du* ; and *de les* are contracted into *des* ; but the words *de la* remain separate, 93.—The use of this partitive art. is much more frequent in French than is the use of *some* and *any* in English, and occurs when these words are understood or altogether suppressed, 102.—The art. is suppressed, and *de* alone is employed, when the subst. is preceded by an adj. 103.—The partitive art. *de*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, corresponding to *some* or *any*, must be repeated before each subst. as well as the simple art. 331.

ASME.—Termination. Subst. ending in *asme* are masc. 589.

Assaillir, to assail.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Assaillant.*—Pa. part. *Assailli.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *J'assaille, tu assailles, il assaille, nous assaillons, vous assaillez, ils assaillent.*—Imperfect tense : *J'assaillais, tu assaillais, il assaillait, nous assaillions, vous assailliez, ils assaillaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Assaille, assaillons, assaillez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que j'assaille, que tu assailles, qu'il assaille, que nous assaillions, que vous assailliez, qu'ils assaillent.*—Past tense, regular.

Asseoir, to seat.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Asseyant.*—Pa. part. *Assis.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *J'assieds, tu assieds, il assied, nous asseyons, vous asseyez, ils asseyent.*—Imperfect tense : *J'asseyais, tu asseyais, il asseyait, nous asseyions, vous asseyiez, ils asseyaient.*—Past tense definite : *J'assis, tu assis, il assit, nous assîmes, vous assîtes, ils assirent.*—Future tense: *J'assiérai, tu assiéras, il assiéra, nous assiérons, vous assiérez, ils assiéront,*—or : *J'asseyerai*, etc.—Conditional mood : *J'assiérais, tu assiérais, il assiérait, nous assiérions, vous assiériez, ils assiéraient,*—or : *J'asseyerais*, etc.—Imperative mood : *Assieds, asseyons, asseyez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que j'asseye, que tu asseyes, qu'il asseye, que nous asseyions, que vous asseyiez, qu'ils asseyent.*—Past tense : *Que j'assisse, que tu assisses, qu'il assît, que nous assissions, que vous assissiez, qu'ils assissent.*—This v. may also be conjugated as follows : *Assoyant.*—*J'assois*, etc., *nous assoyons*, etc.—*J'assoyais*, etc.—*J'assoirai*, etc.—*J'assoirais*, etc.—*Assois, assoyons, assoyez.*—*Que j'assoie.*—It is very often reflective and conjugated with a double pronoun. See PRONOMINAL VERBS.

Assez, enough. — Adv. which precedes the adj., the adv., or the subst. which it modifies, 36.

AT.—Termination, which often makes a subst. of a v. and denotes the end obtained or the action done. It is added also to some titles of persons, and denotes their function or quality, 163.

ATE.—Termination. The names of salts ending in *ate* are masc. 606.

ATION.—Termination of numerous subst. from which verbs may be obtained by changing *ation* into *er*, 262.—Subst. in *ation* are fem. 99.

Attendu.—Pa. part. of the v. *attendre*, to expect. When employed as a prep. signifying, *in consideration of*, precedes the subst. which it governs and is invariable, 673.

AU.—Termination. Subst. ending in *au* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 232.—Adj. ending in *au* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 285.

Au, to the, at the.—Contraction of *à* and *le*, 55.

Au cas que, in case that.—Conj. followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Aucun.—Indefinite pronominal adj. corresponding to *any*, and with a negation, to *no*, *none*, *not one*. It is seldom used in the pl. Its fem. is *aucune*, 240. *Pas de*, like *aucun*, corresponds to *no* or *not any* ; but it differs from *aucun* inasmuch as it refers to the pl. as well as the sing. and has besides a more indefinite sense. *Aucun* usually means *not one*, 385. — The combination *un* remains nasal, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Au moins, at least.—After this adv. the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

Auprès, near.—May be governed by *de*, 223.—Is an adv. and a prep. *Près* and *auprès* are both translated by the word *near*. When used as prep. they are followed by *de*. The difference between these two words is slight. *Auprès* denotes well known and determined proximity ; *près* has something more vague. Thus, we say, *Plus près, moins près*, and not, *Plus auprès, moins auprès*, 615.

Aussi.—Adv. which corresponds to *also*, *too*, *likewise*, *so*, and *as*; with the last meaning, before adj. and adv. it denotes equality and requires *que* after the adj. or the adv. 197.—After *aussi* in the sense of *also*, the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.—As an adv. of comparison, it must be repeated before each adj., v., or adv. which it modifies, 427.—In English, after *so* and *as*, the indefinite art. *a*, *an*, is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French the adv. *aussi* is preceded by *un*, *une*, 434.—In the comparative of equality, the word *as* is expressed by *aussi* before the adj., the part., or the adv., and by *que* after it. In negative phrases, the adv. *so*, before the adj., the part., or the adv., may be rendered either by *aussi* or by *si*, 475.

Aussi bien que, as well as.—After this connective, the v. agrees with its first subject only, 675.

Aussitôt, as soon.—See TÔT. 633.

Autant.—Adv. denoting equality, and corresponding to *as much*, *as many*, *so much*, *so many*. The conj. *as*, following these adv. is rendered by *que*, 584.

Automne, autumn.—Is of both genders. Oftener masc. than fem.

Autrui.—Subst. or indefinite pron. signifying *another* or *others*. Is invariable. L. 38.

Aux.—Contraction of *à les*, to the, at the, 140.

Auxiliary verbs.—See *Avoir* and *Être*.

Avant, before. —Prep. which must not be confounded with *devant*, before, which simply denotes place or situation. *Avant* marks priority of time or of place, 327.

Avec.—Prep. corresponding to *with*, 168. —May be governed by *de*, 223.—The ellipsis of this prep. is common in such phrases as the

following: *Le sac sur le dos, le fusil sur l'épaule*, 638.

Avoir, to have.—V. irr. For its conjugation, see Synoptical Table p. 572.—Employed, like the v. *to have*, in English, in forming the compound tenses of the other verbs, 95, except the pronominal verbs, 567; and some neuter verbs, 335.—There are various states, dispositions, and sensations both of body and mind, expressed in English by the v. *to be*, joined to an adj. which are generally rendered in French by means of the v. *avoir*, with a subst. 295.

Having, placed as an auxiliary between a prep. and a v. is sometimes suppressed in English, and the principal v. is governed directly by the prep. thus: *After making*, for *After having made*. This abbreviation would not be correct in French, 617.

Y AVOIR, there to be, is impersonal: Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il y a*, there is, there are—Imperfect: *Il y avait*, there was, there were—Past tense definite: *Il y eut*, there was, there were—Future tense: *Il y aura*, there will be—Conditional mood: *Il y aurait*, there would be.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be—Past tense: *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.—In interrogations *y* remains before the v. and *il* is placed after it, thus: *Y a-t-il*, is there; *y avait-il*, was there, etc. 218.

The v. *y avoir* is frequently used before words denoting the time elapsed since an event took place, or the time during which a state or an action has been continued. The *que* which follows signifies *since*, 643, § 1.—When *Il y a*, denoting time elapsed, precedes the principal v. the word *que*, signifying *since*, is required; but when the principal v. is placed first, *que* is of course unnecessary, 646.

B.

Battre, to beat.—V. irr. only in the three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indic. mood: *Je bats, tu bats, il bat*. The second person sing. of the imperative is of course *bats*, 460.—The rest is regular.

Abattre, *combattre*, *débattre*, *rabattre*, and *rebattre*, are conjugated like *battre*.

Beau, fine.—*Bel* before a subst. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.—Fem. *belle*.

Benit, blessed, holy.—Fem. *bénite*. Irr. part. of the v. *bénir*, only used in the sense of, consecrated by the church. In all other cases, the pa. part. of *bénir* is regular.

Bien, well.—Before adj. and adv. corresponds to *very*, 114. Becomes a synonym of *beaucoup*, when it is combined with the compound article *du*, *de la*, *des*, and corresponds to *much* and *many*, 239.—Is often used redundantly, and cannot be either translated literally, or even be translated at all, into English, 474.—The letters *ien* form a nasal diphthong, even when the final *n* of *bien* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Bien que, though.—Conj. which is followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Bientôt, soon.—See TÔT, 633.

Boire, to drink.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Buvant*.—Pa. part. *Bu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je bois, tu bois, il boit, nous buvons, vous buvez, ils boivent*.—Imperfect: *Je buvais, tu buvais, il buvait, nous buvions, vous buviez, ils buvaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je bus, tu bus, il but, nous bûmes, vous bûtes, ils burent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Bois, buvons, buvez*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive, que nous buvions, que vous buviez, qu'ils boivent*.—Past tense: *Que je busse, que tu busses, qu'il bût, que nous bussions, que vous bussiez, qu'ils bussent*.

Bouillir, to boil.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Bouillant*.—Pa. part. *Bouilli*.—Indic. mood; pres. tense: *Je bous, tu bous, il bout, nous bouillons, vous bouillez, ils bouillent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je bouillais, tu bouillais, il bouillait, nous bouillions, vous bouilliez, ils bouillaient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Bous, bouillons, bouillez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense. *Que je bouille, que tu bouilles, qu'il bouille, que nous bouillions, que vous bouilliez, qu'ils bouillent*.—Past tense, regular.

Braire, to bray.—V. irr. conjugated like *traire*, but scarcely ever used otherwise than in the third person, sing. and pl., and in the infinitive.

Bruire, to make a noise.—V. irr. and defective, employed only in the infinitive mood; in the third person sing. of the pres. tense, indic. mood: *Il bruit*; and in the third persons sing. and pl. of the imperfect: *Il bruyait, ils bruyaient*.

By.—This prep. when used in English before the pres. part. to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by *en*, 521.

C.

Ça.—Familiar abbreviation of *cela*, which see.

Can.—Eng. v.—Sometimes rendered by *savoir*, 281.

Ce.—Is sometimes a demonstrative pronoun, and sometimes a demonstrative adjective. As an adj. it signifies *this* and *that*. It is masc. and sing. It always precedes a subst. It is placed before words beginning with a consonant. Before a vowel, it becomes *cet*. The fem. is *cette*. The pl. of both genders is *ces*, these and those, 19.

Ce, as a pronoun, generally corresponds to *it*. It is followed by the v. *être* or by a relative pron. Though the neuter gender is not acknowledged by French grammarians, and indeed does not exist in substantives, this pronoun presents the characteristics of neutrality, 26.—When it precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed and an apostrophe substituted for it, 11.—When *ce*, before a relative pron. as *qui*, *que*, *dont*, etc., begins a phrase, and is followed by the v. *être* with another v., *ce* must be repeated before *être*, 683.—When two or more infinitives are the subjects of the v. *être* followed by a subst. they are generally summed up by the pron. *ce*, with which the v. *être* agrees, 685.—The pron. *ce* must always be placed before the v. *être*, when this v. is preceded and followed by an infinitive, 684.—In inversive phrases, in which *ce*, the v. *être*, and the regimen precede the subject, *que* is employed as a connective, when both the subject and regimen are substantives, 690.—*Ce*, before the v. *etre*, requires this v. to be in the singular, unless it be followed by a third person of the pl. number, 694, § 1.—Before a third person pl. the major part of writers employ the v. *être* in the pl. 694, § 2.—*Ce* is often employed for *he*, *she*, or *they*, as the subject of a proposition, the predicate of which is a subst. or a pron. 696.

Ceci, this.—Demonstrative pron. formed of *ce* and *ci*, here. Refers to things only. Has no fem. and no pl. 522.

Cedilla.—A small mark placed under the letter *c* (thus ç), in order to give it the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, and *u*. See Introductory Lesson.—Verbs ending in the infinitive mood in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c* before the vowels *a* and *o*, 48.

Ceindre, to circle.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *Verbs in* INDRE.

Cela, that.—Demonstrative pron. formed of *ce* and *là*, there. Corresponds to *that*, and sometimes to *this* and to *it*. Refers to things only. Has no fem. and no pl. In familiar language, chiefly in conversation, is contracted into *ça*, 198.

Celui, this, that. — Demonstrative pronoun. The fem. is *celle*. The pl. is *ceux* for the masc. and *celles* for the fem., both corresponding to *these* and *those*, 100.

Cent, hundred.—Takes the mark of the pl. when preceded by another number which multiplies it, thus: *deux cents, trois cents*, 546.—But when followed by another number, it is invariable, thus: *deux cent trente*, 547.—Invariable also when it stands for *centième*, 652.

CER. Termination.—Verbs ending in the infinitive mood in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c*, before the vowels *a* and *o*, in order that the *c* may preserve the sound of *s*, 48.

C'est pourquoi, therefore. — This adv. must be placed at the beginning of a sentence or of a clause of a sentence, 127.

Cet. Stands for *ce*, before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 19.

Chacun. — Indefinite pron. formed of *chaque*, every, and *un*, one. Corresponds to *each*, *every one*, *everybody*. Its fem. is *chacune*. It has no pl. When used in a general sense, it refers only to persons and is always masc. When it relates to some determined object, it takes either of the genders, and is used in speaking of things as well as of persons. Before a subst. or a pron. it is followed by *de*, 599.

Chez.—Prep. signifying *at* or *in the house of*. It also corresponds to *home*. This prep. is also used in the sense of *among*, *with*, or *in*, 177. May be governed by *de*, 223.

Choir, to fall.—V. irr. and defective, used only in the infinitive, and sometimes in the pa. part. *chu*, with the auxil. *être*, 335.

Chose, thing.—Is a fem. subst. 15. But *Peu de chose*, little, and *Quelque chose*, something, anything, are adverbial forms which are masc. 166.

Ci.—Abbreviation of the adv. *ici*, here. Is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting nearness, in opposition to *là*, which marks remoteness. *Ci* is joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 351. *Ci* is likewise added to the demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, and *celles*, 352.—*Ci* is sometimes prefixed to adjectives; and it forms adverbial expressions with the prepositions, *après*, *contre*, *dessous*, *dessus*, and *devant*, 353.

Ciel, heaven.—Has two forms in the pl. *ciels* and *cieux*. *Ciels* is used only in the following instances: *Ciels de tableaux*, skies in painting; *ciels de lit*, testers of a bed; *ciels de carrière*, the first layers or strata in a quarry; *ciels*, climates. In any other case, *cieux* is employed, 233.

CIRCON.—Inseparable preposition, fr. the Latin *circum*, signifying *about*, *around*. The derivatives formed by means of this prefix are very nearly the same in both languages; the Latin spelling of *circum* being preserved in English, and slightly altered in French, 162.

Circoncire, to circumcise. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Circoncisant*.—Pa. part. *Circoncis*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je circoncis, tu circoncis, il circoncit, nous circoncisons, vous circoncisez, ils circoncisent*. — Imperfect: *Je circoncisais, tu circoncisais, il circoncisait, nous circoncisions, vous circoncisiez, ils circoncisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je circoncis, tu circoncis, il circoncit, nous circoncîmes, vous circoncîtes, ils circoncirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood: *Circoncis, circoncisons, circoncisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je circoncise, que tu circoncises, qu'il circoncise, que nous circoncisions, que vous circoncisiez, qu'ils circoncisent*.—Past tense: *Que je circoncisse, que tu circoncisses, qu'il circoncît, que nous circoncissions, que vous circoncissiez, qu'ils circoncissent*.

CLE.—Termination. Substantives ending in *cle* are masc. Some of them are the same in both languages, 587, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc. or rather they follow the general rule (15): *besicles, boucle, débâcle, escarboucle, marle, manicle, sanicle*, 587, § 2.

Clore, to close.—V. irr. and defective, used only: in the three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood, *Je clos, tu clos, il clôt*; in the future tense, which is regular; in the conditional mood, which is regular; and in the compound tenses. The pa. part. is *clos*.

CO.—Prefix. See CON.

COL.—Prefix. Stands for *con* before words primarily beginning with *l*, 75. The *l* is pronounced as double in such words.

Collective nouns.—There are two sorts of collective words: the general and the partitive. The general collective words are those which denote the whole of the persons or things spoken of, as: *the army, the multitude, the people, the crowd*. The partitive collective words designate but a part or an undetermined number of the persons or things mentioned, as: *the major part, a number, a species, a sort*. Among the latter are included the adverbs of quantity: as: *peu*, few; *beaucoup*, many, etc. 205.—The same word may be generally or partially collective, according as it is used, as: *Le nombre de ses enfants*, The number of his children;—*Un grand nombre d'enfants*, A great number of children, or many children. When a collective substantive is preceded by *un* or *une*, it is commonly partitive, 206.—When a partitive collective noun, as *la plupart*, or an adv. of quantity, as *beaucoup*, is followed by *de* and a subst., the v., adj., part., and pron. agree with the latter subst. or with the pron. which supplies its place, 220.—After an adv. of quantity or a partitive collective noun, the prep. *de* is commonly used without the article, unless the next subst. be determined by some incidental clause. But *la plupart* is an exception, and requires the compound article after it, 221.—*La plupart* is sometimes employed elliptically without a subst. after it. In this case the following v. is always in the plural number, agreeing with a pl. subject understood, 222.—A noun of multitude in the sing. number requires that the v. or pron. should agree with it in the sing. number; unless it be employed as a partitive collective noun, 629.—When a general collective noun is followed by *de* and a subst. the v., adj., part., and pron. agree with the collective noun, 670.—When adverbs of quantity, such as *peu*, *beaucoup*, *assez*, are employed as collective words, the v. agrees with the subst. that follows them, 664, § 1.—If this subst. is understood, the v. nevertheless agrees with it, 664, § 2.

Combien.—Adv. corresponding to *how*, *how much*, and *how many*. See Lesson 1.

Comme.—Adv. and conj. corresponding to *as*, *like*, and *how*, 169.

Comparative.—There are two ways

of forming the comparative degree in English, when it denotes superiority, as: *brisker* or *more brisk*: there is but one in French: the adv. *plus* is placed before the adj. or the adv. When in English the conjunction *than* follows, it is rendered by *que*. The same conj. follows *moins*, less, when the comparative denotes inferiority, 220.—In the comparative of equality, the word *as* is expressed by *aussi* before the adj., the part., or the adv., and by *que* after it (197). In negative phrases the adv. *so*, before the adj., the part., or the adv., may be rendered either by *aussi* or by *si*, 475.

Compound tenses.—See TENSES.

Con or **Co.**—Prefix, or inseparable particle, fr. the Latin *cum*, with. It denotes *association, concord, gathering, putting together*. It begins words which are generally the same, or nearly the same, in English. In French, as well as in English, *co* or *con* is changed into *col, com, cor*, according to the letter which begins the radical word, 75.

Concevoir, to conceive.—V. irr. conjugated like *apercevoir*.

Conclure, to conclude.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Concluant*.—Pa. part. *Conclu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous concluons, vous concluez, ils concluent*.—Imperfect tense, regular.—Past tense definite: *Je conclus, tu conclus, il conclut, nous conclûmes, vous conclutes, ils conclurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Conclus, concluons, concluez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, regular.—Past tense: *Que je conclusse, que tu conclusses, qu'il conclût, que nous conclussions, que vous conclussiez, qu'ils conclussent*.

Conditional mood.—This mood is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re*:—*ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*, 640, § 1.—It is to be observed that these terminations are the same which serve to form the imperfect tense of the indicative, by being substituted for that of the infinitive mood, 640, § 2.—When *quand* signifies *though, although*, it is always followed by a v. in the conditional mood, 408.—When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the verb that follows the conj. is used in the pres. tense of the indicative with the correlative v. of the phrase in the future; or the conj. is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second v. in the conditional mood, 422.—But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence, 423.

Conduire, to conduct.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Conduisant*.—Pa. part. *Conduit*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je conduis, tu conduis, il conduit, nous conduisons, vous conduisez, ils conduisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je conduisais, tu conduisais, il conduisait, nous conduisions, vous conduisiez, ils conduisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je conduisis, tu conduisis, il conduisit, nous conduisîmes, vous conduisîtes, ils conduisirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Conduis, conduisons, conduisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je conduise, que tu conduises, qu'il conduise, que nous conduisions, que vous conduisiez, qu'ils conduisent*.—Past tense: *Que je conduisisse, que tu conduisisses, qu'il conduisît, que nous conduisissions, que vous conduisissiez, qu'ils conduisissent*.

Confire, to preserve.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Confisant*.—Pa. part. *Confit*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confisons, vous confisez, ils confisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je confisais, tu confisais, il confisait, nous confisions, vous confisiez, ils confisaient*. Past tense definite: *Je confis, tu confis, il confit, nous confîmes, vous confîtes, ils confirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Confis, confisons, confisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je confise, que tu confises, qu'il confise, que nous confisions, que vous confisiez, qu'ils confisent*.—Past tense, not in use.

Conjugations.—See SYNOPTICAL TABLE, page 572. See also VERBS and TENSES.

Conjunctions.—The principal conj. are: *ainsi que, à moins que, car, comme, donc, et, lorsque, mais, ni, or, ou, pourvu que, parce que, pendant que, quand, que, quoique, si, sinon, soit que, tandis que*. Those which present any peculiarity will be found in their respective places.

Connaître, to know.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Connaissant*. Pa. part. *Connu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je connais, tu connais, il connaît, nous connaissons, vous connaissez, ils connaissent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je connaissais, tu connaissais, il connaissait, nous connaissions, vous connaissiez, ils connaissaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je connus, tu connus, il connut, nous connûmes, vous connûtes, ils connurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Connais, connaissons, connaissez*.—Subjunctive mood: *Que je connaisse, que tu connaisses, qu'il connaisse, que nous connaissions, que vous connaissiez, qu'ils connaissent*.—Past tense: *Que je connusse, que tu connusses, qu'il connût, que nous connussions, que vous connussiez, qu'ils connussent*.

Construire, to construct.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

Contraindre, to constrain.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*.

Coudre, to sew.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Cousant*.—Pa. part. *Cousu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je couds, tu couds, il coud, nous cousons, vous cousez, ils cousent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je cousais, tu cousais, il cousait, nous cousions, vous cousiez, ils cousaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je cousis, tu cousis, il cousit, nous cousîmes, vous cousîtes, ils cousirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Couds, cousons, cousez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je couse, que tu couses, qu'il couse, que nous cousions, que vous cousiez, qu'ils cousent*.—Past tense: *Que je cousisse, que tu cousisses, qu'il cousît, que nous cousissions, que vous cousissiez, qu'ils cousissent*.

Couple, couple.—Masc. by exc. 15, when it signifies two animated beings acting in concert, or two persons or animals of different sexes; but when *couple* signifies only two things of the same kind, it is fem.

Courir, to run.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Courant*.—Pa. part. *Couru*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je cours, tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courez, ils courent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je courais, tu courais, il courait, nous courions, vous couriez, ils couraient*.—Past tense definite: *Je courus, tu courus, il courut, nous courûmes, vous courûtes, ils coururent*.—Future tense: *Je courrai, tu courras, il courra, nous courrons, vous courrez, ils courront*. Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *Je courrais, tu courrais, il courrait, nous courrions, vous courriez, ils courraient*.—Pronounce *rr* as double.—Imperative mood: *Cours, courons, courez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je coure, que tu coures, qu'il coure, que nous courions, que vous couriez, qu'ils courent*.—Past tense: *Que je courusse, que tu courusses, qu'il courût, que nous courussions, que vous courussiez, qu'ils courussent*.

Courre, to run, to hunt.—V. irr. conjugated like *courir.* Seldom used, except in the language of hunters.

Couvrir, to cover.—V. irr. conjugated like *ouvrir.*

Craindre, to fear.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Craignant.* — Pa. part. *Craint.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je crains, tu crains, il craint, nous craignons, vous craignez, ils craignent.*—Imperfect: *Je craignais, tu craignais, il craignait, nous craignions, vous craigniez, ils craignaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je craignis, tu craignis, il craignit, nous craignîmes, vous craignîtes, ils craignirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Crains, craignons, craignez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je craigne, que tu craignes, qu'il craigne, que nous craignions, que vous craigniez, qu'ils craignent.*—Past tense: *Que je craignisse, que tu craignisses, qu'il craignît, que nous craignissions, que vous craignissiez, qu'ils craignissent.*

All verbs ending in *indre* are conjugated like *craindre.*

Croire, to believe.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Croyant.*—Pa. part. *Cru.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je crois, tu crois, il croit, nous croyons, vous croyez, ils croient.*—Imperfect: *Je croyais, tu croyais, il croyait, nous croyions, vous croyiez, ils croyaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je crus, tu crus, il crut, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crurent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Crois, croyons, croyez.* —Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je croie, que tu croies, qu'il croie, que nous croyions, que vous croyiez, qu'ils croient.* — Past tense: *Que je crusse, que tu crusses, qu'il crût, que nous crussions, que vous crussiez, qu'ils crussent.*

Croître, to grow.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Croissant.*—Pa. part. *Crû.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je crois, tu crois, il croît, nous croissons, vous croissez, ils croissent.*—Imperfect. *Je croissais, tu croissais, il croissait, nous croissions, vous croissiez, ils croissaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je crûs, tu crûs, il crût, nous crûmes, vous crûtes, ils crûrent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Crois, croissons, croissez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je croisse, que tu croisses, qu'il croisse, que nous croissions, que vous croissiez, qu'ils croissent.*—Past tense: *Que je crusse, que tu crusses, qu'il crût, que nous crussions, que vous crussiez, qu'ils crussent.*

Cueillir, to gather.—V. irr. Pronounced as if spelled (in French) *kœillir.*—Pres. part. *Cueillant.*—Pa. part. *Cueilli.*—Indicative mood, present tense: *Je cueille, tu cueilles, il cueille, nous cueillons, vous cueillez, ils cueillent.*—Imperfect: *Je cueillais, tu cueillais, il cueillait, nous cueillions, vous cueilliez, ils cueillaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je cueillis, tu cueillis, il cueillit, nous cueillîmes, vous cueillîtes, ils cueillirent.*—Future tense: *Je cueillerai, tu cueilleras, il cueillera, nous cueillerons, vous cueillerez, ils cueilleront.*—Conditional mood: *Je cueillerais, tu cueillerais, il cueillerait, nous cueillerions, vous cueilleriez, ils cueilleraient.*—Imperative mood: *Cueille, cueillons, cueillez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je cueille, que tu cueilles, qu'il cueille, que nous cueillions, que vous cueilliez, qu'ils cueillent.*—Past tense: *Que je cueillisse, que tu cueillisses, qu'il cueillît, que nous cueillissions, que vous cueillissiez, qu'ils cueillissent.*

Accueillir and *recueillir* are conjugated like *cueillir.*

Cuire, to cook.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire.*

D.

Dame, lady.—See MADAME, or 618, 619.

Dans.—Preposition corresponding to *in, into,* and *within,* 112.—Has a precise and determined sense. Is usually followed by an article, unless some other definitive comes after it, as *ce, cette, un, une,* etc. 191.

De.—Prep. One of the most important among the French prep. Generally corresponds to *of* and *from* in English; but besides is often rendered by *to, with, by, on, in,* or by the sign of the possessive case (*'s*), 16.

When it precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the *e* is suppressed and an apostrophe substituted for it, 11. This elision, however, does not take place before *onze,* eleven, *onzième,* eleventh, 229.

This prep. is required between an adv. of quantity and a subst. 39.

Is also used as a determinative, either alone or combined with the article *le, la, les,* 93. See ARTICLE.—The art. is suppressed, and *de* alone is employed, when the subst. is preceded by an adj. 103.

The prep. *de* must be repeated before each subst., adj., pron., or v. which it governs, 109.

The prep. *in,* required in English after a superlative and before the name of a place, is rendered by *de* and not by *dans,* 128.

List of verbs which govern the infinitive with *de,* 189; with either *à* or *de,* 190.

De sometimes governs *après,* after; *avec,* with; *en,* in; *entre,* between; *chez,* in the house of; *par,* by; *près, auprès,* near, 223.

Between a v. and a subst. denoting the cause of the state or action which this v. expresses, or the thing made use of to attain to it, the prep. *with* is very often rendered in French by *de,* 265.

De must be prefixed to an adj. which follows *rien,* nothing, or an indefinite expression, such as *quelque chose,* something, any thing; *quoi que ce soit,* any thing whatever, 411.

The choice between *de* and *par* after a passive v. is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French. In general, *de* is preferable between a passive v. and the name of the agent, when the v. expresses a feeling, as *chéri, estimé,* and *par* is more properly employed when the v. expresses an action, as *battre, punir,* 648.

When *mieux,* better, is followed by two infinitives, *de* is placed before the second, even though the first be not preceded by this prep. 674.

The word *than* is rendered by *de,* instead of *que,* after *plus,* more, and *moins,* less, when these adv. are followed by a numeral adj. or subst. 676.

Dé.—Prefix. Inseparable particle, often negative like *dis* (see 250), but sometimes having the sense of the prep. *de,* from, and denoting extraction or removing, 519, § 1.—It becomes DÉS before a vowel, 519, § 2.

Décevoir, to deceive.—V. irr. conjugated like *apercevoir.*

Déchoir, to decline.—V. irr. No. pres. part.—Pa. part. *déchu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je déchois, tu déchois, il déchoit, nous déchoyons, vous déchoyez, ils déchoient.*—Imperfect tense, not in use.—Past tense definite: *Je déchus, tu déchus, il déchut, nous déchûmes, vous déchûtes, ils déchurent.*—Future tense: *Je décherrai, tu décherras, il décherra, nous décherrons, vous décherrez, ils décherront.*—Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *Je décherrais, tu décherrais, il décherrait, nous décherrions, vous décherriez, ils décherraient.*—Pronounce *rr* as double.—Imperative mood: *Déchois, déchoyons, déchoyez.*—Subjunctive

mood, pres. tense: *Que je déchoie, que tu déchoies, qu'il déchoie, que nous déchoyions, que vous déchoyiez, qu'ils déchoient.*—Past tense: *Que je déchusse, que tu déchusses, qu'il déchût, que nous déchussions, que vous déchussiez, qu'ils déchussent.*—It is conjugated with *avoir*, when it expresses an action; and with *être*, when it expresses a state.

De crainte que, lest.—Conj. followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Déduire, to deduct.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

Défaillir, to faint.—V. irr. used only in the following forms. Pres. part. *Défaillant.*—Pa. part. *Défailli.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Nous défaillons, vous défaillez, ils défaillent.*—Imperfect: *Je défaillais, tu défaillais, il défaillait, nous défaillions, vous défaillez, ils défaillaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je défaillis, tu défaillis, il défaillit, nous défaillîmes, vous défaillîtes, ils défaillirent.*—In the past tense indefinite: *J'ai défailli*, etc., and in the infinitive.

Degrees of comparison.—Are not usually formed in French by means of a termination; but by placing before the adj. or adv. one of the following adv.: *aussi*, as; *plus*, more, most; *moins*, less, least; *très*, *fort*, *bien*, very, 114.

Délice, delight.—Masc. in the sing. by exc. 15; fem. in the pl.

De même que, in the same manner as.—After this connective placed between two subject subst. the verb agrees with the first subject only, 675.

Demeurer, to dwell.—Conjugated with *avoir*, when the subject has ceased to be in a place; with *être*, when the subject is still in the same place or condition.

Demi, half.—When this adj. follows a subst. it takes its gender, but always remains in the sing. 358.—It is invariable: before a subst. 691;—and in compound adjectives, 668.

Demoiselle, lady.—See MADEMOISELLE, or 621, 622.

Demonstrative.—See ADJECTIVES and PRONOUNS.

De peur que, lest.—Conj. followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Des.—Art. pl.—Contraction of *de les*, 113.

Dessous.—Is either an adv. signifying *under* or *below*, or a subst. signifying *under part*. It is seldom used as a prep. *Au-dessous*, under, beneath, below, is always an adv. unless it be followed by *de*, in which case it becomes a prep. and requires a regimen. The same observations are applicable to *dessus*, 634.

Dessus, on.—See DESSOUS.

Détruire, to destroy.—V. irr. Conjugated like *conduire*.

Devant, before.—Prep. denoting place and corresponding to *before*, *in front of*, *opposite to*, *ahead of*. It is also used as an adv. 186.—Must not be confounded with *avant*, 327.

Devoir, to owe, ought.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Devant.*—Pa. part. *Dû.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je dois, tu dois, il doit, nous devons, vous devez, ils doivent.*—Imperfect: *Je devais, tu devais, il devait, nous devions, vous deviez, ils devaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je dus, tu dus, il dut, nous dûmes, vous dûtes, ils durent.*—Future tense: *Je devrai, tu devras, il devra, nous devrons, vous devrez, ils devront.*—Conditional mood: *Je devrais, tu devrais, il devrait, nous devrions, vous devriez, ils devraient.*—Imperative mood: *Dois, devons, devez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je doive, que tu doives, qu'il doive, que nous devions, que vous deviez, qu'ils doivent.*—Past tense: *Que je dusse, que tu dusses, qu'il dût que, nous dussions, que vous dussiez, qu'ils dussent.*

The English verb *ought*, being defective, has no form corresponding to the pa. part. *dû*. This deficiency gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: *dû* forming a compound tense with the auxil. v. *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, 647.

Dieresis.—The dieresis (¨) placed over one of two vowels, denotes that they are to be separated, 558.

Dimension.—In English, the usual manner of expressing dimensions is to employ the v. *to be*, with the noun of measure *followed* by an adj. as: *An eel which was three feet long.* In French, the v. *être* may also be employed, with the adj. and the prep. *de preceding* the measure, thus: *Une anguille qui était longue de trois pieds*; but the construction with the v. *avoir* is more commonly used, thus: *Une anguille qui avait trois pieds de longueur.* The measure immediately follows *avoir* and precedes *de* and a *subst.* of dimension, 356.—When neither *être* nor *avoir* is used, an *adjective* of dimension, with *de*, may precede the measure, thus: *Une anguille longue de trois pieds*; or the measure, with *de* before and after it, may precede a *substantive* of dimension, thus: *Une anguille de trois pieds de longueur*, 357.

Dire, to say.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Disant.*—Pa. part. *Dit.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous disons, vous dites, ils disent.*—Imperfect: *Je disais, tu disais, il disait, nous disions, vous disiez, ils disaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je dis, tu dis, il dit, nous dîmes, vous dîtes, ils dirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Dis, disons, dites.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je dise, que tu dises, qu'il dise, que nous disions, que vous disiez, qu'ils disent.*—Past tense: *Que je disse, que tu disses, qu'il dît, que nous dissions, que vous dissiez, qu'ils dissent.*

Redire, to say again, is conjugated exactly like *dire*.

Contredire, to contradict; *dédire*, to gainsay; *interdire*, to interdict; *médire*, to slander; and *prédire*, to foretell, are conjugated like *dire*, except that the second person pl. of the pres. tense indic. mood, and the same person of the imperative is *contredisez*, *dédisez*, *interdisez*, *médisez*, and *prédisez*.

Maudire, to curse, is conjugated like the regular verbs in *ir*; but its pa. part. is *maudit*.

Dis.—Prefix. Inseparable particle, which has two very different meanings in the composition of words: the first, negative, as in *disgrâce*, the second intensive, denoting diffusion, or increasing the import of the radical word, as in *distendre*. It is sometimes shortened into *di*, as in *diminuer*, to diminish; and sometimes changed into *dif*, when the radical begins with *f*. Among the derivatives formed by means of this particle, many are nearly the same in both languages, 250.

Dont.—Relative pron. of both genders and numbers. It is used in speaking of persons or of things. It has the different significations of *de qui*, *de quoi*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, and *desquelles*; and therefore corresponds to the English expressions *whose*, *of whom*, *from whom*, *of which*, *from which*. Although these pronouns have the same meaning as *dont*, they cannot be used indiscriminately for it, 441.

Dont is generally used after *ce*, rather than *de quoi*, 444.

When *dont* signifies *whose*, and accordingly determines the sense of a subst., that subst. must always be preceded by the article; and, if it is the regimen of a v., it must be placed

after the v., instead of following the pron. as it does in English, 485.

If the subst. determined by *dont* is the subject of the verb, it occupies the same place as in English, but is still preceded by the art. 486.

Dont is never preceded by a prep. Accordingly, when *whose* follows a prep. it must be rendered by *duquel, de laquelle, desquels*, or *desquelles*, placed after the subst. in connection with *whose*, 499.

When *of which* is used in the sense of *whose*, and rendered by *dont*, the construction is the same as that pointed out by rules 485 and 486, and this pron. must never follow the subst. which it determines, 550.

Dormir, to sleep. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Dormant.* — Pa. part. regular. — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je dors, tu dors, il dort, nous dormons, vous dormez, ils dorment.*—Imperfect: *Je dormais, tu dormais, il dormait, nous dormions, vous dormiez, ils dormaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular. — Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood: *Dors, dormons, dormez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je dorme, que tu dormes, qu'il dorme, que nous dormions, que vous dormiez, qu'ils dorment.*—Past tense, regular.

Du, of the, from the.—Contraction of *de le*, 143.

Du moins, at least.—After this adv. the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

E.

E, EX, Prefix.—Inseparable particle, signifying *from, out of;* it generally denotes extraction or derivation. Most of the words into which it is incorporated have their correspondents in English nearly similar, 363.

E, ES, S. Prefix.—In many words, coming for the greater part from the Latin, and originally beginning with *s* and another consonant, the vowel *e* has been prefixed to *s*, for the sake of euphony, as: *espace*, space, etc. 600, § 1.—Some of these words have now lost the *s* which was preserved in old French, as: *étable*, stable, etc. 600, § 2.—It often happens, however, that in the derivatives of such words, the euphonic *e* is suppressed and the *s* is restored, as: *studieux*, fr. *étude*, study, etc. 600, § 3.

E, final.—When a termination beginning with a vowel is added to a word ending in *e* mute, the *e* mute is suppressed, as in *quatrième*, fr. *quatre*, 90.

Échoir, to fall, to become due.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Échéant.* Pa. part. *Échu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'échois, tu échois, il échoit, nous échoyons, vous échoyez, ils échoient.*—Imperfect, not in use.—Past tense definite: *J'échus, tu échus, il échut, nous échûmes, vous échûtes, ils échurent.*—Future tense: *J'écherrai, tu écherras, il écherra, nous écherrons, vous écherrez, ils écherront.* Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *J'écherrais, tu écherrais, il écherrait, nous écherrions, vous écherriez, ils écherraient.* Pronounce *rr* as double.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, not in use. — Past tense: *Que j'échusse, que tu échusses, qu'il échût, que nous échussions, que vous échussiez, qu'ils échussent.*—Scarcely ever used but in the third persons, sing. and pl., in the infinitive and the participles.

Éclore, to hatch.—V. irr. Used only in the infinitive mood; the pa. part. *éclos;* in the third persons, sing. and pl., of the following tenses: Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il éclôt, ils éclosent.*—Future tense: *Il éclôra, ils éclôront.*—Conditional mood: *Il éclôrait, ils éclôraient.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *qu'il éclose, qu'ils éclosent;*—and in the compound tenses with *être*, 337.

Écrire, to write. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Écrivant.*—Pa. part. *Écrit.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'écris, tu écris, il écrit, nous écrivons, vous écrivez, ils écrivent.* — Imperfect: *J'écrivais, tu écrivais, il écrivait, nous écrivions, vous écriviez, ils écrivaient.*—Past tense definite: *J'écrivis, tu écrivis, il écrivit, nous écrivîmes, vous écrivîtes, ils écrivirent.* — Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Écris, écrivons, écrivez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'écrive, que tu écrives, qu'il écrive, que nous écrivions, que vous écriviez, qu'ils écrivent.*—Past tense: *Que j'écrivisse, que tu écrivisses, qu'il écrivît, que nous écrivissions, que vous écrivissiez, qu'ils écrivissent.*

ÉE. — This termination in substantives commonly denotes the whole, the sum total of that which is expressed by the radical, as in *journée*, a whole day, from *jour*, day. This termination also corresponds in many substantives to the English termination *ful*, or *full*, as in *bouchée*, mouthful, fr. *bouche*, mouth, 329.

ÉER. — Termination. Verbs ending in *éer* retain the acute accent, in all their forms, 555, § 2. — Their pa. part. ends in *ée* in the masc. 52, and in *ées* in the fem. 53.

ÉGER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éger* retain the acute accent in all their forms, 555, § 2.—In their conjugation, the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a*, *o*, 274.

EIL.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *eil* form their fem. by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 184.

EL. — Termination. There are about ninety adjectives ending in *el* in French and in *al* in English, with scarcely any other difference than the change of *a* into *e*, 217.—Adjectives ending in *el* form their fem. by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 184.

ELER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *eler*, as *appeler*, to call, double the consonant *l* before *e* mute, thus: *J'appelle, nous appellerons*, 467, § 1.—According to the French Academy, the following verbs are excepted: *bourreler*, to torture; *celer*, to conceal; *déceler*, to disclose; *dégeler*, to thaw; *geler*, to freeze; *harceler*, to harass; *peler*, to peel. In these the *l* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do, 467, § 2.—The termination *eler* must not be confounded with the following.

ELER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éler*, as *révéler*, to reveal, change the acute accent (´) into a grave accent (`) without doubling the *l* before *e* mute, thus: *Je revèle*, 467, § 3.

Elision.— When the monosyllables, *je, me, te, se, ne, que, ce* (pron.), *le*, and *de* precede a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed and an apostrophe is substituted for it. *La* loses its vowel in the same case, 11.—There is a peculiarity in the word *onze* and its derivative *onzième*: although they begin with a vowel, the elision or suppression of *e* in *que, le, la*, or *de*, when any of these words precede them, does not take place, 229.—The elision of the *e* in *jusque* takes place before the words *à, au, aux*, and *ici*, 51.—The elision of the *i* in *si* takes place only before the pron. *il* and its pl. *ils*, 122.—The elision of the final *e* in *quelque* is admitted only before the words *un* and *autre*, 145.—The elision of the final *e* in *entre* is authorized only in compounds, such as *entr'acte*, etc. It would be improper

to write *entr'eux*, as *entre* and *eux* do not form a compound word, 210.

Elle.—Personal pron. corresponding to *she*, *her*, and *it*. It is fem. and sing. *Elles* is fem. and pl. and corresponds to *they* and *them*. Both are used as subjects referring to persons and to things. They are also used as regimens and then refer to persons more frequently than to things, 156.

EM.—Prefix. Stands for *en* before *b*, *m*, and *p*. See EN, prefix.

ÈME, ÊME. Termination. Substantives ending in *ème* or *ême* are masc. 420, § 1.—The exceptions are *hrème*, hireme; *trirème*, trireme, and *crème*, cream, which are fem. 420, § 2.

EMMENT.—Termination. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives ending in *ent*, by changing this termination into *emment*, in which the first *e* has the short acute sound of the *a* in *fat*, 260.—The exceptions to the foregoing rule are: *lentement*, fr. *lent*, slow; *présentement*, fr. *présent*, present; and *véhémentement*, fr. *véhément*, vehement, 261.

EN.—Prefix. Inseparable particle, almost identical with *in*, when *in* is not negative (234). It serves to form verbs, some of which are nearly the same in both languages, 515, § 1.—*En* becomes *em* before *b*, *m*, and *p*, 515, § 2.—It is sometimes redundant, or at least used when no corresponding syllable is added in English, 515, § 3.

En.—Relative pron. which sometimes refers to persons, but is more frequently applied to things. It is invariable and of both genders and numbers, 268, § 1.—It is generally equivalent to *de la*, *de cela*, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, and in consequence is rendered in English by *thence*, *of that*, *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *of them*, or *from that*, *by that*, *with that*, etc., 268, § 2.—In speaking of things, it is often substituted for the possessive adjectives *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, *leurs*, and then it corresponds to *its* and *their*, 268, § 3.—It is sometimes partitive and signifies *some* or *any*, 268, § 4.

When *its* and *their* refer to a thing which is not the subject of the proposition, they are rendered by *en*, 277.

En, when it is a pronoun is always placed before the verb, except in the imperative mood, 278.

When *some* or *any* is the direct regimen of a verb, it is rendered by *en*, 484.

The pron. *en*, signifying *of it*, *of that*, *of them*, is employed in French with adjectives of number or adverbs of quantity, when there is an antecedent in the phrase, 577.

The pr. *en* is sometimes employed without reference to any thing clearly defined, and is in fact a mere expletive. The English expressions, *To make a night* OF IT, *To have the worst* OF IT, may serve to explain this redundancy, 595.

En.—Prep. Its sense is the same with that of *dans*, in; but these two prepositions cannot be used indiscriminately, 183.—*En* has a vague and indefinite sense, being very seldom followed by a definitive, 191.—*En* is the only prep. that immediately precedes the pres. part. 192.—It must be repeated before each subst., adj., pron., or v. which it governs, 109.—It may be governed by *de*, 223.—The prep. *on*, used in English before the pres. part. to denote the time at which any thing happens, is rendered in French by *en*, 374.—The prep. *by*, used in English before the pres. part. to denote the means or the manner of doing any thing, is rendered in French by *en*, 521.—*En* remains nasal, even when its *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

En cas que, in case that.—Connective which is followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

ENCE.—Termination. Belongs to substantives which are the same in both languages, 167.

Encore, yet, still.—After this adv. the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

Encore que, even though.—Connective which is followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Enfant, child.—In the sing. it is of either gender, according to the sex of the child referred to (8); but in the pl. it is always masc.

Enseigne, sign, ensign.—Fem. in the sense of sign or sign-board, 15; masc. in the sense of ensign or midshipman, 8.

ENT.—Termination. Common to adjectives and substantives, about 130 of which are the same in both languages (45).

Termination of the third person pl. in every tense, except the future. The three letters *ent* are silent.

Entre.—Prep. corresponding to *between*, *betwixt*, *among*, and *amongst*. The elision of the final *e* in this word is authorized only in compounds, such as *entr'acte*. It would be improper to write *entr'eux*, as *entre* and *eux* do not form a compound word, 210.—It may be governed by *de*, 223.

ENTRE.—Prefix. The prep. *entre* (210) which sometimes retains its Latin spelling, *inter*, forms various compounds, some of which are nearly similar in English, 249.

En vain, vainly.—After this adv. the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

Envoyer, to send.—V. irr. only in the future tense and the conditional mood. Fut. *J'enverrai*, *tu enverras*, *il enverra*, *nous enverrons*, *vous enverrez*, *ils enverront*.—Cond. *J'enverrais*, *tu enverrais*, *il enverrait*, *nous enverrions*, *vous enverriez*, *ils enverraient*.—See also *verbs in* YER.

ER.—Termination of about five thousand French verbs in the infinitive mood, 121.—Termination of adjectives used substantively, 159.

ÉRIEUR.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *érieur* form their fem. according to the general rule, 667.—See also 401, 402.

ES, initial.—See E or 600.

ESSE.—Termination added to about 40 adjectives, to form them into substantives. It denotes the abstract of that which is expressed by the radical, 442.

Est (Il).—Is sometimes used with the impersonal signification of *Il y a* (there is, there are), but denotes a more general statement, and besides is less familiar, 681.

Est-ce que.—Interrogations, in French, are often formed by placing *est-ce que* before the subject, followed by the verb, as: *Est-ce que vous savez?* Do you know? *Est-ce que vous pensons?* Do we think? This form is familiar, 87.

Et, and.—The *t* is invariably mute, except in *et cætera*.—*Et* must not be compressed between two adjectives which precede or follow a subst. 59.—After *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, and *mille*, the numeral adj. *un* requires the conj. *et* before it. *Dix* requires it only after *soixante*. In any other combination of numbers, the conj. *et* is not employed, 359.

ET.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *et* form their fem. by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 184.—The exceptions are: *Complet*, *concret*, *discret*, *inquiet*, *replet*, *secret*.

Été, been.—This participle is invariable, 511.

ETER.—Termination. Verbs ending in

eter, as *jeter*, to throw, double the consonant *t* before *e* mute, thus: *Je jette, nous jetterons*, 467, § 1.—The following verbs are excepted: *Acheter*, to buy; *becqueter*, to peck; *décolleter*, to bare the neck; *racheter*, to redeem. In these the *t* is not doubled, but a grave accent modifies the sound of the first *e*, just as a double consonant would do, 467, § 2. The termination *eter* must not be confounded with the following.

ÉTER.—Termination. Verbs ending in *éter*, as *répéter*, to repeat, change the acute accent (´) into a grave accent (`), without doubling the *t* before *e* mute, thus: *Je répète*, 467, § 3.

Et que, and that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, when it is only an abbreviative form of a connective phrase already expressed and requiring the subjunctive, 244.

Etre, to be.—One of the two auxiliaries. It serves to form the passive voice. It is also used in the compound tenses of certain verbs, particularly the pronominal ones, 125, 338.

ETTE.—Termination. Diminutive, found in about 300 substantives, some of which have their correspondents in English ending in *et*, 345.

EU.—Termination. Substantives ending in *eu* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 232.

EUR.—Termination. In abstract substantives, denotes a state or a quality.—Most of such substantives are derived from adjectives, as *grandeur*, fr. *grand*, 94.—Abstract substantives ending in *eur* are fem. 95.—The exceptions are: *Bonheur, déshonneur, honneur, labeur, malheur.*

Many substantives are formed from verbs by means of the termination *eur*, which denotes the agent, or the person who performs the action expressed by the v. This termination corresponds to the English termination *er* as in *reader*, fr. the v. *to read*, 243.

Adjectives ending in *eur* have their fem. in *euse* when they can be derived from a pres. part. by changing the termination *ant* into *eur*, as: *flattant, flatteur*, fr. the v. *flatter*, 401. See also the terminations *évieur* and *teur*.

EUX.—Termination. Found in a great number of adjectives, about 200 of which end in *ous* in English, without any, or with scarcely any other difference, 141.—The fem. of these adj. ends in *euse*, 142.

Eux.—Personal pron. generally corresponding to *them*, and sometimes to *they*. It is masc. and pl. 211.

EX.—Prefix. See É or 363.

Excpté, except,—Pa. part. of the v. *excepter*, employed as a prep. and as such precedes the subst. which it governs and is invariable, 673.

F.

F.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *f* form their fem. by changing this termination into *ve*, 251.

Faillir, to fail.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Faillant*.—Pa. part. *failli*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je faux, tu faux, il faut, nous faillons, vous faillez, ils faillent*. Scarcely ever used.—Imperfect: *Je faillais, tu faillais, il faillait, nous faillions, vous failliez, ils faillaient*. Scarcely ever used.—Past tense definite: *Je faillis, tu faillis, il faillit, nous faillîmes, vous faillîtes, ils faillirent*. The other simple tenses are not in use.

Faire, to do, to make. V. irr. Pres. part. *Faisant*.—Pa. part. *Fait*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je fais, tu fais, il fait, nous faisons, vous faites, ils font*.—Imperfect: *Je faisais, tu faisais, il faisait, nous faisions, vous faisiez, ils faisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je fis, tu fis, il fit, nous fîmes, vous fîtes, ils firent*.—Future tense: *Je ferai, tu feras, il fera, nous ferons, vous ferez, ils feront*.—Conditional mood: *Je ferais, tu ferais, il ferait, nous ferions, vous feriez, ils feraient*.— Imperative mood: *Fais, faisons, faites*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je fasse, que tu fasses, qu'il fasse, que nous fassions, que vous fassiez, qu'ils fassent*.—Past tense: *Que je fisse, que tu fisses, qu'il fît, que nous fissions, que vous fissiez, qu'ils fissent*.—Many persons pronounce the vowels *ai* like the *e* in *father*, in *faisant, faisons*, and in the whole of the imperfect tense.

Faire is commonly employed in phrases which denote that distance or space is gone over, as: *faire un pas*, to take a step, etc., 375.

Faire corresponds to the v. *to be*, when employed impersonally in speaking of the weather, as: *Il fait froid*, it is cold, 654.

Faire, followed by an infinitive, often signifies To cause something to be done, To order it to be done, To have, or to get it done, 627.

When *faire* is followed by an infinitive, it requires an indirect regimen if the infinitive has a direct one. The regimen of *faire* would be direct, if the following infinitive had no such regimen. The reason of this is, that the v. *faire* so identifies itself with the next v., that both together are considered as one v., which is always active. Now, an active v. cannot have more than one direct regimen; so that if there are two regimens, one of them must of course be indirect, 89.

When *faire* is followed by an infinitive, the regimen must not be placed between the two verbs. If it is a pron. it must precede *faire*; and if a subst. it must follow the second verb, 548, § 1.—The imperative is the only mood in which the regimen, if a pron., is placed between *faire* and the next verb, 548, § 2.

Falloir, must.—V. irr. used only in the third person sing.—No pres. part.—Pa. part. *Fallu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il faut*—Imperfect tense: *Il fallait*.—Past tense definite: *Il fallut*.—Future tense: *Il faudra*.—Conditional mood: *Il faudrait*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il faille*.—Past tense: *Qu'il fallût*, 287.

This verb, being impersonal, is generally followed by the subjunctive mood, 130.—However, in phrases in which the subject is undefined and may be anybody, the v. that follows *falloir* may be employed in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive, with the indefinite pron. *on* as a subject, 296.

Feindre, to feign.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*.—Governs the infinitive with *de*, 189.

Feminine.—See Genders.

Feu, late.—The adj. *feu*, deceased, defunct, late, varies in gender only, not in number, when preceded by the article or a possessive adj. Otherwise it is invariable. It never follows the subst. and is seldom used in colloquial language.

FIER.—Termination. Fr. the Latin *fieri*, to become, or *facere*, to make. Corresponds to the English termination *fy*, as in *justifier*, to justify, 540.

Fleurir, to bloom.—This v. is regular in the sense of *to bloom*; but in the sense of *to be flourishing*, the third person sing. of the imperfect is *florissait*, and the pres. part. *florissant*.

Fort.—As an adj. signifies *strong*. As an adv. is often used in the sense of *very*, as a synonym of *très* and *bien*, 114.

Fou, mad.—Formerly *fol*, which is still

used before a subst. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute. The fem. of *fou* and *fol* is *folle*.

Frire, to fry.—V. irr. and defective.—No pres. part.—Pa. part. *frit*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense, in the sing. only: *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*.—No imperfect tense.—No past tense definite.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood, in the second person sing. only: *Fris*.—No subjunctive mood. The forms which are wanting are supplied by means of *faire* before *frire*, thus: *Nous faisons frire*, we fry.

Fuir, to flee.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Fuyant*.—Pa. part. *Fui*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je fuis, tu fuis, il fuit, nous fuyons, vous fuyez, ils fuient*.—Imperfect: *Je fuyais, tu fuyais, il fuyait, nous fuyions, vous fuyiez, ils fuyaient*.—Past tense definite regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Fuis, fuyons, fuyez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je fuie, que tu fuies, qu'il fuie, que nous fuyions, que vous fuyiez, qu'ils fuient*.—Past tense, regular.

Future tense.—This tense is formed by adding the following terminations to that of the infinitive mood, the final *e* being suppressed in the verbs in *re*: — *ai, as, a, ons, ez, ont*, 565.—The present tense, used in English to point out the relative time of a future action, must be rendered in French by the future, 334.—When a v. is preceded by an adv. or a conj. of time, as *when, while, as soon as*, etc. and when the future tense is implied from the reference of that v. to another v. in the future tense (334) or in the imperative mood, the present tense, generally employed in English, must be rendered by the future in French, 472.

G.

Genders.—There are two genders: the masculine and the feminine, 1.—All the substantives in the French language are either masc. or fem. There is no neuter gender, 12.—The gender of substantives is determined either by the sex or by the termination, 13.

All the names of males are masc. whatever may be their termination, and all the names of females are feminine, 8.

Substantives ending in any other termination than *e* mute are generally masc. 14.—Substantives ending in *e* mute are generally fem. 15.

Subst. ending in *ice* are masc. They are for the most part the same in both languages, 20.—The following words are fem. by exc.: *avarice, cicatrice, épice, hélice, immondice, justice, injustice, lice, malice, matrice, milice, notice, office* (pantry), *police, prémices, surice*, 21.

The names of languages are masc. unless they are employed as adjectives with the word *langue*, 120.

Those parts of speech, which, without being substantives, are accidentally used as such, are masc. 181.

Subst. ending in *age* are masc. 215.—The following are fem. by exc.: *ambages, cage, hypallage, image, nage, page, plage, rage*, 216.

Subst. ending in *ère* are masc. 246.—The following are fem. by exc.: *artère, estère, patère*, 247.

Subst. ending in *aire* are masc. 253.—The following are fem. by exc.: *affaire, aire, chaire, circulaire, glaire, grammaire, haire, jurisdiraire, jugulaire, paire, vimaire*, and the names of plants ending in *aire*, 254.

The names of trees and shrubs are masc. 301.—The following are fem. by exc.: *bourdaine, épine, ronce, vigne, viorne, yeuse*, 302.

Subst. ending in *ice* are masc. 341.—The following are fem. by exc.: *chartre, dartre, épître, fenêtre, guêtre, huitre, lettre, loutre, mitre, montre, outre, piastre, poutre, rencontre, vitre*. 342.

In the system of weights, measures, and coins now established in France, all the words in the nomenclature are masc. 347.

When adjectives are employed as substantives, or when they become real substantives, they are of the masc. gender, 405.

Subst. ending in *ème* or *éme* are masc. 420, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *birème, trirème, crème*, 420, § 2.

Subst. ending in *ile* or *yle* are masc. 502, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *argile, bile, file, huile, île, pile, sébile, tuile, vigile*, 502, § 2.

Subst. ending in *isme* are masc. 545, § 2.

Subst. ending in *cle* are masc. 545, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *besicles, boucle, débâcle, escarboucle, macle, manicle, sanicle*, 545, § 2.

Subst. ending in *asme* are masc. 589.

Subst. ending in *toire* are masc. 590, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *décrottoire, échappatoire, écritoire, cupatoire, histoire, impératoire, victoire*, 590, § 2.

All the names of simple bodies or chemical elements are masc. 602, § 1.—Those which end in *e* mute and which accordingly form exceptions to the general rule (15) are: *Oxygène, hydrogène, azote* or *nitrogène, soufre, tellure, chlore, brôme, iode, phosphore, carbone, bore, lantane, didyme, manganèse, chrôme, tungstène, molybdène, cuivre, mercure, titane, tantale, antimoine, platine*, 602, § 2.—To these must be added the generic words, *métalloïde* and *oxyde*, 602, § 3.

The names of salts ending in *ite* are masc. 604.

The names of chemical compounds ending in *ure* are masc. 605.

The names of salts ending in *ate* are masc. 606.

Compound words are masc. when the first component is a verb, 699.

Substantives ending in *sion* are fem. 50.

Subst. ending in *aison* are fem. 79.

Abstract subst. ending in *eur* are fem. 95.—The following are masc. by exc.: *bonheur, malheur, honneur, déshonneur, labeur*.

Subst. ending in *tion* are fem. 99. *Bastion* is the only exc.

Subst. ending in *té* are fem. 241.—The following are masc. by exc.: *apparté, arrêté, bénédicité, comité, comté, côté, député, été, jeté, pâté, précipité, traité*, 242.

When a proper name is used to specify some peculiar production of a place, it takes the gender of the subst. which is understood, 315.

Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions which may belong to either sex, often produce feminine derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their fem. 620.

For the genders of adjectives, see ADJECTIVES.

Gens, people.—This subst. is masc., but, by an arbitrary exception, the adj. which precedes it takes the fem. form, when its termination is not *e* mute. And if this adj. is itself preceded by a definitive, as *un tout* or *certain*, the definitive also takes the fem. form, 532, § 1.—The adj. takes the fem. gender only when it precedes *gens*, and never when it follows it, 532, § 2.—When the adj. placed immediately before *gens* ends in *e* mute, and therefore presents no difference between the masc. and the fem. gender, the definitive which precedes it remains masc. 532, § 3.

GER.—Termination. In the conjugation of verbs ending in *ger*, the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a, o*, 274.

Gésir, to lie.—V. irr. and defective. The infinitive is obsolete.—Pres. part. *Gisant*.—No

pa. part.—Indicative mood, pres. tense; *Il gît, nous gisons, vous gisez, ils gisent.*—Imperfect: *Je gisais, tu gisais, il gisait, nous gisions, vous gisiez, ils gisaient.*—The other tenses and moods are out of use.

H.

The principal words in which the initial *h* is aspirate, are:

Hache	*Hareng*	*Hêtre*
Haie	*Haricot*	*Heurter*
Haine	*Harnais*	*Hibou*
Haïr	*Harpe*	*Hideux*
Halle	*Harpie*	*Hollande*
Halte	*Hasard*	*Honte*
Hameau	*Hâter*	*Horde*
Hanche	*Haut*	*Hotte*
Hanter	*Hauteur*	*Houlette*
Harangue	*Havre*	*Huguenot*
Harasser	*Héraut*	*Huit*
Hardi	*Héros*	*Hussard.*

Haïr, to hate.—V. irr. The irregularity of this v. consists:—in suppressing the dieresis in the three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indic. mood, and pronouncing the v. in one syllable: *Je hais, tu hais, il hait;*—in suppressing it also in the second person sing. of the imperative mood, *Hais;*—in substituting the dieresis for the circumflex accent in the first and second persons pl. of the past tense definite, *nous haïmes, vous haïtes;* and in the third person sing. of the past tense of the subjunctive mood, *qu'il haït.*

Heure, hour.—The distinction made in English between *six hours* and *six o'clock* has no equivalent in French; the word *heure* being used indifferently to express an interval of sixty minutes, or that moment of time which the clock indicates. In consequence, we render "*What o'clock is it?*" by "*Quelle heure est-il?*" and "*It is six o'clock*" by "*Il est six heures,*" 336.—In speaking of time, as measured by the clock, the number of hours is mentioned first, and followed by the fraction denoting the portion of time which precedes or follows the full number, thus: *Quatre heures cinq minutes,* five minutes past four; *quatre heures un quart,* a quarter past four; *cinq heures moins un quart,* a quarter to five; *cinq heures moins dix minutes,* ten minutes to five, 657, § 1.—The last examples show that the portion of time wanting to make up the full number is preceded by *moins,* less, 657, § 2.

Hymne, hymn.—Usually masc. by exc. 15; but fem. when applied to sacred music.

Hyphen.—Serves to connect:—The verb and the subject pronoun, in interrogative phrases, 40;—the radicals forming a compound word, 326, the adv. *très* and the word that follows it, 330;—two numbers, when the latter does not exceed ten. It is also used in *quatre-vingts* and *quinze-vingts,* 337;—words combined to form an idiomatic locution, as: *c'est-à-dire,* 343.—The adv. *ci* and *là* are also joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 351.

I.

IBLE.—This termination, like *able* (97), denotes aptness or fitness. It serves to form adjectives, about half of which are the same in both languages, 543.

ICE. Termination.—Substantives ending in *ice* are masc. They are for the most part the same in both languages, 20.—The following are fem. by exc.: *avarice, cicatrice, épice, hélice, immondice, justice, injustice, lice, malice, matrice, milice, notice, office* (pantry), *police, prémices, varice,* 21.

IDE.—Termination common to adjectives, about fifty of which end in *id* in English, 603.

IE.—The termination *ie* is common to substantives, about four hundred of which end in English in *y* with scarcely any other difference of spelling, 190.

IÈME.—Termination added to the cardinal numbers, to form the ordinal numbers, 44.

IEN.—Adjectives ending in *ien* form their feminine by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute, 184.

IER.—The termination *ier* or *er,* in adjectives used substantively, generally denotes the person who exercises a profession or trade, who is daily engaged or usually deals in the thing expressed by the radical. It often corresponds to the English termination *er.* It serves besides, when added to the name of a fruit, to designate the tree bearing such fruit. In a limited number of words, it denotes the utensil, the vessel, or the place destined for the use of the thing expressed by the radical, 159.—In the verbs ending in *ier* the letter *i* is doubled in the first and second persons pl. of the imperfect tense, indic. mood, and of the pres. tense, subjunctive mood, 586, § 5.

IF.—Termination of adjectives ending for the most part in *ive* in English, without any other difference, 46.—The fem. of these adj. ends in *ive,* 251.

IL, ILE.—Termination. In adjectives, denotes what is endowed with the quality, the property, or the faculty expressed by the radical. Some of these adj. are the same in both languages, as *civil, docile,* 123.—Substantives ending in *ile,* are masc. 502, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *argile, bile, file, huile, ile, pile, sébile, tuile, vigile,* 502, § 2.—The final *l* takes the sound of *y* in *ye* in the following substantives in *il*: *avril, babil, fenil, grésil, mil* (millet), *péril.*—The final *i* is quiescent in the following substantives in *il*: *baril, chenil, coutil, fournil, fusil, gril, nombril, outil, persil, soul, sourcil;* and in the adj. *gentil.*

IL, he.—Personal pron. corresponding to *he* and *it.* It is masc. and sing. and is always a subject. Its pl. is *ils,* corresponding to *they,* and, like the sing. always masc. and used as a subj. 94.—It cannot be separated from the v. 104.

Il est.—Sometimes used with the impersonal signification of *Il y a* (there is, there are), but denotes a more general statement, and besides is less familiar, 681. See *y* AVOIR.

Il semble, it seems.—Generally requires the subjunctive mood; but this rule is not absolute; thus when the v. *sembler* is preceded by one of the pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur,* and used affirmatively, the indicative mood is necessary, 456.

Il y a, there is, there are.—See *y* AVOIR.

Imperative mood.—This mood in French verbs has no first pers. sing., and no third person either sing. or pl. The English forms, *Let me answer, Let him wait, Let them follow,* are rendered in French by the subjunctive, thus: *Que je réponde, qu'il attende, qu'ils suivent,* 465, 537.—The imperative mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: *er* into *e, ons, ez;*—*ir* into *is, issons, issez;*—*re* into *s, ons, ez,* 558.—This mood, in French, having no special form for the first person sing. the deficiency is sometimes supplied by means of the first person pl. 559—The second person sing. of the imperative mood is always similar to the first pers. sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood, 460.—The first and second persons pl. are always similar to the same persons of the pres. tense, indica-

tive mood, 290, 293, 368, 382, 384, 518.—In this mood, the personal pronoun, which is the regimen of the v., is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative, 297.—But when the phrase is negative, the pron. precedes the v. 298.—When the second person sing. of this mood ends in *e* mute, and is followed by the pron. *y* or the pron. *en*, a euphonic *s* is added to it, to prevent the hiatus, 470.

Imperfect tense. — The terminations of this tense are: *ais, ais, ait, ions, iez, aient*, substituted for those of the infinitive in verbs in *er* and in *re*, 586, § 1.—In verbs in *ir*, the above terminations are added to the invariable syllable *iss*, substituted for *ir*, thus: *issais, issais, issait, issions, issiez, issaient*, 586, § 2.—The first and second persons sing. of this tense present no difference between them, 586, § 3.—The first and second persons pl. of this tense are similar to the same persons of the pres. tense, subjunctive mood, 586, § 4.—A consequence of this rule is, that in the verbs ending in *ier* the letter *i* must be doubled in the first and second persons pl.; and that, in the verbs ending in *yer*, the *y* must be followed by *i* in the same persons, 586, § 5.

The imperfect tense represents an action or a state as already begun or existing, and going on or continuing, without expressing when it ceased, or whether it did cease, 134.—It must be used to render the English v. in the pres. part. with the auxiliary v. *to be*, 136.—It must also be used to express an habitual action, as: She used to answer, she would answer, *Elle répondait*, 137. —When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the v. that follows the conj. is used in the pres. tense of the indicative with the correlative v. of the phrase in the future; or the conj. is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second v. in the conditional mood, 422.—But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense, 423.

IN. — Prefix. This inseparable particle is generally negative, as in English in *inrisible*. It corresponds to the English inseparable particles *in* and *un*, and sometimes to the termination *less*, as in *inutile*, useless. It is changed into *im* before *b*, *m*, and *p*. It is changed into *il* before *l*, and *ir* before *r*, 170.—*In* is not always negative. It is often a mere transformation of *en*, signifying *in*, *within*, and corresponding to the same particle in English, 234.

Indefinite (Past tense).—See INDICATIVE, and PAST TENSE.

Indicative mood.—The simple tenses of this mood are: the present, the imperfect, the past tense definite, and the future. The compound tenses, usually corresponding to the same tenses in English, require no particular notice, except the past tense indefinite, which see.—When a subjoined phrase is connected with the principal one by a relative pron., as *qui, que, dont, où*, and denotes something doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive mood is properly employed, 578; but if the subjoined phrase admits of no doubt, the indicative mood must be employed, 579.

Indre.—Termination. All the verbs ending in *indre* undergo a change of the letters *nd* into *gn*:—In the three persons pl. of the pres. tense, indicative mood:—throughout the imperfect tense;—throughout the past tense definite;—in the first and second persons pl. of the imperative mood;—throughout the subjunctive mood, pres. and past;—in the pres. part. 446. — They form their past part. by changing *dre* into *t*, 512.—The three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood, end in *ins, ins, int*.—See the v. CRAINDRE, given in this index as a model.

Infinitive mood. — The infinitive mood of all the French verbs ends in *er*, *ir*, or *re*. The verbs in *er* are by far the most numerous. The verbs in *ir* differ from those in *er* in their forms of conjugation. Those in *re* have some of their tenses formed in conformity with the first, and some with the second class; so that there are indeed but two forms of conjugation, 121.

After *comment, que, où, pourquoi*, and a few more words used like these in interrogations, the infinitive mood is often substituted for the indicative, when it can be done without rendering the sense obscure, 88.

The French prepositions govern the infinitive mood. *En*, in, is the only one that governs the present participle, 129.

List of verbs which govern the infinitive without a prep. 187.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *à*, 188.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with the prep. *de*, 189.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive with either *à* or *de*, 190.

The infinitive, preceded by the prep. *à*, sometimes corresponds to the English pres. part. denoting an action as taking place, or continuing, 203.

In phrases in which the subject is undefined and may be anybody, the v. that follows *falloir* may be employed in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive, with the indefinite pron. *on* as a subject, 296.

The v. which follows a v. of motion in French is in the infinitive mood, and requires no conj. before it, 372.

The passive form used in English, to express that something is to be done or undergone, is rendered in French by the infinitive preceded by the prep. *à*, thus: He is to be pitied, *Il est à plaindre*, 409.

The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively. In this case, it is determined by the article or by pronouns and adjectives, like any other subst. 418.

Two verbs in the infinitive mood are often placed in succession, the second being the regimen of the first, 500.

Instruire, to instruct.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

Interrogation.—The interrogative construction, when the subject is a pron., is formed by placing the subject after the v. and connecting them by a hyphen, 40.—A euphonic *t* is introduced between the v. and pron. when the v. in the third person sing. ends with a vowel, 41.—When the construction is at once interrogative and negative, and the subject a pron. the words are placed in the following order: the negative *ne*, the verb, the pronoun, the second part of the negative (*pas, jamais*, etc.), 42.—When the subject is a substantive, in interrogative phrases, it is generally placed before the verb, and repeated after it in the form of a pron. 86.—Interrogations are often formed by placing *est-ce que* before the subject, followed by the verb. This form is more familiar than the preceding, 87.—The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English, according to the tense and person of the verb, and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In French, this form is invariably *N'est-ce pas?* 376.

Introduire, to introduce.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

ION.—Termination of numerous substantives about eleven hundred of which are the same in both languages, 49.—Substantives ending in *sion, tion*, are fem. 50, 99.

IQUE.—Termination common to a great number of words, some of which are substantives, but the greater part adjectives. Most of these words are nearly the same in both languages, and differ only by the termination, which, in English, is *ic* for the substantives, and *ic* or *ical* for the adjectives, 200.—The names of sciences which have in English the plural termination *ics*, end in French in *ique*, and are employed in the singular. There is one exc. viz. *les mathématiques*, 592.

IR.—One of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs, 69.—A great portion of the verbs in *ir* come from adjectives, as *appauvrir*, fr. *pauvre*. Others, of a different formation, end in English in *ish*, as *périr*, to perish, 257.

ISE.—Termination, which, added to certain adjectives, makes substantives of them, as in *sottise*, fr. *sot*, 316.

ISER.—Termination common to verbs, about eighty of which terminate in English in *ize* or *ise*, without any other difference in their spelling, 417.

ISME.—Termination which serves to form abstract substantives, most of which end in *ism* in English, with scarcely any other difference, 545, § 1.—Substantives ending in *isme* are masc. 545, § 2.

ISS.—This syllable, incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in *ir*, and forms the principal difference between these verbs and those in *er*, 196, § 2.

ISTE.—Termination common to many words which are the same in both languages, except that the *e* mute, used in French, is suppressed in English. This termination generally denotes a member of a sect or of a corporation, whether literary, religious, or political; or one given to some intellectual or mechanical occupation, expressed by the radical. Most of the words of this termination are given in the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* as masculine, being used especially to designate men (8); but they may be applied to women, 209.

ITE.—Termination. The names of salts ending in *ite* are masc. 604.

Its.—Pron. When *its* and *their* refer to a thing which is not the subject of the phrase, they are rendered by *en*, 277.—When the thing to which *its* or *their* relates is the subject of the phrase, these words are rendered by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur*, or *leurs*, 279.—Even when the thing is not the subject of the phrase, *its* and *their* must be rendered by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leur* or *leurs*, when they are governed by a prep. 280.

J.

Jamais, never.—It is generally negative, and consequently generally preceded or followed by *ne*. But sometimes, when used without *ne*, it becomes affirmative and corresponds to *ever*, 76.

Je, I.—Personal pron. of the first person sing. and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the v. 205.—When the v. begins with a vowel, the elision of the *e* takes place, 11.—It is often improper, in interrogative phrases, to place the pron. *je* after the v. particularly when this v. has but one syllable, or when its termination combined with *je* would offend a delicate ear. For instance, a correct speaker would not say: *dors-je*, *mords-je*, *agis-je*. This is avoided by changing the construction, thus: *Est-ce que je dors*, *Est-ce que je mords*, etc. 596, § 1.—The following combinations however are authorized: *s'ais-je*, *ai-je*, *fais-je*, *dis-je*, *dois-je*, *sais-je*, *vais-je*, 505, § 2.—In interrogative phrases and others, in which the pron. *je* follows a v. ending in *e* mute, this *e* takes the acute accent before *je*, 661.

Joindre, to join.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *verbs in* INDRE.

Jusque, till.—Does not refer merely to time, as *till* or *until* in English, but denotes distance, and often corresponds to *as far as*, *to*, *unto*, *up to*, *down to*, and *even*. The final *e* of *jusque* is cut off before the words *à*, *au*, *aux*, and *ici*, 54.

Jusqu'à ce que, till.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

K.

K.—This letter very seldom occurs in French words.

L.

La, the, her, it.—Fem. of the art. *le*, 5.—Fem. of the pron. *le*, 27.—The elision of the vowel *a* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 11.

Là, there.—Adv. of place, distinguished from the art. *la*, the, and from the pron. *la*, her, by the grave accent over the *a*, but without making any difference in the pronunciation. —*Là* is sometimes added to substantives which come after the demonstrative adjectives *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, as an expletive denoting remoteness, in opposition to *ci*, which marks nearness. It is joined to the preceding word by a hyphen, 351.—It is likewise added to the demonstrative pronouns, *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, thus: *celui-là*, that one, etc. 352.

Le, the.—Article, Varies in gender and number, 4.—*Le* is masc. and sing. *La* is fem. and sing. *Les* is pl. and of both genders, 5.—The final vowel of *le* and *la* is suppressed, and an apostrophe substituted for it, before words beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 11.—See also ARTICLES.

Le, him, it.—Personal pron. Its fem. is *la*, her or it; the pl. of both genders is *les*, them, 27.—*Le* is always a direct regimen, and, except in the imperative mood, always placed before the v. 175.

The pron. *le* may represent either a subst., or an adj., or a v., or a preposition. In the first case only it is variable and takes the gender and number of the subst. which it represents: it then becomes *la* in the fem. and *les* in the pl. of both genders. In the other cases, and particularly when it represents an adj., or even a subst. used adjectively, it is invariable, 224.—This pron. must be used, whether it has an equivalent in the English construction or not, 264.

In inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the v., this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pron. which is generally *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the sense, 435.

When several objective pronouns precede a v., *le*, *la*, *les* are placed before *lui* and *leur*, and after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, 488.

In comparative phrases constructed with *aussi*, *autant*, *plus*, *moins*, and other similar adverbs, the v. which follows *que* must be preceded by the pron. *le*, 536. See also 264.

Le leur, theirs. *Leur*, their, a possessive adj. (152), becomes a possessive pron. when preceded by the art. *Le leur* is masc. and sing. *La leur*, fem. and sing. *Les leurs*, pl. of both genders. These three forms correspond to *theirs*, 524.

Le mien, mine. Is the possessive pron. of the first person sing. corresponding to the possessive adj. *mon*. The sing. fem. is *la mienne*; the pl. masc. *les miens*, and the pl. fem. *les miennes*. All these forms correspond to *mine*, 478.

Le nôtre, ours.—Possessive pron. of the first person pl. The sing. fem. is *la nôtre*; the pl. of both genders, *les nôtres*. These three forms correspond to *ours*, 292.

Lequel.—Relative pron. corresponding to *who*, *whom*, *which*, and *that*. It is masc. and sing. Sing. fem. *laquelle*; pl. masc. *lesquels*; pl. fem. *lesquelles*, 165.

Lequel, *laquelle*, etc. are seldom used as subjects or as direct regimens, unless they become necessary to avoid ambiguity. The subject is generally represented by *qui*, and the direct regimen by *que*, 173.

If the relative pron. is governed by a prep. it is generally expressed by *qui*, when it refers to persons, and by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, when it refers to things, 174.

Les, the, them.—Pl. of the art. *le*, *la*.—Pl. of the pron. *le*, *la*.

Le sien, his, hers.—Possessive pron. of the third person sing. The sing. fem. is *la sienne*; pl. masc. *les siens*; pl. fem. *les siennes*. Each of these forms corresponds to the English words *his*, *hers*, *its*, and *one's*, 126.

Les uns les autres, each-other.—The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action is rendered in French by means of two pronouns of the same person: *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils se*, or *elles se*, placed before the v. This form being likewise employed with reflective verbs, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre*, *les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal, 400. The pron. *les uns les autres* is used when the action is reciprocal between more than two individuals. When there are only two subjects and objects, *l'un l'autre* is employed.

Le tien, thine.—Possessive pron. of the second person sing. The sing. fem. is *la tienne*; the pl. masc. *les tiens*; and the pl. fem. *les tiennes*. All these forms correspond to *thine*, 471.

Leur, their.—Possessive adj. that varies in number, but not in gender. Pl. *leurs*. Both *leur* and *leurs* correspond to *their*. With the art. before it, this word becomes a possessive pron. See LE LEUR, 152.—When the English word *their* refers to a thing which is not the subject of the phrase, it is rendered by *en*, and not by *leur*, 277.—When the thing to which *their* relates is the subject of the phrase, *their* is rendered by *leur* or *leurs*, 279.—Even when the thing is not the subject of the phrase, *their* must be rendered by *leur* or *leurs*, when it is governed by a prep. 280.

Leur, to them.—*Leur*, when a personal pron. is of both genders, and signifies *à eux*, *à elles*, to them. It is chiefly used in speaking of persons, and always accompanies a verb, whereas the possessive adj. *leur*, *leurs*, precedes a subst. It never takes an *s*, 317.

Le vôtre, yours.—Possessive pron. of the second person pl. The sing. fem. is *la vôtre*; and the pl. of both genders, *les vôtres*. These three forms correspond to *yours*, 309.

Lire, to read.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Lisant*.—Pa. part. *Lu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je lis, tu lis, il lit, nous lisons, vous lisez, ils lisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je lisais, tu lisais, il lisait, nous lisions, vous lisiez, ils lisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je lus, tu lus, il lut, nous lûmes, vous lûtes, ils lurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular. Imperative mood: *Lis, lisons, lisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je lise, que tu lises, qu'il lise, que nous lisions, que vous lisiez, qu'ils lisent*.—Past tense: *Que je lusse, que tu lusses, qu'il lût, que nous lussions, que vous lussiez, qu'ils lussent*.

LL.—These letters, preceded by *i* (not initial) produce the sound of *li* in *billiards*, or *y* in *ye*, and the preceding *i* is generally silent when it follows another vowel. Thus, the word *meilleur* is pronounced as if written *mel-yur* or *mel-yur*.—The first of these two manners of pronouncing *ll* is emphatic, and may even seem pedantic, if too frequently repeated. The second is colloquial, and more generally heard.

Loin que, far.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Lorsque, when.—Has the same meaning as *quand*, when (*not* though), but cannot be used in interrogations. The elision of its final vowel takes place before *il*, *elle*, *on*, *un*, *une*.

Lui.—Personal pron. corresponding to *he*, *him*, sometimes to *it*. It is particularly used as an indirect regimen and signifies either *to him* or *to her*. In this case it refers to persons only, 77.—*Lui*, when a subject, is employed when the v. is understood, 104.—*Lui*, either precedes the v. whose indirect regimen it is (meaning *to him*), or is placed after the v. and is governed by a prep. 175.—*Lui* never refers to a fem. subst. but when it is an indirect regimen, 487.—When several objective pronouns precede a v., *le*, *la*, *les*, are placed before *lui*, 488.

Luire, to shine.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Luisant*.—Pa. part. *Lui*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je luis, tu luis, il luit, nous luisons, vous luisez, ils luisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je luisais, tu luisais, il luisait, nous luisions, vous luisiez, ils luisaient*.—No past tense definite. Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je luise, que tu luises, qu'il luise, que nous luisions, que vous luisiez, qu'ils luisent*.—No past tense.

L'un l'autre.—See LES UNS LES AUTRES.

L'un et l'autre, both.—Must not be confounded with *l'un l'autre*. The subst. which follows *l'un et l'autre* is used in the sing. 400, 662.

M.

Ma, my.—Fem. of *mon*, 206. Before a fem. subst. or adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *mon* is substituted for *ma*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 483, § 1.

Madame.—Formed of *ma*, my, and *dame*, lady. Corresponds to *Mrs.* and to *Lady*, before a proper name; and to *Madam* or *My lady*, in addressing a woman. The pl. is *mesdames*, 618.—Though the possessive adj. is inseparable in *monsieur* and *messieurs* (149), it is not so in *madame* and *mesdames*; accordingly, *A lady*, *some ladies*, should be rendered by *Une dame*, *des dames*, 619.—Titles are preceded by *Madame*, with the article, in emphatic or ceremonious language, as: *Madame la baronne*. The possessive adj. before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet, as: *Madame votre mère*, 625.

Mademoiselle.—Formed of *ma*, my, and *demoiselle*, young lady. Corresponds to *Miss* before a proper name; and to *Miss* or *Madam*, in addressing a girl or an unmarried woman. The pl. is *mesdemoiselles*, 621.—Without the possessive adj. *demoiselle* signifies *girl*, *young lady* (unmarried), single woman, spinster, 622.—Titles are preceded by *Mademoiselle*,

with the article, in emphatic or ceremonious language. The possessive adj. before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet, 626. See *Madame.*

Mal, evil, ill.—Subst. and adv. serves to form numerous derivatives, in some of which it is changed into *mav, mé,* and *més,* 273.

Malgré que, in spite.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244. Employed only with the v. *avoir,* in the phrase *malgré qu'il en ait,* in spite of him.

Masculine.—See GENDERS.

Maudire, to curse.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Maudissant.*—Pa. part. *Maudit.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je maudis, tu maudis, il maudit, nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je maudissais, tu maudissais, il maudissait, nous maudissions, vous maudissiez, ils maudissaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je maudis, tu maudis, il maudit, nous maudîmes, vous maudîtes, ils maudirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Maudis, maudissons, maudissez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je maudisse, que tu maudisses, qu'il maudisse, que nous maudissions, que vous maudissiez, qu'ils maudissent.*—Past tense: *Que je maudisse, que tu maudisses, qu'il maudît, que nous maudissions, que vous maudissiez, qu'ils maudissent.*

Me, me.—Personal pron. of the first person sing. and of both genders. Is never used as a subject. Is sometimes a direct and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *me, to me, myself, to myself.* It always precedes the verb, and cannot, like *moi,* be governed by a prep. 319.—The elision of *e* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 11.—In the imperative mood, *moi* is used instead of *me* after the v. when the phrase is not negative. There is an exception to this rule, when the word *en* follows, in which case there is a contraction, thus: *Donnez-m'en,* Give me some, 406.—But when the phrase is negative, *me,* instead of *moi,* is placed before the verb, 407.

Meilleur, better, best.—One of the three exceptional adjectives, which, by themselves, express comparison, 426.—Must be repeated before each subst. which it modifies, 427.

Même.—Adj. corresponding to *same, self, very* or *self-same, very same.* Combined with the personal pronouns, as a sign of identity, it corresponds to *self;* but it does not follow the possessive adjectives as *self* does in English. *Même* is also an adv. meaning *even.* In this sense, it is invariable, 101.—The English word *very,* when it precedes a subst. is generally rendered by *même,* placed after the subst. 630.

MENT.—Termination. A considerable number of adverbs of quality are formed from adjectives, by the addition of the termination *ment,* which corresponds to the English termination *ly,* 34.—This termin. *ment* is added to the feminine form, unless the adj. ends with a vowel, 32.—When the adj. ends in *ent,* the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *emment,* and when the adj. ends in *ant,* the adv. is formed by changing this termination into *amment.* In *emment* the first *e* has the sound of *a* (French *a*); so that both these terminations, *emment* and *amment,* are pronounced exactly alike, 260.

The termination *ment* is added also to many verbs, which are thus transformed into substantives, a great number of which are the same in both languages, 153.

Mentir, to lie.—V. irr. conjugated like *sentir.*

Mettre, to put.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Mettant.*—Pa. part. *Mis.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je mets, tu mets, il met, nous mettons, vous mettez, ils mettent.*—Imperfect tense, regular.—Past tense definite: *Je mis, tu mis, il mit, nous mîmes, vous mîtes, ils mirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Mets, mettons, mettez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, regular.—Past tense: *Que je misse, que tu misses, qu'il mît, que nous missions, que vous missiez, qu'ils missent.*

Mi, half.—Inseparable particle denoting the division of a thing into two equal parts. It is joined to the principal word by a hyphen, except in *midi,* mid-day, and *minuit,* midnight, 635.—It is invariable, 668.—When placed before the names of the months, it makes them fem.

Mien, mine.—See LE MIEN.

Mieux, better, best.—When *mieux* is followed by two infinitives, *de* is placed before the second, even though the first be not preceded by this prep. 674.

Mil, thousand.—Stands for *mille,* but is used only in dates. The *l* has its regular sound.

Moi.—Personal pron. of the first person sing. of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pron. *me* or *to me.* Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *I,* 299.

Of the three pronouns of the first person sing. *moi* is the only one that can be governed by a prep. 313.

Moi is joined to *je,* by apposition and reduplication, for the sake of emphasis, which in English is represented by underlining the pron. or printing it in italic. In French, the reduplication either precedes the v. or follows it, 333.

In the imperative mood, *moi* is used instead of *me* after the v. when the phrase is not negative, 406.—But when the phrase is negative, *me,* instead of *moi,* is placed before the verb, 407.

Moindre, less, least.—One of the three exceptional adjectives, which by themselves express comparison, 426.—Must be repeated before each subst. which it modifies, 427.

Moins, less, least.—Adv. Before adjectives and adverbs, it denotes inferiority in the comparative and superlative degrees, 197, 377, 428.—Must be repeated before each word which it qualifies, 427.

Mon, my.—Possessive adj. Fem. *ma;* pl. of both genders, *mes.* These three forms correspond to *my,* 306.—The poss. adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 107.—Must be repeated before each subst. 108.—Before a fem. subst. or adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *mon* is substituted for *ma,* in order to avoid the hiatus, 483.

Monsieur.—Formed of the possessive adj. *mon,* my, and the subst. *sieur,* sir. Corresponds to three English words:—to *Mr.* before a proper name; to *Sir,* in addressing a man; to *gentleman,* in speaking of a man. Its pl. is *messieurs,* 149.—Titles are preceded by *monsieur,* with the art. in emphatic or ceremonious language, thus: *Monsieur le comte.* The possessive adj. before names of kindred is preceded by the same epithet, thus; *Monsieur votre père,* 626.

Moods.—See INFINITIVE, INDICATIVE, CONDITIONAL, IMPERATIVE, and SUBJUNCTIVE.

Mou, soft.—Fem. *molle* by exc. 2.—*Mol* is used instead of *mou* in poetical language before a subst. beginning with a vowel.

Moudre, to grind.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Moulant.*—Pa. part. *Moulu.*—Indicative mood,

pres. tense: *Je mouds, tu mouds, il moud, nous moulons, vous moulez, ils moulent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je moulais, tu moulais, il moulait, nous moulions, vous mouliez, ils moulaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je moulus, tu moulus, il moulut, nous moulûmes, vous moulûtes, ils moulurent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Mouds, moulons, moulez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je moule, que tu moules, qu'il moule, que nous moulions, que vous mouliez, qu'ils moulent.*—Past tense: *Que je moulusse, que tu moulusses, qu'il moulût, que nous moulussions, que vous moulussiez, qu'ils moulussent.*

Mourir, to die.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Mourant.*—Pa. part. *Mort.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je mourais, tu mourais, il mourait, nous mourions, vous mouriez, ils mouraient.*—Past tense definite: *Je mourus, tu mourus, il mourut, nous mourûmes, vous mourûtes, ils moururent.*—Future tense: *Je mourrai, tu mourras, il mourra, nous mourrons, vous mourrez, ils mourront.* Pronounce *rr* as double.—Conditional mood: *Je mourrais, tu mourrais, il mourrait, nous mourrions, vous mourriez, ils mourraient.* Pronounce *rr* as double.—Imperative mood: *Meurs, mourons, mourez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je meure, que tu meures, qu'il meure, que nous mourions, que vous mouriez, qu'ils meurent.*—Past tense: *Que je mourusse, que tu mourusses, qu'il mourût, que nous moussions, que vous moussiez, qu'ils moussent.* This v. is always conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses, 335.

Mouvoir, to move.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Mouvant.*—Pa. part. *Mû.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je meus, tu meus, il meut, nous mouvons, vous mouvez, ils meuvent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je mouvais, tu mouvais, il mouvait, nous mouvions, vous mouviez, ils mouvaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je mus, tu mus, il mut, nous mûmes, vous mûtes, ils murent.*—Future tense: *Je mouvrai, tu mouvras, il mouvra, nous mouvrons, vous mouvrez, ils mouvront.*—Conditional mood: *Je mouvrais, tu mouvrais, il mouvrait, nous mouvrions, vous mouvriez, ils mouvraient.*—Imperative mood: *Meus, mouvons, mouvez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve, que nous mouvions, que vous mouviez, qu'ils meuvent.*—Past tense: *Que je musse, que tu musses, qu'il mût, que nous mussions, que vous mussiez, qu'ils mussent.* Several of these tenses are used only in didactical language.

N.

Naître, to be born.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Naissant.*—Pa. part. *Né.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je nais, tu nais, il naît, nous naissons, vous naissez, ils naissent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je naissais, tu naissais, il naissait, nous naissions, vous naissiez, ils naissaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je naquis, tu naquis, il naquit, nous naquîmes, vous naquîtes, ils naquirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Nais, naissons, naissez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je naisse, que tu naisses, qu'il naisse, que nous naissions, que vous naissiez, qu'ils naissent.*—Past tense: *Que je naquisse, que tu naquisses, qu'il naquît, que nous naquissions, que vous naquissiez, qu'ils naquissent.*—This v. is conjugated with *être* in its compound tenses, 335.

Ne.—Particle used in almost all negative phrases, either alone, or joined to some word which in English would be negative by itself, as: *Ne pas, ne point,* not; *ne ... rien,* nothing; *ne .... jamais,* never; *ne .... que,* but, 10.

When *ne* precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, the vowel *e* is suppressed and an apostrophe substituted for it, 11.

In restrictive or negative sentences, the word *ne* usually precedes the v. and the second part of the negation follows it, 38.

In negative sentences, *ne* may be employed alone, and the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs: *cesser, oser, pouvoir,* and *savoir,* especially when these verbs govern an infinitive, 80.

After the v. *douter,* used in the negative form, the particle *ne* precedes the next verb, 360.

Ne is not used after the prep. *sans,* 410.

Ne always follows *à moins que,* unless, 458.

After *plus, moins, mieux, meilleur, autre,* and *autrement,* in comparative phrases, the word *que* must be followed by the negative *ne,* particularly when the principal proposition is affirmative, 534.—When the principal proposition is negative, the word *ne* is usually omitted after *que,* if the compared quality is not denied or doubtful. But when the quality is not taken for granted, the negative *ne* is required in the secondary clause of the proposition, 535.

In negative phrases, *ne* invariably precedes the verb; it likewise precedes the object pron. if there be one joined to the verb. The place of *pas* and *point* varies. They may precede or follow the v. in the infinitive mood; yet they are more commonly placed before the infinitive than after it, 549.

Negative.—See Ne.

N'ést-ce pas, is it not.—The interrogative form annexed to a proposition, in order to know whether it is assented to, varies in English, according to the tense and person of the v., and may be expressed in as many ways as there are different signs or auxiliary verbs. In French, this form is invariably *n'est-ce pas?* thus: *Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?* You will come, will you not? *Vous ne viendrez pas, n'est-ce pas?* You will not come, will you? *Vous venez, n'est ce pas?* You are coming, are you not? etc. 376.

Ni.—Conj. which corresponds to the two words *neither* and *nor,* or to *either* and *or,* with *not.* The negative words *pas* and *point* must not be employed when the conj. *ni* is repeated in a phrase, 424.

When two or more subjects in the sing. number are joined by the conj. *ni,* the v. may be made to agree with the last subject only, or may be put in the pl. 655.

N'importe.—Is the negative form of *Il importe,* It is important, the third person sing. of the pres. tense of *importer,* to be important, a v. which, in this sense, is only used in the infinitive or in the third person sing. with the impersonal pron. *il. N'importe* signifies No matter, Never mind, It does not signify, 383.

Non.—Adv. of negation. It signifies *no, not,* and corresponds to the prefixes *un, in,* and *non.* The negative *ne* and the conj. *ni,* are only different forms of *non,* 289.—*Non* is often used for *not,* instead of *ne pas,* particularly in elliptical phrases where the v. is not repeated, 498.

Non plus, neither.—Is opposed to *aussi,* also, likewise. It is used in the negative, when *aussi* is employed in the corresponding affirmative sentences, 632.

Non plus que, nor.—Connective after which the v. agrees with its first subject only, 675.

Nonobstant que, notwithstanding.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Non que, not that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Notre, our.—Possessive adj. of both genders and of the sing. number. Its pl. is *nos*, likewise corresponding to *our*, 164.—It agrees with the subst. that follows it, 107.—Must be repeated before each subst. 108.

Nôtre, ours.—See LE NÔTRE.

Nous.—Invariable personal pron. which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct, and sometimes the indirect regimen of the v. It corresponds to *we, us, to us, ourselves, to ourselves*, 275.—When *nous* stands for *je* or *moi*, the adj., subst., or part. corresponding to it must be employed in the sing. 705.

Nouveau, new.—Fem. *nouvelle* by exc. 2. *Nouvel* is employed instead of *nouveau* before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute.

Nu, naked.—When the adj. *nu* precedes the subst. it is invariable. When it follows the subst. it agrees with it, 691.

Nuire, to injure.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Nuisant*.—Pa. part. *Nui*.—Indicative mood, pres tense: *Je nuis, tu nuis, il nuit, nous nuisons, vous nuisez, ils nuisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je nuisais, tu nuisais, il nuisait, nous nuisions, vous nuisiez, ils nuisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je nuisis, tu nuisis, il nuisit, nous nuisimes, vous nuisîtes, ils nuisirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Nuis, nuisons, nuisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je nuise, que tu nuises, qu'il nuise, que nous nuisions, que vous nuisiez, qu'ils nuisent*.—Past tense: *Que je nuisisse, que tu nuisisses, qu'il nuisît, que vous nuisissions, que vous nuisissiez, qu'ils nuisissent*.

Numbers.—See PLURAL.—The cardinal numbers stand for the ordinal ones, for the sake of brevity:—after the names of sovereigns; —after certain words denoting the divisions or subdivisions of a work, as *chapitre, page*, etc.; —before the names of the months, without the prep. *de*, as, *le deux septembre*, 653, § 1.—*Première*, however, cannot be replaced by *un*, 653, § 2.

O.

OB.—Inseparable particle, beginning words which are generally the same, or nearly the same in English. *Ob* is changed into *oc, of, op*, according to the consonant which begins the radical word, 68.

Œil, eye.—Is pronounced as if spelled (in French) *euil*. The pl. is *yeux*. The word *œil* is sometimes used to denote other objects than the organ of sight, in which case its pl. is often formed regularly, as: *Des œils-de-bœuf*, circular windows, or bull's eyes, 463.

Offrir, to offer.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Offrant*.—Pa. part. *Offert*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'offre, tu offres, il offre, nous offrons, vous offrez, ils offrent*.—Imperfect tense: *J'offrais, tu offrais, il offrait, nous offrions, vous offriez, ils offraient*.—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Offre, offrons, offrez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'offre, que tu offres, qu'il offre, que nous offrions, que vous offriez, qu'ils offrent*.—Past tense, regular.

Oindre, to anoint.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *verbs in* INDRE. Seldom used.

OIR.—Termination of verbs which are irregular, 117.—Many grammars give a model of conjugation in *oir*; but this model is applicable only to *devoir, redevoir, apercevoir, concevoir, décevoir, percevoir*, and *recevoir*.

Termination of numerous substantives derived from verbs, as *lavoir*, fr. *laver*; *tiroir*, fr. *tirer*, etc.

OIRE.—Termination common to substantives and adjectives, about 100 of which end in English in *ory*, 332.

ON.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *on* form their fem. by doubling the *n* and adding *e* mute, 184.

In the derivatives of words ending in *on*, the *n* is doubled, 288.

On.—Pron. Indefinite pronoun which generally corresponds to the English word *one*; sometimes to *people* or *they*; and moreover is often rendered in English by a different construction, 18.—This pron. is much more frequently used in French than the word *one* is in English. It often corresponds to the passive form, as: *On le voyait*, He was seen, 61.

In phrases in which the subject is undefined and may be anybody, the v. that follows *falloir* may be employed in the subjunctive mood, with *on* as a subject, 296.

A euphonic *l'* precedes *on*, after *et, si, ou, que*, and *qui*, to avoid the hiatus, 497.

The pron. *on* is generally masc. and sing. However, when the sense clearly shows that it refers to a woman, or to certain persons, it is followed by adjectives, participles, or substantives, either fem. or pl. according to the sense, 663.

On retains its nasal sound, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

On.—Eng. prep. The prep. *on*, used in English before the pres. part. to denote the time at which any thing happens, is rendered in French by *en*, 374.

Onze, eleven.—There is a peculiarity in the word *onze* and its derivative *onzième*: although they begin with a vowel, the elision or suppression of *e* in *que, le, la*, or *de*, when any of these words precede them, does not take place, 229.

Ordinal numbers.—Formed from the cardinal numbers by adding the termination *ième*, 44.

Orgue, organ.—Masc. in the sing. by exc. (15). Fem. in the pl.

Oser, to dare.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *oser*, especially when this v. governs an infinitive. 80.

Ou, or.—When two subject substantives are joined by this conj. the v. agrees with the last only. This rule is sometimes violated, even by good writers, 693.

Où, where.—Adv. of place, distinguished from the conj. *ou*, or, by the grave accent over the *u*.—*Où* is also used as a relative pron. signifying *in which*, or *to which*. It may be preceded by *de* and *par*. The pronouns *où, d'où, par où*, refer to things only, and are properly used when the sense conveys an idea of locality, whether positive or abstract, 150.

Ouir, to hear.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Oyant*.—Pa. part. *Ouï*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *J'ois, tu ois, il oit, nous oyons, vous oyez, ils oient*.—Imperfect tense: *J'oyais, tu oyais, il oyait, nous oyions, vous oyiez, ils oyaient*.—Past tense definite: *J'ouïs, tu ouïs, il ouït, nous ouïmes, vous ouîtes, ils ouïrent*.—Future tense: *J'oirai, tu oiras, il oira, nous oirons, vous oirez, ils oiront*.—Conditional mood: *J'oirais, tu oirais, il oirait, nous oirions, vous oiriez, ils oiraient*.—Imperative mood: *Ois, oyons, oyez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que j'oie, que tu oies, qu'il oie, que nous oyions, que vous oyiez, qu'ils oient*.—Past tense: *Que j'ouïsse, que tu ouïsses, qu'il ouït, que nous ouïssions, que vous ouïssiez, qu'ils ouïssent*.—All these forms are obsolete. This v. is only

used in the infinitive and in the compound tenses, with *avoir*.

Outre, prep.—Signifies *beyond, over and above, besides, in addition to.* It is also used adverbially and corresponds to *beyond, farther,* or *further*, 339.

Ouvrir, to open.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Ouvrant.*—Pa. part. *Ouvert.*—Indicative mood, pres tense : *J'ouvre, tu ouvres, il ouvre, nous ouvrons, vous ouvrez, ils ouvrent.*—Imperfect tense : *J'ouvrais, tu ouvrais, il ouvrait, nous ouvrions, vous ouvriez, ils ouvraient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular. —Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood : *Ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que j'ouvre, que tu ouvres, qu'il ouvre, que nous ouvrions, que vous ouvriez, qu'ils ouvrent.*—Past tense, regular.

P.

Paître, to graze.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Paissant.*—Pa. part. *Pu* (only used by falconers).—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je pais, tu pais, il pait, nous paissons, vous paissez, ils paissent.* Imperfect tense : *Je paissais, tu paissais, il paissait, nous paissions, vous paissiez, ils paissaient.*—No past tense definite.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Pais, paissons, paissez.*—Subjunctive mood : *Que je paisse, que tu paisses, qu'il paisse, que nous paissions, que vous paissiez, qu'ils paissent.*—No past tense.

Par, by.—One of the important French prepositions. It generally corresponds to *by ;* but sometimes to *through, from, out of, with.* It denotes the means, the agent, the cause, or the way through, 92 —May be governed by *de*, 223.—The choice between *de* and *par* after a passive v. is sometimes a cause of doubt, even for the French. In general, *par* is more properly employed when the v. expresses an action, 648.

Paraître, to appear.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Paraissant,* —Pa. part. *Paru.* —Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je parais, tu parais, il paraît, nous paraissons, vous paraissez, ils paraissent.*—Imperfect tense : *Je paraissais, tu paraissais, il paraissait, nous paraissions, vous paraissiez, ils paraissaient.*—Past tense definite : *Je parus, tu parus, il parut, nous parûmes, vous parûtes, ils parurent.*—Fut. tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Parais, paraissons, paraissez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que je paraisse, que tu paraisses, qu'il paraisse, que nous paraissions, que vous paraissiez, qu'ils paraissent.* —Past tense : *Que je parusse, que tu parusses, qu'il parût, que nous parussions, que vous parussiez, qu'ils parussent.*

Parce que, because.—Conj. formed of three words : *par,* by ; *ce,* that ; *que,* which or that. When combined as above, it signifies *because ;* but when the three words remain separate, they retain their original meaning, 67.

Participles.—The *present participle* of verbs ending in *er* in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into *ant*, 115.—The pres. part. of verbs ending in *ir* in the infin. is formed by changing this termination into *issant*, 256.—The pres. part. of verbs ending in *re* in the infin. is formed by changing this termination into *ant*, 259.

The use of the present participle, to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French, 85.—The English participle is sometimes rendered by the infinitive, with the prep. *a*, thus: *He is studying, Il est a étudier*, 203.

The present participle is often used as an adjective, in French as well as in English, 219. —When used as an adj. it follows the rule of the adj. and agrees in gender and number with the subst. 398.

The present participle sometimes becomes a subst. 399.

When the pres. part. in English, is either the subject or the regimen of a v. it is rendered by the infinitive, 671.

The *past participle* of verbs ending in *er* in the infinitive mood is formed by changing this termination into *é*, 52.—The pa. part. of verbs ending in *ir* in the infin. is formed by changing this termination into *i*, 481.—The pa. part. of verbs ending in *re* in the infin. is formed by changing this termination into *u*, 381.

The verbs in *indre*, which are irregular, form their pa. part. by changing *dre* into *t*, 612.

Participles form their fem. and pl. in the same manner as adjectives, 53.

When the past participle is used as an adj. it follows the rule of the adj. and agrees in gender and number with the subst. 63.—It is then almost invariably placed after the subst. 355.

The pa. part. when accompanied with the v. *avoir*, agrees in gender and number with its direct regimen, if that regimen precedes it, 105. —But it remains invariable, when its regimen follows it, 106.

The pa. part. when conjugated with the v. *être*, agrees in gender and number with its subject, 354.—There is an exception to the preceding rule : when the v. has the reflective or pronominal form.—Of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal v. the second may be a direct or an indirect regimen. If indirect, the pa. part. instead of agreeing with the subject (354) agrees with the direct regimen, provided that regimen precedes it. And when the direct regimen follows, the part. remains invariable, 568.—If the second of the two pronouns which precede a pronominal v. is a direct regimen, the pa. part. agrees with it, 569, § 1.—In the verbs which are accidentally pronominal, the sense shows whether the second pron. is a direct or an indirect regimen. In those that are essentially pronominal, of which a list has been given (364) the pron. is always a direct regimen, and accordingly the part. always agrees with it. The only exception is *s'arroger*, to arrogate, where the pron. is an indirect regimen. 569, § 2.

The pa. part. when conjugated with the v. *être*, agrees with its subject (354) even when this subject follows it by inversion.

The pa. part. which refers to the pron. *personne*, nobody, always remains invariable, and the part. which refers to the subst. *personne* or *personnes*, person, persons, agrees with it in gender and number (in the cases determined by rules, 63, 105, 254, and 398), 510.

The pa. part. *été* is invariable, 511.

When a participle refers to two or more substantives, or pronouns, either sing. or pl. and of different genders, it takes the pl. form and the masc. gender (in the cases determined by rules, 63, 105, 354, and 398), 665.

The pa. participles *attendu, excepté, passé, supposé*, and *vu*, are sometimes employed as prepositions, and, as such, they precede the subst. which they govern, and are invariable, 673.

Partir, to depart.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Partant.*—Pa. part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je pars, tu pars, il part, nous partons, vous partez, ils partent.*—Imperfect tense : *Je partois, tu partois, il partoit, nous partions, vous partiez, ils partoient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Pars, partons, partez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense :

Que je parte, que tu partes, qu'il parte, que nous partions, que vous partiez, qu'ils partent. Past tense, regular. — Conjugated with *être* when it denotes a state; with *avoir*, when it denotes an action.

Pas, not.—The primary sense of *pas* is step. It acquires a negative meaning only when preceded by *ne*, in which case the two words together signify *not*. See NE.—In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and *savoir*, especially when these verbs govern an infinitive, 80.—Is not used after the prep. *sans*, 410.—Its place varies. It may precede or follow the v. in the infin. mood; yet it is more commonly placed before the infin. than after it, 549.

Pas de.—Corresponds to *no* or *not any*, like *aucun*; but it differs from *aucun* inasmuch as it refers to the pl. as well as the sing. and has besides a more indefinite sense, 385.

Passé.—Pa. part. of the v. *passer*, to pass. Invariable when employed as a prep. signifying *after*, and preceding the subst. which it governs, 673.

Passive verbs.—Are conjugated, in French as in English, with the auxiliary v. *être*, 338.—The passive form, used in English to express that something is to be done or undergone, is rendered in French by the prep. *à*, followed by the infinitive, thus: *He is to be pitied, Il est à plaindre*, 409.—The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English, and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form, 636.

Past tense definite.—Is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows:—*er* into *ai*, *as*, *a*, *âmes*, *âtes*, *èrent*;—and *ir* and *re* into *is*, *is*, *it*, *îmes*, *îtes*, *irent*, 593.—This tense represents the action or the state from its very beginning; it expresses that it has ceased, and that the duration of time it occupied has elapsed, 135.—It is generally proper when the English past tense cannot be rendered by means of the words *was*, *would*, or *used to*, joined to the verb, 138.—It is particularly used in narratives. In familiar conversation, it is often avoided, as stiff and pedantic; and the past tense indefinite is substituted for it, 139.

Past tense indefinite.—Is the only compound tense that requires particular notice. It is formed by combining the pres. tense of *avoir* with the past part. of the principal v. This tense is used not only in speaking indefinitely of any thing past, or of an action done at a period of time which is not completed, as the English perfect tense is used, when we say "*I have finished my letter, He has travelled much this year*;" but the use of this tense is authorized also in reference to that time which is entirely elapsed. It is not therefore incorrect, as it would be in English, to say "*Il a vu son ami hier*, He has seen his friend yesterday," 291.

Past tense of the subjunctive mood.—See SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Peindre, to paint.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *verbs in* INDRE.

PER, prefix.—Inseparable particle generally meaning thoroughly or completely. It is often altered into *par*, and forms derivatives many of which are nearly the same in French and in English, 213.

Personne, person.—As a subst. *personne* is always fem. even when it is used to denote persons of the male sex.

Personne.—As an indefinite pron. is always masc. sing. and used without an article or any determinative word. With the negative *ne*, it signifies *no one*, *none*, *nobody*. Without the negative, it corresponds to *any one*, or *anybody*, 507.—The participle which refers to the pron. *personne* always remains invariable, 510.

Peu.—Adv. corresponding to *little* and *few*. It is sometimes rendered in English by the inseparable particle *un* or *in*. When followed by a subst. it requires the prep. *de* before the subst. *Peu* is also used substantively, 154.

Peu de chose, little.—Adverbial form, which is masc.

Peut-être, perhaps.—Adv. after which the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

Pire, worse, worst.—One of the three exceptional adjectives which, by themselves, express comparison. It is the comparative and superlative of *mauvais*, bad. 426.—Must be repeated before each subst. which it modifies, 427.

Pis, worse, worst.—Comparative and superlative of the adv. *mal*, ill, badly.

Plaindre, to pity.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *Verbs in* INDRE. When pronominal, *se plaindre* signifies to complain, 365.

Plaire, to please.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Plaisant*.—Pa. part. *Plu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je plais, tu plais, il plait, nous plaisons, vous plaisez, ils plaisent*.—Imperfect tense: *Je plaisais, tu plaisais, il plaisait, nous plaisions, vous plaisiez, ils plaisaient*.—Past tense definite: *Je plus, tu plus, il plut, nous plûmes, vous plûtes, ils plurent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Plais, plaisons, plaisez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je plaise, que tu plaises, qu'il plaise, que nous plaisions, que vous plaisiez, qu'ils plaisent*.—Past tense: *Que je plusse, que tu plusses, qu'il plût, que nous plussions, que vous plussiez, qu'ils plussent*.

Pleuvoir, to rain.—V. irr. and impersonal. Pres. part. *Pleuvant*.—Pa. part. *Plu*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Il pleut*.—Imperfect tense: *Il pleuvait*.—Past tense definite: *Il plut*.—Future tense: *Il pleuvra*.—Conditional mood: *Il pleuvrait*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense; *Qu'il pleuve*.—Past tense; *qu'il plût*.

Plupart.—Fem. and always preceded by the art. *la*. It signifies the most part, the greatest or the major part, the generality. It is called a partitive collective, 204.—After an adv. of quantity or a partitive collective noun, the prep. *de* is commonly used without the art. But *la plupart* is an exception, and requires the compound article after it, 221.—*La plupart* is sometimes employed elliptically without a subst. after it. In this case, the following v. is always in the pl. number, agreeing with a pl. subject understood, 222.

Plural.—The pl. of substantives is regularly formed by adding *s* to the sing. 29.

Substantives ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, do not change their termination in the pl. 17, 237, 430.

Substantives ending in *eu* and *au* form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*, 232.

Substantives ending in *al* form their pl. by changing this termination into *aux*, 379.—The exceptions are: *bals*, *carnavals*, *régals*, *cals*, *avals*, *cantals*, *nopals*, *pals*, *chacals*, *servals*, 380.

The following substantives, ending in *ail*, form their pl. by changing this termination into *aux*: *bail*, *corail*, *émail*, *soupirail*, *travail*, *vantail*, *ventail*. The other substantives in *ail* form their pl. regularly, 516.

The following substantives, ending in *ou*, form their pl. with *x* instead of *s*: *bijou*, *caillou*, *chou*, *genou*, *hibou*, *joujou*, *pou*. The other substantives in *ou* form their pl. regularly, 659.

Substantives borrowed from foreign languages generally begin by being invariable; but

when, by gradual assimilation, they are in common use, they follow the general rule, 692.

Uninflected parts of speech, when accidentally used as substantives, remain invariable, 703.

Substantives borrowed from foreign languages, and consisting of two or more words joined by a hyphen, are invariable, 672.

Most grammarians are of opinion that proper names should always be invariable, unless they be employed as common subst. The judicious Lemare, however, shows by numerous examples that the best writers give the pl. form to proper names, when they belong to several individuals, 695. § 1.—A proper name is invariable, when it serves to designate a single person, and is nevertheless preceded by *les* or another definitive in the pl. 695, § 2.

The pl. of adjectives, like that of substantives is regularly formed by adding *s* to the sing. 25.

Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* do not change their termination in the pl. 158.

Adjectives ending in *au* form their pl. in *x* instead of *s*, 285.

Adjectives ending in *al* generally form their pl. by changing *al* into *aux*. There are some exceptions, as *fatals*, *finals*, *nasals*, 469.

Participles form their pl. in the same manner as adjectives, 53.

If one of the component parts of a compound subst. is a word that has ceased to be used alone, it is considered as an adj. and takes the pl. when the sense requires it, 651.

In compound adjectives beginning with *mi*, *demi*, and *semi*, these three words, signifying *half*, remain invariable, 668.

When two adjectives form a compound, in which the first is used adverbially and qualifies the second, the first adj. is invariable, and the second agrees with the subst. 698, § 2.

In compound words, those component parts which are neither substantives nor adjectives are always invariable, 651.

When a compound adj. is formed of two adjectives, they are both declinable (except in the cases foreseen by rules 668 and 698), 680.

When a compound word is formed of an adj. and a subst. they both take the pl. form, if the sense requires it, 679.

When a compound word is formed of two substantives joined by a hyphen, each of the component parts takes the pl. if the sense requires it, 678.

When two adjectives form a compound in which the second qualifies the first, they are both invariable, 698.

Plus, more, most.—Serves to form the comparative of superiority, and the superlative, 114. — When in English the conj. *than* follows, it is rendered by *que*, 377.—*Plus* must be repeated before each adj., v., or adv. which it modifies, 427.

Plusieurs, several. — Indefinite adj. Invariable, plural, and of both genders. It corresponds to several, some, and many. It is sometimes used as an indefinite pron. 245.

Plutôt, rather.—For the difference between *plutôt* and *plus tôt*, see TÔT.

Plutôt que, rather than.—Connective after which the v. agrees with its first subject only, 675.

Poindre, to dawn.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*, but scarcely ever used otherwise than in the infinitive mood and the future tense.

Point, point, not.—Has a negative meaning only when preceded by *ne*, in which case the two words together signify *not*, like *ne pas*. See 19, 410. *Ne point* is more emphatically negative than *ne pas*.

Pose que, admitting that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Possessive case.—There is no such case in French. When it occurs in English, it should be rendered by the art. and the prep. *de*, thus: *Peter's book*, *Le livre de Pierre*, 56.

Possessive Adjectives.—See ADJECTIVES.

Possessive Pronouns.—See PRONOUNS.

Pour.—Prep. corresponding to *for*, *to*, *in order to*, 111.—When the English prep. *to*, before the infinitive mood, signifies *in order to*, it is rendered in French by *pour*, 371.

Pour peu que. — Gallicism, which corresponds to the English expressions, *Ever so little*, or *at all*, 235. This conjunctive form is followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Pour que, in order that. — Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Pourvoir, to provide.—V. irr. conjugated like *voir* in the pres. and pa. part., the pres. and imperfect tenses of the indicative, the imperative mood, and the pres. tense of the subjunctive mood.—Past tense definite: *Je pourvus, tu pourvus, il pourvut, nous pourvûmes, vous pourvûtes, ils pourvurent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Past tense, subjunctive mood: *Que je pourvusse, que tu pourvusses, qu'il pourvût, que nous pourvussions, que vous pourvussiez, qu'ils pourvussent.*

Pourvu que, provided. — Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Pouvoir, to be able.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Pouvant.*—Pa. part. *Pu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je puis*, or *je peux*, *tu peux*, *il peut*, *nous pouvons*, *vous pouvez*, *ils peuvent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je pouvais*, *tu pouvais*, *il pouvait*, *nous pouvions*, *vous pouviez*, *ils pouvaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, *nous pûmes*, *vous pûtes*, *ils purent.*—Future tense: *Je pourrai*, *tu pourras*, *il pourra*, *nous pourrons*, *vous pourrez*, *ils pourront.* Pronounce *rr* as single *r*.—Conditional mood: *Je pourrais*, *tu pourrais*, *il pourrait*, *nous pourrions*, *vous pourriez*, *ils pourraient.* Pronounce *rr* as single *r*.—No imperative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je puisse*, *que tu puisses*, *qu'il puisse*, *que nous puissions*, *que vous puissiez*, *qu'ils puissent.*—Past tense: *Que je pusse*, *que tu pusses*, *qu'il pût*, *que nous pussions*, *que vous pussiez*, *qu'ils pussent.*

In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *pouvoir*, especially when this v. governs an infinitive, 80.

The absence of an English form equivalent to the pa. part. *pu*, gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: *pu* forming a compound tense with the auxil. v. *avoir*, and being followed by an infinitive, thus: *Il aurait pu mourir*, he might have died, 647.

PRÉ.—Prefix. Inseparable particle, generally denoting priority or superiority. Many of the derivatives in which it is found are nearly the same in French and in English. *Pré* sometimes corresponds to the English prefix *fore*, 208.

Premier, first.—See UNIÈME, 421 and 653, § 2.

Prendre, to take.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Prenant.*—Pa. part. *Pris.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je prends*, *tu prends*, *il prend*, *nous prenons*, *vous prenez*, *ils prennent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je prenais*, *tu prenais*, *il prenait*, *nous prenions*, *vous preniez*, *ils prenaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je pris*, *tu pris*, *il prit*, *nous prîmes*, *vous prîtes*, *ils prirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Prends*, *prenons*, *prenez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je prenne*,

que tu prennes, qu'il prenne, que nous prenions, que vous preniez, qu'ils prennent.—Past tense: *Que je prisse, que tu prisses, qu'il pût, que nous prissions, que vous prissiez, qu'ils prissent.*

Prepositions.—The principal prepositions are: *à, après, attendu, avant, avec, chez, contre, dans, de, depuis, derrière, dès, devant, durant, en, entre, envers, hormis, hors, malgré, moyennant, nonobstant, outre, par, parmi, pendant, pour, sans, sauf, selon, sous, suivant, sur, touchant, vers, vis-à-vis.* Those which require particular notice will be found, each in its alphabetical place.

The prepositions *à, de, en,* must be repeated before each subst., adj., pron., or v. which they govern, 109.—The others need not be repeated, unless the regimens have meanings totally different, or express contrary ideas, 263.

Prepositions govern the infinitive mood. *En* is the only one that governs the pres. part. 129.

The prep. *in,* required in English after a superlative and before the name of a place, is rendered by *de* and not by *dans,* 128.

Some prepositions may govern others. *De* sometimes governs *après, avec, en, entre, chez, par, près, auprès,* 223.

The prep. *to,* which is often omitted in English before the indirect regimen of a verb, must always be rendered in French, *when that regimen is a subst.,* by *à,* or by the contraction of *à* with the article: *au, aux,* 109.

The inversive construction, so frequent in English, by which the prep. governing a relative pron. is thrown to the end of a phrase, never takes place in French, 445.

List of adjectives, with the prepositions which they govern, 520.

Près, near.—When a prep. is generally followed by *de.*—May be governed by *de,* 223.

Present tense.—The pres. tense of the indicative mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows:—*er* into *e, es, e, ons, ez, ent;*—*ir* into *is, is, it, issons, issez, issent;*—*re* into *s, s* (blank), *ons, ez, ent,* 614.

The use of the pres. part. to signify that the action is instantaneous, is very uncommon in French; nor is there any such word as *do* or *did,* to give greater strength to an affirmation; so that these three modes of expression, *He gives, He is giving,* and *He does give,* have but one translation in French: *Il donne,* 85.

The present tense, used in English, to point out the relative time of a future action, must be rendered in French by the future, 334.

When a v. is preceded by an adv. or a conj. of time, as *when, while, as soon as,* etc., and when the future tense is implied from the reference of that v. to another v. in the future tense or in the imperative mood, the pres. tense, generally employed in English, must be rendered by the future tense in French, 472.

For the present tense of the subjunctive mood, see SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRO.—Prefix. Inseparable particle denoting progress, moving outwardly, lengthening, or diffusion. This particle exists in many words which are nearly the same in both languages, 182.

Produire, to produce.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire.*

Pronominal verbs.—See VERBS.

Pronouns.—The PERSONAL PRONOUNS are: *Je, me, moi—Tu, te, toi—Il, le, lui, elle, la, soi, se—Nous—Vous—Ils, elles, les, eux, leur—En, y.*

The personal pronouns, *moi, toi, lui, elle, soi, nous, vous, eux, elles,* combine with the adj. *même,* and acquire the following significations: *Moi même,* myself; *toi-même,* thyself; *lui-même,* himself, itself; *elle-même,* herself, itself; *soi-même,* one's self; *nous-même,* ourself; *nous-mêmes,* ourselves; *vous-même,* yourself; *vous-mêmes,* yourselves; *eux-mêmes,* themselves; *elles-mêmes,* themselves, 464.—These pronouns, sometimes necessary to avoid ambiguity (400), may also be used as mere expletives, for the sake of emphasis, 473.

A personal pron. used as a subject, generally precedes the v. in affirmative phrases. It may follow it, however, after the words: *aussi, peut-être, encore, toujours, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine,* 228.

The personal pron. precedes the v. not only when it is the subject, but also when it is the regimen, whether direct or indirect, 43.

The interrogative construction, when the subject is a pron., is formed by placing the subject after the v. The v. and pron. in this case are joined by a hyphen, 40.

The repetition of the subject pron. depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet, it may be stated in a general way that the repetition of the pron. is more frequent in French than in English, 389.

The personal pron. when a regimen, must be repeated before each v. employed in a simple tense, 682.

In the imperative mood, the personal pron. which is the regimen of the v. is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative, 297.—But when the phrase is negative, the pron. precedes the v. 298.

The pronouns *I, thou, he, she, it, we, you, they,* are rendered by *moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux, elles,* after a conj. when the v. which they govern is understood. But when the v. is expressed, the subject pronouns are: *Je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles,* 476.

When *he, him, she, her, they, them,* do not refer to any person or persons mentioned before, but are used in an indefinite sense, they must be rendered by the demonstrative pronouns, *celui, celle, ceux, celles,* instead of the personal pronouns, *il, lui, elle, la, ils, eux, elles,* 425.

A pron. cannot represent a subst. used in an undetermined sense, without an article or any other definitive, such as *ce, un, mon, plusieurs,* etc., especially when this subst. is combined with a v. or a prep. with which it expresses a single idea, 588, § 1. To render the use of a pron. correct in such phrases, the construction must be so disposed as to restrict the sense of the subst. by means of a definitive, 588. § 2.

When the art. *le, la, les* is substituted for a possessive adj. before a regimen (63), care must be taken, in order to avoid ambiguity, to make use of a pron. showing who the possessor is, 593, § 1.—This pron. is an indirect regimen, when the subst. is a direct one, as in the phrase, *Vous* LUI *tâtez* LE *pouls;* and a direct regimen when the subst. is an indirect one, thus: *Vous* LE *prenez par* LA *main,* 593. § 2.—The necessity of employing a pron. denoting who the possessor is, often gives the v. the form of a reflective v. thus: *Je* ME *tâte* LE *pouls,* 593, § 3.—The pronoun showing who the possessor is, may sometimes be the subject, thus; *J'ai mal* AU *bras,* 593, § 4.

The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici,* is the regimen of these words, which signify *behold.* Consequently we say, LE *voilà,* LA *voilà,* and not IL *voilà,* ELLE *voilà,* 294.

The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are: *Le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes—Le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes—Le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes—Le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres—Le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres—Le leur, la leur, les leurs.*

The possessive pron. agrees in gender and

number with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, as the English pron. does, 132.

The possessive pronouns are sometimes used as substantives, to denote our relations, friends, or dependents; but only in the masc. gender and in the pl. number, 641.

The DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are: *Ce, ceci, cela—Celui, celle, ceux, celles.*

The RELATIVE PRONOUNS are: *Qui, que, quoi, dont, lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, où, d'où, par où.*

A relative pron. always takes the gender, number, and person of the antecedent, and the v. agrees with it accordingly, 37, § 2.

The pronominal adj. *quel* (71) combines with the art. simple or compound, and forms: *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles — Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles—Auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles*, 165.

Lequel, etc., are seldom used as subjects or as direct regimens, unless they become necessary to avoid ambiguity. The subject is generally represented by *qui*, and the direct regimen by *que*, 173.

If the relative pron. is governed by a prep. it is generally expressed by *qui*, when it refers to persons, and by *lequel, laquelle*, etc., when it refers to things.

A simple adjective cannot be the antecedent of a relative pron. But when an adj. is preceded by the article, it is employed substantively and may be an antecedent, 669.

The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are: *Autre, autrui, chacun, l'un, l'un et l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, on, personne, quelqu'un, quiconque.*

Besides the general rules given under this head, each of the pronouns requiring a particular mention will be found in its alphabetical place.

Pronunciation.—See INTRODUCTORY LESSON, page vii.

Puisque, since.—The elision of the final *e* takes place before *il, elle, on, un, une.*

Q.

Quand.—Is used as an adv. and as a conj. As an adv. it means *when* or *whenever*; as a conj. it corresponds to *though, even, though even, if even*, and *what though*, 176.—When *quand* signifies *though*, it is always followed by a v. in the conditional mood. *Quand* must not be confounded with *quoique*, which signifies *though*, but requires the subjunctive mood after it, 498.

Quant.—Adv. always followed by *à*, and signifying *with regard to, with respect to, as to, as for.*

Quatre-vingts, eighty.—The final *s* is suppressed, when *quatre-vingts* is joined to a following number, 547.

Que, pron.—Is either absolute or relative. When absolute, it corresponds to *what*; when relative, it signifies, *whom, which*, or *that*. In both cases it is almost invariably a direct regimen, 72, 173.

Que.—Connective. Generally corresponds to *that*. Has a great variety of meanings besides. When preceded by the negative particle *ne*, it corresponds to the English word *but*, in its restrictive sense of *only, save*, or *except*. L. 1. —The English conj. *than*, after the comparative, is rendered by *que*, 376.—*Que* is used for *combien* in exclamative phrases, and corresponds to *how, how much*, and *how many*. When placed before a substantive, it requires *de*, 552. —In inversive phrases in which *ce*, the v. *être*, and the regimen, precede the subject, *que* is employed as a connective, when both the subject and regimen are subst. 609.—The elision of the *e* in *que* takes place before a vowel or an *h* mute, 11.

Quel.—Pronominal adj. generally corresponding to *what*; sometimes to *which*. Its fem. is *quelle*; its pl. masc. *quels*, and its pl. fem. *quelles*, 71.—Is not followed by *un, une*, in exclamations, when the English word *what* requires *a, an* after it, 84.—Combined with the article, simple or compound, it forms the relative pronoun *lequel, laquelle*, etc. 165.

Quelconque.—Indefinite adj. corresponding to *whatever* or *any*.

Quelque.—Indefinite adj. corresponding to *some, any*, and *a few*. When used in the sing. it denotes an undetermined person or thing; and in the pl. an undetermined number of persons or things, 144.

Quelque, followed by *que*, corresponds to *whatever* and *however*, 386.

Quelque, followed by *que*, may be joined to a subst., to an adj., or to an adv. 392.

Quelque, joined to a subst., and signifying *whatever* or *whatsoever*, is an adj., and agrees in number with the subst. to which it is joined. The word *que* follows the subst. as *soever* sometimes does in English, 393.

Quelque, joined to an adj. or an adv., and signifying *however* or *howsoever*, is an adv., and therefore invariable, 394.—But when the adj. which comes after *quelque* is connected with a subst., *quelque* agrees with that subst. 395.

The elision of the final *e* in *quelque* is admitted only before the words *un* and *autre*, 145.

Quel que.—Followed by a v. signifies *whoever* or *whatever*. It forms two words, the first of which is an adj. agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the v. 396.

Quelque chose, something.—*Chose* is a fem. subst. 15; but *quelque chose*, signifying *something* or *any thing*, is an adverbial form, which is masc. 166.—When *quelque chose*, in the sense of *something* or *any thing*, is followed by an adj., it requires the prep. *de* before the adj., which retains the masc. termination, 571.

Quelqu'un.—Indefinite pron. When used in an absolute sense, that is, without any reference to a subst., it corresponds to *some one, somebody, any one, any body*. In this sense, it is used only in speaking of persons, and is always masc. It may take the pl. form, *quelques-uns*, but only when it is a subject, 642, § 1.—When it is not absolute and refers to a subst., it corresponds to *some* and *any*, and may relate to things as well as to persons. In this sense it takes the fem. and pl. forms, *quelqu'une, quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, 642, § 2.

Querir, to fetch.—V. defective. Is used only in the infinitive, with the verbs *aller, venir*, and *envoyer*. The French Academy writes *querir*. The other lexicographers are unanimous in writing *quérir*, with the acute accent, as the Academy itself writes the derivatives *acquérir, conquérir, requérir*.

Qui.—Relative pron. generally corresponding to the English words *who, whom, which, that*, and sometimes *what*. It is also used as an absolute pron., particularly in interrogations; in this case it refers only to persons, 9. —*Qui*, when it is relative, that is, when it has an antecedent, may be a subject or an indirect regimen. When it is a subject, it may refer to persons or to things. But when it is an indirect regimen, preceded by a prep., it refers only to persons, or to personified things, in poetical language, 37, § 1, 172.—It always takes the gender, number, and person of the antecedent, and the v. agrees with it accordingly, 37, § 2.—The subject is much more frequently represented by *qui* than by *lequel*, 173.—If the relative pron. is governed by a prep., it is generally ex-

pressed by *qui*, when it refers to persons, and by *lequel*, *laquelle*, etc., when it refers to things, 174.

Quiconque, whoever. — Indefinite pron. generally masc. and always sing. It refers to persons only, 631.

Quoi.– Pron. May be either absolute or relative. Refers to things and not to persons. When absolute it corresponds to *what*, or *what thing*, and is generally governed by a prep. When relative, which seldom happens, it signifies *which*, and is always an indirect regimen, 73.

Quoique, though.—One of the conjunctions after which the subjunctive mood is required, 244.—Must not be confounded with *quoi que*, in two separate words, signifying *whatever*. The elision of the *e* in *quoique* is admitted only before *il*, *elle*, *on*, *un*, *une*, 528.

R.

RE. prefix.—Inseparable particle, denoting repetition, reduplication, doing or beginning over again ;—or coming or going back ;—or, lastly, gradual increase or completion. The *e* of this particle is sometimes cut off, 146.

RE. termination.—One of the three terminations of the infinitive mood of French verbs, 78.

There are also many French words ending in *re*, which have become English, sometimes with the same orthography, and sometimes by transposing the final letters, 267.

Recevoir, to receive. — V. irr. conjugated like *apercevoir*.

Réduire, to reduce.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

Reflective Verbs.—See PRONOMINAL under the head VERBS.

Regimen.—The subst. which is the regimen of a v. generally follows it.

The personal pron. which is the regimen of a v. precedes it (except in the imperative mood), 43.

When several objective pronouns precede a v., *le*, *la*, *les* are placed before *lui* and *leur*, and after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, 488.

Personal pronouns, when they are regimens, must be repeated with each v. in its simple tenses ; and even in its compound tenses unless the auxiliary be suppressed, 699.

The pron., when a regimen, is placed before its v. (43) ; but when an infinitive is governed by another v., the pron. referring to this infinitive may be placed before either verb. However, it is more conformable to general custom to place the pron. regimen before the v. that governs it, 616.

In the imperative mood, the personal pron. which is the regimen of the v. is placed after it, when the phrase is not negative, 297.—But when the phrase is negative, the pron. precedes the v. 298.

When a v. in the imperative mood is followed by two object pronouns, the one direct, and the other indirect, the direct regimen is placed first, 702.—As an exception to the preceding rule, and for the sake of euphony, the pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *le*, *la*, when direct regimens, are placed after *y*. But this construction is forced, and it is better to avoid it, 702.

When a v. has two substantives for regimens, the one direct and the other indirect, it is usually followed by both, and if they are of the same length, the direct one is placed first ; if not, the shorter precedes the longer, 637.—The indirect regimen must be placed first, when the direct regimen is a subst. followed by some words that cannot be separated from it ; and, in general, when the sense requires it, to avoid ambiguity or obscurity, 686.

In inversive phrases, in which the regimen precedes the v., this regimen must be repeated in the form of a pron., which is generally *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the sense, 435.

When *faire* is followed by an infinitive, the regimen must not be placed between the two verbs. If it is a pron. it must precede *faire* (43) ; and if a subst. it must follow the second v. 548, § 1.—The imperative is the only mood in which the regimen, if a pron., is placed between *faire* and the next v. 548, § 2.

The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici*, is the regimen of these words : consequently we say, *le voilà*, and not *Il voilà*, 294.

Repentir (Se), to repent.—V. irr. conjugated like *sentir*. Always pronominal, 364.

Résoudre, to resolve.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Résolvant*.—Pa. part. *Résolu*, or *résous*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je résous, tu résous, il résout, nous résolvons, vous résolvez, ils résolvent*.—Imperfect tense : *Je résolvais, tu résolvais, il résolvait, nous résolvions, vous résolviez, ils résolvaient*. Past tense definite : *Je résolus, tu résolus, il résolut, nous résolumes, vous résolûtes, ils résolurent*.—Future tense, regular. — Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood : *Résous, résolvons, résolvez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que je résolve, que tu résolves, qu'il résolve, que nous résolvions, que vous résolviez, qu'ils résolvent*.—Past tense : *Que je résolusse, que tu résolusses, qu'il résolut, que nous résolussions, que vous résolussiez, qu'ils résolussent*.—The pa. part. *résous* is used only in the sense of *melted*, or separated into its component parts. It has no fem.

Restreindre, to restrain.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre*. See also *verbs in* INDRE.

Rien, nothing, any thing.—The prep. *de* must be prefixed to an adj. which follows *rien*, 411.—When *rien* is a direct regimen, it generally precedes the v. in the infinitive mood ; and in the compound tenses it is placed between the auxiliary and the participle. But it follows the v. in the simple tenses, 628.—The letters *en* remain nasal even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of another word.

Rire, to laugh.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Riant*.—Pa. part. *Ri*.—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rions, vous riez, ils rient*.—Imperfect tense : *Je riais, tu riais, il riait, nous riions, vous riiez, ils riaient*. It is regularly formed ; but the reduplication of the *i* in the first and second persons pl. is to be remarked.—Past tense definite : *Je ris, tu ris, il rit, nous rîmes, vous rîtes, il rirent*.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Ris, rions, riez*.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, regular. See *Imperfect*.—Past tense : *Que je risse, que tu risses, qu'il rît, que nous rissions, que vous rissiez, qu'ils rissent*.

Rompre, to break.—V. irr. only in the third person sing. of the pres. tense, indicative mood : *Il rompt*, instead of *Il romp*.

S.

Sa, his, her, its.—Fem. of *Son*.

Saillir, to jut out.—V. irr. and defective. Used in the infinitive and the third persons only. Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Il saille, ils saillent*.—Imperfect tense : *Il saillait, ils saillaient*. — No past tense definite. — Future tense : *Il saillera, ils sailleront*.—Conditional mood : *Il saillerait, ils sailleraient*.—No imper-

ative mood.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Qu'il saille, qu'ils saillent.*—Past tense, regular.

Saillir is regular in the sense of *To gush out*, or of *To leap*; but is used only in the infinitive and in the third persons.

Sans,—Prep. corresponding to *without*. Is sometimes rendered in English by *but for*, or by the termination *less*, 98.—After this prep., the negatives *ne*, *pas*, *point*, are not used, 410.

Sans que, without, but that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Savoir, to know.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Sachant.*—Pa. part. *Su.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sais, tu sais, il sait, nous savons, vous savez, ils savent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je savais, tu savais, il savait, nous savions, vous saviez, ils savaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je sus, tu sus, il sut, nous sûmes, vous sûtes, ils surent.*—Future tense: *Je saurai, tu sauras, il saura, nous saurons, vous saurez, ils sauront,*—Conditional mood: *Je saurais, tu saurais, il saurait, nous saurions, vous sauriez, ils sauraient.*—Imperative mood: *Sache, sachons, sachez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je sache, que tu saches, qu'il sache, que nous sachions, que vous sachiez, qu'ils sachent.*—Past tense: *Que je susse, que tu susses, qu'il sût, que nous sussions, que vous sussiez, qu'ils sussent.*

In negative sentences, the word *pas* may be suppressed after *savoir*, especially when this v. governs an infinitive, 80.

"To know how to do a thing" is generally expressed in French, by *Savoir faire une chose.* The adv. *comment*, which should be the translation of *how*, is usually omitted. *Savoir*, followed by an infinitive is often used also when *can* or *could* is employed in English, as: *Savez-vous lire?* Can you read? 281.

Se.—Personal pron. of both genders and numbers, corresponding to *himself, herself, itself, one's self, themselves*, as a direct regimen. It signifies also *to himself, to herself*, etc., as an indirect regimen, 65.—The elision of the *e* takes place before a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 11.

Semi, half.—Always joined to another word, and invariable, 668.

Sentir, to feel.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Sentant.*—Pa. part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sens, tu sens, il sent, nous sentons, vous sentez, ils sentent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je sentais, tu sentais, il sentait, nous sentions, vous sentiez, ils sentaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Sens, sentons, sentez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je sente, que tu sentes, qu'il sente, que nous sentions, que vous sentiez, qu'ils sentent.*—Past tense, regular.

Seoir, to sit.—V. irr. defective and obsolete. The only forms still in use are the pres. part. *séant*, and the pa. part. *sis*, as a verbal adj. meaning *situated*. See the next paragraph.

Seoir, to be becoming.—V. irr. and defective. The infinitive is obsolete. Pres. part. *séyant.* This v. is used only in the third persons of the following tenses. Pres. tense, indicative mood: *Il sied, ils siéent.*—Imperfect tense: *Il seyait, ils seyaient.*—Future tense: *Il siéra, ils siéront.*—Conditional mood: *Il siérait, ils siéraient.*—Pres. tense, subjunctive mood: *qu'il siée, qu'ils siéent.*

Servir, to serve.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Servant.*—Pa. part. *Servi.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sers, tu sers, il sert, nous servons, vous servez, ils servent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je servais, tu servais, il servait, nous servions, vous serviez, ils servaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Imperative mood: *Sers, servons, servez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je serve, que tu serves, qu'il serve, que nous servions, que vous serviez, qu'ils servent.*—Past tense, regular.

Ses, his, her, its.—Pl. of *son.*

Si,—Conj. corresponding to *if* and *whether*. The elision of the vowel *i* in this word takes place only before *il* and its pl. *ils.* *Si* is also used as an adv. signifying *so, so very, so much*, and sometimes *yes*, 122.—When the conj. *si* corresponds to the English word *if*, and signifies *supposing that*, the v. that follows the conj. is used in the pres. tense of the indicative, with the correlative v. of the phrase in the future; or the conj. is followed by the imperfect tense, with the second v. in the conditional mood, 422.—But when *si* corresponds to the English conj. *whether*, and expresses doubt, it may be followed by the conditional mood or the future tense, according to the sense of the sentence, 423.—*Si*, as an adv. of comparison, must be repeated before each adj. or adv. which it modifies, 427.—In English, after the adv. *so*, the word *a* is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, *si* is preceded by *un, une.* As for the place of the adj. it is often optional, 434.—In negative phrases, the adv. *so*, before the adj., the part., or the adv., may be rendered either by *aussi* or by *si*, 475.

Sien, his, hers.—See LE SIEN.

SION.—Termination. Substantives ending in *sion* are fem. 50.

Si peu que, ever so little.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Si tant est que, if so be that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Sitôt, so soon.—See TÔT.

Soi.—Personal pron. of the third person sing. corresponding to *one's self*, sometimes to *himself, herself, itself.* It is of both genders, and refers to things as well as to persons. It is generally used in an undetermined sense, as a correlative of an indefinite pron., such as, *on, quiconque, aucun*, 492.

Soit que, whether.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Some.—English adj. Is often rendered by the partitive art. *de, du, de la, des*, 93.—When *some* is the direct regimen of a v. it is rendered by *en*, placed before the v. except in the imperative mood, 484.

Son.—Possessive adj. corresponding to *his, her, its*, and *one's.* It is masc. and sing. Its fem. is *sa*, and the pl. of both genders *ses*, 51.—It agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 107.

When *its* refers to a thing which is not the subject of the phrase, it is rendered by *en*, instead of *son, sa, ses*, 277.—When the thing to which *its* relates is the subject of the phrase, this adj. is rendered by *son, sa*, or *ses*, 279.—Even when the thing is not the subject of the phrase, *its* must be rendered by *son, sa*, or *ses*, when it is governed by a prep. 280.

Before a fem. subst. or adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *son* is substituted for *sa*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 483, § 1.—In this case, the letters *on*, in *son*, continue to be nasal, though the *n* coalesces with the next vowel, 483, § 2.

Sortir, to go out.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Sortant.*—Pa. part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sors, tu sors, il sort, nous sortons, vous sortez, ils sortent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je sortais, tu sortais, il sortait, nous sortions, vous sortiez, ils sortaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Sors, sortons, sortez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je sorte, que tu sortes, qu'il sorte, que nous sortions, que vous sortiez, qu'ils sortent.*—Past tense, regular.—This v. generally takes *être* as an auxiliary; *avoir* may however be used when *sortir* expresses an action.

Souffrir, to suffer. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Souffrant.* — Pa. part. *Souffert.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je souffre, tu souffres, il souffre, nous souffrons, vous souffrez, ils souffrent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je souffrais, tu souffrais, il souffrait, nous souffrions, vous souffriez, ils souffraient.*—Past tense definite, regular. — Future tense, regular. — Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood: *Souffre, souffrons, souffrez.* — Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je souffre, que tu souffres, qu'il souffre, que nous souffrions, que vous souffriez, qu'ils souffrent.*—Past tense, regular.

Sous.—Prep. which generally corresponds to *under, below,* or *beneath.* In a few cases it is rendered by *with, on,* or *upon,* 300.

SUB.—Prefix. Inseparable particle, signifying *under,* and implying a subordinate degree. It begins words many of which are nearly the same in English, 609, § 1. — In French, as well as in English, the *b* of *sub* is often changed into *c, f, g,* or *p,* when the next syllable begins with one of these consonants, 609, § 2.—In some words, the *b* is suppressed, 609, § 3.

Subject. — The subject generally precedes the v. in affirmative phrases.

The subject, when a pronoun, is placed after the v. in interrogative phrases, 40.

When the subject is a substantive, in interrogative phrases, it is generally placed before the v., and repeated after it in the form of a pron. 86.

A personal pron. used as a subject, generally precedes the v. It may follow it, however, after the words *aussi, peut-être, encore, toujours, en vain, du moins, au moins, à peine,* 228.

When the subject is a subst. followed by other words which qualify it, it is sometimes proper to place it after the v. 332.

The subject is placed after the v. in the incidental phrase by which we designate the person whose words are quoted, 373.

The repetition of the subject pron. depends rather on the taste of the speaker than on any precise rule. Yet, it may be stated in a general way that the repetition of the pron. is more frequent in French than in English, 389.

The subject, when it is a subst., may follow the v. if the sense excludes a direct regimen, 565.

When the v. has several subjects in the sing., either substantives or pronouns of the third person, joined by the conj. *et,* expressed or understood, it takes the pl. form, 580.—As a departure from rule 580, the v. is sometimes made to agree with the last subst. only, when it is considered as more important than all the rest.

When two substantives are connected by *de même que, aussi bien que, comme, non plus que, plutôt que, avec, ainsi que,* the v. agrees with the first subst. only, 675.

When a v. is preceded by two or more substantives which are synonymous, and not connected by *et,* it agrees with the last subst. only, 666.

When two subject substantives are joined by *ou,* the v. agrees with the last only. This rule is sometimes violated, even by good writers, 693.

When two or more subjects in the sing. are joined by the conj. *ni,* the v. may be made to agree with the last subject only, or may be put in the pl. The best writers have given numerous examples of both forms, 656.

When several subject substantives are summed up in one word, as, *tout, rien, personne, chacun,* etc., the v. agrees with the last subject only, 700.

When a v. refers to several subjects of different persons, the subjects are summed up by the pron. *nous* or *vous,* with which the v. agrees, 697, § 1.—*Nous* is employed if one of the subjects is of the first person; otherwise *vous* is the proper pron. 697, § 2.

Subjunctive mood.—The *Present tense* of the subjunctive mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows:—*er* and *re* into *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent;* —and *ir* into *isse, isses, isse, issions, issiez, issent,* 624, § 1.—The peculiarity of verbs in *ir* consists in the addition of the syllable *iss* to every person, but the letters following this syllable are the same as in the two other forms of conjugation, 624, § 2.—In verbs in *er* the three persons of the sing. and the third person of the pl. number are similar to the same persons of the pres. tense, indicative mood; while in verbs in *ir* and *re* the similarity exists but in the third person pl. 624, § 3.—In verbs in *ir,* the first and second persons sing. and the three persons pl. are similar to the same persons of the past tense, subjunctive mood, 624, § 4.—In the three forms of conjugation, the first and second persons pl. are similar to the same persons of the imperfect tense, 624, § 5.

The *Past tense* of the subjunctive mood is formed by changing the termination of the infinitive as follows: *er* into *asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent;*—*ir* and *re* into *isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent,* 611.

The tense of the subjunctive mood is determined by the tense of the preceding v. 82.—The pres. tense of the subj. mood is employed after the pres. and future tenses of the indicative, 226.—The past tense of the subjunctive is employed after the past tenses of the indicative mood, 83, and after the conditional, 131.

The subjunctive mood generally expresses that the action of the subject is wished, wanted, or required by another person, 81.—It is used also:—After verbs, which, in a principal proposition, express surprise, admiration, doubt, or fear, 282.—After a v. used impersonally, in such phrases as the following: *It is fit, It is proper, It is necessary, It is time, It is convenient,* etc. 130.—When the v. is subjoined to a negative or an interrogative proposition, unless this subjoined v. expresses a positive incontestable fact, 225.—After the following conjunctions and connective phrases: *afin que, à moins que, avant que, en cas que, bien que, quoique, de peur que, de crainte que, encore que, jusqu'à ce que, loin que, non que, nonobstant que, posé que, pour que, pour peu que, pourvu que, sans que, si peu que, si tant est que, soit que, supposé que, et que,* when this last expression is only an abbreviative form of one of the foregoing, 244.—After these expressions, *quelque... que, quel que, qui que, quoi que,* corresponding to *whatever, however, whoever,* and *whichever,* 397.—After a relative pron. preceded by *le seul, le plus, le moins, le mieux, le meilleur, le pire, le moindre,* and *peu,* 677.

After *Il semble,* the subjunctive mood is generally required; but this rule is not absolute; thus, when the v. *sembler* is preceded by one of the pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur,* and used affirmatively, the indicative mood is necessary, 456.

When the subjoined phrase is connected with the principal one by a relative pron., and denotes something doubtful or uncertain, the subjunctive mood is properly employed, 683. — But if the subjoined phrase admits of no doubt, the indicative mood must be employed, 579.

The v. *falloir,* being impersonal, is generally followed by the subjunctive mood (130). However, in phrases in which the subject is undefined and may be any body, the v. that follows *falloir* may be employed in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive, with the indefinite pron. *on* as a subject, 296.

Substantives.—In English, a subst. which qualifies another subst. is generally placed first, as *second-watch, steam-boat*, etc. In French, the qualifying subst. follows the name of the qualified object, and the two nouns are connected by means of a prep., generally *à* or *de*, or of a compound article, thus: *Montre à secondes*, second-watch; *bateau à vapeur*, steam-boat; *pot au lait*, milk-pot; *chemin de fer*, railway, 594.

Substantives denoting titles, qualities, or professions, which may belong to either sex, often produce fem. derivatives, by means of the same terminations that adjectives take to form their fem. 620.

In compound words, those component parts which are neither substantives nor adjectives are always invariable, 651.

Uninflected parts of speech, when accidentally used as substantives, remain invariable, 704.

The infinitive mood of verbs is sometimes used substantively. In this case, it is determined by the article or by pronouns and adjectives, like any other subst. 418.

See VENDERS and PLURAL.

Suffire, to suffice. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Suffisant.*—Pa. part. *Suffi.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffisons, vous suffisez, ils suffisent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je suffisais, tu suffisais, il suffisait, nous suffisions, vous suffisiez, ils suffisaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je suffis, tu suffis, il suffit, nous suffîmes, vous suffîtes, ils suffirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Suffis, suffisons, suffisez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je suffise, que tu suffises, qu'il suffise, que nous suffisions, que vous suffisiez, qu'ils suffisent.*—Past tense, not in use.

Suivre, to follow.—V. irr. only in the pa. part. *Suivi;* the three persons sing. of the pres. tense, indic. mood: *Je suis, tu suis, il suit;* and the second person sing. of the imperative mood, *Suis.*—The rest is regular.

Superlative.—See DEGREES OF COMPARISON and ADJECTIVES.

Supposé, supposed. — When this pa. part is employed as a prep., signifying, In the supposition of, it precedes the subst. which it governs, and is invariable, 673.

Supposé que, supposing that.—Connective followed by the subjunctive mood, 244.

Sur.—Prep. corresponding to *on, upon, over*, and *above*, 118.—*Sur* is also used as an inseparable particle, and denotes situation upon or over, pre-eminence or excess. Some of the derivatives formed by means of this particle are nearly the same in both languages, 119.

Surseoir, to suspend.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Sursoyant.* — Pa. part. *Sursis.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je sursois, tu sursois, il sursoit, nous sursoyons, vous sursoyez, ils sursoient.*—Imperfect tense: *Je sursoyais, tu sursoyais, il sursoyait, nous sursoyions, vous sursoyiez, ils sursoyaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je sursis, tu sursis, il sursit, nous sursîmes, vous sursîtes, ils sursirent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood, not in use.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, not in use.—Past tense: *Que je sursisse, que tu sursisses, qu'il sursît, que nous sursissions, que vous sursissiez, qu'ils sursissent.*

T.

Ta, thy.—Fem. of *ton.*

Taire, not to say.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Taisant.*—Pa. part. *Tu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je tais, tu tais, il tait, nous taisons, vous taisez, ils taisent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je taisais, tu taisais, il taisait, nous taisions, vous taisiez, ils taisaient.* Past tense definite: *Je tus, tu tus, il tut, nous tûmes, vous tûtes, ils turent.*—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Tais, taisons, taisez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je taise, que tu taises, qu'il taise, que nous taisions, que vous taisiez, qu'ils taisent.*—Past tense: *Que je tusse, que tu tusses, qu'il tût, que nous tussions, que vous tussiez, qu'ils tussent.*—With the pronominal form, *se taire* signifies to be silent.

Tant.—Adv. of quantity, corresponding to *so much, as much, so many, as many, so far, as far, so long, as long, to such a degree.* Before a subst. it takes the prep. *de*, 344.—As an adv. of comparison, it must be repeated before each v. or part. which it modifies, 427.

Tantôt.—See Tôt.

Te.—Personal pron. of the second person sing. and of both genders.—It is never used as a subject. It is sometimes a direct, and sometimes an indirect regimen, corresponding to *thee, to thee, thyself, to thyself.* It always precedes the v. It is one of the words in which the elision of the *e* takes place before a vowel or an *h* mute, 452.—All the observations made on the pron. *me* are applicable to *te*, 457.

TÉ.—Termination. Substantives ending in *té* are very numerous in French; most of them have their correspondents in English in *ty.* They are fem. 241.—The following words ending in *té* are masc. by exc.: *Aparté, arrêté, bénéficité, comité, comté, côté, député, été, jeté, pâté, précipité, traité, velouté,* 242.

Teindre, to dye.—V. irr. conjugated like *craindre.* See also *Verbs in* INDRE.

Tenir, to hold.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Tenant.* — Pa. part. *Tenu.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je tiens, tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je tenais, tu tenais, il tenait, nous tenions, vous teniez, ils tenaient.* — Past tense definite: *Je tins, tu tins, il tint, nous tînmes, vous tîntes, ils tinrent.*—Future tense: *Je tiendrai, tu tiendras, il tiendra, nous tiendrons, vous tiendrez, ils tiendront.*—Conditional mood: *Je tiendrais, tu tiendrais, il tiendrait, nous tiendrions, vous tiendriez, ils tiendraient.*—Imperative mood: *Tiens, tenons, tenez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je tienne, que tu tiennes, qu'il tienne, que nous tenions, que vous teniez, qu'ils tiennent.* —Past tense: *Que je tinsse, que tu tinsses, qu'il tînt, que nous tinssions, que vous tinssiez, qu'ils tinssent.*—In all the forms in which the letters *ien* are not followed by *n*, these letters are pronounced as in *bien, rien.*

Tenses. See PRESENT TENSE, IMPERFECT TENSE, PAST TENSE DEFINITE, PAST TENSE INDEFINITE, FUTURE TENSE, and SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The compound tenses in French are generally formed in the same manner as in English, by means of the auxiliary v. *avoir*, 96.

The compound tenses of pronominal verbs are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary v. *être*, 567.

The major part of neuter verbs form their compound tenses with *avoir*, 335.

Some neuter verbs take *être* as an auxiliary in their compound tenses, when they express a state; and *avoir* when they express an action, 687.

When a v. usually neuter is employed with the active form, it takes *avoir* in its compound tenses, 688.

The compound tense *To have been*, or *To have been doing*, when it denotes that a state or an action continues, must be rendered by the pres-

ent tense in French, 644.—As a consequence of the preceding observation, when the pluperfect tense denotes that a state or an action was continuing, it is rendered by the imperfect tense in French, 645.

TÈRE.—Termination. Substantives ending in *ère* are masc. 246.—The following are fem. by exc. : *Arère, estère, patère.*

Tes, thy.—Pl. of *ton.*

TEUR.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *teur* form their fem. by changing this termination into *trice*, when they cannot be derived from a pres. part. 402.

There are about 260 adjectives and substantives ending in *teur*, most of which have preserved in English their Latin termination *tor*, 403.

Their.—When *their* refers to a thing which is not the subject of the proposition, it is rendered by *en*, 277. When the thing to which *their* relates is the subject of the phrase, *their* is rendered by *leur* or *leurs*.—Even when the thing is not the subject of the phrase, *their* must be rendered by *leur* or *leurs*, when it is governed by a prep. 280.

Tien, thine.—See LE TIEN.

TION.—Termination. Substantives ending in *tion* are fem. 99.

To.—This prep., which is often omitted in English before the indirect regimen of a v., must always be rendered in French, when that regimen is a subst., by *à*, or by the contraction of *à* with the art. : *au, aux*, 160.—When *to*, before the infinitive mood, signifies *in order to*, it is rendered in French by *pour*, 371.

Toi.—Personal pron. of the second person sing. and of both genders. It is commonly used as a regimen, either direct or indirect, and corresponds to the English pron. *thee* or *to thee*. Sometimes it is a subject, and signifies *thou*, 251.—All the observations made on the pron. *moi* are applicable to *toi*, 457.

TOIRE.—Termination. Substantives ending in *toire* are masc. 590, § 1.—The following are fem. by exc.: *Décrottoire, échappatoire, écritoire, empatoire, histoire, impératoire, trajectoire, victoire*, 590, § 2.

Ton.—Possessive adj. masc. and sing. Its fem. is *ta* ; the pl. of both genders is *tes*. These three forms, *ton, ta, tes*, correspond to thy, 461. —This adj. agrees in gender and number with the subst. that follows it, 107.—It must be repeated before each subst. 108.—Before a fem. subst. or adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, *ton* is substituted for *ta*, in order to avoid the hiatus, 483, § 1. In this case, the letters *on* in *ton* continue to be nasal, though the *n* coalesces with the next vowel, 483, § 2.

Tôt, soon, early.—When this adv. is joined to the adverbs *aussi, bien, si*, it forms a single word with them, thus : *aussitôt*, as soon ; *bientôt*, soon ; *sitôt*, so soon, 633, § 1.—It forms a similar combination with *tant* and *plus*, in suppressing the final consonant of these adverbs, thus : *tantôt, plutôt*. But *plutôt* is only employed in the sense of *rather*, denoting preference, and must not be confounded with *plus tôt*, sooner, earlier, 633, § 2.

Toujours, always.—After this adv. the subject pron. may follow the v. 228.

Tout, all.—Adj., subst., pron., and adv. Pl. masc. *tous*.—When the indefinite pron. *tout*, all, every thing, any thing, is a direct regimen, it generally precedes the v. in the infinitive mood ; and in the compound tenses it is placed between the auxiliary and the part. But it follows the v. in the simple tenses, 628.—When *tout* signifies all, quite, or entirely, it is an adv., and accordingly remains invariable, except when it precedes an adj. of the fem. gender, beginning with a consonant or an aspirate *h*, in which position it takes the gender and number of this adj. for the sake of euphony, 675.—But it remains invariable before an adj. beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, 675.

Traduire, to translate.—V. irr. conjugated like *conduire*.

Traire, to milk. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Trayant*.—Pa. part. *Trait*. Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je trais, tu trais, il trait, nous trayons, vous trayez, ils traient*. — Imperfect tense : *Je trayais, tu trayais, il trayait, nous trayions, vous trayiez, ils trayaient*.—No past tense definite.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular. — Imperative mood : *Trais, trayons, trayez*. — Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que je traie, que tu traies, qu'il traie, que nous trayions, que vous trayiez, qu'ils traient*.—No past tense.

TRANS.—Prefix. Inseparable particle signifying beyond, across, or over. Common to words which are nearly the same in English, 539, § 1.—It is sometimes shortened into *tra*, 539, § 2.—The *s* of *trans* sounds like *z* before a vowel, except in *transir, transi*, in which it is sharp.

TRE.—Termination. Substantives ending in *tre* are masc. 341.—The following are fem. by exc. : *chartre, dartre, épitre, fenêtre, guêtre, huître, lettre, loutre, maître, mitre, montre, outre, piastre, poutre, rencontre, vitre*, 342.

Très, very.—One of the signs of the superlative of eminence, 114.—Is joined to the word that follows it by a hyphen, 330.

Tressaillir, to start. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Tressaillant*.—Pa. part. regular.—Indicative mood, pres. tense : *Je tressaille, tu tressailles, il tressaille, nous tressaillons, vous tressaillez, ils tressaillent*.—Imperfect tense : *Je tressaillais, tu tressaillais, il tressaillait, nous tressaillions, vous tressailliez, ils tressaillaient*. —Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood : *Tressaille, tressaillons, tressaillez*. —Subjunctive mood, pres. tense : *Que je tressaille, que tu tressailles, qu'il tressaille, que nous tressaillions, que vous tressailliez, qu'ils tressaillent*.—Past tense, regular.

Trop.—Adv. signifying *too, too much, too many*. The *p* is quiescent before a consonant. —In English, after the adv. *too*, the art. *a, an*, is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, the adv. *trop* is preceded by *un, une*. As for the place of the adj. it is often optional, 434.

Tu, thou. — Personal pron. of the second person sing. and of both genders. It is always a subject, and generally placed before the v. 447. — The use of the second person sing. is much more frequent in French than in English. It generally denotes familiarity and intimacy. In addressing inferiors it denotes authority. In dignified and poetical language, the use of this form is the same as in English, 448.—The observations made on *je*, are applicable to *tu*, 457.

U.

Un.—Subst., adj., and pron., signifying *a, an*, and *one*, 7.—Is often omitted in incidental clauses, 57.—When *un* is used as a pron. it often takes the art. If *un* is joined or opposed to *autre*, the art. is indispensable before each of these pronouns. If *un* is not followed by *autre*, but is determined by *de* or *des*, the art. may be used or omitted before it, according as the sense of this pron. is more or less restricted by the construction of the phrase. The use of the art. before *un de* is sometimes merely euphonic and sometimes optional, 312.—After

vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, and *mille,* the numeral adj. *un* requires the conj. *et* before it, 359.—In English, after the adverbs *so, as, too,* and *how,* the word *a* is placed between the next adj. and subst. In French, the first three of these adverbs, rendered by *si, aussi,* and *trop,* are preceded by *un, une.* As for the place of the adj. it is often optional. The adv. *how,* in French *comment* or *combien,* cannot be preceded by *un,* and requires a different construction or a different expression, 434.—*Un* retains its nasal sound, even when the *n* coalesces with the initial vowel of the next word.

See also L'UN L'AUTRE, L'UN ET L'AUTRE.

Unième, first.—The adj. *first,* when it is not preceded by another number, is translated by *premier, première;* but when preceded by *vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante, quatre-vingt, cent,* and *mille,* it is rendered by *unième,* 421.

URE.—Termination. Common to about 100 subst., which are nearly the same in both languages, 340.—The names of chemical compounds ending in *ure* are masc. 605.

V.

Vaincre, to conquer.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Vainquant.*— Pa. part. *Vaincu.* — Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vainc, tu vainc, il vainc, nous vainquons, vous vainquez, ils vainquent.* — Imperfect tense: *Je vainquais, tu vainquais, il vainquait, nous vainquions, vous vainquiez, ils vainquaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je vainquis, tu vainquis, il vainquit, nous vainquîmes, vous vainquîtes, ils vainquirent.*— Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Vainquons.* No second person.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je vainque, que tu vainques, qu'il vainque, que nous vainquions, que vous vainquiez, qu'ils vainquent.*—Past tense: *que je vainquisse, que tu vainquisses, qu'il vainquît, que nous vainquissions, que vous vainquissiez, qu'ils vainquissent.*

Valoir, to be worth.—V. irr Pres. part. *Valant.* — Pa. part. *Valu.*— Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut, nous valons, vous valez, ils valent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je valais, tu valais, il valait, nous valions, vous valiez, ils valaient.* — Past tense definite: *Je valus, tu valus, il valut, nous valûmes, vous valûtes, ils valurent.*—Future tense: *Je vaudrai, tu vaudras, il vaudra, nous vaudrons, vous vaudrez, ils vaudront.*—Conditional mood: *Je vaudrais, tu vaudrais, il vaudrait, nous vaudrions, vous vaudriez, ils vaudraient.*—Imperative mood: *Vaux, valons, valez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille, que nous valions, que vous valiez, qu'ils vaillent.*—Past tense: *Que je valusse, que tu valusses, qu'il valût, que nous valussions, que vous valussiez, qu'ils valussent.*

Venir, to come. — V. irr. Pres. part. *Venant.*— Pa. part. *Venu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je viens, tu viens, il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent.* — Imperfect tense: *Je venais, tu venais, il venait, nous venions, vous veniez, ils venaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je vins, tu vins, il vint, nous vînmes, vous vîntes, ils vinrent.*—Future tense: *Je viendrai, tu viendras, il viendra, nous viendrons, vous viendrez, ils viendront.* — Conditional mood: *Je viendrais, tu viendrais, il viendrait, nous viendrions, vous viendriez, ils viendraient.* —Imperative mood: *Viens, venons, venez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je vienne, que tu viennes, qu'il vienne, que nous venions, que vous veniez, qu'ils viennent.*—Past tense: *Que je vinsse, que tu vinsses, qu'il vînt, que nous vinssions, que vous vinssiez, qu'ils vinssent.*—In all the forms in which the letters *ien* are not followed by *n*, these letters are pronounced as in *bien, rien.*—*Venir* takes *être* in its compound tenses, 335.

Verbs.—French verbs are classed according to their terminations in the infinitive mood. These terminations are, *er, ir,* and *re.*

For the conjugation of verbs, see PRESENT PARTICIPLE, PAST PARTICIPLE, PRESENT TENSE, IMPERFECT TENSE, PAST TENSE DEFINITE, FUTURE TENSE, CONDITIONAL MOOD, IMPERATIVE MOOD, and SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The verbs in *er* are by far the most numerous. Many of them are derived from substantives, as *scier,* fr. *scie; raboter,* fr. *rabot,* etc.303. —Others may be formed from almost all the substantives ending in *ation,* by changing this termination into *er,* as, *créer,* fr. *création; accuser,* fr. *accusation,* etc. 262.—Verbs ending in *cer* take a cedilla under the *c* before the vowels *a, o,* in order that the *c* may preserve the sound of *s* throughout the conjugation, 48. —In the conjugation of verbs ending in *ger,* the *g* is always followed by *e* mute before the vowels *a, o,* 274.—Verbs ending in *eter* and *eler,* double the consonant *t* or *l* before *e* mute, 467, § 1.—The following are excepted: *acheter, becqueter, bourreler, celer, déceler, dégeler, décolleter, geler, harceler, peler, racheter,* 467, § 2.—The verbs ending in *eter* and *eler,* must not be confounded with those in *éter* and *éler.* In the latter, the acute accent is changed into a grave accent, without doubling the consonant before *e* mute, 467, § 3.—Verbs in *er,* in which the final syllable of the infinitive mood is preceded by *e* with an accute accent, change this accent into a grave one before a syllable containing an *e* mute, 555, § 1.— Verbs in *éger* and in *éer* are excepted, and retain the acute accent in all their forms, 555, § 2.—Verbs ending in *yer,* change the vowel *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, 561. —In verbs in *er,* the unaccented *e* which precedes the termination of the infinitive takes the grave accent before a syllable containing an *e* mute, preceded by a single consonant, 564, § 1. —But when the consonant is doubled (see *eter, eler*), the accent is unnecessary, 564, § 2.—The only irregular verbs in *er,* are *aller, envoyer,* and *renvoyer.*

A great portion of the verbs in *ir* come from adjectives, as *rajeunir,* fr. *jeune; enrichir,* fr. *riche,* etc. Others, of a different formation, end in English in *ish,* as, *périr,* to perish; *punir,* to punish, etc. 257.—The syllable *iss,* incorporated into the terminations of several tenses and persons, characterizes the conjugation of the verbs in *ir,* and forms the principal difference between these verbs and those in *er,* 196, § 2.—The radical irregular verbs in *ir* are: *acquérir, assaillir, bouillir, courir, couvrir, cueillir, dormir, faillir, férir, fleurir, fuir, gésir, haïr, mentir, mourir, offrir, ouïr, ouvrir, partir, se repentir, saillir, sentir, servir, sortir, souffrir, tenir, tressaillir, vêtir,* and all the verbs in *oir.*—Each of them will be found in its alphabetical place.

Many grammarians make a particular class of the verbs in *oir,* but their model of conjugation is applicable to seven verbs only. See *apercevoir* and *devoir.*

The verbs in *re* have some of their tenses formed in conformity with those in *er,* and some with those in *ir;* so that there are indeed but two forms of conjugation, 121.—The irregular verbs in *re* are: First, all those in *indre;* the conjugation of *craindre* is given in this Index as a model.—See also *indre;*—Secondly, the following and their derivatives: *absoudre, battre, boire, braire, bruire, circoncire, clore, conclure, conduire, confire, connaître, constru-*

ire, coudre, croire, croître, cuire, dire, dissoudre, éclore, écrire, être, exclure, faire, frire, lire, luire, maudire, mettre, moudre, naître, nuire, paître, paraître, plaire, prendre, résoudre, rire, rompre, sourdre, suffire, suivre, taire, traire, vaincre, vivre.—Each of them will be found in its alphabetical place.

The derivatives of irregular verbs are generally conjugated like their radicals, 273.

Active verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary v. *avoir* in their compound tenses, 96.

Passive verbs are conjugated with the auxiliary v. *être*, 338.

There are about six hundred neuter verbs in French, of which above five hundred and fifty are conjugated in their compound tenses by means of the auxiliary v. *avoir*. Among the remainder, some take either *être* or *avoir*, according as they express a state or an action, and the following invariably require *être*: *aller, arriver, choir, décéder, éclore, mourir, naître, tomber, venir, devenir, intervenir, parvenir, revenir*, 335.

Many verbs which become neuter or passive in English, remain active in French with the reflective or pronominal form, 66.

A pronominal v. is conjugated with two pronouns of the same person, both placed before it, except in the imperative mood, the first being the subject, and the second the regimen. The corresponding pronouns for each person are: *Je me, tu te, il se, nous nous, vous vous, ils se, elles se*, 180.—Among the French pronominal verbs, some are accidentally so, and others are invariably conjugated with a double pron. The former are called *accidental*, and the latter *essential* pronominal verbs. The accidental pronominal verbs, by taking this form, express:—that the same person is at once the subject and the object of the action; or, that the action is reciprocal;—or, they correspond to the English neuter form. The number of these verbs is unlimited. As to the essential pronominal verbs, a list of them is given under No. 364. — Another list, under No. 365, is given of verbs which are not essentially pronominal, but which require a particular mention, on account of the different meanning which they acquire by being used in the pronominal form.

The idea of a reciprocal or mutual action, expressed in English by adding the pronouns *each-other*, or *one-another* to the v., is rendered in French by the pronominal form (180), which is likewise employed with reflective verbs; the only difference being that reciprocal verbs of coarse are only used in the plural number. When the rest of the construction does not clearly show the sense, ambiguity is avoided by the addition of the pronouns *l'un l'autre, les uns les autres*, when the action is reciprocal; and *nous-mêmes, vous-mêmes, eux-mêmes, elles-mêmes*, when it is reflective, 400.

The compound tenses of pronominal verbs are invariably formed with the help of the auxiliary v. *être*, 567.

The passive form is less frequently used in French than in English, and verbs, which should be passive according to the sense, often take the reflective or pronominal form in French, 636.

The v. which follows a v. of motion in French is in the infinitive mood, and requires no conj. before it, 372.

List of verbs which govern other verbs in the infinitive mood, without a prep. 187.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood with the prep. *à*, 188.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood with the prep. *de*, 189.—List of verbs which govern the infinitive mood, with either *à* or *de*, 190.

For the concord of the verb with its subject, see SUBJECT.

See also PAST PARTICIPLE and REGIMEN.

Very.—When this word precedes an adj. or an adv. it is rendered by *très, bien*, or *fort*; but when it precedes a subst. it is generally rendered by *même*, placed after the subst. 630.

Vêtir, to clothe.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Vêtant.*—Pa. part. *Vêtu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt, nous vêtons, vous vêtez, ils vêtent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je vêtais, tu vêtais, il vêtait, nous vêtions, vous vêtiez, ils vêtaient.*—Past tense definite, regular.—Future tense, regular.—Conditional mood, regular.—Imperative mood: *Vêts, vêtons, vêtez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je vête, que tu vêtes, qu'il vête, que nous vêtions, que vous vêtiez, qu'ils vêtent.*—Past tense, regular.

Vingt, twenty.—*Vingt* takes the mark of the plural only when preceded by another number which multiplies it, as in *quatre-vingts*, eighty, 546.—But when it is followed by another number, it is invariable, thus: *quatre-vingt-trois, quatre-vingt-dix*, 547. — It is invariable also when it stands for *vingtième*, 652.

Vivre, to live.—V. irr. Pres. part. regular.—Pa. part. *Vécu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vivons, vous vivez, ils vivent.*—Imperfect tense, regular.—Past tense definite · *Je vécus, tu vécus, il vécut, nous vécumes, vous vécûtes, ils vécurent.*—Future tense, regular.— Conditional mood, regular —Imperative mood: *Vis, vivons, vivez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense, regular.—Past tense: *Que je vécusse, que tu vécusses, qu'il vécut, que nous vécussions, que vous vécussiez, qu'ils vécussent.*

Voici.—See VOILÀ.

Voilà.—Is a contraction of two words: *voïs*, the second person sing. of the imperative mood of *voir*, to see, to behold, and *là*, there: so that its literal meaning is, *behold there*, There is a corresponding word, *voici*, which is also in frequent use; it is a contraction of *voïs ici*, behold here. These expressions correspond to *there is, there are, here is, here are, this is, that is, these are, those are*, or *behold*, 283.—The personal pron. which precedes *voilà* and *voici*, is the regimen of these words: consequently we say, *Le voilà, le voici, la voilà, la voici*, there he is, here he is, and not *Il voilà, elle voilà*, 294.

Voir, to see.—V. irr. Pres. part. *Voyant.*—Pa. part. *Vu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je vois, tu vois, il voit, nous voyons, vous voyez, ils voient.*—Imperfect tense: *Je voyais, tu voyais, il voyait, nous voyions, vous voyiez, ils voyaient.*—Past tense definite: *Je vis, tu vis, il vit, nous vîmes, vous vîtes, ils virent.*—Future tense: *Je verrai, tu verras, il verra, nous verrons, vous verrez, ils verront.* — Conditional mood: *Je verrais, tu verrais, il verrait, nous verrions, vous verriez, ils verraient.*—Imperative mood: *Vois, voyons, voyez.*—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je voie, que tu voies, qu'il voie, que nous voyions, que vous voyiez, qu'ils voient.*—Past tense: *Que je visse, que tu visses, qu'il vît, que nous vissions, que vous vissiez, qu'ils vissent.*

Votre, your.—Possessive adj. of both genders and of the singular number. Its pl. likewise of both genders is *vos*. These two forms correspond to *your*, 309.

Vôtre, yours.—See LE VÔTRE.

Vouloir, to will.—V. irr. Pres part. *Voulant.*—Pa. part. *Voulu.*—Indicative mood, pres. tense: *Je veux, tu veux, il veut, nous voulons, vous voulez, ils veulent.*—Imperfect tense: *Je voulais, tu voulais, il voulait, nous voulions, vous vouliez, ils voulaient.* — Past tense definite: *Je voulus, tu voulus, il voulut, nous voulû-*

mes, vous voulûtes, ils voulurent. — Future tense: *Je voudrai, tu voudras, il voudra, nous voudrons, vous voudrez, ils voudront.*—Conditional mood: *Je voudrais, tu voudrais, il voudrait, nous voudrions, vous voudriez, ils voudraient.*—Imperative mood: *Veux, voulons, voulez,* or *veuillez,* in the sense of, Please to, Be so kind as to.—Subjunctive mood, pres. tense: *Que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille, que nous voulions, que vous vouliez, qu'ils veuillent.*—Past tense: *Que je voulusse, que tu voulusses, qu'il voulût, que nous voulussions, que vous voulussiez, qu'ils voulussent.*—This v. is much more frequently used than its English equivalent, *to will.* It often corresponds to the verbs *to want,* and *to wish,* 276.—The absence of an English form equivalent to the pa. part. *voulu* gives rise to different constructions, which may all be reduced to a single one in French: *Voulu* forming a compound tense with the auxiliary v. *avoir,* and being followed by an infinitive, thus: *Il aurait voulu aller,* He would have gone, He would have liked to go, He wished to go, 647.

Vous.—Invariable personal pron. which is sometimes the subject, sometimes the direct, and sometimes the indirect regimen of the v. It corresponds to *you, yourself, yourselves, to you, to yourself, to yourselves,* 323.

Vu.—Pa. part. of the v. irr. *voir,* is sometimes employed as a prep. in the sense of *seeing.* With this signification, it precedes the subst. which it governs, and is invariable, 673.

W.

W.—This consonant occurs in a few words borrowed from foreign languages, and is pronounced as in English.

The letter *g* in French is sometimes substituted for *w* in words which have the same meaning, and the same origin in both languages, 639.

X.

X.—Termination. Adjectives ending in *x,* form their fem. by changing *x* into *se,* 142.—Adjectives and substantives ending in *x* do not change their termination in the pl. 158, 430.

Y.

Y.—Is sometimes an adv. and sometimes a pron. As an adv. it corresponds to *there,* or *thither,* and denotes a place, 195. — As a pron. it is of both genders and numbers. It signifies *to that, to him, to her, to it, to them,* or *in that, on that.* It is more especially used in speaking of things, and very seldom refers to persons, 270.—Whether used as an adv. or a pron., it precedes the v. in all the moods, except the imperative, 201.—When a v. in the imperative mood is followed by *y,* and by one of the pronouns, *moi, toi, le, la,* as a direct regimen, *y* is placed first. But this construction is forced, and it is better to avoid it, 702.

YER. — Termination. Verbs ending in *yer,* change the vowel *y* into *i* before an *e* mute, 561.—In these verbs the *y* is followed by *i* in the first and second persons pl. of the imperfect tense, indic. mood, and in the same persons of the pres. tense, subjunctive mood, 586, § 5.—624, § 5.

Yeux.—Pl. of *œil,* which see.

YLE.—Termination. Substantives ending in *yle* are masc. 502, § 1.

Z.

Z.—Termination. Substantives ending in *z* do not change their termination in the pl. 237.

THE END.

BOOKS PUBLISHED

BY

ROE LOCKWOOD & SON,

411 BROADWAY, NEW YORK.

Persons wishing any Book from the following list, by sending us the advertised price in bills or Post-office stamps, post-paid, will receive it from us by mail, free of expense.

A LIBERAL DISCOUNT FROM THE ANNEXED PRICES ALLOWED TO SCHOOLS.

FRENCH.

Being aware of the objections, often too well founded, against American editions of French books, on account of their inaccuracies, we have taken particular pains in the printing of the following series; and we do not hesitate to affirm, that in regard to correctness of Typography, and the quality of the Paper and Binding, they are not surpassed by any similar works, whether published in this country or in France.

Manesca's Oral System of Teaching French.

1 v. 8vo. $3.

The chief feature of this new system is, that it seeks to introduce the learner of a language to its vocabulary by the same process which children follow: by leading him from the simplest elements—the expressions and phrases needed in our earliest experience—gradually up to the philosophy of the language. The beginning is made, therefore, not with grammar and the philosophic structure of the language, but with its simple words and sentences.

"The system for teaching languages discovered by Jean Manesca is the *system of nature;* it is the result of twenty years' study and observation of a superior mind. In speaking of this admirable method, I do not speak at random, and without knowledge; I have studied several languages upon the system—the French, the Spanish, Italian, German,

and Latin. I have examined the various methods employed in Europe, and, from my own observation, I consider Manesca's system infinitely superior to all the various methods which have been put forth by persons seeking to abridge the labor of learning languages. In fact, it is the only method that I have yet seen that deserves the name of SYSTEM —for it is a WHOLE, complete in all its parts, based upon the laws and principles which nature employs in teaching language to the young mind, but embracing all the parts of language, and only modifying nature's method, so far as to adapt it to mature age, or to the mind that can reason, and bring the aid of reflection and thought to bear in the study of language; whereas the child brings only instinct. * * * It commences by giving to the scholar some of the simplest elements of language, which he learns quickly and easily to use, physically and mentally, as well as those of his own language. When this is done, new elements—that is, new words and ideas—are added, which are incorporated in a natural way with those already known, and used with them until an equally perfect knowledge of them is obtained. New elements are progressively added at each lesson, until the whole language is learned. With twenty years' experience, Manesca *methodized language;* he distributed all the elements in the manner the student should learn them, and his system teaches him *to read*, *to write*, and *to speak* at the same time."

"This is a new edition of a work which has already acquired a reputation so extended, that few can be unacquainted with its excellence over all others for the acquisition of the French language. Until this work appeared, a few years since, little had been done to advance the *science* of teaching foreign languages. Those who were intrusted with this branch of education generally followed a routine handed down to them by their predecessors—a routine in which it was often required that words, sentences, and abstract rules should be committed to memory, without presenting to the pupil *an opportunity for their use and application.* Many intelligent teachers no doubt felt the inefficiency of such a method, but it appears to have been reserved for Manesca to find out a new path which should lead to certain and successful results, and at the same time immeasurably relieve the scholar. A striking peculiarity of this system, and by which it pre-eminently excels all others that have ever come within our notice, is the importance it attaches to the *spoken* language, and the facility it presents to the scholar for the acquisition of this most important part of his pursuit.

Manesca's Philological Recorder, adapted to "Manesca's Oral System of Teaching the Living Languages." 4to. 75 cts.

Meadows' French and English Pronouncing Dictionary

16mo. $1.25.

This work is based on the well-known Dictionary of NUGENT, with many new words in general use, in Two Parts: 1. French and English; 2. English and French. Exhibiting, *The Pronunciation of the French in pure English sounds*—The Parts of Speech—Gender of French Nouns—Regular and Irregular Conjugations of Verbs—Accent of English Words—List of the usual Christian and Proper Names, and Names of Countries and Nations. To which are prefixed, Principles of French Pronunciation, and an abridged Grammar. By F. C. MEADOWS, M. A. of the University of Paris. New edition, revised and improved by CHARLES L. PARMENTIER, M. A., Professor of the French Language and Literature.

"The edition of 'MEADOWS' FRENCH DICTIONARY' which is now submitted to the public, has been considerably improved. It contains a list of Proper Names in most ordinary use, together with the names of Gods, Goddesses, Kings, Heroes, &c., which are often met with in works of Poetry, Mythology, and History, and *which are not spelled the same in English as in French.*

"It is needless to speak at length of the merits of this work. Its numerous editions in America as well as in Europe, prove that it is the most popular French and English Dictionary extant.

"The efforts of the subscriber have been mainly devoted to extending the usefulness of the work, by making such additions to the labors of his predecessors, as seemed necessary to render it at the same time a complete manual for the beginner, and, from its great copiousness, a valuable assistant to the investigations of the man of letters. He trusts that his contributions to this end will not prove altogether profitless to the cause of education."—*Preface by* PROFESSOR PARMENTIER.

Nouvelle Grammaire française, par Noël et Chapsal.

12mo. $1.00.

NOUVELLE GRAMMAIRE FRANÇAISE, sur un plan très-méthodique, avec de NOMBREUX EXERCICES d'Orthographe, de Syntaxe, et de Ponctuation, tirés de nos meilleurs auteurs, et distribués dans l'ordre des règles; par M. NOËL, Inspecteur-Général de l'Université, Chevalier de la Légion d'Honneur, et M. CHAPSAL, Professeur de Grammaire génerale. Ouvrage mis au rang des livres classiques, adopté pour les Ecoles primaires supérieures et pour les Écoles militaires. Nouvelle édition, revue et augmentée.

The reputation of this popular Grammar is so well known, that to praise it would be superfluous. The present is an EXACT REPRINT OF THE LAST PARIS EDITION, and every effort has been taken to avoid those inaccuracies so often incident to American editions of French books.

Corrigé des Exercices français sur l'Orthographe, la Syntaxe, et la Ponctuation; par MM. NOËL et CHAPSAL. (*Key to Noël and Chapsal's French Grammar.*) 12mo. $1.00

Leçons et Modèles de Littérature française, par M. Chapsal, Professeur de Grammaire générale, or *Choice Extracts in Prose and Verse,* selected from the following writers. 12mo. $1.25.

POÉSIE.

Ancelot (Mme.)	Desmahis.	Lebrun.	Rotron.
Andrieux.	Ducis.	Malherbe.	Rousseau.
Arnault.	Florian.	Millevoye	Sainte-Beuve.
Béranger.	Fontanes.	Molière.	Soumet.
Boileau.	Gilbert.	Parny.	Tastu (Mme.)
Chénier.	Gresset.	Piron.	Valmore (Mme.)
Corneille.	Hugo.	Quinault.	Viennet.
Crébillon.	La Fontaine.	Racan.	Vigny (de).
Delavigne.	Lamartine.	Racine.	Voltaire.
Delille.	La Bailly.	Regnard.	

PROSE.

Aguesseau (d').	Cousin.	Maistre (J. de).	Saintine.
Aimé-Martin.	Cuvier.	Marmontel.	Salvandy.
Arago.	D'Alembert.	Mascaron.	Sand.
Ballanche.	Diderot.	Massillon.	Saurin.
Balzac (Guez de).	Duclos.	Maury.	Scribe.
Balzac (H. de).	Dumas.	Mézeray.	Segur.
Barante.	Fénélon.	Michaud.	Sévigné (Mme. de).
Barthélemy.	Fléchier.	Michelet.	Sismondi.
Beaumarchais.	Fontenelle.	Mirabeau.	Staël (Mme. de).
B. de St. Pierre.	Guénard.	Molière.	Thierry (A.)
Bonaparte (N.)	Guizot.	Montesquieu.	Thiers.
Bossuet.	Hugo.	Nodier.	Thomas.
Bourdaloue.	La Bruyère.	Pascal.	Vauvenargues.
Bridaine.	Lacépède.	Raynal.	Vertot.
Buffon.	La Harpe.	Rollin.	Vigny (A. de).
Chamfort.	Lamartine.	Rousseau (J. J.)	Villemain.
Chateaubriand.	Lamennais.	Sainte-Beuve.	Volney.
Cormenin.	La Rochefocauld.	Saint-Réal.	Voltaire.
Courier.	Mably.	Saint-Simon.	

A revised and improved edition, enriched with Biographical and Critical Notes, and with Selections from *Writers of the present time.*

Le Siége de la Rochelle, par Mme. de Genlis. 12mo. $1.

"We have read with great pleasure 'Le Siége de la Rochelle,' and recommend it as one of the best books for translation there is publish-

ed. It is considered one of the most popular of Mme. de Genlis' works, whose name is well known in French literature. The narrative is intensely interesting, and will command attention to the close. Though a work of fiction, the incidents are partly founded on fact: the historical scenes and characters are correctly drawn, and present a fair view of this most eventful period of French history.

"Containing none but just and moral sentiments, it is admirably adapted to be used as a School Reader, and we trust that it will meet with the favor it deserves."

Le Vicaire de Wakefield, par Goldsmith. 12mo. 75 cts.

In translating this beautiful English Classic into French, special care has been taken to preserve the beauty and simplicity of the style; and we trust that the present effort to render it a School Reading Book will meet with favor.

Œuvres Complètes de Molière. 2 v. 12mo. 1334 pp. $2.00

This edition contains all the works of this great author, and is beautifully printed, on fine paper.

Œuvres Choisies de Molière: contenant La Bourgeois Gentilhomme, Le Misanthrope, et Les Femmes Savantes. 18mo. 63 c.

The editor has carefully revised the text, and has faithfully followed the most approved Paris editions. As to the Comedies selected, though many others of the same writer are at least equal, if not superior, in merit, it must be remembered that this is a Molière *intended for schools and for the use of young persons*, and the selection has been made in reference to that object.

Œuvres Complètes de J. Racine: contenant, La Thébaïde, ou Les Frères ennemis—Alexandre—Andromaque—Les Plaideurs—Brittanicus—Bérénice—Bajazet—Mithridate—Iphigénie—Phèdre—Esther—Athalie. Édition annotée d'après Racine fils, Madame de Sévigné, Le Batteux, Voltaire, La Harpe, Napoléon, Schleyel, Roger, Geoffroi, Patin, Sainte-Beuve, Saint-Marc Girardin, Nisard, etc. 12mo. 760 pp. $1.

AVIS SUR CETTE ÉDITION.

Parmi les grands écrivains qui honorent notre littérature, il en est peu dont les œuvres aient été aussi fréquemment reproduites que celles de Racine. Les grammairiens, les critiques et les commentateurs littéraires, ont depuis deux siècles étudié ses compositions scéniques pour y chercher les uns des modèles de style, les autres le modèle de l'art et du

goût, et les nombreux travaux dont ce poëte à jamais célèbre a été l'objet, nous imposaient de grandes obligations; aussi nous sommes-nous efforcé de rendre irréprochable l'édition que nous publions aujourd'hui.

Nous avons donné d'abord toutes les préfaces, parce qu'elles forment l'indispensable introduction des pièces; qu'elles en contiennent souvent l'analyse et l'examen, et que Racine y développe avec la supériorité de son génie ses théories esthétiques.

Nous avons aussi reproduit toutes les variantes, parce qu'on voit là les premiers essais du poëte, le travail de son goût dans le choix des mots, et son constant effort pour approcher autant que possible de la perfection. * * * Comme toujours, nous avons fait prédominer le commentaire moral et psychologique, et en rapportant à l'occasion le jugement des contemporains du poëte, à partir du grand Condé et de madame de Sévigné, nous avons suivi, en ce qu'ils ont de plus saillant, les travaux des critiques et des historiens littéraires, depuis Racine fils, jusqu'à messieurs Sainte-Beuve, Nisard et Saint-Marc Girardin. On a de la sorte, dans le blâme et dans l'éloge, l'écho fidèle de l'opinion dans un espace de près de deux siècles.

Ainsi, notre édition offre, jusque dans les moindres variantes et les moindres fragments, tout ce que Racine a écrit pour le théâtre, et sous une forme concise tout ce que l'histoire littéraire a dit de plus essentiel sur ce théâtre lui-même.

Œuvres Choisies de Jean Racine: contenant Bajazet, Andromaque, Iphigénie et Esther. 18mo. 63 cts.

It has long been desirable that the works of this great poet should be used in our schools as a reading-book; but as his writings are too voluminous for that purpose, a proper selection of his best pieces has been made. This selection the editor trusts will prove acceptable to all instructors and professors of the French language, as well as to all interested in French literature.

It is printed with great accuracy, thus removing the usual objection to the editions of French works published in this country.

De l'Allemagne, par Mme. De Staël. 12mo. 638 pp. $1.

This has been considered the most popular of Mme. De Staël's works, and has always sustained a high literary reputation.

Presenting an interesting and truthful Description of Germany—the Manners and Customs of the Germans—their Literature, Arts, and Sciences—Views of Philosophy, Morals, and Religion—and thus combining instruction with the study of the language, it is pre-eminently adapted for an advanced class-book.

Aventures de Gil Blas de Santillane, par Le Sage 12mo. $1.

It has for some time been a matter of doubt whether the "*Adventures of Gil Blas*" was the work of a Spanish or French writer; but we believe it is now generally conceded to be the production of the latter.

Although not free from objections for indiscriminate use, yet it has always been considered a desirable book for translation, from the fact that, consisting as it does of a series of narratives abounding in colloquial expressions, and being connected very indirectly, the reader is not wearied as he would be by a lengthy story, the interest continuing as the scene changes.

Fables de La Fontaine. 100 engravings. 18mo. 63 cts.

La Fontaine's beautiful Fables are known to every French scholar, and are admirably adapted to be used as a book for translation.

Each fable is followed by its appropriate moral; and thus just principles, in a pleasing manner, are inculcated into the mind of the reader while engaged in his study.

Atala, Réné, par Chateaubriand. 12mo. 50 cts.

The beauty of Chateaubriand's writings has established for him a high literary reputation.

This little work has always been considered the most popular of his minor productions, and was originally a part of the "Génie du Christianisme," although latterly it has been generally published in a separate form.

It was written, as the author says, "in the wilds of America, and under the tents of the savages," and the incident on which the story is founded is mentioned in his "Voyages en Amérique."

It is printed from the author's last edition, and in a large clear type, and the Publishers hope that it will meet with favor as a Reading Book for school use.

Paul et Virginie, par Bernardin de Saint-Pierre. 50 cts.

"This most delightful work is too favorably known to require any recommendation from us. The beauty and simplicity of the style, together with the interest of the story, have always rendered it a favorite with young persons. We trust that the present edition, intended for schools, will meet with general acceptance."

The same work, with a Full and Correct Vocabulary of all the Words and Idiomatic Expressions contained in the book; also Interlinear Translations, both free and literal, of the first few pages, with the Pronunciation of the French indicated by English sounds. 12mo. 62 cts.

Elisabeth, ou Les Exilés de Sibérie, par Mme. Cottin 12mo. 50 cts.

"The incident which gave rise to this history is founded in truth. No imagination, however fertile, could produce actions so heroic, or sentiments so noble and elevated. The heart alone could inspire them. * * * Authors have frequently been accused of representing the beauties of virtue with too bold a pencil, and in colors too vivid. Far am I, however, from presuming to insinuate that this criticism is applicable to myself, who possess not the abilities requisite to attain this brilliant though creative talent; nor do I conceive that it is in the power of the most eloquent author, by all the studied embellishments and decorations of language, to add a single charm to the innate beauties of virtue. On the contrary, she is in herself so far superior to the adscititious aids of ornament, that it would rather appear impossible to describe her in all her native dignity and loveliness. This is the chief difficulty I have experienced in writing ELISABETH."—*Translation of extract from Author's preface.*

The same work, with a Full and Correct Vocabulary of all the Words and Idiomatic Expressions contained in the book; also Interlinear Translations, both free and literal, of the first few pages, with the Pronunciation of the French indicated by English sounds. 12mo. 63 cts.

Conversational Phrases Classified, or French Synonimes, by J. L. Mabire. 16mo. 45 cts.

Most of the Guides to French Conversation heretofore published in this country have been merely collections of certain conversations on specified subjects, which, unless they were again to recur in the precise form of the lesson, would be of but little assistance to the student. In other words, he but stores his mind with set formal phrases for specific occasions, without an acquaintance with the genius and power of the language, or the ability to adapt his knowledge to the peculiar and varied circumstances of every-day life.

This work is arranged ON AN ENTIRELY NEW PLAN. It consists of the most familiar phrases of every-day conversation, classified according to their sense under various appropriate heads, such as the following:

1. To tire, weary, grow tired.
2. To affirm, assure, warrant, attest.
3. To obey, yield submit.
4. To imagine, believe, persuade one's self.
5. To admire, astonish, surprise.
6. To depart, set out, travel, ride.
7. To light, kindle, blow, extinguish.
8. To warm, cool, dry, wet.
9. To laugh, smile, weep, joke.
10. To dance, salute, greet, bow.
11. To design, draw, sketch, paint.
12. To pray, beseech, ask, entreat.
13. To approve, consent, permit, tolerate
14. To lodge, live, dwell, remove.
15. To raise, lift, open, shut.
16. To rail, slander, insult, injure.
17. To commend, praise, flatter, compliment.
18. To blame, reprimand, criticise.
19. To place, put, set, lay, arrange.
20. To contemn, despise, depreciate, disdain

With an Alphabetical Index.

It is divided into 236 similar heads, besides containing Models of Notes, Invitations, Letters, the most Difficult and Common English Idioms, &c.

It has acquired an extraordinary popularity in England, having, in a few years passed through many editions, *numbering over* 100,000 *copies*.

Le Livre des Petits Enfants, avec Vocabulaire. 50 cts.

This little volume of Easy Tales was published in France for the use of Young Children who had just learned to read. The design of the authoress was, by a series of entertaining narratives, to allure the Young onward in the path of learning, and at the same time to imbue their minds with sentiments of religion and virtue, and of love for the Sacred Scriptures.

To the carefully printed text is added a literal English translation of the first ten stories, and a full vocabulary to the remaining ones.

These facilities, together with the simple style of the stories themselves, render this book one of the easiest for translation.

Mrs. Barbauld's Lessons for Children, in French, with a Vocabulary. 16mo. 45 cts.

To attempt a eulogy of "Mrs. Barbauld's Lessons for Children" would be superfluous. We only remark that, on account of its extreme simplicity, no book is better suited for young persons commencing the study of French.

It is translated with great care, and is beautifully printed on a large clear type, with illustrations.

"The task is humble, but not mean; for to lay the first stone of a noble building, and to plant the first idea of a beautiful language in a human mind, can be no dishonor to any hand."—*Mrs. B.'s Preface.*

First Lessons in Learning French, by Prof. Gustave Chouquet. 16mo. 45 cts.

This work is intended for pupils commencing the study of the French language in such a work it is not necessary that the rules of grammar should be *formally introduced;* they serve rather to weary and embarrass than to profit.

In design and execution it is so simple as to be within the reach of any child, however young, who is capable of reading in English. The present edition is much enlarged and improved, and printed on very large type. It is divided into six parts, as follows, viz.:

PART I. Spelling Lessons, designed also for Exercises in Pronunciation.

PART II. Simple and Progressive Lessons in Grammar and Translation.

PART III. A Vocabulary of the most Common and Familiar Objects, together with appropriate Exercises in Phrases and Short Sentences; the whole divided into lessons, each embracing a distinct Subject.

PART IV. Examples of French Verbs, auxiliary, regular and reflective, fully conjugated.

PART V. A few simple Stories, the first few followed by a Translation of the more difficult Words and Idioms.

PART VI. A collection of simple and familiar Conversational Phrases, divided into short and easy lessons.

French Spelling and Pronunciation, by H. Vannier. 45 cts.

After a careful examination of the most recent and approved elementary Spelling-Books published in France, we have selected the system of H. Vannier, as being the simplest and yet the most methodical.

It is divided as follows:

PART I. Exercises on all the Sounds and possible Combinations of Articulations and Words.

PART II. Spelling Lessons, or a Vocabulary of the most useful Nouns in the French Language, systematically arranged under distinct heads.

PART III. Examples of French Verbs—auxiliary, regular, and reflective—fully conjugated.

SPANISH.

Del Mar's Guide to Spanish and English Conversation, containing various lists of Words in most general use, properly classified; collections of Complimentary Dialogues and Conversational Phrases on the most general subjects of life; Proverbs and Idioms; also comparative Tables of Coins, Weights, and Measures. 12mo. 75 cts.

In this new edition the Proverbs and Idioms, as well as the Dialogues, have been considerably enlarged; the New Orthography has been introduced, according to the last decision of the Spanish Royal Academy; and a Treatise on Spanish Pronunciation has been prefixed.

These additions will further advance the utility of the work, and render it still more worthy of public favor.

Vingut's Ollendorff's Spanish Grammar: a New Method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the Spanish Language: with a FIGURED PRONUNCIATION OF THE SPANISH WORDS. To which is added an APPENDIX, containing a full explanation of the Alphabet, with Exercises in Spelling; a Summary of the Rules given in this Method, with a Treatise on the Verbs; a Series of Letters for a Mercantile Correspondence, with a KEY; a New Spanish Reader and Translator, being a new method of learning to translate from Spanish into English, and from English into Spanish, containing Extracts from the most approved works, Colloquial Phrases and Words in general use; the whole arranged in progressive order, with especial reference to those who study by Ollendorff's Method. 12mo. $1.50.

Key to Vingut's Ollendorff's Spanish Grammar. 75 cts.

FOR SPANIARDS LEARNING ENGLISH.

Vingut's Ollendorff—El Maestro de Inglés, metodo practico para aprender á leer, escribir y hablar la Lengua Inglesa segun el sistema de Ollendorff, dandose una Demonstracion practica del modo de escribir y PRONUNCIAR CADA UNA DE LAS PALABRAS contenidas en las lecciones y un Apendice que contiene los Elementos de la Lengua Inglesa, tomados de la última edicion de Urcullu, publicada en Cadiz en 1845, habiéndose correjido y aumentado considerablemente; comprendiendo toda la parte elemental no refundida en las lecciones precedentes; tambien un Tratado sobre la Pronunciacion y otro sobre la Propiedad de las Voces, que bajo un mismo significado en español tienen dos ó mas en inglés, con diferente uso ó sentido; ó al contrario, con un solo significado en inglés y dos ó mas en español; comprendiendo un Lector y Traductor Inglés, ó sea Nuevo Método para aprender á traducir del inglés el español y viseversa, el cual contiene un Guia de la Pronunciacion inglesa, y Direcciones para usar los diccionarios de Pronunciacion; una serie de Cartas para

una correspondencia mercantil, y algunos trozos escojidos para Lectura y Traduccion. 12mo. $2.

(TRANSLATION): *Vingut's Ollendorff—The English Teacher, or Ollendorff's New Method of Learning to Read, Write, and Speak the English Language,* WITH A FIGURED PRONUNCIATION *of the English Words in the Lessons; to which is added an* APPENDIX, *containing the Elements of the English Language, taken from the last edition of Urcullu's Grammar, published in Cadiz in* 1845, *revised and enlarged; also a Treatise on the Pronunciation and various Significations of English Words; also a new Reader and Translator, being a New Method of Learning to Translate from English into Spanish and from Spanish into English; a new Guide to Conversation; a series of Letters for Mercantile Correspondence, &c., &c.*

Clave de los Ejercicios del Maestro del Inglés. 12mo. $1.

(TRANSLATION): *Key to the Exercises of "Vingut's Ollendorff's English Teacher."*

Urcullu.—Nueva Gramatica inglesa reducida a veinte y siete lecciones, por Don José de Urcullu; edicion reimpresa por primera vez en América, de la última edicion de Cadiz, considerablemente aumentada y correjida, con una *Clave* de los Temas; un Tratado alfabético de la Propiedad de las Voces, en que se esplica la propiedad de las Voces castillanas que tienen en inglés dos ó mas significados con diferente uso ó sentido, de lo cual pudieran orijinarse equivocaciones, así en la locucion como en la traduccion; un Lector y Traductor inglés, ó sea Nuevo Método para aprender á traducir del inglés al español y viseversa, el cual contiene un Guia de la Pronunciacion inglesa, una serie de Cartas para una Correspondencia mercantil, y algunos trozos escojidos para lectura y traduccion. 12mo. $1.50.

(*Prólogo de Urcullu de la Edicion de Cadiz.*)

ALGUNAS PALABRAS SOBRE ESTA NUEVA EDICION.

La buena acojida que ha tenido mi gramática en los veinte años que han pasado desde que la dí á luz, cuando estuve emigrado en Lóndres, me ha movido á publicar una nueva edicion de la misma. En la primera dividí la gramática en XXII lecciones. Muchas de las ediciones

que se han hecho tanto en aquella capital como en otros paises desde 1825 hasta ahora, han sido copias de la primera.

En 1840, estando yo en Oporto, se imprimió allí una edicion en XXV lecciones, en la cual hice alteraciones de bastante consideracion; pero pocos son los ejemplares que han penetrado en España. Por consiguiente para satisfacer los deseos de muchos profesores de la lengua inglesa, era necesario que se imprimiese en España mi gramática; mas no como se ha hecho ántes de ahora en Barcelona, sin mi intervencion, y copiando los defectos de la que se publicó en Lóndres.

La presente edicion, dividida en XXVII lecciones, es superior á cuantas se han publicado hasta este dia, no solamente por las correcciones que se han hecho, como por las materias que se han aumentado. Esplicaré esto brevemente.

Cada una de las lecciones XIV, XV, XVIII y XXII se han subdividido en dos, para que el discípulo pueda aprenderlas mas fácilmente siendo mas cortas. He suprimido las lecciones XXIV y XXV, porque lo que ellas contenian no pertenecia, estrictamente hablando, á la parte gramatical; pero el discípulo lo hallará, con notable aumento al fin del libro en la lista alfabetica de las partículas inglesas.

En los modelos de traduccion, he introducido algunas máximas de buenos autores ingleses.

Las poesías inglesas que puse en la edicion hecha en Oporto, han sido traducidas por mí al castellano. El Herald ode Madrid publicó una de ellas el año pasado, y un periódico de Cadiz la otra este año. He aumentado una poesía inglesa, no como modelo, sino para que el discípulo se ejercite en la traduccion de los numerosos verbos que ella contiene.

La parte tercera de la obra, que no tienen las ediciones anteriores, se compone: 1º. de una lista alfabética de las principales partículas inglesas y su uso en dicha lengua, que ántes formaba el asunto de las dos últimas lecciones, como ya se ha mencionado. 2º. De una esplicacion de muchas palabras y abreviaturas latinas muy usadas en los periódicos ingleses, y algunas vozes francesas, que forman parte de la lengua inglesa. 3º. De varios documentos de comercio útiles para los que piensen dedicarse á la carrera mercantil. 4º. Finalmente, de una lista de abreviaturas inglesas, que tambien puedo asegurar es la mas completa que hasta ahora se ha publicado en España. Lo primero y cuarto ha recibido un aumento considerable; lo segundo y tercero es enteramente nuevo.

En la parte gramatical he hecho correcciones y alteraciones que solo pueden notarse cotejando esta edicion con otras anteriores.

Si el público ha recibido ántes de ahora favorablemente mi gramática, debo suponer sin ninguna clase de presuncion que todavía ha de merecer mas su aprobacion la que hoy le ofrezco; y que ya no se podrá decir

con razon en lo adelante que era necesario valerse de gramáticas escritas en frances para aprender la lengua inglesa.

Es muy probable que esta sea la última edicion que yo publique, y mas si, como presumo, los lazos de familia me obligan á dejar la hermosa España para establecerme nuevamente en el reino vecino, que por la larga serie de años que en él he pasado y por los vínculos que á él me unen considero como á una segunda patria.

ADVERTENCIA.

Al reimprimir por primera vez en América la última edicion de la nueva Gramática de Don José de Urcullu, publicada en Cadiz por el mismo autor con las considerables mejoras que esplica en su Prologo, hemos hecho todo lo que ha estado á nuestro alcance para mejorar la obra, lo que creemos haber conseguido por los medios siguientes:

1º. Arreglando la conjugacion de los verbos, segun las mejores gramáticas inglesas, añadiendole por consiguiente el modo Potencial, desconocido en nuestra conjugacion, por cuya razon la mayor parte de los gramáticos lo han confundido con nuestro Subjuntivo, que es á todas luces distinto en su uso y aplicacion, despojando asi á la conjugacion inglesa de la inmensa ventaja que en precision y enerjía le dan sus auxiliares.

2º. Ampliando la leccion sobre los verbos auxiliares, la del uso del futuro, la del subjuntivo y la de las preposiciones, y redactando entera la del imperativo.

3º. Añadiendo las notas que se han estimado necesarias, y aun refutando las opiniones del autor cuando se han creido erradas.

4º. Dando reglas para la division de las sílabas.

5º. Enriqueciendo la lista de las abreviaturas inglesas, é igualmente la de las eliciones.

6º. Añadiendo un Tratado de la Propiedad de aquellas voces que, teniendo en español varias acepciones, se espresa en inglés cada acepcion, con diferente palabra.

7º. Agregando un Lector y Traductor inglés bajo un plan enteramente nuevo, concluyendo con una serie de cartas para llevar una correspondencia mercantil.

8º. Finalmente, publicando una Clave de los Temas que se hallará al fin de la obra, para que el discípulo compare con ella la traduccion que haga de los que se dan en la Gramática. La ventaja de este Clave, aun para los que estudien con maestro, es demasiado obvia para que nos detengamos en recomendarla.

Si á todas las mejoras mencionadas se añaden las hechas por el mismo autor, segun lo esplica en el Prólogo siguiente, fácil será penetrarse de las inmensas mejoras de esta edicion sobre todas las anteriores.

Universidad de Nueva York, Agosto de 1852. E. J. VINGUT

Robertson. Nuevo Curso practico, analitico, teorico y sintetico de Idioma Inglés; escrito para los Franceses por T. Robertson obra aprobada por la Universidad de Paris; traducida y adaptada al castellano sobre la última edicion del original por PEDRO JOSE ROJAS. 8vo. $3.00.

"La Academia Real de Buenos Letras de la Isla de Puerto Rico, despues de haber oido á su Comision de Instruccion pública acerca del Nuevo Curso de Inglés por Robertson, adaptado al Castellano por Don P. J. Rojas, y considerando que dicha obra reune á su claridad, precision y correcto lenguage, una gran facilidad para la adquisicion del idioma inglés, y un método admirable para la pronunciacion de las palabras, ha ordenado que dicha obra se tenga por único texto en las escuelas y colegios, de la Isla.—Puerto Rico, febrero 10 de 1852.—El Capitan General, Pezuela."

"La Direccion General de Estudios de la República de Venezuela, habiendo examinado cuidadosamente el Nuevo Curso de Inglés por Robertson, adaptado al Castellano por el Señor P. J. Rojas, y considerandolo sumamente útil y eficaz para la enseñanza de aquel idioma, ha acordado se incluya dicha obra en el catálogo de textos para los Colegios y escuelas nacionales.—Carácas 4 de Junio de 1851.—Por la Direccion, J. Vargas, Presidente."

(TRANSLATION): *Robertsonian System; a New Practical, Analytical, Theoretical, and Synthetical Course of the English Language, written originally for the French, and approved by the University of Paris. Translated, and Adapted to the Spanish Language, by* PEDRO JOSE ROJAS.

The Royal Academy of the Island of Porto Rico, after hearing the Committee of Public Instruction in regard to the New Course of the English Language by Robertson, translated into Spanish by Mr. P. J. Rojas, and considering that said work combines with clearness, precision, and a correct style, a great and wonderful facility for acquiring so difficult a language as the English, and that it contains likewise an admirable method of English pronunciation, has in its last session ordered this work to be used as the only English text-book in all the schools of the Island.—Porto Rico, February 10*th*, 1851.—*J. de la Pezuela, Captain General.*"

"*The General Direction of Studies in the Republic of Venezuela, having carefully examined the New Course of the English Language, published in France, by Robertson, and translated into Spanish by P. J. Rojas, Esq., and considering it highly useful and efficient in teaching that language, has ordered it to be adopted as a text-book in all the National Schools.—Caracas, June* 4*th*, 1852.—*By the Direction, J. Vargas, President.*"

Emanuel del Mar. Guia para la Conversacion en español é inglés, que contiene varias listas de las Voces mas usuales, debidamente classificadas; Colecciones de Diálogos de Etiqueta y Frases de Conversacion sobre los asuntos mas generales de la vida; Refranes y modos de decir; y Tablas comparativas y Monedas, Pesos, y Medidas. 12mo. 75 cts.

NUEVA EDICION, cuidadosamente revisada y perfeccionada, y aumentada con muchas cosas útiles que ha juzgado podrian ensalzar la utilidad de la obra, y hacerla todavía mas digna de la aceptacion pública.

Los proverbios, Refranes, y Modos de Decio, como tambien los Diálogos, han sido considerablemente extendidos, por razon de su mucha utilidad al estudiante, tanto en la conversacion como en la lectura, y se ha tenido cuidado en reunir los que fuesen de uso mas contínuo en ámbos idiomas.

A esta edicion tambien se le ha agregado un TRATADO DE PRONUNCIACION INGLESA, etc.

(TRANSLATION): *Del Mar's Guide to Spanish and English Conversation, containing various lists of Words in most general use, properly classified; collections of Complimentary Dialogues and Conversational Phrases on the most general subjects of life; Proverbs and Idioms; also comparative Tables of Coins, Weights, and Measures.* 12mo. 75 *cts.*

NEW EDITION, *carefully revised, improved, and enlarged by many useful additions, which might further advance the utility of the work and render it still more worthy of public favor.*

The PROVERBS AND IDIOMS, *as well as the* DIALOGUES, *have been considerably enlarged, on account of their great use to the student, both in conversation and in reading; and particular care has been taken in selecting those idiomatic expressions which are most common to both languages.*

To this edition has been appended a Treatise on ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION.

ENGLISH.

The following Books, by MISS ELIZA ROBBINS, are intended not merely to teach reading for reading's sake, but to suggest an intelligent method of instruction, in preference to one merely mechanical.

Introduction to American Popular Lessons. 1 v. 18mo. 25 *cts.*

American Popular Lessons. 1 v. 18mo. 31 *cts.*

Sequel to Popular Lessons. 1 v. 18mo. 50 *cts.*

Primary Dictionary. 1 v. 18mo. 31 *cts.*

The following notice, voluntarily presented by the Principals of the Public Schools in the city of New York, is but a specimen of many others which have been received:—

"The subscribers, being well acquainted with the series of School Books prepared by MISS ROBBINS, are desirous to bring their merits before those interested in popular education.

"Proceeding gradually through a complete course of school tuition, these works are replete with useful information, and are well adapted to improve the moral and mental powers of youth. They bear the impress of a mind thoroughly versed in practical education, knowing the matter which is suitable, and the manner in which it is to be applied to the minds under cultivation. These books have obtained a wide circulation, and the approbation with which they are regarded is commensurate to the use made of them.

"We (the undersigned) hope that such as are interested in selecting books for the use of schools will examine this series, the author of which has devoted her life to this object."

R. S. JACOBSON,	Public School,	No. 1.	NATHAN W. STARR,	Public School,	No. 10.
WM. BELDEN,	do.	do. 2.	WM. H. BROWNE,	do.	do. 11.
DAVID PATTERSON,	do.	do. 3.	ASA SMITH,	do.	do. 12.
JOHN PATTERSON,	do.	do. 4.	ANDREW STOUT,	do.	do. 13.
JOSEPH MCKEEN,	do.	do. 5.	LEONARD HAZELTINE,	do.	do. 14.
J. W. KETCHUM,	do.	do. 7.	W. A. WALKER,	do.	do. 15.
O. S. PELL,	do.	do. 8.	N. VAN KLEEK,	do.	do. 16.

"The Elementary Reading Books prepared by Miss Robbins, have been in use by the Public Schools of this city for many years. I have thoroughly examined them, and tested them in practice, and am of opinion that they are the best of their kind for the purposes of moral and mental development. The selections in them are from the best writers for juvenile readers, and judiciously adapted to American Schools, wherever the subjects may have required alterations. Her continued

course of School Books are worthy the highest commendation; and, from her matured experience, I have the fullest confidence in Miss Robbins as a writer of School Books. Her Introduction and Popular Lessons are unequalled for the purpose of analytical instruction.

S. W. SETON."

"I have been acquainted with the Popular Lesson Series some time, and have given them my official recommendation for use in the Schools of this State. IRA MAYHEW,

Superintendent of Public Instruction, Michigan."

"I am well acquainted with the text-books prepared by Miss Robbins, and think highly of their merits. What these merits are, in my opinion, I will briefly state.

They are well written in point of style, showing an acquaintance with the best models of English composition, and free from those inaccuracies and that carelessness which deface so many of our school books.

They are well adapted to the comprehension of the several classes of children for which they are designed. Nothing is offered to the understanding of a child, until it is prepared for its reception.

They convey a great amount of useful knowledge; and are also eminently suggestive in their character. They fill the mind of a child with a healthy love of knowledge, and that lively desire of progress, which it is a great end of education to awaken and preserve.

The moral tone of these books is excellent. They inculcate generous sentiments, and appeal to the highest motives. They direct the admiration of children to those qualities in humanity which are most admirable. They thus afford great aid to the teacher, in the moral training of his pupils. GEO. S. HILLARD."

"I have seen Miss Robbins' School Books, and some of them I have examined with care. They seem to me to have very great merit. They are written with good taste, and evince a careful and skilful use of extensive reading. They are well adapted to excite the mind to inquiry, and to fill it with useful and interesting knowledge.

Their moral tone is excellent; on this score they are wholly free from objection.

The Committee on Books used in our Public schools (of which I am chairman) have just resolved, by unanimous vote, to recommend the introduction of the Sequel to Popular Lessons; and others of her books are under favorable consideration.

Boston, July 25, 1846. THEOPHILUS PARSONS."

First Lessons in Human Physiology, for the use of Schools, to which are added brief Rules of Health: by JOHN H. GRISCOM, M. D., with 50 large and distinct illustrations. 16mo. 42 cts.

"This work is written with much care by one fully competent, not only in respect of his thorough acquaintance with the subject, but of the faculty or *tact* necessary to secure the attention, by reaching and interesting the minds of children.

It is strictly a *First book* in the study of Human Physiology—a study which in importance is second to none, and superior to most of the subjects which are now taught in our schools.

I am so well acquainted with Dr. Griscom's writings, and with the very sound and practical views he always advances, that I should have no hesitation in commending almost any thing from his pen.

HON. HORACE MANN."

Extract from the Minutes of the Executive Committee of the New York Public School Society, March 4, 1847.

"*Resolved*, That Griscom's small work on Physiology be adopted for general use in the Upper Schools, and that a copy be placed in the Primary Schools for each of the Teachers, Assistants, and Monitors."

"Dr. Griscom's First Lessons in Human Physiology, I consider admirably adapted to the capacity of children, combining in a very happy manner, interest and instruction. I shall most cheerfully recommend its use in all our Primary Schools. IRA MAYHEW,

Superintendent of Public Instruction, Michigan."

"Griscom's Physiology, I consider a work of rare merit; one which ought to be in the possession of every child in the land, giving, as it does, in a condensed but simple form, much valuable information."

Mills' Blair's Rhetoric. Lectures on Rhetoric and Belles-lettres, chiefly from the Lectures of *Dr. Hugh Blair;* to which are added Copious Questions and an Analysis of each Lecture By ABRAHAM MILLS, A. M. New and enlarged edition. 12mo. $1.

(*Extract from the New Preface.*)

"In presenting to the public an improved edition of the following lectures, the editor has endeavored to render the work as nearly complete as the nature of the subject would permit. With this view, he has extended the critical portion down to the present period, embracing

2 415224
L.C
85
6809-G

all those writers in English literature who have adorned the language with their productions during the last half century. The criticisms, though brief, are as extensive as the nature of the work requires, and are written with direct reference to the purposes of instruction," etc.

Baldwin's Table Book. A Table Book and Primary Arithmetic, compiled and arranged for the Introductory Department of the New York Public and Ward Schools, and particularly adapted to the system of Mutual Instruction. By AUSTIN BALDWIN. New edition, revised. 18mo. 10 cts.

Preface.—Having for a long time sustained considerable inconvenience from the want of a book of Arithmetical Tables adapted to the capacities of very young pupils, and arranged in such a manner as to answer the purposes of a large school, I have been induced to compile one, with a special view to the necessities of the system of monitorial instruction.

Believing it important that children should be made to understand the application of what they are required to commit to memory, I have placed a few simple questions at the end of each lesson, illustrating its use; and as a knowledge of the rules of Arithmetic can be well understood by children, only by performing the operations, I have endeavored, in the introduction, to make the rules as concise as possible, depending principally on the examples for fixing them in the minds of the pupils. It is confidently hoped that this little work will lighten the labor of the child in committing to memory that which is so important as a foundation for Arithmetic, and also that, by the division and numbering of the lessons, it may relieve the teacher of much trouble in assigning the proper portions for each scholar or class.

That it may, however small the offering, aid the cause of juvenile education, is the earnest wish of THE COMPILER.

Clarke's Elements of Astronomy; a new system of Astronomy, in Question and Answer, for the use of Schools. 12mo. 21 cts.

Mrs. Tuthill's Simple Facts, which every child should know. 12mo. 45 cts.

Science of Common Things. 18mo. 34 cts.

School Diary, per dozen, 63 cents.

CHOUQUET'S First Lessons in French. Enlarged Edition. 16mo.....$0 45
——— **Easy Conversations in French.** 16mo..... 63
VANNIER'S French Pronunciation and Spelling. 16mo..... 45
Mrs. BARBAULD'S Lessons for Children, in French..... 45
LE LIVRE des Petits Enfants. (A Reader for Little Children.) 18mo.... 50

Paris Editions.

DE L'ALLEMAGNE. (Germany.) **Par Mme. de Stael.** 12mo..... 1 00
SIECLE DE LOUIS XIV. Par Voltaire. 12mo..... 1 00
CORINNE. Par Mme. de Stael. 12mo..... 1 00
LETTRES DE MME. DE SEVIGNE. 12mo..... 1 00
CORNEILLE. " " " 1 00
GIL BLAS DE SANTILLANE. Par le Sage. 12mo 1 00
MOLIERE'S Complete Works. 2 vols. 12mo 2 00
RACINE'S Complete Works. 12mo..... 1 00

SPANISH.

DEL MAR'S Spanish and English Conversations..... 75
VINGUT'S Ollendorff's Method of Learning Spanish. With a figured PRONUNCIATION of the Spanish words..... 1 50
Key to do..... 75
VINGUT'S Spanish Reader and Translator. 12mo 1 25
MEADOWS' Spanish and English Dictionary. London Edition..... 1 50

For Spaniards learning English or French, or French learning Spanish.

OLLENDORFF. El Maestro de Ingles. (The English Teacher.) With a figured PRONUNCIATION of the English words. By F. J. Vingut..... 2 00
——— **Clave del Maestro de Ingles.** (Key to the English Teacher.) 1 00
——— **El Maestro de Frances.** (French Grammar for the use of the Spanish, with a figured pronunciation of the French words.) By F. J. Vingut. 2 00
——— **Clave.** (Key to the French Teacher.)..... 1 00
——— **Le Maitre d'Espagnol.** (Spanish Grammar for the use of the French.) By F. J. Vingut. 1 vol. 12mo..... 2 00
ROBERTSON. Nuevo Curso de Idioma Ingles. (Robertsonian System.) Edited by P. J. Rojas. With a Key 3 00
DEL MAR. La Guia para la Conversacion en Espagnol e Ingles. Par F. J. Vingut. 12mo..... 1 00
LECTOR Y TRADUCTOR INGLES. (English Reader for the use of Spaniards.) By F. J. Vingut. 12mo..... 1 50

A liberal discount from the foregoing prices allowed to schools.

Persons wishing any book from the above list, by sending us the advertised price in bills or post-office stamps, post-paid, will receive it from us by mail, free of expense.

Bèzout.
Biot.
Boiste.
Bolmar.
Boniface.
Bonnaire.
Bonnechose.
Bossuet.
Bouchardat.
Boucharlat.
Bouchitté.
Bourdon.
Boyer.
Bugard.
Cauchy.
Chapsal.
Cheppeet Powell.
Chouquet.
Chrodde.
Church.
Cloquet.
Cobbett.
Cortambert.
Contan.
Cumberworth.
Daru.
De Fivas.
De La Bèché.
Delafosse.
De Laporte.
De Rouillon.
Despretz.
Destouits.
Euclide.
Euler.
Filon.
Flem. and Tibbins.
Fowle.
Gaultier.
Gay-Lussac.
Geruzez.
Girard.
Girardin.
Giraudet.
Girault.
Gombault (Mlle.)
Goyer-Linguet.
Guizot.
Herbet.
Herbert.
Hoffet.
Lacroix.
Ladreyt.
Lamé Fleury.
Lamotte.
Lamouroux.
Landais.
La Place.
Laveaux.
Le Bréthon.
Le Clerc.
Lefèvre.
Légendre.
Lemare.
Lévi (A.)
Lévizac.
Lhomond.
Longfellow.
Mabire.
MacCarthy.
Magendie.
Maltebrun.
Manesca.
Meadows.
Meissas.
Michelet.
Noel et Chapsal.
Nodier.
Nugent.
Ollendorff.
Payen.
Peclet.
Perrin.
Picot.
Pinney.
Poitevin.
Poppleton.
Porney.
Quételet.
Quicherat.
Raspail.
Raymond.
Regnault.
Roemer.
Roret.
Rowebotham.
Sacy (de)
Sadler.
Saint-Ouen.
Sardon.
Siret.
Smith.
Sommer.
Sonnet.
Spiers.
Stone.
Surault.
Surenne.
Théry.
Tibbins.
Vernier.
Wailly (de)
Wanostrocht.
Witcomb.

SPANISH.

LITERATURE, HISTORY, EDUCATION, &c., INCLUDING SPANISH TRANSLATIONS.

Alarcon.
Aleman.
Almeida.
Alvarado (S, de)
Araujo.
Arnao.
Ascargorta.
Balbi.
Balzac.
Barca (C. de la)
Barthélemy.
Berbreugger.
Blair.
Blanc.
Bordas.
Bouilly.
Buffon.
Cadalso.
Capmany.
Campe.
Canos.
Canizares.
Castro (B. de)
Cervantes.
Chantreau.
Chateaubriand.
Cooper.
Cormon y Manni.
Conde.
Cottin.
Cousin.
Cubi.
De Foé.
De Hyta.
Despretz.
Ercilla.
Espronceda (de)
Eyalieta.
Fénélon.
Figaro.
Florian.
Galland.
Gaultier.
Girard.
Guevara.
Guizot.
Hartzenbusch.
Hautpoul.
Hermosilla (G.)
Horacio.
Hugo.
Iriarte.
Josse.
Lacroix.
Lamartine.
Lamé Fleury.
La Rochefocauld.
Larra.
Lavalle.
Légendre.
Le Sage.
Letronne.
Lope de Vega.
Malte Brun.
Manzoni.
Maria de Zayas.
Marmontel.
Martinez.
Martinez Lopez.
M. de la Rosa.
Massillon.
Melo.
Mendoza (H. de)
Mignet.
Moncada.
Moratin.
Moreto.
Moralejo.
Muller.
Neuman.
Noriega.
Ochoa.
Ollendorff.
Orrit.
Payen.
Pardal.
Pellico.
Piamonte.
Pizarro.
Pla y Torres.
Plutarco.
Quintana.
Rabadan.
Rabbe.
Rojas.
Rousseau.
Salacroux.
Sabattie.
Salkeld.
Salvas.
Samaniego.
Sanchez.
Solis.
Stael (Mme. de)
Taboada (N. de)
Thiers.
Tirso de Molina.
Toreno.
Torrecilla.
Trapani.
Urcullu.
Vallejo.
Velazquez.
Verneuil (C. de)
Villegas.
Vingut.
Walter Scott.
Yriarte.
Zorrilla.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 003 117 522 7